



THE  
HISTORY OF  
DON-QUICHOTE.

*The first parte.*

PRINTED BY J. D. COOPER



C 4916





TO THE RIGHT HO-  
NOVRABLE, HIS VERIE  
GOOD LORD, THE

Lord of WALDEN, &c.

(\*\*\*)



The Honourable Lord;  
hauing translated some  
fue or fixe yeeres agoe,  
the Historie of *Don-  
Quixote*, out of the  
Spanish Tongue, into the  
English, in the space of  
fortie dayes: being ther-  
vnto more then halfe in-  
forced, through the im-  
portunitie of a very deare  
friend, that was desirous to vnderstand the subject: Af-  
ter I had giuen him once a view thereof, I cast it aside,  
where it lay long time neglected in a corner, and so little  
regarded by me, as I neuer once set hand to renew or  
correct the same. Since when, at the intreatie of others

## *The Epistle Dedicatorie.*

my friends, I was content to let it come to light, conditionally, that some one or other would peruse and amend the errours escaped; my many affaires hindering me from vndergoing that labour. Now I vnderstand by the Printer, that the Copie was presented to your Honour: which did at the first somewhat disgust mee, because as it must passe, I feare much, it will prove farre vnworthie, either of your Noble view or protection. Yet since it is mine, though abortiue, I doe humbly intreat, that your Honour will lend it a fauourable countenance, thereby to animate the parent thereof, to produce in time some worthier subiect, in your Honourable Name, whose many rare vertues haue already rendred me so highly deuoted to your seruice, as I will some day giue very euident tokens of the same, and till then I rest,

*Your Honours most affectionate*

*Seruisor,*

Thomas Shelton.



## The Authors Preface to the R E A D E R.

**H**OW maist belecue mee (gentle Reader) without swearing, that I could willingly desire this Booke (as a child of vnderstanding) to be the most beautifull, gallant, and discret, that might possibly bee imagined. But I could not transgresse the order of Nature, wherein euery thing begets his like: which being so, what could my sterile and ill-tild wit ingender, but the History of a dry tosted, & humorous son, full of various thoughts & conceits neuer before imagined of any other: much like one who was ingendred within some noysome prison, where all commodities haue taken possession, and all dolefull noyses made their habitation? seeing that rest, pleasant places, amenitie of the Fields, the cheerefulnesse of cleere skie, the murmuring noyse of the Christall fountaines, and the quiet repose of the spirit, are great helpes for the most barren Muses to shew themselves fruitfull, and to bring forth into the world such births as may enrich it with admiration and delight. It oft-times befals, that a father hath a child both by birth euil-fauoured and quite denoyd of all perfection, and yet the loue that hee beares him is such, as it casts a maske ouer his eyes, which hinders his discerning of the

## To the Reader.

faults and simplicities thereof, and makes him rather to deeme them discretions and beautie, and so tels them to his friends, for wittie iests and conceits. But I (though in shew a Father, yet in truth but a step-father to Don-Quixote) will not be borne away by the violent current of the modern custome now adayes, and therefore intreat thee, with the teares almost in mine eyes, as many others are wont to doe, (most deare Reader) to pardon and dissemble the faults which thou shalt discern in this my sonne: for thou art neyther his kinsman nor friend, and thou hast thy soule in thy bodie, and thy free-will therein as absolute as the best, and thou art in thine owne house, wherein thou art as absolute a Lord, as the King is of his subsidies, & thou knowest well the common Proverbe, that vnder my cloake a fig for the King, all which doth exempt thee, and makes thee free from all respect and obligation; and so thou mayest boldly say of this history, whatsoeuer thou shalt think good, without feare either to be controlled for the euil, or rewarded for the good that thou shalt speake thereof.

I would very faine haue presented it vnto thee pure and naked, without the ornament of a Preface, or the rabblement and Catalogue of the wonted Sonnets, Epigrams, Poems, Elegies, &c. which are wont to bee put at the beginning of bookes. For I dare say vnto thee, that (although it cost me some paynes to compose it) yet in no respect did it equallize that which I took to make this Preface which thou dost now read. I tooke oftentimes my pen in my hand to write it, and as often set it downe again, as not knowing what I should write, and being once in a muse with my Paper before me, my Pen in mine Eare, mine Elbow on the table, and my hand on my cheeke, imagining what I might write,

---

## To the Reader.

---

write, there entred a friend of mine v unexpectedly, who was a very discreet and pleasantly-witted man: who seeing me so pensatiue, demanded of me the reason of my musing: and not concealing it from him, said, that I bethought my selfe on my Preface I was to make to Don-Quixotes Historie, which did so much trouble me, as I neyther meane to make any at all, nor publish the History of the acts of so noble a Knight. For how can I chuse (quoth I) but be much confounded at that which the old Legislator (the Vulgar) will say, when it sees that after the end of so many yeeres (as are spent since I first slept in the bosome of obliuion) I come out loaden with my gray haire, and bring with me a hooke as dry as a Kex, void of inuention, barren of good Phrase, poore of conceits, & altogether emptie both of learning & eloquence: without quotations on the margents, or annotations in the end of the book, wherewith I see other books are still adorned, be they neuer so idle, fabulons, and prophane: so full of sentences of Aristotle and Plato, and the other crue of the Philosophers, as admires the Readers, & makes them beleene that these Authors are very learned and eloquent? And after, whē they cite Plutarch or Cicero, what can they say, but that they are the sayings of S. Thomas or other Doctors of the Church: obseruing herein so ingenious a Methode, as in one line they will paint you an inamoured Gull, and in the other will lay you down a little seeming deuout Sermon, so that it is a great pleasure and delight to read or heare it? All which things must be wanting in my Booke, for neyther haue I any thing to cite on the margent, or note in the end, and much lesse doe I know what Authors I follow, to put them at the beginning as the custome is, by the letter of the A. B. C. beginning with Aristotle,



## To the Reader.

Aristotle, and ending in Xenophon, or in Zoylus or Zeuxis. Although the one was a Rayler, and the other a Paynter: So likewise shal my booke want sonnets at the beginning, at least such sonnets, whose Authors bee Dukes, Marquesses, Earles, Bishops, Ladies, or famous Poets. Although if I would demand them of two or three Artificers of mine acquaintance, I know they would make mee some such, as those of the most renowned in Spayne would in no wise be able to equall or compare with them.

Finally, good sir, and my very deare friend, (quoth I) I do resolute that Sir Don-Quixote remaine intombed among the old records of the Mancha, vntill heauen or daine some one to adorne him with the many graces that are yet wanting: for I finde my selfe wholly vnable to remedy them, through mine insufficiencie and little learning: and also because I am naturally lazie and unwilling to goe searching for Authors to say that, which I can say well enough without them. And hence proceeded the perplexity and extasie wherein you found me plunged. My friend hearing that, and striking himselfe on the fore-head, after a long and loud laughter, said, In good faith, friend, I haue now at last deliuered my selfe of a long and intricate error, wherein I was possessed all the time of our acquaintance; for hitherto I accounted thee euer to be discret and prudent in all thy actions, but now I see plainly, that thou art as farre from that I tooke thee to bee, as Heauen is from the Earth.

How is it possible, that things of so small moment, and so easie to bee redressed, can haue force to suspend and swallow vp so ripe a wit as yours hath seemed to be, and so fitted to break vp and trample ouer the greatest difficulties that

## To the Reader.

can be propounded. This proceeds not in good sooth from defect of will, but from superfluitie of slouth, and penury of discourse: wilt thou see whether that I say be true or no? Listen then attentively awhile, and thou shalt perceiue how in the twinkling of an eye, I wil confound all the difficulties, and supply all the wants which doe suspend, and affright thee from publishing to the World, The Historie of thy famous *Don. Quixote*, the light and mirrour of all Knight-hood Errant.

Say, I pray thee, quoth I, (hearing what he had said,) After what manner doest thou thinke to replenish the vacuity of my feare, and reduce the Chaos of my confusion to any cleernes and light? And he replied, The first thing whereat thou stopst, of Sonnets, Epigrams, Eglogues, &c. (which are wanting for the beginning, and ought to bee written by graue and noble persons) may be remedied, if thou thy selfe wilt but take a little pain to compasse them, and thou maist after name them as thou pleasest, and father them on Prester Iohn of the Indians, or the Emperour of Trapisonde, whom I know were held to be famous Poets; and suppose they were not, but that some Pedants and presumptuous fellowes would backbite thee, & murmur against this truth, thou needst not waigh them two straws: for although they could proue it to be an vntruth, yet cannot they cut off thy hand for it.

As touching Citations in the margent, & Authors, out of whom thou mayst collect sentences and sayings, to insert in thy History, there is nothing else to be done, but to bob into it some latine sentences, that thou knowest already by roat, or mayst get easily with a little labor: as for example when thou treatest of libertie and thr aldome, thou mayst

---

## To the Reader.

---

*cite that, Non bene pro toto libertas venditur auro: & presently quote Horace, or he whosoever els that said it on the margents. If thou shouldst speak of the power of death, haue presently recourse to that of, Pallida mors equo pulsat pede pauperum tabernas, Regumq; turres. If of the instability of friends, thou hast at hand Cato freely offering his Distichon. Donec eris sc̃elix, multos numerabis amicos. Tempora si fuerint nubila, soluseris. If of riches, Quantum quisque sua nummorum seruat in arca, Tantum habet & fidei. If of loue, Hei mihi quod nullis amor est medicabilis herbis. And so with these latine authorities and other such like, they will at least account thee a good Grammarian, & the being of such a one is of no little honour and profit in this our Age. As touching the addition of annotations in the end of thy Book, thou mayst boldly obserue this course: If thou namest any Giant in thy Book, procure that it bee the Giant Goliath, and with this alone (which almost will cost thee nothing) thou hast gotten a faire annotation, for thou mayst say, The Giant Goliath or Goliath was a Philistine, whom the Shepheard David slew with the blow of a stone in the vale of Terebintho, as is recounted in the Booke of Kings, in the Chapter wherein thou shalt find it written.*

*After all this, to shew that thou art learned in humane Letters and a Cosmographer, take some occasion to make mention of the Riuer Tagus, and thou shalt presently finde thy selfe stored with another notable notation, saying the riuer Tagus was so called of a King of Spaine, it takes its beginning from such a place, and dies in the Ocean Seas, kissing first the Walls of the famous Citie of Lisbone; And some are of opinion, that the sands there.*

## To the Reader.

thereof are of Gold, &c. If thou wilt treat of theeues, I will recite the Historie of Cacus to thee, for I know it by memory. If of Whores or Curtezans, there thou hast the Bishop of Mondonnedo, who will lend thee Lamia, Layda, and Flora, whose annotation will gaine thee no small credit. If of cruell persons, Ouid will tender Medea. If of Inchanters or Witches, Homer bath Calipso, and Virgil Circe. If of valorous Captaines, Iulius Cæsar shall lend himselfe in his Commentaries to thee, and Plutarch shall giue thee a thousand Alexanders. If thou dost treat of Loue, and hast but two ounces of the Thuscane Language, thou shalt incounter with Lion the Hebrew, who will replenish thy vessels with store in that kinde: but if thou wilt not trauell for it into strange Countries, thou hast here at home in thy house Fonseca of the loue of God, wherein is deciphered all that either thou, or the most ingenious capacity can desire to learne of that subiect. In conclusion, there is nothing else to be done, but that thou only indenuour to name those names, or to touch those Histories in thine own, which I haue here related, and leaue the adding of Annotations and citations vnto me; for I do promise thee, that I will both fill v<sup>p</sup> the margin, and also spend foure or five sheetes of aduantage at the end of the Booke:

Now let vs come to the citation of Authors, which other Bookes haue, and thine wanteth, the remedie hereof is very easie, for thou needest doe nought else but seeke out a Booke that dosh quote them all from the letter A. vntill Z. as thou saidst thy selfe but euen now, and thou shalt set that very same alphabet to thine own Book. For although the little necessity that thou hadst to vse their assistance in

---

## To the Reader.

---

thy worke, will presently conuict thee of falshood, it makes no matter, and perhaps there may not a few be found so simple, as to belecue that thou hast holpe thy selfe in the Narration of thy most simple and sincere Historie, with all their authorities. And though that large Catalogue of Authors do serue to none other purpose; yet will it at least giue some authoritie to the Booke at the first blush: and the rather, because none will be so mad as to stand to examine whether thou dost follow them or no, seeing they can gaine nothing by the matter. Yet if I doe not erre in the consideration of so waighty an affaire, this Booke of thine needes none of all these things, for as much as it is onely an inuectiue against Bookes of Knighthood, a subiect whereof Aristotle neuer dreamed, Saini Basil said nothing, Cicero neuer heard any word. Nor doe the punctualities of truth, nor obseruations of Astrologie fall within the Spheare of such fabulous lestings. Nor doe Geometricall dimensions impart it any thing, nor the confutation of arguments vsurped by Rhetorike, nor ought it to preach vnto any the mixture of holy matters with prophane, (a motley wherewith no Christian well should be attyred,) onely it hath need to helpe it selfe with imitation; for by how much the more it shall excell therein, by so much the more will the worke bee esteemed. And since that thy labour doth ayme at no more, then to diminish the authoritie and acceptance that Bookes of Chiuallrie haue in the World, and among the vulgar, there is no occasion why thou shouldest go begging of sentences from Philosophers, Fables from Poets, Orations from Rhetoricians, or Miracles from the Saints, but onely endeuour to deliuer with significant, plaine, honest, and wel-ordred words thy  
Iouiall

---

## To the Reader.

---

Iouiall and cheerefull discourse, expresseing as neere as thou mayest possibly thy intention, making thy conceits cleere, and not intricate or dark; and labour also that the melancholy Mare, by the reading thereof, may be urged to laughter, the pleasant disposition increased, the simple not cloyed; and that the iudicious may admire thy inuention, the graue not despise it, the prudent applaude it. In conclusion, let thy proiect be to ouerthrow the ill compiled Machina, and bulke of those Knightly Bookes, abhorred by many, but applauded by more. For if thou bring this to passe, thou hast not atchieued a small matter.

I listened with very great attention to my friends speech, and his reasons are so firmly imprinted in my minde, as without making any reply vnto them, I approued them all for good, and framed my Preface of them. Wherein (sweet Reader) thou mayest perceine my friends discretion, my happinesse to meete with so good a Counsellour at such a pinch, and thine owne ease, in finding so plainly and sincerely related, the Historie of the famous Don-Quixote of the Mancha, of whom it is the common opinion of all the inhabitants bordring on the fields of Montiel, that he was the most chaste enamoured, and valiant Knight, that hath bin scene, read, or heard of these many Ages. I will not indeere the benefit and seruice I haue done thee by making thee acquainted with so Noble and Honourable a Knight, but onely doe desire that thou gratifie mee for the notice of the famous Sancho Pança his Squire; In whom in mine opinion are deciphered all the Squire-like graces dispersed thorow the vaine rout of Knightly Bookes. And herewithall I bid thee farewell, and doe not forget me. Vale.





Certaine SONNETS, written by  
Knights Errant, Ladies, Squires, and  
*Horses, in the prayse of DON-QUIXOTE,*  
his Dame, his Squire, and  
STEED.

---

AMADIS of Gaule, in prayse of  
*Don-Quixote.*

**T**Hou that my dolefull life didst imitate,  
When absent, and disdain'd it befell,  
Deuoyd of Ioy, I a repentant state  
Did lead, and on the *Poore Rock's* top did dwell,  
Thou that the streames, so often from thine eyes  
Didst sucke, of scalding teares digustfull brine:  
And without Pewter, Copper, Plate, likewise,  
Wast on the bare Earth oft constrain'd to dine:  
Liue of one thing secure eternally,  
That whilst bright *Phæbus* shall his Horses spurre  
Through the fourth Spheares dilated Monarchie,  
Thy name shall be renowned, neere and furre.  
And as 'mongst Countries, thine is best alone,  
So shall thine Author, Peeres on Earth haue none.

DON-

---

DON BELIANIS of Greece, to Don-  
*Quixote of the Mancha.*

---

I Tore, I hackt, abolisht, said and did,  
More then Knight Errant else on Earth hath done;  
I dextrous, valiant, and so stout beside,  
Haue thousand wrongs reueng'd, millions vndone.  
I haue done Acts, that my fame eternize:  
In Loue I courteous and so Peerelesse was;  
Giants, as if but Dwarfs, I did despise:  
And yet no time of Loue-plaints, I let passe.  
I haue held Fortune prostrate at my feet,  
And by my wit seyz'd on occasions top,  
Whose wandring steps, I led where I thought meet,  
And though beyond the *Moore* my soaring hope  
Did crowne my hap, with all felicitie:  
Yet *Great Quixote*, doe I still enuie thee.

---

The Knight of the Sunne, ALPHEBO,  
to Don-*Quixote*.

MY Sword could not at all compare with thine,  
*Spanish Alphebo!* full of courtesie:  
Nor thine Armes valour, can be matcht by mine,  
Though I was fear'd, where dayes both spring and die.  
Empires I scorn'd, and the vast Monarchie  
Of th' orient ruddie (offred me in vaine)  
I left, that I the Soueraigne face might see  
Of my *Aurora*, faire *Claridiane*,  
Whom, as by miracle I surely lou'd:  
So banisht by disgrace, euen very Hell  
Quak't at mine arme, that did his furie tame:  
But thou, illustrious, *Gothe, Quixote!* hast prou'd

Thy

---

Thy valour for *Dulcineas* sake, so well,  
As both on Earth haue gain'd eternall fame.

---

ORLANDO FVRIOSO, Peere of France, to  
*Don. Quixote of the Mancha.*

**T**Hough thou art not a *Peere*, thou hast no peere,  
Who might'st among ten thousand *Peeres* be one;  
Nor shalt thou neuer any *Peere* haue heere,  
Who euer conquering, vanquisht wast of none.  
*Quixote* I'me *Orlande* ! that cast-away  
For faire *Angelica*, crost remotest Seas,  
And did such *Trophies* on *Fames* altar lay,  
As passe obliuions reach, many degrees.  
Nor can I be thy *Peere*, for *Peerelesnesse*,  
Is to thy prowesse due and great renowne,  
Although I lost, as well as thou, my wit:  
Yet mine thou maist be, if thy good successe  
Make thee, the proud *Moors* tame, and Schite that  
Vs equals in disgrace, and louing fit. (crowne

---

SOLIS DAN, to *Don. Quixote of*  
*the Mancha.*

**M**Augre the rauings, that are set abroch,  
And rumble vp and downe thy troubled braine:  
Yet none thine acts, *Don-Quixote* can reproch,  
Or thy proceedings taxe as vile, or vaine.  
Thy feates shall be, thy fairest ornament  
(Seeing wrongs to 'ndoe, thou goest thus about)  
Although, with blowes, a thousand times y-shent  
Thou wert, wel-nigh, yee'uen by the miscreant rout.

And

---

And if thy faire *Dulcinea*, shall wrong  
By mis-regard, thy fairer expectation,  
And to thy cares will lend no listening eare:  
Then let this comfort all thy woes out-weare,  
That *Sancho* faild in Brokers occupation,  
He foolish, cruell thee: thou, without tongue.

---

The Princes *ORIANA* of Great Brittain,  
to Lady *Dulcinea de Toboso*.

**H** Appie those which, for more commoditie  
And ease *Dulcinea* faire! could bring to passe,  
That *Green-Witch*, where *Toboso* is, might be,  
And *London* chang'd, where thy Knights village was.  
Happie thee that might body and soule adorne  
With thy rich Livery, and thy high desire:  
And see thy happie Knight by honour borne  
In cruell combate, broching out his ire.  
But happiest she, that might so cleanly scape  
From *Amadis*, as thou hast whilome done  
From thy well-mannerd Knight, Courteous *Quixote*:  
O! were I thee, I'de enuy now ones hap,  
And had beene merry, when I most did mone,  
And tane my pleasure, without paying shot.

---

Gandaline, *Amadis* of *Gaules* Squire; to *Sancho*  
*Pança*, *Don-Quixotes* Squire.

**H** Ayle, famous man! whom Fortune hath so blift,  
When first in Squire-like trade, it thee did place,  
As thou didst soft and sweetly passe disgrace,  
Ere thou thereof the threatning danger wist.

The

---

The Shouell or Sickle little doe resist  
The wandring exercise; for now's in grace  
Plaine Squire-like dealing, which doth quite deface  
His pride, that would the *Moore* bore with his fist.  
Thine Assie I ioyntly enuie and thy name,  
And eke thy Wallet I doe emulate;  
An argument of thy great prouidence:  
Haile once againe; who, 'cause so good a man,  
Thy worths, our Spanish *Onid* does relate,  
And louely chaunts them, with all reuerence.

---

A Dialogue betweene BABIECA, Horse to the Cid,  
*a famous Conquerour of Spaine: and* ROZIN-  
NANTE, DON-QUIXOTES  
*Courser.*

- Ba.* **H**OW haps it, *Rozinant*, thou art so leane?  
*Ro.* Because I trauell still, and neuer eat:  
*Ba.* Thy want of Barley and Straw, what doe's it meane?  
*Ro.* That of my Lord, a bit I cannot get.  
*Ba.* Away, sir lade! you are ill mannered,  
Whose Asses tongue, your Lord does thus abase.  
*Ro.* If you did see how he's enamoured,  
You would conclude, that he's the greater Assie.  
*Ba.* Is loue a folly? (*Roz.*) Sure it is no wit.  
*Ba.* Thou art a Metaphisician, (*Roz.*) for want of meat.  
*Ba.* Complaine vpon the Squire. (*Roz.*) What profits it?  
Or how shall I my wofull plaints repeat!  
Since though the World imputes slownesse to me,  
Yet greater lades, my Lord, and *Sancho* be.

The



The Table of the first Booke of the delightfull  
*Historie of Don-Quixote.*

CHAPTER. I.

**W**Herein is rehearsed the calling and exercises of the renowned Gentleman, Don-Quixote of the Mancha.

CHAP. II.

*Treating of the first sally that Don-Quixote made to seek Adventures.*

CHAP. III.

*Wherein is recounted the pleasant manner observed in the Knighting of Don-Quixote.*

CHAP. IIII.

*Of that which befell to our Knight, after hee had departed from the Inn.*

CHAP. V.

*Wherein is presented the former narration of our Knights misfortunes.*

CHAP. VI.

*Of the pleasant and curious search and inquisition made by the Curate and Barber, of Don-Quixotes Librarie.*

CHAP. VII.

*Of the second departure that the good Knight Don-Quixote made from his House to seek Adventures.*

CHAP. VIII.

*Of the good successe Don-Quixote had in the dreadfull and neuer imagined Adventure of the Wind-mills, with other accidents worthy to be recounted.*

The



---

## The Contents.

---

### The Table of the second Booke of the delightfull *Historie of Don-Quixote of Mancha.*

---

#### CHAPTER. I.

**T**Herein is concluded and finished the fearefull Battaile,  
which the gallant Biscaine fought with Don-Quixote.

#### CHAP. II.

Of that which befell to Don-Quixote, after he had left the  
Ladies.

#### CHAP. III.

Of that which passed betweene Don-Quixote and certaine  
Goat-herds.

#### CHAP. IIII.

Of that which one of the Goat-herds recounted to those that  
trailed with Don-Quixote.

#### CHAP. V.

Wherein is finished the Historie of the Shepherdesse Marcella,  
with other accidents.

#### CHAP. VI.

Wherein are rehearsed the despayring Verses of the dead  
Shepherd, with other unexpected events.

---

### The Table of the third Booke of the delightfull *Historie of Don-Quixote of Mancha.*

#### CHAPTER. I.

**W**Herein is rehearsed the unfortunate adventure hapned  
to Don-Quixote, by encountering with certaine  
Tangusian Carriers.

#### CHAP. II.

Of that which befell the ingenious Knight within the Inno,  
which he supposed to be a Castle.

CHAP.

---

## The Contents.

---

### CHAP. III.

*Wherein are layd downe the innumerable misfortunes that Don-Quixote, and his good Squire Sancho, passed in the Inne, the which he to his dammage supposed to be a Castle.*

### CHAP. IIII.

*Specifying the Discourses passed betweene Sancho, and his Lord Don-Quixote, with other occurrents worthy the recitall.*

### CHAP. V.

*Of the discreet Discourses had between Sancho and his Lord, with the succeeding Adventures of a dead body, and other notable things.*

### CHAP. VI.

*Of a wonderfull adventure achieved with lesse hazzard, then ever any other Knights did any, by the valorous Don-Quixote of the Mancha.*

### CHAP. VII.

*Of the high Adventure and rich Prize of the Helmet of Mambrino, with other successes befallen the invincible Knight.*

### CHAP. VIII.

*Of the libertie that Don-Quixote gave to many wretches, that were a carrying perforce to a place they desired not.*

### CHAP. IX.

*Of that which befell the famous Don-Quixote, in Sierra Morena, and was one of the rarest Adventures, which in this Authentick Historie is recounted.*

### CHAP. X.

*Wherein is presented the Adventure of Sierra Morena.*

### CHAP. XI.

*Which treats of the strange Adventures that happened to the Knight of the Mancha, in Sierra Morena: and of the Penance he did there, in imitation of Beltinibros.*

### CHAP. XII.

*Wherein are presented the pranks played by Don-Quixote, in his amorous humors in the Mountains of Sierra Morena.*

CHAP.

---

## The Contents.

---

### CHAP. XIII.

*How the Curate and Barber put their designe in practice, with many other things worthy to be recorded in this famous Historie.*

---

## The Table of the fourth Booke of the delightfull Historie of Don-Quixote.

---

### CHAPTER. I.

**W**Herein is discoursed the new and pleasant Adventure, that hapned to the Curate & Barber in Sierra Morena.

### CHAP. II.

*Which treates of the discretion of the beautifull Dorotea: and of the artificiall manner used to dissuade the amorous Knight from continuing his penance, and how he was gotten away, with many other delightfull and pleasant occurrences.*

### CHAP. III.

*Of many pleasant Discourses passed betwene Don-Quixote, and those of his companie, after that he had abandoned the rigorous place of his penance.*

### CHAP. IIII.

*Of the pleasant Discourses continued betwene Don-Quixote, and his Squire Sancho Pança, with other Adventures.*

### CHAP. V.

*Treating of that which befell all Don-Quixotes traine in the Iune.*

### CHAP. VI.

*Wherein is recounted the novell of the Curious Impertinent.*

### CHAP. VII.

*Wherein is prosecuted the novell of the Curious Impertinent.*

### CHAP. VIII.

*Wherein is finished the novell of the Curious Impertinent: and like.*

---

## The Contents.

---

*likewise recounted the rough encounter passed betwene Don-Quixote, and certaine bags of red Wine.*

### CHAP. IX.

*Which treats of many rare successes befallen in the Inne.*

### CHAP. X.

*Wherein is prosecuted the Historie of the famous Princess Micomicona, with other delighfull Adventures.*

### CHAP. XI.

*Treating of the curious Discourse made by Don-Quixote, upon the exercise of Armes and Letters.*

### CHAP. XII.

*Wherein the Captaine counteth his life, and other accidents.*

### CHAP. XIII.

*Wherein is prosecuted the Historie of the Captaine.*

### CHAP. XIII.

*Wherein the Captaine yet continueth the pleasant narration of his life.*

### CHAP. XV.

*Which speaks of that which befell afterward in the Inne, and of sundry other things worthy of knowledge.*

### CHAP. XVI.

*Wherein is recounted the Historie of the Lackey, with other strange Adventures befallne in the Inne.*

### CHAP. XVII.

*Wherein are prosecuted the wonderfull Adventures of the Inne.*

### CHAP. XVIII.

*Wherein are decided the controuersies of Mambrino's Helmet, and the Asses Pannell, with other strange Adventures most doubtlesly befallne.*

### CHAP. XIX.

*In which is finished the notable Adventure of the Troupers, and the great ferocity of our good Knight Don-Quixote, and how he was enchanted.*

### CHAP.

---

## The Contents.

---

### CHAP. XX.

*Wherein is prosecuted the manner of Don-Quixotes enchantment, with other famous occurrences.*

### CHAP. XXI.

*Wherein the Canon continueth his Discourse upon Bookes of Chincerie, with many other things worthy of his note.*

### CHAP. XXII.

*Wherein is layd downe the very discreet Discourse that passed betweene Sancho Pança, and his Lord Don-Quixote.*

### CHAP. XXIII.

*Of the discreet contention passed betweene Don-Quixote, and the Canon, with other accidents.*

### CHAP. XXIIII.

*Relating that which the Goat-beard told to those that carryed away Don-Quixote.*

### CHAP. XXV.

*Of the falling out of Don-Quixote with the Goat-beard: with the Adventure of the Disciplinants, to which the Knight came end, although to his cost.*

---

The



# THE DELIGHTFVLL

Historie of the most Ingenious

Knight Don-Quixote of

the MANCHA.

*The first Part.*

## CHAP. I.

*Wherein is rehearsed the calling, and exercises of the renowned Gentleman Don-Quixote of the Mancha.*



Here lived not long since in a certaine village of the Mancha, the name whereof I purposely omit, a Gentleman of their calling that vsed to pile vp in their Halls old haunces, Halberds, Morions, and such other armour and weapons. He was besides master of an ancient Target, a Leage Stallion, and a swift Grey-hound. His pot consisted daily of somewhat



more Beefe then Mutton, a Galli-mawfry each night, Collops and egges on Saturdayes, Lentils on Fridayes, and now and then a leane Pigeon on Sundayes: did consume three parts of his rents: the rest and remaine thereof was spent on a Ierkin of fine Puke, a paire of Veluet hose, with Pantofles of the same for the Holy dayes, and one sute of the finest vesture; for therewithall he honoured and set out his person on the worke dayes. He had in his house a woman-servant of about some forty yeeres old, and a Neece not yet twenty, and a man that serued him both in field and at home, and could saddle his horse, and likewise manage a pruning hook. The Master himselfe was about fifty yeeres old, of a strong complexion, dry flesh, and a withered face; he was an early riser, and a great friend of hunting. Some asseme that his surname was *Quixada* or *Quesada* (for in this there is some variance among the authors that write his life) although it may be gathered by very probable coniectures, that he was called *Quixana*. Yet all this concerns our historiell relation but little; let it then suffice, that in the narration thereof we will not vary a iot from the truth.

You shall therefore wit, that this Gentleman about named, the spirits that he was idle (which was the longer part of the yeere) did apply himselfe wholly to the reading of bookes of Knight-hood, and that with such gulls and delights, as he almost wholly neglected the exercise of hunting, yea and the very administration of his household affaires: and his curiosity and folly came to that passe, that he made away many acres of arable land to buy him bookes of that kind; and therefore he brought to his house as many as euer he could get of that subject; and among them all, none pleased him better then those, which famous Felician of Silva composed. For the smoothnesse of his prose, with now and then some intricate sentence meddled, seemed to him poorelesse; and principally when he did reade the courtings or letters of challenge, that Knights

induced to what boldness and valour they sent

sent to Ladies, or one to another; where in many places he found written the reason of the vnreasonable, which against my reason is wrought, doth so weaken my reason, as with all reason I doe iustly complaine in your beauty. And also when he read The high Heauens, which with your diuinity doe dot fortifie you diuinely with the starrs, and make you deservresse of the defects that your Greatnesse deserues, &c. With these and other such passages the poore Gentleman grew distracted, and was breaking his braines day and night, to vnderstand and vnbowell their sense: An endlesse labour: for euen *Aristotle* himselfe would not vnderstand them, though he were againe resuscitated onely for that purpose. He did not like so much the vnproportionate blowes that *Don Belshazz* gaue and tooke in fight; for, as he imagined, were the Surgeons neuer so cunning that cured them, yet was it impossible but that the patient his face and all his body must remaine full of scars, and tokens: yet did he praise notwithstanding in the authour of that History, the conclusion of his booke, with the promise of the endlesse aduenture, and many times he himselfe had a desire to take pen and finish it exactly as it is there promised; and would doubtlesly haue performed it, and that certes with happy successe, if other more vrgent and continuall thoughts had not disturbed him.

Many times did he fall at variance with the Curate of his village (who was a learned man, graduated in *Ciuenca*) touching who was the better Knight, *Palmerin* of England, or *Amadis de Gaule*: but Master *Nicholas* the Barber of the same towne would affirme, that none of both arrived in worth to the Knight of the Sun; and if any one Knight might paragon with him, it was infallibly *Don Galan*: *Amadis de Gaule* brother, whose nature might fely be accommodated to any thing; for he was not so coy and whyning a Knight as his brother, and that in matters of valour, he did not bate him an ace.

In resolution, he plunged himselfe so deeply in his reading of these bookes, as he spent many times in the Lecture of them whole dayes and nights; and in the end, through his little sleepe and much reading, he dryed vp his braines in such sort, as he lost wholly his iudgement. His fantasie was filled with those things that he read, of enchantments, quarrels, battels, challenges, wounds, wooings, loues, tempests, and other impossible follies. And these toyes did so firmly possesse his imagination with an infallible opinion, that all that Machina of dreamed inuentions which he read was true, as he accounted no History in the world to be so certaine and sincere as they were. He was wont to say that the *Cid Ruydiaz* was a very good Knight, but not to be compared to the Knight of the burning sword, which with one thwart blow cut asunder two fierce and mighty Gyants. He agreed better with *Bernardo del Carpio*, because he slew the enchanted *Roseland* in *Roncesuales*. He likewise liked of the shift *Hercules* vsed when he smothered *Anteon* the sonne of the earth betweene his armes. He praised the Gyant *Morgant* maruellously, because, though he was of that monstrous progenie, who are commonly all of them proude and rude, yet he onely was affable and courteous. But he agreed best of all with *Reinauld* of *Mount Alban*; and moit of all then, when he saw him sallie out of his Castle to rob as many as euer he could meete: and when moreouer he robd the Idoll of *Mahomet* made all of gold, as his History recounts, & would be content to giue his old woman: yea and his Neece also, for a good oportunity on the traytor *Galalon*, that he might lamb-skin and trample him into powder.

Finally, his wit being wholly extinguished; he fell into one of the strangest conceits that euer mad-man stumbled on in this world, to wit, it seemed vnto him very requisite and behououfull, as well for the augmentation of his honours, as also for the benefite of the Common-wealth, that he himselfe should become a Knight Etrant, and goe thorow-

\* A famous  
Captaine of the  
Spanish nation.

throughout the world, with his horse and armour to seeke Adventures, and practise in person all that he had read was vsed by Knights of yoare; reuenging of all kinds of injuries, and offering himselfe to occasions and dangers: which being once happily atchieued, might gaine him eternall renowne. The poore soule did already figure himselfe crowned, through the valour of his arme, at least Emperour of *Trapefonda*; and ledde thus by these soothing thoughts, and borne away with the exceeding delight he found in them, he hastened all that he might, to effect his vrging desires.

And first of all he caused certaine old rusty armes to be scoured, that belonged to his great Grand-father, and lay many ages neglected, and forgotten in a by-corner of his house; he trimmed them and dressed them the best he mought, and then perceiued a great defect they had; for they wanted an helmet, and had only a plaine morrion: but he by his industry supplied that want, and framed with certaine papers pasted together, a Beauer for his Morrion. True it is, that to make tryall whether his pasted Beauer was strong enough, and might abide the aduenture of a blow, he out with his sword, and gaue it a blow or two, and with the very first, did quite vndoe his whole weekes labour: the facility wherewithall it was dissolued liked him nothing; wherefore to assure himselfe better the next time from the like danger, he made it anew, placing certaine yron barres within it, in so artificiall manner, as he rested at once satisfied, both with his inuention, and also the solidity of the worke; and without making a second tryall, he deputed and held it in estimation of a most excellent Beauer. Then did he presently visit his horse, who though he had more quarters then pence in a sixpence through lea-venesse, and more faults then *Gonellai*, hauing nothing on him but skin and bone; yet he thought that neither *Alexanders Bucephalus*, nor the *Cid* his horse *Bahica*, were in any respect equall to him. He spent foure

A horse of labor  
or carriage, in  
Spanish is called  
Rozin, and the  
word Ante, sig-  
nifies Before:  
so that Rozin-  
nante is a horse  
that sometime  
was of carriage.

dayes deuising him a name: for (as he reasoned to himselfe) it was not fit that so famous a Knights horse, and chiefly being so good a beast, should want a knowne name; and therefore he endeououred to giue him such a one, as should both declare what sometime he had beene, before he pertained to a Knight Brrant, and also what at present he was: for it stood greatly with reason, seeing his Lord and Master changed his estate and vocation, that he should alter likewise his denomination, and get a new one, that were famous and aluisonant, as becommeth the new order and exercise which he now professed: and therefore after many other names which he framed, blotted out, reiected, added, vndid, and turned againe to frame in his memory and imagination, he finally concluded to name him *Rozinante*, a name in his opinion, lofty, full, and significant, of what he had beene when he was a plaine Iade, before he was exalted to his new dignity; being as he thought, the best carriage beast of the world. The name being thus giuen to his horse, and so to his minde, he resolved to giue himselfe a name also, and in that thought he laboured other eight dayes; and in conclusion, called himselfe *Don-Quixote*; whence (as is said) the Authors of this most true History deduce, that he was vndoubtedly named *Quixada*, and not *Quesada* as others would haue it. And remembering that the valorous *Amadis* was not satisfied onely with the dry name of *Amadis*, but added thereunto the name of his Kingdome and Country, to render his owne more redoubted, terming himselfe *Amadis de Gaula*; so he, like a good Knight would adde to his owne, that also of his Prouince, and call himselfe *Don-Quixote* of the *Mancha*, wherewith it appeared, that he very liuely declared his linage and countrey, which he did honor, by taking it for his surname.

His armour being scowred, his morrion transformed into an helmet, his horse named, and himselfe confirmed with a new name also; he forthwith bethought himselfe that now he wanted nothing but a Lady, on whom he might be-

flow



stow his seruice and affection; for the Knight Errant that is loucesse, resembles a tree that wants leaues and fruit, or a body without a soule: and therefore he was wont to say, If I should for my sinnes, or by good hap encounter there abroad with some Gyant (as Knights Errant doe ordinarily) and that I should ouerthrow him with one blow to the ground, or cut him with a stroke in two halues, or finally ouercome, and make him yeeld to me, would it not be very expedient to haue some Lady, to whom I might present him? And that he entring in her presence do kneele before my sweet Lady, and say vnto her with an humble and submissiue voyce: Madam! I am the Gyant *Caraculiambro*, Lord of the Iland called *Malindrania*, whom the neuer-too-much-praysed Knight *Don-Quixote de la Mancha* hath ouercome in single comba; and hath commanded to present my selfe to your greatnesse, that it may please your Highnesse to dispose of me according vnto your liking. O! how glad was our Knight when he had made this discourse to himselfe; but chiefly when he had found out one, whom he might call his Lady. For, as it is imagined there dwelled in the next village vnto his Maniour, a yong handsome wench, with whom he was sometime in loue, although as is vnderstood, she neuer knew or tooke notice thereof. Shee was called *Aldonsa Lorenzo*, and her hee thought fittest to intitle with the name of Lady of his thoughts, and searching a name for her that should not vary much from her owne, and yet should draw and auere somewhat to that of a Princeesse or great Lady, he called her *Dulcinea del Toboso* (for there she was borne) a name in his conceit harmonious, strange and significant, like to all the others that he had giuen to his things.



## C H A P. II.

*Of the first sally that Don-Quixote made to  
seek adventures.*

**T**Hings being thus ordered, he would deferre the execution of his designs no longer, being spur'd on the more vehemently, by the want which he esteemed, his delays wrought in the world, according to the wrongs that he resolved to right, the harmes he meant to redresse, the excesses he would amend, the abuses that he would better, and the debts he would satisfy. And therefore without acquainting any living creature with his intention, he wiseene of any, vpon a certaine morning, somewhat before the day (being one of the warmest of Iuly) armed himselfe *Cap a pie*, mounted on *Rocinante*, laced on his ill-contrived Helmet, imbraced his Target, tooke his Launce, and by a postern doore of his basement issued out to the field, marueilous iocund and content to see with what facility he had commenced his good desires. But scarce had he sallied to the fields, when he was suddenly assaulted by a terrible thought, and such a one as did wel-nigh ouerthrow his former good purposes; which was, he remembered that he was not yet dub'd Knight, and therefore by the lawes of Knighthood neither could nor ought to combat with any Knight. And though he were one, yet ought hee to weare white armour like a new Knight, without any deuce in his shield, vntill he did win it by force of armes.

These thoughts did make him stagger in his purposes; but his follies preuayling more then any other reason, he purposed to cause himselfe to be Knighted by the first he met, to the imitation of many others, that did the same, as he had read in the bookes which distracted him. As touching white armour, he resolved with the first opportunity

to scoure his own so well, that they should rest whiter then Ermines; and thus he pacified his mind, and prosecuted his journey, without chusing any other way then that which his horse pleased, beleeuing that therein consisted the vigor of Knightly aduentures. Our burnisht Aduenturer traueling thus onward, did parle with himselfe in this manner: "Who doubts in the ensuing ages, when the true History of my famous actes shall come to light, but that the wiseman who shal write it, will begin it, when he comes to declare this my first sally so early in the morning, after this manner? Scarce had the ruddy Apollo spread over the face of the vast and spacious earth, the golden twists of his beautifull hayres, and scarce had the little enameld birds with their naked tongues saluted with sweet and mellifluous harmony, the arrinall of Rosie Aurora; when abandoning her iealous husbands soft couch, shee shewes her selfe to mortall wights thorow the gates and windowes of the Manchegall Orizon. When the famous Knight Don Quixote of the Mancha, abandoning the slouthfull plumes, did mount vpon his renowned horse *Rozinante*, and began to trauell thorow the ancient and knowne fields of *Montiel*, (as indeede he did) and following still on with his Discourse, he said: O! happy the age, and fortunate the time, wherein my famous feats shall be reuealed, feats worthy to be grauen in brasse, carued in marble, & deliuered with most curious Art in tables, for a future instruction and memory. And, thou wise enchanter, whosoever thou beest, whora it shall concerne to be the Chronicler of this strange History, I desire thee not to forget my good horse *Rozinante*, mine eternall and inseparable companion in all my iournies and courses. And then as if he were verily enamoured, he said, O Princessse *Dulcinea*, Lady of this captiue heart, much wrong hast thou done me by dismissing me, and reproching me with the rigorous decree and commandement not to appeare before thy beauty: I pray thee, sweete Lady, deigue to  
"remem-

“remember thee of this poore subiected heart, that for thy  
“loue suffers so many tortures. And with these words he  
inserted a thousand other rauings, all after the very same  
manner that his bookes taught him, imitating as neere as he  
could their very phrase and language, and did ride there-  
withall so slow a pace, and the Sunne did mount so swiftly,  
and with so great heate, as it was sufficient to melt his  
braines if he had had any left.

He trauelled almost all that day, without encountering a-  
ny thing worthy the recitall, which made him to fret for  
anger: for he desired to encounter presently some one vpon  
whom he might make triall of his inuincible strength. Some  
authors write, that his first aduenture was that of the *Lapi-  
cean* straites, others, that of the Winde-mills; but what I  
could only find out in this affaire, and that which I haue  
found written in the *Annals* of the *Mancha* is, that he tra-  
uelled all that day long, and at night both he and his horse  
were tyred, and marueilously prest by hunger, and looking  
about him on euery side, to see whether he could discouer  
any Castle or Sheepe-fold, wherein he might retire himselfe  
for that night, and remedy his wants; he perceiued an Inne,  
neere vnto the high way wherein he trauelled; which was  
as welcome a sight to him, as if he had seene a starre, that  
did addresse him to the porch, if not to the Palace of his  
redemption. Then spurting his horse, he hyed all he might  
towards it, and arriued much about night fall. There stood  
by chance at the Inne dore, two yong women aduenturers  
likewise, which trauelled toward *Sinill* with certaine Car-  
riers, and did by chance take vp their lodging in that Inne  
the same euening; and for as much as our Knight Errant e-  
steemed all which he thought, saw, or imagined, was done  
or did really passe in the very same forme, as he had read  
the like in his bookes; forthwith as soone as he espied the  
Vent, he fained to himselfe that it was a Castle with foure  
Turrets, whereof the Pinacles were of glistering siluer, with-  
out omitting the draw-bridge, deepe fosse, and other adhe-  
rents

rents belonging to the like places: And approaching by little and little to the Vent, when he drew neere to it, checking *Roxinante* with the bridle, he rested a while to see whether any dwarfe would mount on the battlements to giue warning with the sound of a Trumpet, how some Knight did approch the Castle: but seeing they staid so long, and also that *Roxinante* kept a coile to goe to his stable, he went to the Inne doore, and there beheld the two loose Baggages, that stood at it, whom he presently supposed to be two beautifull damzels or louely Ladies, that did solace themselves before the Castle gates. And in this space it befell by chance, that a certaine Swine-herd as he gathered together his hogges, blew the horne, whereat they are wont to come together; and instantly *Don-Quixote* imagined it was what he desired, to wit, some dwarfe who gaue notice of his arriual; and therefore with marueilous satisfaction of minde he approached to the Inne and Ladies; who beholding one armed in that manner to draw so neere, with his Launce and Target, they made much haste being greatly affrighted, to get to their lodging. But *Don Quixote* perceiuing their feare by their flight, lifting vp his pasted Beauer, and discouering his withered and dusty countenance, did accost them with gentle demeanour and graue words in this manner: Let not your Ladiships flie, nor feare any outrage, for to the order of Knighthood which I doe profess, it toucheth nor appertaineth not to wrong any body, and least of all such worthy damzels as your presences denote you to be. The wenches looked on him very earnestly, and did search with their eies for the visage, which his ill-fashioned Beauer did conceale: but when they heard themselves termed damzels, a thing so far from their profession, they could not containe their laughter, which was so loude, as *Don-Quixote* waxed ashamed thereat, and therefore said to them: Modesty is a comely ornament of the beautifull, and the excessiue laughter that springs from a light occasion, must be reputed great folly:

“folly : but I do not obieſt this vnto you to make you the  
 “more aſhamed, or that you ſhould take it in ill part : for  
 “my deſire is none other then to doe you all the honor and  
 “ſeruiſe I may. This he ſpake vnto them in ſuch vncouth  
 words, as they could not vnderſtand him, which was an oc-  
 caſion, ioyned with his owne vncomelines, to increaſe their  
 laughter and his wrath, which would haue paſt the bounds  
 of reaſon, if the Inne-keeper had not come out at the in-  
 ſtant ; being a man who by reaſon of his exceeding fatnes,  
 muſt needs haue bene of a very peaceable condition, who  
 beholding that counterfeit figure, all armed in ſo vnſutable  
 armour, as were his Bridle, Lance, Target, and Corſlet, was  
 very neere to haue kept the damzels company in the plea-  
 ſant ſhowes of his merriment : but fearing in effect the  
*Machina* and bulke contriued of ſo various furnitures, he  
 determined to ſpeake him fairely, and therefore began to  
 him in this manner: If your Worſhip (Sir Knight) doe ſeek  
 for lodging, you may chalke your ſelfe a bed (for there is  
 none in this Inne) wherein you ſhall finde all other things  
 in abundance. *Don-Quixote* noting the lowlineſſe of the  
 Conſtable of that Fortreſſe (for ſuch the Inne and In-kee-  
 per ſeemed vnto him) answered, Any thing, ſir \* Conſtable,  
 may ſerue me ; for mine armes are mine ornaments, and  
 battels mine eaſe, &c. The Oaſt thought he had called  
 him a *Caſtellano* or Conſtable, becauſe hee eſteemed him  
 to be one of the ſincere and honeſt men of Caſtile, where-  
 as he was indeede an *Andaluſian*, and of the Commarke  
 of *S. Lucars*, no leſſe thieuiſh then *Cacus*, nor leſſe malici-  
 ous and crafty then a ſtudent or Page ; and therefore he  
 answered him thus : If that be ſo, your bed muſt be hard  
 rockes, and your ſleepe a perpetuall watching : and being  
 ſuch, you may boldly alight, and ſhall finde certainly  
 here occaſion and oportunitie to hold you waking this  
 twelue-moneth more, for one night : and ſaying ſo, laid  
 hand on *Don-Quixotes* ſtirrop, who did forthwith alight,  
 though it was with great difficulty and paine (as one that  
 had

\* Here the Spaniſh is *Caſtellano*, that is in the Spaniſh tongue either a Conſtable of a Caſtle, or one borne in Caſtile.

had not eaten all that day one crumme) and then he requested the Oast to haue speciall care of his horse, saying, He was one of the best pieces that euer eate bread. The Innkeeper viewed and reuiewed him, to whom he did not seeme halfe so good as *Don-Quixote* valued him; and setting him vp in the stable, he turned to see what his Ghest would command, who was a disarming by both the damzels (which were by this time reconciled to him) who, though they had taken off his brest-plate and backe parts, yet knew they not how, nor could any wise vndo his Gorget, nor take off his counterseit Beauer, which he had fastened on with greene Ribbands: and by reason the knots were so intricate, it was requisite they should be cut, whereunto he would not in any wise agree; and therefore remained all the night with his Helmet on, and was the strangest and pleasantest figure thereby, that one might behold. And as he was a disarming (imagining those light wenches that holpe him, to be certaine principall Ladies and Dames of that Castle) he said vnto them with a very good grace, Neuer was any Knight so well attended on, and serued by Ladies as was *Don-Quixote*; when he departed from his village, damzels attended on him, and Princesses on his horse. O *Rozinante*, for (Ladies) that is the name of my horse, and *Don-Quixote de la Mancha* is mine owne. For although I meant at the first not to haue discovered my selfe, vnill the acts done in your seruice and benefite should manifest me, yet the necessity of accommodating to our present purpose, the old Romaunce of Sir *Lancelot*, hath been an occasion that you should know my name before the right season: but the time will come wherein your Ladiships may command me, and I obey, and then the valor of mine arme shall discover the desire I haue to doe you seruice.

The wenches being vnaccustomed to heare so Rhetoricall termes, answered neuer a word to him, but onely demanded whether he would eate any thing? That I would, replied



replied *Don-Quixote*, for as much as I thinke the taking of a little meat would be very behooeufull for me. It chanced by hap to be on Friday, and therefore there was no other meat in the Inne, then a few pieces of a fish called in Castile *Abadexo*, in Andalusia, *Bacallao*, and in some places *Curadillo*, and in others *Truchuela*, and is but poore-Iohn. They demanded of him therefore whether he would eate thereof, giuing it the name vsed in that place of *Truchuela* or little Trout, for there was no other fish in all the Inne to present vnto him but such? Why then (quoth *Don-Quixote*) bring it in; for if there be many little Trouts, they may serue me in stead of a great one; it being all one to me to be paid my money (if I were to receiue any) in eight single Reals, or to be paid the same in one Reall of eight. And moreouer those little Trouts are perhaps like vnto Veale, which is much more delicate flesh then Beefe; or the Kid, which is better then the Goat: but be it what it list, let it be brought in presently; for the labour & weight of armes cannot be well borne, without the well supplying of the guts. Then was there straight laid a table at the Inne doore; that he mought take the aire: and the Oast brought him a portion of euill-watered; and worse boyled poore-Iohn, and a loafe as black and hoary as his Harnesser but the onely sport was to behold him eat; for by reason his Helmet was on, & his Beauer lifted, he could put nothing into his mouth himselfe, if others did not helpe him to finde the way; and therefore one of those Ladies serued his turne in that: but it was altogether impossible to giue him drinke after that manner, and would haue remayned so for euer, if the In-keeper had not bored a Cane, and setting the one end in his mouth, powred downe the wine at the other: all which he suffered most patiently, because he would not breake the Ribbans of his Helmet. And as he sat at supper, there attiued by chance a Sow-gelder, who as soone as he came to the Inne, did sound foure or fives times a whistle of Canes, the which did consume *Don-Quixote*,

*Quixote*, that he was in some famous Castle, where he was served with musicke, and that the poore-Iohn was Trouts, the bread of the finest flower, the whores, Ladies, and the In-keeper, Constable of that Castle: Wherefore he accounted his resolution and departure from his owne house very well imployed. But that which did most afflict him, was, that he was not yet dubbed Knight, for as much as he was fully perswaded, that he could not lawfully enterprise or follow any adventure, vntill he receiued the order of Knight-hood.

CHAP. III.  
Wherein is recounted, the pleasant manner observed in the  
Knighting of Don-Quixote.

**A**ND being thus tossed in minde, he made a short beggetly supper; which being finished; he called for his horse, and shutting the Stable doore very fast, he laid himselfe down vpon his knees in it before him, saying, I will neuer rise from the place where I am valorous Knight, vntill your courtesie shal grant vnto me a boone that I meane to demand of you, the which will redound vnto your renouue, and also to the profite of all humane kinde. The In-keeper seeing his ghest at his feete, and hearing him speake those words, remained confounded beholding him, not knowing what he might doe or say, and did studie and labour to make him arise: but all was in vaine, vntill he must haue promised vnto him, that he would grant him any gift that he sought at his hands. I did neuer expect lesse (replied *Don-Quixote*) from your great magnificence, my Lord: and therefore I say vnto you, that the boone which I demand of you, and that hath beene granted vnto me by your liberality, is, that to morrow in the morning you will dubbe me Knight, and this night I will watch mine armour in the Chappell of your

your Castle, and in the morning, as I haue said, the rest of my desires shall be accomplished, that I may goe in due manner thorowout the foure parts of the world to seeke aduentures, to the benefit of the needy, as is the duty of Knight-hood and of Knights Errant, as I am, whose desires are wholly inclined and dedicated to such atchieuements. The Oast, who, as we noted before, was a great giber, and had before gathered some arguments of the defect of wit in his ghest; did wholly now perswade himselfe that his suspicions were true, when he heard him speake in that manner: and that he might haue an occasion of laughter, he resolved to feed his humour that night, and therefore answered him, that he had very great reason in that which he desired and sought, and that such proiects were proper and naturall to Knights of the garbe and worth he seemed to be of: and that he himselfe likewise in his youthfull yeeres had followed that honourable exercise, going thorow diuers parts of the world to seeke aduentures, without either omitting the \* dangets of Malaga, the Isles of Riaran, the compasse of Siuill, the \* Quicke-siluer-house of Segouia, the Oliue-field of Valencia, the Circuit of Granada, the wharfe of S. Lucor, the \* Potro or Cowls of Cordoua, and the little Tauernes of Toledo; and many other places, wherein he practised the dexterity of his hands, doing many wrongs, solliciting many widdowes, yndoing certaine maidens, and deceiuing many pupils, and finally making himselfe knowne and famous in all the Tribunals and Courts almost of all Spaine, and that at last he had retired himselfe to that his Castle, where he was sustained with his owne and other mens goods; entertayning in it all Knights Errant, of whatsoeuer quality and condition they were, onely for the great affection he bore towards them, and to the end they might diuide with him part of their winnings in recompence of his good will: he added besides, that there was no Chappell in his Castle, wherein he might watch his armes, for he had broken it downe to build it vp anew: but  
notwith

\* Percheles.

\* Arguciso.

\* The Patron of Cordoua is a certaine fountaine whereon stands a Pegasus: & to that fountaine resort a number of cunning-catching fellows, as to Duke Humfrey at Paula.

notwithstanding he knew very well, that in a case of necessity, they might lawfully be watched in any other place, and therefore he might watch them that night in the base Court of the Castle; for in the morning, and pleased God, the ceremonies requisite should be done in such sort, as he should remaine a dubbed Knight, in so good fashion, as in all the world he could not be bettered. He demanded of *Don-Quixote* whether he had any money? Who answered that he had not a blanck, for he had neuer read in any History of Knights Errants; that any one of them euer carried any money. To this his Oast replied, that he was deceiued; for admit that Histories made no mention thereof, because the Authors of them deemed it not necessary to expresse a thing so manifest, and needfull to be carried as was money and cleane shirts: it was not therefore to be credited, that they had none; and therefore he should hold for most certaine and manifest, that all the Knights Errant, with the story of whose acts so many bookes are replenished and heaped, had their purses well lined for that which might befall; and did moreouer carry with them a little Casket of oynments and salues, to cure the wounds which they receiued; for they had not the commodity of a Surgeon to cure them, euery time that they fought abroad in the fields and desarts, if they had not by chaunce some wise Enchanter to their friend, who would presently succour them, bringing vnto them in some cloud thorow the ayre some damzell or dwarfe, with a Violl of water of so great vertue, as tasting one drop thereof, they remained as whole of their sores and wounds, as if they had neuer receiued any. But when they had not that benefite, the Knights of times past held it for a very commendable and secure course, that their Squires should be prouided of money and other necessary things, as lint, and oynments for to cure themselves: and when it befell that the like Knights had no Squires to attend vpon them (which hapned but very seldom) then would they themselves carrie all this prouision

C

behind

hind them on their horses, in some slight and subtill wallets, which could scarce be perceiued, as a thing of very great consequence. For if it were not vpon such an occasion, the carriage of wallets was not very tolerable among Knights Errant. And in this respect he did aduise him, seeing he might yet command him as one that by receiuing the order of Knight-hood at his hands, should very shortly become his God-childe, that he should not trauell from thence forward without money, and other the preuentions he had then giuen vnto him; and he should perceiue himselfe how behououfull they would proue vnto him, when he least expected it.

*Don-Quixote* promised to accomplish all that he had counsell'd him to doe, with all punctuality; and so order was forthwith giuen how he should watch his armes in a great yard that lay neere vnto one side of the Inne: wherefore *Don-Quixote* gathering all his armes together, laid them on a Cisterne that stood neere vnto a Well: and buckling on his Target, he laid hold on his Launce and walked vp and downe before the Cisterne very demurely; and when he began to walke, the night likewise began to looke vp the splendor of the day. The Inne-keeper in the meane season recounted to all the rest that lodged in the Inne the folly of his ghest, the watching of his armes, and the Knighthood which he expected to receiue. They all admired very much at so strange a kinde of folly, and went out to behold him from a farre off, and saw that sometimes he pranced to and fro with a quiet gesture; other times leaning vpon his Launce he looked vpon his armour, without beholding any other thing saue his armes for a good space.

The night being shut vp at last wholly, but with such cleerenesse of the Moone, as it might well compare with his brightnesse that lent her her splendor, euery thing which our new Knight did, was easily perceiued by all the beholders. In this season one of the Carriers that lodged in the Inne,

Inne, resolved to water his Mules, and for that purpose it was necessary to remooue *Don-Quixotes* armour that lay on the Cisterne; who seeing him approach, said vnto him with a loude voice: O thou! whosoeuer thou beest, bold Knight, that comest to touch the armour of the most valorous Aduenturer that euer girded sword, looke wel what thou dost, and touch them not, if thou meanest not to leaue thy life in payment of thy presumption. The Carrier made no account of those words (but it were better he had, for it would haue redounded to his benefite) but rather laying hold on the leatherings, threw the armour a prettie way off from him; which being perceiued by *Don-Quixote*, he lifted vp his eyes towards heauen, & addressing his thoughts " (as it seemed) to his Lady *Dulcinea* he said, Assist me, " deare Lady, in this first dangerous affront and Aduenture offered to this brest, that is intralld to thee, and " let not thy fauour and protection faile me in this my first " Trance. And vttering these and other such words, he let slip his Target, and lifting vp his Launce with both hands, he paid the Carrier so round a knocke therewithall on the pate, as he ouerthrew him to the ground in so euill taking, as if he had seconded it with another, he should not haue needed any Surgeon to cure him. This done, he gathered vp his armour againe, and laying them where they had bin before, he walked after vp and downe by them, with as much quietnesse as he did at the first.

But very soone after, another Carrier without knowing what had hapned (for his companion lay yet in a trance on the ground) came also to giue his Mules water, and coming to take away the armes, that he might free the Cisterne of encumbrances, and take water the easier: *Don-Quixote* saying nothing, nor imploring fauour of his Mistris or any other, let slip againe his Target, & lifting his Lance, without breaking of it in pieces, made more then three on the second Carriers noddle; for he broke it in foure places. All the people of the Inne, & amongst the the Oast likewise



repaired at this time to the noise: which *Don-Quixote* perceiving, imbracing his Target, and laying hand on his sword, he said, O Lady of all beauty, courage, and vigour of my weakned heart, it is now high time that thou doe convert the eyes of thy greatnesse to this thy captiue Knight, who doth expect so marueilous great an Adventure. Saying thus, he recovered as he thought so great courage, that if all the Carriers of the world had assailed him, he would not goe one step backward. The wounded mens fellowes, seeing them so euill dight, from a farre off began to raine stones on *Don-Quixote*, who did defend himselfe the best he might with his Target, and durst not depart from the Cisterne, lest he should seeme to abandon his armes. The Inne-keeper cryed to them to let him alone; for he had already informed them that he was madde, and for such a one would scape Scot-free although he had slaine them all. *Don-Quixote* likewise cryed out lowder, terming them all disloyall men and traytors, and that the Lord of the Cattle was a treacherous and bad Knight, seeing he consented that Knights Errant should be so basely vied; and that if he had not yet receiued the order of Knight-hood, he would make him vnderstand his treason, but of you base and rascally Kenell (quoth he) I make no reckoning at all: throw at me, approach, draw neere, and doe me all the hurt you may, for you shall ere long perceiue the reward you shall carry for this your madnes & outrage. Which words he spoke with so great spirit & boldnesse, as he strooke a terrible feare into all those that assailed him: and therefore moued both by it, and the Inne-keepers perswasions, they left off throwing stones at him, and he permitted them to carry away the wounded men, and returned to the guard of his armes, with as great quietnesse and grauity, as he did at the beginning.

The Inne-keeper did not like very much these tricks of his ghest, and therefore he determined to abbreuiate, and giue him the vnsfortunate order of Knighthood forthwith, before

before some other disaſter beſell: and with this reſolution comming vnto him, he excuſed himſelfe of the inſolencies thoſe baſe fellowes had vſed to him, without his priuity or conſent, but their raſhneſſe, as he ſaid, remained well chaſtiſed: He added how he had already told vnto him, that there was no Chappel in his Caſtle, and that for what yet reſted vnperſected of their intention, it was not neceſſary, becauſe the chiefe point of remaining Knighted, conſiſted chiefly in blowes of the necke and ſhoulders, as he had read in the ceremoniall booke of the order, and that, that might be giuen in the very miſt of the fields; and that he had already accompliſhed the obligation of watching his armes, which with only two houres watch might be fulfilled; how much more after hauing watched foure, as he had done. All this *Don-Quixote* beleeued, and therefore answered, that he was moſt ready to obey him, and requeſted him to conlude with all the breuity poſſible: for if he ſaw himſelfe Knighted, and were once againe aſſaulted, he meant not to leaue one perſon aliue in all the Caſtle, except thoſe which the Conſtable ſhould command, whom he would ſpare for his ſake.

The Conſtable being thus aduertified, and fearefull that he would put this his deliberation in execution, brought out a booke preſently, wherein he was wont to write down the accounts of the ſtraw and Barley, which he deliuered from time to time, to ſuch Carriers as lodged in his Inne, for their beaſts: and with a but of a candle which a boy held lighted in his hand before him, accompanied by the two damzels aboue mentioned, he came to *Don-Quixote*, whom he commanded to kneele vpon his knees, and reading in his *Mannual* (as it ſeemed ſome deuout Orifon) he held vp his hand in the miſt of the Lecture, and gaue him a good blow on the neck, and after that gaue him another trimme thwacke ouer the ſhoulders with his owne ſword (alwayes murmuring ſomething betweene the teeth as if he prayed) this being done, he commanded one of the

Ladies to gyrd on his sword which shee did with a singular good grace and dexterity, which was much, the matter being of it selfe so ridiculous, as it wanted but little to make a man burst for laughter at euery passage of the Ceremonies: but the prowesse which they had already beheld in the new Knight, did limit and containe their delight at the gyrding on of his sword, the good Lady said, God make you a fortunate Knight, and giue you good successe in all your debates. *Don-Quixote* demanded then how she was called, that he might thence-forward know to whom he was so much obliged for the fauour receiued? And she answered with great buxomnes, that she was named *Tolosa*, and was a Botchers daughter of *Toledo*, that dwelt in *Sancho Benegas* Streete, and that she would euer honour him as her Lord. *Don-Quixote* replied, requesting her for his sake to call her selfe from thenceforth the Lady *Tolosa*, which she promised him to performe. The other Lady buckled on his spurre, with whom he had the very like conference; and asking her name, she told him she was called *Molinera*, and was daughter to an honest Miller of *Antequera*: here likewise our Knight intreated to call her selfe the Lady *Molinera*, proffering her new Seruices and fauours. The new and neuer-scene before Ceremonies being thus speedily finished, as it seemed with a gallop, *Don-Quixote* could not rest vntill he were mounted on horsebacke, that he might goe to seeke Aduentures; wherefore causing *Roxinante* to be instantly saddled, he leaped on him; and imbracing his Oast, he said vnto him such strange things, gratifying the fauour he had done him in dubbing him Knight, as it is impossible to hit vpon the manner of recounting them right. The Inne-keeper, that he might be quickly rid of him, did answer his words with others no lesse rethoricall, but was in his speech somewhat briefer; and without demanding of him any thing for his lodging, he suffered him to depart in a fortunate houre.

## C H A P. III.

Of that which befell to our Knight, after he had departed from the Inne.

**A**rra began to display her beauties about the time that *Don-Quixote* issued out of the Inne, so content, liuely, and iocund to behold himselfe Knighted, as his very horse-gyrts were ready to burst for ioy: but calling to memory the counsels that his Oast had giuen him, touching the most needfull implements that he was euer to carry about him, of money and cleane shirts, he determined to returne to his house, and to prouide himselfe of them, and also of a Squire; making account to entertaine a certaine labourer his neighbour, who was poore, and had children, but yet one very fit for this purpose, and Squirely function, belonging to Knight-hood. With this determination he turned *Roxinante* towards the way of his owne village, who knowing in a manner his will, began to trot on with so good a will, as he seemed not to touch the ground. He had not trauelled far, when he thought that he heard certaine weake and delicate cryes, like to those of one that complained, to issue out from the thickest of a wood that stood on the right hand. "And scarce had he heard them when he said, I render infinite thanks to heauen for the fauor it doth me, by proferring me so soone occasions, wherein I may accomplish the duty of my profession, and gather the fruits of my good desires: these complaints doubtlesly be, of some distressed man or woman, who needeth my fauor and ayde. Then turning the reines, he guided *Roxinante* towards the place from whence he thought the complaints sallied; and within a few paces, after he had entred into the thicket, he saw a Mare tyed vnto an *Holme Oake*, and to another was tyed a yong Youth all naked from the middle vpward of about the age of fifteene yeeres, and was he that cried so

pittifully: and not without cause; for a certaine Country-man of comely personage did whip him with a girdle, and accompanied euery blow with a reprehension and counsell, for he said, The tongue must peace, and the eyes be warrie: & the boy answered, I wil neuer do it again, good Master; for the passion of God, I will neuer do it againe. And I promise to haue more care of your things from henceforth.

But *Don-Quixote* viewing all that passed, said with an "angry voyce, Discourteous Knight, it is very vncomely  
"to see thee deale thus with one that cannot defend him-  
"selfe, mount therefore a horse-backe, & take thy Launce  
"(for the Farmer had also a Launce leaning to the very  
"same tree, whereunto his Mare was tyed) for I will make  
"thee know, that it is the vse of Cowards to doe that  
"which thou dost. The other beholding such an Anticke  
to houer ouer him, all laden with armes, and brandishing of  
his Launce towards his face, made full account that he  
should be slaine, and therefore he answered with very milde  
and submissiue words, saying, Sir Knight, the boy which I  
chastise, is mine owne seruant, and keepeth for me a flocke  
of sheepe in this Commarke; who is growne so negligent,  
as he loseth one of them euery other day, and because I  
correct him for his carelesnesse and knauery, he sayes I doe  
it through couetousnesse and pinching, as meaning to de-  
fraud him of his wages; but before God and in conscience  
"he belies me. What? The lie, in my presence Rascally  
"clowne? Quoth *Don-Quixote*, By the Sunne that shines  
"on vs, I am about to runne thee thorow and thorow  
"with my Launce base Carle; pay him instantly without  
"more replying, or else by that God which doth manage  
"our sublunary affaires, I will conclude thee and annihi-  
"late thee in a moment; loose him forthwith. The Coun-  
trei-man hanging downe of his head, made no reply, but  
loosed his seruant; of whom *Don-Quixote* demanded how  
much did his Master owe vnto him? He said, Nine moneths  
hire, at seuen Reals a moneth. *Don-Quixote* made then the  
account,

account, and found that all amounted to 61. Reals, & therefore commaunded the Farmer to pay the money presently, if he meained not to die for it. The fearefull Countrey-man answered, that by the trance wherein he was then, and by the oath he had made (which was none at all, for he swore not) that he ought not so much: for there should be deducted out of the accounts three paire of shooes he had giuen vnto him, and a Reall for twice letting him blood, being sicke. All is well, quoth *Don-Quixote*: but let the price of the shooes and letting bloud, goe for the blowes which thou hast giuen him without any desert; for if he haue broken the leather of those shooes thou hast bestowd on him, thou hast likewise torne the skinne of his body; and if the Barber tooke away his blood being sicke, thou hast taken it out, he being in health; so as in that respect he owes thee nothing. The damage is, Sir Knight, replied the boyes Master, that I haue no money here about me. Let *Andrew* come with me to my house, and I will pay him his wages, one Reall vpon another. I goe with him (quoth the boy?) Euill befall me then. No Sir, I neuer meant it; for as soone as euer he were alone, he woud slay me like *S. Bartholomew*. He will not dare to doe it, quoth *Don-Quixote*, for my command is sufficient to make him respect me; and so that he will sweare to me to obserue it by the order of Knighthood which he hath receiued, I will let him free, and assure thee of the payment. Good Sir, quoth the youth, marke well what you say, for this man my Master is no Knight, nor did euer receiue any order of Knighthood; for he is *Iohn Haldudo* the rich man, a dweller of *Quintanar*. That makes no matter, quoth *Don-Quixote*, for there may be Knights of the *Haldudos*: and what is more, euery one is sonne of his workes. That's true, quoth *Andrew*, but of what workes can this my Master be sonne, seeing he denies me my wages, and my sweare and labour? I doe not denie thy wages, friend *Andrew*, quoth his Master; doe me but the pleasure to come with me, and I sweare by all the orders



orders of Knighthood that are in the world, to pay thee as I haue said, one Reall vpon another, yea and those also perfumed. For the perfuming I thanke thee, quoth *Don-Quixote*, giue it him in Reals, and with that I will rest satisfied; and see that thou fulfillst it as thou hast sworne: if not, I sweare againe to thee by the same oath, to returne & search thee, and chastise thee, and I will finde thee out, though thou didst hide thy selfe better then a *Lizard*: and if thou desirest to note who commands thee this, that thou mayest remaine more firmly obliged to accomplish it, know that I am the valorous *Don-Quixote* of the *Mancha*, the righter of wrongs, and vndoer of iniuries, and so farewell: and doe not forget what thou hast promised and sworne on paine of the paines already pronounced. And saying these words, he spurred *Rozinante*, and in short space was got farre off from them. The Countrey-man pursued him with his eye, and perceiuing that he was past the wood and quite out of sight, he returned to his man *Andrew*, & said to him, Come to me, child, for I will pay thee what I owe thee, as that righter of wrongs hath left me commanded. That I sweare, quoth *Andrew*, and you shall deale discretely in fulfilling that good Knights commandement, who I pray God may liue a thousand yeeres: for seeing he is so valorous and so iust a Iudge, I sweare by *Rocque*, that if you pay me not, he shall returne and execute what he promised. I also doe sweare the same, quoth the Farmer, but in respect of the great affection I beare vnto thee, I will augment the debt, to increase the payment; and catching the Youth by the arme, he tied him againe to the Oake, where he gaue him so many stripes as he left him for dead. Call now, Master *Andrew* (quoth he) for the righter of wrongs, and thou shalt see that he cannot vndoe this, although I beleeuie it is not yet ended to be done. For I haue yet a desire to slay thee aliue, as thou didst thy selfe feare. Notwithstanding all these threats, he vntied him at last, and gaue him leaue to goe.

goe seeke out his Iudge; to the end he might execute the sentence pronounced. *Andrew* departed somewhat discontent, swearing to search for the valorous *Don-Quixote* of the *Mancha*, and recount vnto him word for word, all that had past, and that he should pay the abuse with vsury: but for all his threats he departed weeping, and his Master remained behind laughing; and in this manner the valorous *Don-Quixote* redressed that wrong.

Who glad about measure for his successe, accounting himselfe to haue giuen a most noble beginning to his feats of armes, did trauell towards his village, with very great satisfaction of himselfe, and said in a low tune these words "ensuing: Well maist thou call thy selfe happy about all  
"other women of the earth, O! about all beauties, beautiful *Dulcinea* of *Tobosa*, since thy good fortune was  
"such, to hold subiect and prostrate to thy will and desire  
"so valiant and renowned a Knight as is, and euer shal be,  
" *Don-Quixote* of the *Mancha*: who, as all the world  
"knowes, receiued the order of Knighthood but yesterday, and hath destroyed to day the greatest outrage and  
"wrong that want of reason could forme, or cruelty commit. To day did he take away the whip out of that pit-  
"tilese enemies hand, which did so cruelly scourge with-  
"out occasion the delicate Infant.

And now he came to a way which diuided it selfe into foure: and presently these thwarting crosse-ways represented themselves to his imagination, which oft-times held Knights Errant in suspence, which way they should take; and that he might imitate them, he stood still a while, and after he had bethought himselfe well, he let slip the reines to *Rozinante*, subiecting his will to that of his horse, who presently pursued his first designe, which was, to returne home vnto his owne stable: and hauing travelled some two miles, *Don-Quixote* discovered a great troope of people, who, as it was after knowne, were certaine Merchants of *Toledo*, that rode towards *Marcia* to buy silkes: they were

\* A thing made  
like a Canopy,  
and is used by  
Travellers to  
keepe away the  
Sunne.

were sixe in number, and came with their \* *Quitafoles* or shadowes of the Sunne, foure Seruing-men a horse-backe, and three Lackeyes. Scarce had *Don-Quixote* perceiued them, when he straight imagined them to be a new Adventure: and because he would imitate as much as was possible, the passages which he read in his bookes, he represented this to himselfe, to be iust such an Adventure as he purposed to atchieue. And so with comely gesture and hardinesse, settling himselfe well in the stirrops, he set his Lance into his rest, and imbraced his Target, and placing himselfe in the midst of the way, he stood awaiting when those Knights Errant should arriue; for now he iudged and tooke them for such: and when they were so neere as they might heare and see him, he lifted vp his voyce, and said; "Let all the world stand and passe no further, if all the world will not confesse, that there is not in all the world a more beautifull damzell then the Empreffe of the *Mancha*, the peerelesse *Dulcinea* of *Toboso*. The Merchants stayed at these words, to behold the maruellous and ridiculous shape of him that spake them, and by his fashion and them ioynd, did incontinently gather his folly and distraction, and notwithstanding would leisurely behold to what tended that confession which he exacted of them; and therefore one of them who was somewhat giuen to gibing, and was withall very discreete, said vnto him, Sir Knight, we doe not know that good Lady of whom you speake; shew her therefore to vs, and if she be so beautifull as you affirme, we will willingly and without any compulsion confesse the truth, which you now demand of vs. If I did shew her to you, replied *Don-Quixote*, what Mistris were it then for you to acknowledge a truth so notorious? The consequence of mine affaires consists in this, that without beholding her, you doe beleue, confesse, affirme, sweare and defend it; which if you refuse to performe, I challenge you all to battell, proud and vnreasonable folke, and whether you come one by one (as the order of Knight-

Knighthood requires) or all at once, as is the custome and dishonourable practice of men of your brood: here will I expect and awaite you all, trusting in the reason which I haue on my side. Sir Knight, replied the Merchant, I request you in all these Princes names, as many as we be here, that to the end we may not burden our consciences, confessing a thing which we neuer beheld nor heard, and chiefly being so preiudiciall to the Empreesses and Queenes of the Kingdomes of *Alcarria* and *Estremadura*, you will please to shew vs some portraiture of that Lady, although it be no bigger then a graine of Wheate; for by one thread we may iudge of the whole clew, and we will with this fauour rest secure and satisfied, and you likewise remaine content and appaid. And I doe belecue moreover that we are already so inclined to your side, that although her picture shewed her to be blind of the one eye, and that she ranne fire and brimstone at the other, yet we would notwithstanding, to please you, say in her fauour all that you listed. There drops not, base scoundrels, quoth *Don-Quixote*, all inflamed with choler; there drops not, I say, from her that which thou sayest, but *Amber* and *Cinnet* among bombase; and she is not blind of an eye, or crooked-backt, but is straighter then a spindle of *Guadarama*: but all of you together shall pay for the great blasphemy thou hast spoken against so immense a beautie, as is that of my Mistris. And saying so, he abased his Launce against him that had answered, with such furie and anger, as if good fortune had not so ordained it, that *Roxinante* should stumble, and fall in the midst of the Careere, it had gone very ill with the bold Merchant. *Roxinante* fell in fine, and his Master reeled ouer a good piece of the field: and though he attempted to arise, yet was he neuer able, he was so encumbred by his Launce, Target, Spurs, Helmet, and his weighty old armour. And in the meane while that he strived to arise and could not, he cried, Flie not, cowardly folke: abide, base people, abide; for I lie not here through mine.

mine owne fault, but through the defect of my horse.

One of the Lackeyes which came in the company, and seemed to be a man of none of the best intentions, hearing the poore ouerthrowne Knight speak such insolent words, could not forbear them, without returning him an answer on his tibbes: and with that intention approaching to him he tooke his Launce, and after he had broken it in pieces, he gaue *Don-Quixote* so many blowes with one of them, that in despite of his armour he threshed him like a sheafe of Wheate. His Masters cried to him, commanding him not to beate him so much, but that he should leaue him: but all would not serue, for the Youth was angry, and would not leaue off the play vntill he had auoyded the rest of his choler. And therefore running for the other pieces of the broken Launce, he broke them all on the miserable false Knight, who for all the tempest of blowes that rained on him, did neuer shut his mouth, but threatned heauen and earth, and those \* Murderers; for such they seemed to him. The Lackey tyred himselfe at last, and the Merchants followed on their way, carrying with them occasion enough of talke of the poore belaboured Knight: who when he saw himselfe alone, turned againe to make tryall whether he might arise; but if he could not doe it when he was whole and sound, how was it possible he being so bruised and almost destroyed? And yet he accounted himselfe very happy, perswading himselfe that his disgrace was proper and incident to Knights Errant, and did attribute all the fault to his horse, and could in no wise get vp, all his body was so \* bruised and loaden with blowes.

\* *Malandrines.*

\* *Brumado.*

## C H A P. V.

Wherein is prosecuted the former Narration of  
our Knights misfortunes.

**B**UT seeing in effect that he could not stir himselfe, he resolved to haue recourse to his ordinary remedy, which was, to thinke on some passage of his Histories, and in the instant his folly presented to his memory that of *Valdominos*, and the Marquesse of *Mantua*, then when *Carloso* had left him wounded in the mountaine. A Historie knowne by children, not hidden to yong men, much celebrated, yea, and belceued by many old men; and is yet for all that no more authentically, then are *Mahomet's* miracles. This History as it seemed to him, was most fit for the traunce wherein he was, and therefore he began with signes of great paine to tumble vp and downe, and pronounce with a languishing breath the same that they faine the wounded Knight to haue said in the wood:

*Where art thou Lady deere! that grieu'st not at my smart?  
Or thou dost it not know, or thou disloyall art.*

And after this manner he did prosecute the old song vntill these verses that say: O noble Marquesse of *Mantua*, my carnall Lord and Vnkle. And it befell by chance that at the very same time there past by the place where he lay a man of his owne village, who was his neighbour, and returned after hauing carried a load of wheate to the mill: who beholding a man stretched on the ground, he came ouer to him, and demanded what he was, and what was it that caused him to complaine so dolefully? *Don-Quixote* did verily belecue that it was his Vnkle the Marquesse of *Mantua*; and so gaue him no other answer, but only followed on in the repetition of his old Romaunce, wherein he gaue him account of his misfortune, and of the loue.



loue the Emperours sonne bore to his Spouse, all in the very same manner that the Ballad recounts it. The labourer remained much astonished, hearing those follies; and taking off his visor, which with the Lackeys blowes was broken all to pieces, he wiped his face that was full of dust; and scarce had he done it when he knew him, to whom he said, Master *Quixada*, (for so he was probably called when he had his wits, before he left the state of a staide Yeoman, to become a wandring Knight) who hath vsed you after this manner? But he continued his Romance, answering out of it, to euery question that was put to him. Which the good man perceiuing, disarmed him the best he could, to see whether he had any wound, but he could see no bloud, or any token on him of hurt. Afterward he endeouored to raise him from the ground; which he did at last with much adoo; & mounted him on his Asse, as a beast of easiest carriage. He gathered then together all his armes, and left not behind so much as the splinters of the Lance, and tied them all together vpon *Roxinante*, whom he tooke by the bridle, and the Asse by his halter, and led them both in that Equipage faire and easily towards his village, being very pensatiue to heare the follies that *Don-Quixote* spoke.

And *Don-Quixote* was no lesse Melancholy, who was so beaten and bruised, as he could very hardly hold himselfe vpon the Asse; and euer and anon he breathed forth such grieuous sighes, as he seemed to fixe them in heauen; which moued his neighbour to intreat them againe to declare vnto him the cause of his griefe. And it seemes none other, but that the very Deuill himselfe did call to his memorie, Histories accommodated to his successes. For in that instant, wholly forgetting *Valdominos*, he remembered the Moore *Abindaraez*, then, when the Constable of *Antequera*, *Rodericke Naruaez*, had taken him, and carried him prisoner to his Castle. So that when his neighbour turned againe, to aske of him how hee did, and what ailed him, hee answered the very same

same words and speech that Captiue *Abencerrase* said to *Narnax*, iust as he had read them in *Diana of Montemayor*, where the Historie is written; applying it so properly to his purpose, that the Labourer grew almost mad for anger, to heare that Machina of follies: by which hee collected that his neighbour was distracted, and therefore hee hied as fast as possible he could to the village, that so he might free himselfe from the vexation that *Don-Quixotes* idle and prolix discourse gaue vnto him. At the end whereof the Knight said, *Don Rodericke of Narnax*, you shall vnderstand that this beautifull *Xarifa*, of whom I spoke, is now the faire *Duleinea of Toboso*, for whom I haue done, I doe, and will doe such famous acts of Knighthood, as euer haue beene, are, and shall be scene in all the world. To this his neighbour answered, Doe not you perceiue, Sir, (sinner that I am) how I am neyther *Don Rodericke de Narnax*, nor the *Marquesse of Mantua*, but *Peter Alonso* your neighbour? nor are you *Valdoninos*, nor *Abinderaez*, but the honest Gentleman Master *Quixada*. I know very well who I am, quoth *Don-Quixote*, and also I know that I may not onely be those whom I haue named, but also all the twelue Peeres of *Franco*; yes, and the nine Worthies, since mine acts shall surpasse all those that euer they did together, or euery one of them apart.

With these, and such other Discourses, they arriued at last at their Village about Sunne-set; but the Labourer awayted vntill it waxed somewhat darke, because folke should not view the Knight so simply mounted. And when he saw his time, he entred into the Towne, and went to *Don-Quixotes* house, which he found full of confusion. There was the Curate and the Barber of the Village, both of them *Don-Quixotes* great friends. To whom the old woman of the house said in a lamentable manner, What doe you thinke, Master Licenciate *Pero Perez*, (for so the Curate was called) of my Masters misfortune? These fixe dayes, neyther he nor his horse haue appeared, nor the Tar-

get, Lance, or Armour: vnfortunate woman that I am, I doe suspect, and I am as sure it is true, as that I shall dye: how those accursed bookes of Knighthood which he hath, and is wont to read ordinarily, haue turned his iudgement; for now I remember that I haue heard him say oftentimes, (speaking to himselfe) that he would become a Knight Errant, and goe seeke aduentures thorowout the world. Let such bookes be recommended to *Satan* and *Barrabas*, which haue destroyed in this sort the most delicate vnderstanding of all the *Mancha*. His Neece affirmed the same, and did adde, Moreouer you shall vnderstand, good Master *Nicholas* (for so hight the Barber) that it many times befell my vnkle to continue the Lecture of those vnhappy bookes of disuentures two dayes and two nights together. At the end of which, throwing the booke away from him, hee would lay hand on his sword; and would fall a slashing of the walls: and when he were wearied, he would say that he had slayne foure Giants, as great as foure Towres, and the sweat that dropped downe through the labour hee tooke, he would say was bloud that gushed out of those wounds which he had receyued in the conflict, and then would hee quatte off a great pot full of cold water, and straight hee did become whole and quiet, saying, that water was a most precious drinke, which the wise man *Esquise*, a great Inchanter or Sorcerer, and his friend had brought vnto him. But I am in the fault of all this, who neuer aduertised you both of mine Vnkles rauing, to the end you might haue redrest it, ere it came to these termes, & burnt all those excommunicated bookes; for he had many that deserued the fire as much as if they were Hereticall. That doe I likewise affirme, quoth Master Curate, and in sooth to morrow shall not passe ouer vs, without making a publique processe against them, and condemne them to be burned in the fire, that they may not minister occasion againe to such as may read them, to doe that which I feare my good friend hath done.

The Labourer, and *Don-Quixote*, stood hearing all that which was said, and then he perfectly vnderstood the dis-ease of his neighbour; and therefore he began to cry aloud, Open the doores to Lord *Valdovinos*, and to the Lord *Marquesse of Mantua*, who comes very sore wounded and hurt, and to the Lord Moore *Abindarraez*, whom the valorous *Rodericke of Narraez* (Constable of *Antequera*) brings as his prisoner. All the household ranne out, hearing these cryes, and some knowing their friend; the others their Master and Vnkle, who had not yet alighted from the Ass, because he was not able, they ranne to imbrace him; but he forbad them, saying, Stand still, and touch me not, for I returne very sore wounded and hurt through default of my horse: carry me to my bed, and (if it be possible) send for the wise *Arganda*, that shée may cure and looke to my hurts. See, in an ill houre (quoth the old woman straight-way) if my heart did not very well foretell mee on which foot my Master halted: come vp, in good time, for we shall know how to cure you well enough, without sending for that *Arganda* you haue mentioned. Accursed, say I once againe, and a hundred times accursed may those bookes of Knighthood bee which haue brought you to such estate. With that, they bore him vp to his bed, & searching for his wounds, could not find any; and then hee said, all was but bruising, by reason of a great fall he had with his horse *Rocinant*, as he fought with tenue Giants, the most vnmeasurable and boldest that might be found in a great part of the earth. Hearken, quoth the Curate, wee haue also Giants in the dance; by mine honesty I will burne them all before to morrow at night. Then did they aske a thousand questions of *Don-Quixote*, but he would answer to none of them; and onely requested them to giue him some meat, and suffer him to sleep, seeing rest was most behoueful for him. All which was done, and the Curate informed himselfe at large of the labouring man, in what sort he had found *Don-Quixote*; which he recounted to him, and also the follies he said, both

at his finding and bringing to towne; which did kindle more earnestly the Licenciats desire to doe what he had resolved the next day; which was, to call his friend the Barber *M. Nicholas*, with whom he came to *Don-Quixotes* house.

## CHAP. VI.

*Of the pleasant and curious search made by the Curate and the Barber, of Don-Quixotes Librarie.*



He slept yet soundly. The Curate sought for the keyes of the Librarie, the onely authors of his harme: which the Gentlemans Neece gaue vnto him very willingly. All of them entred into it, and among the rest the old woman, wherein they found more then a hundred great Volumes, and those verie well bound, beside the small ones. And as soone as the old woman had seene them, shee departed very hastily out of the Chamber, and eftsoones returned with as great speed, with a holy-water pot and a sprinkler in her hand, & said, Hold, *M. Licenciat*, and sprinkle this Chamber all about, lest there should lurke in it some one Inchanter of the many which these bookes containe, and cry quittance with vs for the penalties wee meane to inflict on these bookes, by banishing them out of this world. The simplicitie of the good old woman, caused the Licentiat to laugh; who commanded the Barber to fetch him downe the bookes from their shelues, one by one, that hee might peruse their arguments; for it might happen some to bee found, which in no sort deserued to bee chastised with fire. No, replied the Neece, no, you ought not to pardon any of them, seeing they haue all beene offenders; it is better you throw them all into the base court, and there make a pile of them, and then set them a fire; if not, they may be carried into the yard, and there make a bon-fire of them, and the smoake will offend no-body. The old woman said as much,

much, both of them thirsted so much for the death of these innocents, but the Curate would not condescend thereto, vntill hee had first read the titles at the least of cuerie booke.

The first that Master *Nicholas* put into his hands, was that of *Amadis of Gaule*; which the Curate perusing a while, this comes not to me first of all others, without some mysterie: for as I haue heard told, this is the first booke of Knighthood that euer was printed in *Spaine*, and all the others haue had their beginning and originall from this; and therefore me thinkes that wee must condemne him to the fire, without all remission, as the *Dogmatizer* and head of so bad a sect. Not so, sie, quoth the Barber, for I haue heard that it is the very best contriued booke of all those of that kind, and therefore he is to be pardoned as the onely complete one of his profession. That is true, replied the Curate, and for that reason we doe giue him his life for this time. Let vs see that other which lies next vnto him. It is, quoth the Barber, *The Aduentures of Splandian, Amadis of Gaules* lawfully begotten sonne: Yet on mine honesty, replied the Curate, his fathers goodnesse shall nothing auaille him: Take this booke, old Masters, and opening the window throw it downe into the yard, and let it lay the foundation of our heape for the fire wee meane to make. She did what was commanded, with great alacrity, and so the good *Splandian* fled into the yard, to expect with all patience the fire which hee was threatned to abide. Forward, quoth the Curate. This that comes now, said the Barber, is *Amadis of Greece*, and as I coniecture, all those that lie on this side, are of the same lineage of *Amadis*. Then let them go all to the yard, quoth the Curate, in exchange of burning Queene *Pintiquinestra*, and the sheeheard *Darinel*, with his Eglogues, and the subtil and intricate Discourses of the Author, which are able to intangle the father that ingendred me, if he went in forme of a Knight Errant. I am of the same opinion, quoth the Barber.



And I also, said the Neece. Then since it is so, quoth the old wife, let them come, and to the yard with them all. They were rendred all vp vnto her, which were many in number: wherefore to saue a labour of going vp and downe the staires, she threw them out at the window.

What bundle is that, quoth the Curate? This is, answered Master *Nicholas*, *Don Olinante of Laura*. The Authour of that booke, quoth the Curate, composed likewise *The Garden of flowers*, and in good sooth I can scarce resolute which of the two workes is truest, or to speake better, is lesselying: onely this much I can determine; that this must goe to the yard, being a booke foolish and arrogant. This that followes is *Florismarte of Hircania*, quoth the Barber. Is Lord *Florismarte* there? Then replied the Curate, Then by mine honesty hee shall briefly make his arrestt in the yard, in despite of his wonderfull birth and famous aduentures; for the drouth and harshnesse of his stile deserues no greater fauour. To the yard with him, and this other (Good Masters.) With a very good will, Sir, qd. old *Mumpsimus*; and straightway did execute his commandement with no small gladnesse. This is Sir *Plazyr* (quoth the Barber.) It is an ancient booke, replied the Curate, wherein I finde nothing meriting pardon, let him without any replie keepe company with the rest. Forthwith it was done. Then was another booke opened, and they saw the title thereof to be *The Knight of the Crosse*. For the holy title which this booke beareth, quoth the Curate, his ignorance might bee pardoned: but it is a common saying: *The Diuell lurkes behind the Crosse*: wherefore let it goe to the fire. The Barber taking another booke, said, This is *The Mirrour of Knight-hood*. I know his Worship well, quoth the Curate. There goes among those bookes I see, the Lord *Raynald of Montalban* with his friends and companions, all of them greater theeués then \* *Cacus*, and the twelue Peeres of France, with the true Historiographer *Turpin*. I am in truth about to condemne them onely to exile, for as much as they containe

\* A thiefe that used to steale cattell and pull them backward by the tayles, that none might trace them.

taine some part of the famous Poet *Matthew Boyardo* his intution. Out of which the Christian Poet *Lodonicke Ariosto* did likewise weaue his worke, which if I can find among these, and that hee speakes not his owne natieue tongue, I'll vse him with no respect, but if hee talke in his owne language, I will put him for honours sake on my head. If that be so, quoth the Barber, I haue him at home in the Italian, but cannot vnderstand him. Neither were it good you should vnderstand him, replied the Curate: and here we would willingly haue excused the good Captaine that translated it into Spanish from that labour, or bringing it into *Spaine* if it had pleased himselfe. For he hath depriv'd it of much naturall worth in the translation; a fault incident to all those that presume to translate Verses out of one language into another: for though they imploy all their industry and wit therein, they can neuer arriue to the height of that Primitiue conceit, which they bring with them in their first birth. I say therefore that this booke, and all the others that may be found in this Library to treat of French affaires, be cast and deposited in some drie Vault, vntill wee may determine with more deliberation what wee should doe with them; alwayes excepting *Bernardo del Carpio*, which must bee there among the rest, and another called *Roncesualles*; for these two comming to my hands, shall be rendred vp to those of the old guardian, and from hers into the fires, without any remission. All which was confirmed by the Barber, who did ratifie his sentence, holding it for good and discreete, because hee knew the Curate to bee so vertuous a man, and so great a friend of the truth, as hee would say nothing contrary to it for all the goods of the world.

And then opening another booke, hee saw it was *Palmerin de Olina*, neere vnto which stood another, intituled *Palmerin of England*: which the Licenciat perceiuing, said, Let *Olina* bee presently rent in pieces, and burned in such sort, that euen the very ashes thereof may not bee found:

and let *Palmerin of England* be preferred, as a thing rarely delectable, and let such another booke as that which *Alexander* found among *Darius* spoiles, and deputed to keepe *Homers* works, be made for it: for, gossip, this booke hath sufficient authority for two reasons; the first, because of it selfe it is very good and excellently contriued: the other, for as much as the report runnes, that a certaine discrete King of *Portingal* was the Author thereof. All the adventures of the Cattle of *Miraguarda*, are excellent and artificiall. The discourses very cleere and courtly, obseruing euermore a *decorum* in him that speakes, with great propriety and conceit: therefore I say, Master *Nicholas*, if you thinke good, this and *Amadis de Gaule* may be preferred from the fire: and let all the rest, without further search or regard perishe. In the devils name do not so, gentle gossip (replied the Barber) for this which I hold now in my hand, is the famous *Don Belianis*: What he? quoth the Curate, the second, third, and fourth part thereof haue great need of some *Ruybarbe* to purge his excessiue choler, and wee must moreouer take out of him all that of the *Castell of Fame*, and other impertinencies of more consequence. Therefore wee giue them a *terminus Vltramarinus*, and as they shall be corrected, so will wee vse mercy or iustice towards them: and in the meane space, gossip, you may keepe them at your house, but permit no man to reade them. I am pleased, quoth the Barber, and being vnwilling to tire himselfe any more by reading of Titles, he bad the old woman to take all the great volumes, and throw them into the yard; the words were not spoken to a Mome or deafe person, but to one that had more desire to burne them, then to weaue a piece of linnen, were it neuer so great & fine. And therefore taking eight of them together, she threw them all out of the window, & returning the second time, thinking to carie away a great many at once, one of them fell at the Barbers feet, who desirous to know the title, saw that it was *The History of the famous Knight Tirante the white.*

Good

Good God, quoth the Curate with aloud voyce, is *Tirante the white* here? Giue me it, gossip, for I make account to haue found in it a Treasure of delight, and a copious Mine of pastime. Here is *Don-Quixote* of *Montalban*, a valiant Knight, and his brother *Thomas of Montalban*, and the Knight *Fonseca*, and the combat which the valiant *Detriante* fought with *Alano*, and the witty conceits of the damzell *Placerdeminida*, with the loue and guiles of the widow *Reposada*, and of the Empreffe enamoured on her Squire *Spolito*. I say vnto you, gossip, that this booke is for the stile, one of the best of the world: in it Knights do eate, and drinke, and sleepe, and die in their beds naturally, and make their testaments before their death: with many other things, which all other bookes of this subiect doe want; yet notwithstanding, if I might be iudge, the Author thereof deserued, because he purposely penned and writ so many follies, to be sent to the Gallies for all the dayes of his life.

Carry it home and reade it, and you shall see all that I haue said thereof to be true. I belecue it very well, quoth the Barber. But what shall we do with these little bookes that remaine? These as I take, said the Curate, are not bookes of Knighthood, but of Poetry; and opening one, he perceiued it was *The Diana of Montemayor*; and beleueing that all the rest were of that stampe, he said, These deserue not to be burned with the rest, for they haue not, nor can doe so much hurt as bookes of Knighthood, being all of them workes full of vnderstanding and conceits, and doe not preiudice any other.

O good Sir, quoth *Don-Quixote* his Neece, your reuerence shall likewise doe well to haue them also burned, lest that mine Vnkle, after he be cured of his Knightly disease, may fall by reading of these in an humour of becoming a Shepheard, and so wander thorow the woods and fields, singing of Roundelays, and playing on a Crowd. And what is more dangerous then to become a Poet, which is as  
some

some say, an incurable and infectious disease? This Maiden saies true, quoth the Curate, and it will not be amisse to remooue this stumbling blocke and occasion out of our friends way: and since we begin with the *Diana of Montemayor*, I am of opinion that it be not burned, but onely that all that which treats of the wise *Felicia*, and of the enchanted water, be taken away, and also al the longer verses, and let him remaine with his profes, and the honour of being the best of that kinde. This that followes, quoth the Barber, is the *Diana* called the second, written by him of *Salamanca*, & this other is of the same name, whose Author is *Gil Polo*. Let that of *Salamanca*, answer'd Mr. Parson, augment the number of the condemned in the yard, and that of *Gil Polo* be kept as charily, as if it were *Apollo* his owne worke: and go forward speedily, good gossip, for it growes late. This booke, quoth the Barber, opening of another, is *The twelve bookes of the fortunes of Ioue*, written by *Anthony Lofraso*, the *Sardunicall* Poet. By the holy Orders which I haue receiued, quoth the Curate, since *Apollo* was *Apollo*, and the *Muses*, *Muses*, and *Poets*, *Poets*, was neuer written so delightfull and extrauagant a worke as this; and that in his way and veine, it is the onely one of all the bookes that haue euer issued of that kinde to view the light of the world, and he that hath not read it, may make account that he hath neuer read matter of delight. Giue it to me, gossip, for I doe prize more the finding of it, then I would the gift of a Cassocke of the best Sattin of *Florence*. And so with great ioy he laid it aside, and the Barber prosecuted, saying, These that follow be, *The Shepheard of Iberia: The Nimphes of Enares*, and the reclaiming of *Iealousies*. Then there's no more to be done, but to deliuer them vp to the secular arme of the old wife, and doe not demand the reason, for that were neuer to make an end. This that comes, is *The Shepheard of Filida*. That is not a Shepheard, quoth the Curate, but a very complete Courtier; let it be reserued as a precious iewell. This great one that

that followes, is, said the Barber, intituled, *The treasure of diuers Poems*. If they had not bin so many, replied the Curate, they would haue beene more esteemed. It is necessary that this booke be carded and purged of certaine base things, that lurke among his high conceits.

Let him be kept, both because the Author is my very great friend, and in regard of other more Heroicall and lustie Workes he hath written. This is, said the Barber, *The ditty booke of Lopez Maldonado*. The Author of that worke is likewise my great friend, replied the Parson, and his lines pronounced by himselfe, doe rauish the hearers, and such is the sweetnes of his voyce, when he sings them, as it doth inchant the eare. He is somewhat prolix in his *Eglogues*, but that which is good, is neuer superfluous: let him be kept among the choysest. But what booke is that, which lies next vnto him? *The Galatea of Michel Cernantes*, quoth the Barber. That *Cernantes*; sayde the Curate, is mine old acquaintance this many a yeere. And I knowe, hee is more practised in misfortunes then in verses. His booke hath some good inuention in it, he intends and propounds somewhat, but concludes nothing: therefore we must expect the second part, which he hath promised. perhaps his amendment may obtaine him a generall remission, which vntil now is denied him, and whilst we expect the sight of his second work, keep this part closely imprisoned in your lodging. I am very well content to doe so, good gossip, said the Barber, and here there come three together. *The Auracana of Don Alonso de Ercilla*, *The Austrinada of Iohn Ruffo*, one of the Magistrates of Cordova, & *The Monserrato of Christopher de Virnes a Valentian Poet*. All these three bookes, quoth the Curate, are the best that are written in Heroicall verse in the *Castilian* tongue, and may compare with the most famous of *Italy*. Reserue them as the richest pawnes that *Spaine* enioyeth of Poetry. The Curate with this grew weary to see so many bookes, & so he would haue all the rest burned at all adventures. But the Barber, ere the sentence was giuen, had opened by chance one intituled

*The*



*The Teares of Angelica.* I would haue shed those teares my selfe, said the Curate, if I had wittingly caused such a booke to be burned; for the Author thereof was one of the most famous Poets of the world, not onely of *Spaine*: and was most happy in the translation of certaine fables of *Ouid*.

## C H A P. VII.

*Of the second departure which our good Knight Don-Quixote made from his house to seeke adventures.*

While they were thus busied, *Don-Quixote* began to crie aloud, saying, Heere, heere, valorous Knights, heere it is needfull that you shew the force of your valiant armes; for the Courtiers begin to beare away the best of the Tourney. The folke repaying to this rumour and noyse, was an occasion, that any farther speech and vilitation of the bookes was omitted, and therefore it is to be suspected, that *The Carolea* and *Lion of Spaine*, with the actes of the Emperour *Charles the first*, written by *Don Luis de Anila* were burned, without being euer seene or heard; and perhaps if the Curate had seene them, they should not haue past vnder so rigorous a sentence.

When they all arriued to *Don-Quixote* his chamber, he was risen already out of his bed, and continued still his outcries, cutting and slashing on euery side, being as broadly awake, as if he neuer had slept. Wherefore taking him in their armes, they returned him by maine force into his bed: and after he was somewhat quiet and settled, he said, turning himselfe to the Curate, In good sooth, *L. Archbishop Turpin*, it is a great dishonour to vs that are called The twelue Peeres, to permit the Knights of the Court to beare thus away the glory of the Tourney without more adoe; seeing that we the Adventurers haue gained the prize thereof

thereof the three formost dayes. Hold your peace, good gossip, quoth the Curate, for fortune may be pleased to change the successe, and what is lost to day, may be wonne againe to morrow: Looke you to your health for the present, for you seeme at least to be very much tyred, if besides you be not fore wounded.

Wounded? No, quoth *Don-Quixote*, but doubtlesse I am somewhat bruised: for that battard *Don Rowland* hath beaten me to powder with the stocke of an Oake-tree, and all for enuy, because he sees that I onely dare oppose my selfe to his valour: but let me be neuer againe called *Raynold of Montcalban*, if he pay not dearely for it, as soone as I rise from this bed in despite of all his enchantment. But I pray you call for my breakefast, for I know it will doe me much good, and leaue the reuenge of this wrong to my charge. Presently meat was brought, and after he had eaten, he fell asleepe, and they remained astonished at his wonderfull madnesse.

That night the old woman burned all the bookes that she found in the house and yard, and some there were burned that deserved for their worthinesse to be kept vp in euerlasting Treasuries, if their fortunes and the lazinesse of the searchers had permitted it. And so the prouerbe was verified in them, That the Iust payes sometimes for Sinners. One of the remedies which the Curate & Barber prescribed for that present, to helpe their friends disease, was, that they should change his chamber, and damme vp his Study, to the end that when he arose, he might not finde them: for perhaps by remoouing the cause, they might also take away the effects: and moreouer they bad them to say, that a certaine Inchanter had carried them away Study and all; which deuce was presently put in practice. And within two daies after, *Don-Quixote* got vp, and the first thing he did, was to go and visite his bookes; and seeing he could not find the chamber in the same place, where he had left it, he went vp and downe to find it. Sometimes he came

to the place where the doore stood, & felt it with his hands, and then would turne his eies vp and downe, here and there to seeke it, without speaking a word. But at last, after deliberation, he asked of the old woman the way to his bookes? Shee as one well schooled before what she should answer, said, What Study, or what nothing is this you looke for? There is now no more Study, nor bookes in this house; for the very Deuill himselfe carried all away with him. It was not the Deuill, said his Neece, but an Inchanter that came here one night vpon a cloud, the day after you departed from hence; and alighting downe from a Serpent vpon which he rode, he entred into the Study, and what he did therein I know not; and within a while after, he fled out at the rooffe of the house, & left all the house full of smoke: and when we accorded to see what he had done, we could neither see booke or Study: onely this much the old woman. And I doe remember very well, that the naughty old man at his departure, said with a loud voyce, that he, for hidden enmity, that he bore to the Lord of those bookes, had done all the harme to the house: that they might perceiue when he were departed, and added that he was named the wise *Muniaton Freiston*. You would haue said, qd. *Don-Quixote*. I know not, quoth the old woman, whether he hight *Freiston* or *Friton*, but well I wor, that his name ended with *Ton*. That is true, quoth *Don-Quixote*, and he is a very wise Inchanter, and my great aduersary, and lookes on me with a sinister eye, for he knowes by his Art and Science, that I shall in time fight a single combat with a Knight his very great friend, and ouercome him in battel, without being able to be by him assisted, and therefore he labours to doe me all the hurt he may; and I haue sent him word, that he strues in vaine to diuert or shun that which is by heauen already decreed. Who doubts of that, quoth his Neece? but I pray you good Vnkle, say, what need haue you to thrust your selfe into these difficulties and brabbles? were it not better to rest you quietly in your owne house, then

then to wander thorow the world, searching bread of  
 \* blasted come; without once considering how many  
 there goe to seeke for wooll, that returne againe shorne  
 themselues? O Neece, quoth *Don-Quixote*, how ill dost  
 thou vnderstand the matter? Before I permit my selfe to  
 be shorne, I will pill and pluck away the beards of as many  
 as shall dare or imagine to touch but a haire onely of mee.  
 To these words the woman would make no replie, because  
 they saw his choler increase.

\* Buscardo pan  
 de Trastrigo p.  
 47.

Fifteene dayes hee remained quietly at home, without  
 giuing any argument of seconding his former vanities: in  
 which time past many pleasant encounters betweene him  
 and his two gossips, the Curate and Barber, vpon that point  
 which hee defended, to wit, that the world needed no-  
 thing so much as Knights Errant, and that the erraticall  
 Knighthood ought to bee againe renewed therein. Master  
 Parion would contradict him sometimes, and other times  
 yeeld vnto that hee vrged; for had they not obserued that  
 manner of proceeding, it were impossible to bring him to  
 any conformity. In this space *Don-Quixote* dealt with a  
 certaine Labourer his neighbour, an honest man (if the title  
 of honesty may bee giuen to the poore) but one of a very  
 shallow-wit; in resolution he said so much to him, and per-  
 swaded him so earnestly, and made him so large promises,  
 as the poore fellow determined to goe away with him, and  
 serue him as his Squire. *Don-Quixote* among many other  
 things bad him to dispose himselfe willingly to depart  
 with him, for now & then such an aduenture might present  
 it selfe, that in as short space as one would take vp a  
 couple of strawes, an Island might bee wonne, and hee be  
 left as gouernor thereof. With these and such like promises  
*Sancho Pança*, (for so hee was called,) left his wife & chil-  
 dren, and agreed to bee his Squire. Afterward *Don-Quix-  
 te* began to cast plots how to come by some mony, which  
 hee archieued by selling one thing, pawning another, and  
 hinging al vp side downe. At last he got a prettie summe, and  
 tu accom-

accommodating himselfe with a buckler which hee had borrowed of a friend, and patching vp his broken Beauer againe as well as he could, he aduertised his Squire *Sancho* of the day and houre wherein he meant to depart, that hee might likewise furnish himselfe with that which hee thought needfull; but about all things he charged him to prouide himselfe of a Wallet; which hee promised to performe, and said, That hee meant also to carie a very good Ass, which he had of his owne, because hee was not wont to trauell much afoot. In that of the Ass *Don-Quixote* stood a while pensue, calling to minde whether euer he had read, that any Knight Errant carried his Squire Assishly mounted, but he could not remember any authority for it: yet notwithstanding he resolued that hee might bring his beast, with intention to accommodate him more honourably when occasion were offered, by dismounting the first discourteous Knight they met, from his horse, and giuing it to his Squire, he also furnished himselfe with shirts, and as many other things as hee might, according vnto the Inkeepers aduice. All which being finished, *Sancho Pança*, without bidding his wife or children farewell; or *Don-Quixote* his Neece and olde seruant, they both departed one night out of the village vnknowne to any person liuing; and they trauelled so farre that night, as they were sure in the morning not to bee found, although they were pursued. *Sancho Pança* rode on his beast like a Patriarke, with his Wallet and Bottle, and a marvellous longing to see himselfe gouernour of the Island which his master had promised vnto him.

*Don-Quixote* tooke by chance the same very course and way that hee had done in his first voyage through the field of *Montiel*, wherein hee trauelled then with lesse vexation then the first; for by reason that it was early, and the Sunne-beames stroke not directly downe, but athwart, the heat did not trouble them much. And *Sancho Pança* seeing the oportunity good, said to his Master, I pray you

you haue care good Sir Knight, that you forget not that gouernment of the Island which you haue promised mee, for I shall bee able to gouerne it were it neuer so great.

" To which *Don-Quixote* replied, You must vnderstand, friend *Sancho Pança*, that it was a custome very much vsed by ancient Knights Errant, to make their Squires gouernours of the Islands and Kingdomes that they conquered, and I am resolu'd that so good a custome shall neuer be abolished by me, but rather I will passe and exceed them therein: for they sometimes, and as I take it, did for the greater part expect vntill their Squires waxed aged, and after they were cloyed with seruice, and had suffered many bad dayes and worse nights, then did they bestow vpon them some title of an Earle, or at least of a Marquessie of some valley or Prouince, of more or lesse account.

But if thou liuest, and I withall, it may happen that I might conquer such a Kingdome within sixe dayes, that hath other Kingdomes adherent to it, which would fall out as iust as it were cast in a mould for thy purpose, whom I would crowne presently King of one of them. And doe not account this to be any great matter, for things and chances doe happen to such Knights aduenturers as I am, by so vnexpected and wonderfull wayes and meanes, as I might giue thee very easily a great deale more thē I promised. After that maner, said *Sancho Pança*, If I were a King through some miracle of those which you say, then should *Ioan Gutierrez* my wife become a Queene, and my children Princes. Who doubts of that, said *Don-Quixote*? That doe I, replied *Sancho Pança*, for I am fully perswaded, that although God would raine Kingdomes downe vpon the earth, none of them would sit well on *Mary Gutierrez* her head. For Sir, you must vnderstand that shee's not worth a Dodkin for a Queene. To be a Countesse would agree with her better: and yet I pray God shee be able to discharge that calling.

Commend thou the matter to God; quoth *Don-Quixote*.

E

that



that he may giue her that which is most conuenient for her. But doe not thou abase thy minde so much, as to content thy selfe with lesse then at least to be a Vice-Roy. I will not, good Sir, quoth *Sancho*, especially seeing I haue so worthy a Lord and Master as your selfe, who knowes how to giue me all that may turne to my benefit, and that I shall be able to discharge in good sort.

#### CHAP. VIII.

*Of the good successe Don-Quixote had, in the dreadfull and neuer imagined aduenture of the Winde-mills, with other accidents worthy to be recorded.*

**A**S thus they discoursed, they discovered some thirty or forty Winde-mills, that are in that field: and as soone as *Don-Quixote* espied them, he said to his Squire; Fortune doth addresse our affaires better then we our selues could desire; for behold there, friend *Sancho Pança*, how there appears thirty or forty monstrous Gyants, with whom I meane to fight, and deprive them all of their liues; with whose spoyles we will begin to be rich; for this is a good warre, and a great seruice vnto God, to take away so bad a seede from the face of the earth.

What Gyants, quoth *Sancho Pança*? Those that thou seest there, quoth his Lord, with the long armes, and some there are of that race, whose armes are almost two leagues long. I pray you vnderstand, quoth *Sancho Pança*, that those which appeare there, are no Gyants but Winde-mills: and that which seemes in them to be armes, are their Sayles, that are swinged about by the Winde, do also make the Mill goe. It seemes well, quoth *Don-Quixote*, that thou art not yet acquainted with matter of Aduentures: they are Giants, and if thou beest asfeard, goe aside and pray, whilst I enter into cruell and vnequall battell with them. And saying so, he spurd his horse *Roxinante*, without taking

king heed to his Squire *Sancho's* cryes, aduertising him how they were doubtlesly Winde-mills that he did assault, and no Gyants; but he went so fully perswaded, that they were Gyants, as he neither heard his Squires out-cries, nor did discern what they were, although he drew very neere to them, but rather said as loud as he could, Flie not, yee Cowards and vile creatures, for it is onely one Knight that assaults you.

With this the Winde increased, and the Mill Sayles began to turne about; which *Don-Quixote* espying, said, Although thou mouedst more armes then the Gyant *Briars*, thou shalt stoope to me; and after saying this, and commending himselfe most deuoutly to his Lady *Dulcinea*, desiring her to succour him in that trance, couering himselfe well with his buckler, and setting his Lance on his rest, he spurred on *Roxinante*, and encountred with the first Mill that was before him, and striking his Lance into the Sayle, the Winde swinged it about with such furie, that it broke his Lance into shiuers, carrying him and his horse after it, and finally tumbled him a good way off from it, on the field in very euill plight. *Sancho Pança* repayred presently to succour him, as fast as his Ass could driue: and when he arriued, he found him not able to stir, he had gotten such a crush with *Roxinante*. Good God! quoth *Sancho*, did I not foretel vnto you that you should look wel what you did? for they were none other then Wind-mills, nor could any think otherwise, vles he had also wind-mills in his braines. Peace, *Sancho*, qud. *Don-Quixote*, for matters of war are more subiect then any other thing to continuall change: how much more, seeing I do verily perswade my self, that the wise *Freston* who rob'd my Study and bookes, hath transformed these Gyants into Mills, to deprive me of the glory of the victory? such is the enmity he beares towards me. But yet in fine, al his bad arts shal but little preuaile against the goodnes of my sword. God grant it, as he may, said *Sancho Pança*; and then helpt him to arise: and presently he mounted

\* Medio pal-  
dado.

A passage  
thorow the  
mountaines.

on *Rozinante*, who was \* halfe shoulder-pitcht by rough encounter; and discourfing vpon that aduenture, they followed on the way which guided towards the paffage or gate of *Lapice*, for there, as *Don-Quixote* auouched, it was not poffible, but to finde many aduentures, becaufe it was a thorow-fare much frequented, and yet he affirmed that he went very much grieued becaufe hee wanted a Lance, and telling it to his Squire, he faid, I remember how I haue read that a certaine Spanifh Knight called *Diego Peres of Vargas*, hauing broken his fword in a battaile, tore off a great branch, or ftock from an Oak tree, and did fuch maruailles with it that day, and battered fo many Moores, as he remained with the furname of *Machuca*, which fignifies a ftumpe, and as well hee, as all his progenie were euer after that day called *Vargas* and *Machuca*. I tell thee this, becaufe I meane to reare another branch, fuch, or as good at leaft as that, from the firft Oake wee fhall encounter, and I meane to archieue fuch aduentures therewithal, as thou wilt account thy felfe fortunate, for hauing merited to behold them, and be a witneffe of things almoft incredible.

In Gods name, quoth *Sancho*, I doe belecue euery word you faid: but I pray you fit right in your faddle, for you ride fideling, which proceeds as I fuppofe of the bruifing you got by your fall. Thou fayeft true, quoth *Don-Quixote*, and if I doe not complaine of the grieve, the reafon is, becaufe Knights Errant vie not to complaine of any wound, although their guts did iffue out therof. If it befo (quoth *Sancho*) I know not what to fay, but God knowes that I would be glad to heare you to complaine when any thing grieues you. Of my felfe I dare affirme, that I muft complaine of the leaft grieve that I haue, if it be not likewise meant that the Squires of Knights Errant muft not complaine of any harme. *Don-Quixote* could not refrain laughter, hearing the fimplicity of his Squire; and after fhewed vnto him, that he might lawfully complaine both when he pleased, and as much as he lifted, with defire, or without it, for he had neuer  
yet

yet read any thing to the contray, in the order of Knight-hood.

Then *Sancho* said vnto him, that it was dinner time. To whom he answered, that he needed no repast, but if he had will to eat, he might begin when hee pleased. *Sancho* hauing obtayned his licence, did accommodate himselfe on his Asses backe, the best he might, taking out of his wallet some belly munition, he rode after his Master, traueilling and eating at once, and that with great leasure, and euer anon hee lifted vp his bottle with such pleasure, as the best fed Victualer of *Malaga* might enuy his state, and whilst he rode multiplying of quaffes in that manner, he neuer remembred any of the promises his Master had made him, nor did he hold the fetch of aduentures to be a labour, but rather a great recreation and ease, were they neuer so dangerous.

In conclusion, they past ouer that night vnder certaine trees, from one of which *Don-Quixote* tore a withered branch, which might serue him in some sort for a lance, and therefore he set thereon the yron of his owne, which he had reserued when it was broken. All that night *Don-Quixote* slept not one winke, but thought vpon his Ladie *Dulcinea* that hee might conforme himselfe to what he had read in his bookes of aduentures, when Knights passed ouer many nights without sleepe in Forrests and Fields, onely intertayned by the memorie of their Mistresses: but *Sancho* spent not his time so vainely, for hauing his stomake well stuffed, and that not with *Succoria* water, he carried smoothly away the whole night in one sleepe: and if his Master had not called him vp, neyther the Sunne-beames which strucke on his visage, nor the melodie of the Birds which were many, and did cheerefully welcome the approach of the new day, could haue bene able to awake him: at his arriuing hee gaue one assay to the bottle, which hee found to bee somewhat more weake then it was the night before, whereat his heart was somewhat grieved, for he mistrusted that they

tooke not a course to remedie that defect so soone as he wished: nor could *Don-Quixote* breake his fast, who(as we haue said) meant onely to sustaine himselfe with pleasant remembrances. Then did they returne to their commenced way, towards the Port of *Lapies*, which they discouered about three of the clocke in the after-noone: Here (said *Don-Quixote*) as soone as he kend it, may we (friend *Sancho*) thrust our hands vp to the very elbows in that, which is called aduentures. But obserue well this Caueat which I shall giue thee, that although thou seest me in the greatest dangers of the world, thou must not set hand to thy sword in my defence, if thou dost not see that those which assault me, be base and vile vulgar people; for in such a case thou maist assist mee. Marry if they bee Knights, thou maist not doe so in any wise, nor is it permitted by the laws of armes that thou maist helpe me, vntill thou beest likewise dubbed Knight thy selfe.

I doe assure you, Sir, quoth *Sancho*, that herein you shall be most punctually obeyed; and therefore chiefly, in respect that I am of mine owne nature a quiet and peaceable man, and a mortall enemy of thrusting my selfe into stirres or quarrels: yet is it true, that touching the defence of mine owne person, I wil not be altogether so obseruant of those Lawes, seeing that both Diuine and Humane allow euery man to defend himselfe from any one that would wrong him. I say no lesse, answered *Don-Quixote*, but in this of ayding me against any Knight, thou must set bounds to thy naturall impulses. I say that I will doe so, quoth *Sancho*, and I wil obserue this commandement as punctually, as that of keeping holy the Sabbath day.

Whilst thus they reasoned, there appeared in the way two Monkes of *S. Benets* order, mounted on two *Dromedaries*; for the *Mules* whereon they rode, were but little lesse. They wore masks with Spectacles in them, to keepe away the dust from their faces, and each of them besides bore their *Vmbrilles*, after them came a Coach and foure

or five a horse-backe accompanying it, and two Lackeyes that ranne hard by it. There came therein, as it was after known, a certaine *Biscaine* Lady, which trauelled towards *Simil*, where her husband sojourned at the present, and was going to the *Indies*, with an honourable charge: the Monks rode not with her, although they trauelled the same way. Scarce had *Don-Quixote* perceiued them, when he said to his Squire, Either I am deceiued, or else this will proue the most famous aduenture that euer hath beene seene. For these two great blacke bulkes which appeare there, are questionlesse Inchanters, that steale or carrie away perforce some Princesse in that Coach; and therefore I must with all my power vndoe that wrong. This will be worse then the aduenture of the Winde-mills, quoth *Sancho*. Doe not you see, Sir, that those are Fryers of *S. Benets* Order? and the Coach can be none other, then of some trauellers. Therefore listen to mine aduice, and see well what you doe, lest that the deuill do deceiue you. I haue said already to thee, *Sancho*, that thou art very ignorant in matter of aduentures. What I say is true, as now thou shalt see: and saying so, he spurd on his horse, and placed himselfe iust in the midst of the way, by which the Friers came: and when they approached so neere as he supposed they might heare him, he said "with a loude voyce: Deuillish and wicked people, leaue  
"presently those high Princesses which you violently carrie  
"away with you in that Coach; or if you will not, prepare  
"your selues to receiue suddaine death, as a iust punish-  
"ment of your bad workes.

The Friers held their horses, and were amazed both at the shape and words of *Don-Quixote*. To whom they answered, Sir Knight, wee are neither deuillish nor wicked, but religious men of *S. Benets* Order, that trauell about our affaires, and we know not whether, or no, there comes any Princesses forced in this Coach. With mee faire words take no effect, quoth *Don-Quixote*. For I know you very well, treacherous knaues; and then without expecting  
their



their replie, he set spurs to *Rozinante*, and laying his Lance on the thigh, charged the first Friar with such fury and rage, that if he had not suffered himselfe willingly to fall off his Mule, hee would not onely haue ouerthrowne him against his wil, but likewise haue slaine, or at least wounded him very ill with the blow. The second religious man seeing how ill his companion was vsed, made no words, but setting spurs to that Castell, his *Mule* did flie away thorow the field, as swift as the winde it selfe. *Sancho Pança* seeing the Monke ouerthrowne, dismounted very speedily off his Asse, and ran ouer to him, and would haue ransackt his habites. In this arriued the Monkes two Lackeyes, and demanded of him, why he thus dispoyled the Friar? *Sancho* replied, that it was his due by the law of armes, as lawfull spoyles gained in battell by his Lord *Don-Quixote*. The Lackeyes which vnderstood not the iest, nor knew not what words of battell or spoyles meant, seeing that *Don-Quixote* was now out of the way, speaking with those that came in the Coach, set both at once vpon *Sancho*, and left him not a haire in his beard but they pluckt, and did so trample him vnder their feete, as they left him stretched on the ground without either breath or feeling. The Monke cutting off all delayes, mounted againe on horse-backe, all affrighted, hauing scarce any drop of bloud left in his face through feare. And being once vp, hee spurd after his fellow, who expected him a good way off, staying to see the successe of that assault; and being vnwilling to attend the end of that strange aduenture, they did prosecute their journey, blessing and crossing themselves as if the Deuill did pursue them.

*Don-Quixote*, as is rehearsed, was in this season speaking to the Lady of the Coach, to whom he said, Your beauty, deare Lady, may dispose from henceforth of your person, as best yee liketh; for the pride of your robbers lies now prostrated on the ground, by this my inuincible arme. And because you may not bee troubled

“to

“ to know your deliuerer his name, know that I am called  
 “ *Don-Quixote de la Mancha*, a Knight Errant and Aduen-  
 “ turer, and captiue to the Pecelesse and beautifull Lady  
 “ *Dulcinea of Toboso*: and in reward of the benefite which  
 “ you haue receiued at my hands, I demand nothing else,  
 “ but that you returne to *Toboso*; and there present your  
 “ selues in my name before my Lady, and recount vnto her,  
 “ what I haue done to obtaine your liberty.

To all these words which *Don-Quixote* said, a certaine  
 Biscaine Squire that accompanied the Coach gaue eare,  
 who seeing that *Don-Quixote* suffered not the Coach to  
 passe onward, but said that it must presently returne backe  
 to *Toboso*, he drew neere to him, and laying hold on his  
 Lance, he said in his bad Spanish and worse Basquish; Get  
 thee away, Knight in an ill houre, by the God that created  
 me, if thou leaue not the Coach, I will kill thee, as sure as I  
 am a *Biscaine*.

*Don-Quixote* vnderstanding him, did answer with great  
 staiednes, if thou werest a \* Knight as thou art not, I would  
 by this haue punished thy folly and presumption, Caytife  
 creature. The Biscaine replied with great furie, Not I a  
 Gentleman? I sweare God thou liest as well as I am a Chri-  
 stian. If thou cast away thy Lance, and draw thy sword,  
 \* thou shalt see the water as soone as thou shalt carry away  
 the Car: A *Biscaine* by land, and a Gentleman by Sea, a  
 Gentleman in despite of the Deuill, and thou liest if other  
 things thou sayest. Straight thou shalt see that, said *Agra-  
 ger*; replied *Don-Quixote*, and throwing his Lance to the  
 ground, he out with his sword, and tooke his Buckler, and  
 set on the *Biscaine*, with resolution to kill him.

The *Biscaine* seeing him approach in that manner, al-  
 though he desired to alight off his *Mule*, which was not to  
 be trusted, being one of those naughty ones which are  
 wont to be hired, yet had he no leasure to doe any other  
 thing, then to draw out his sword: but it befell him hap-  
 pily to be neere to the Coach, out of which he snatched a  
 cushion

\* *Cauallero in  
 Spanish is taken  
 as well for a  
 Gentleman, as  
 for a Knight.*

\* *Pag. 58.*

cushion that serued him for a shield : and presently the one made vpon the other like mortall enemies.

Those that were present, laboured all that they might, but in vaine, to compound the matter betweene them ; for the *Biscaine* swore in his bad language, that if they hindred him from ending the battell, hee would put his Lady, and all the rest that dared to disturbe him, to the sword.

The Lady astonished and fearefull of that which she beheld, commanded the Coach-man to goe a little out of the way, and sate aloofe, beholding the rigorous conflict. In the progresse whereof, the *Biscaine* gaue *Don-Quixote* ouer the Target a mighty blow on one of the shoulders, where if it had not found resistance in his armour, it would doubtlesly haue cleft him downe to the girdle. *Don-Quixote* feeling the waight of that vnmeasurable blow, cried with a " loud voyce, saying, O *Dulcinea*, Lady of my soule, the " flowre of all beauty, succour this thy Knight, who to see " forth thy worth, finds himselfe in this dangerous trance. The saying of these words, the griping fast of his sword, the couering of himselfe well with his Buckler, and the as- sayling of the *Biscaine*, was done all in one instant, resolu- ing to venter all the successe of the battell on that one on- ly blow. The *Biscaine*, who perceiuing him come in that manner, perceiued by his doughtinesse his intention, and resolved to doe the like ; and therefore expected him very well couered with his Cushion, not being able to manage his *Mule* as he wished from one part to another, who was not able to goe a step, it was so wearied, as a beast neuer before vsed to the like toyes.

*Don-Quixote*, as we haue said, came against the weary *Biscaine*, with his sword lifted aloft, with a full resolution to part him in two ; and all the beholders stood with great feare suspended, to see the successe of those monitrous blowes wherewithall they threatned one another. And the Lady of the Coach, with her Gentlewoman, made a thousand *vowes*, and offerings to all the deuout places of *Spaine*,

to the end that God might deliuer the Squire and themselves, out of that great danger wherein they were.

But it is to be deplored, how in this very point and tearme, the Author of this History leaues this battell depending, excusing himselfe, that he could finde no more written of the actes of *Don-Quixote*, then those which he hath already recounted. True it is, that the second writer of this worke would not belecue, that so curious a History was drown'd in the iawes of obliuion, or that the wits of the *Mancha* were so little curious, as not to reserue among their treasures or rencords, some papers treating of this famous Knight: and therefore encouraged by this presumption, he did not despaire to finde the end of this pleasant History; which, heauen being propitious to him, he got at last, after the manner that shall be recounted in the  
second Part.

---

*The end of the first Part.*



THE END OF THE FARE



THE DELIGHTFVLL  
Historie of the most Wittie  
*Knight Don-Quixote of*  
the MANCHA.

*The second Booke.*

CHAP. I.

*Wherin is related the euent of the feareful battell which  
the gallant Biscaine fought with Don-Quixote.*



WE left the valorous *Biscaine*, and the famous *Don Quixote* in the first part, with their swords lifted vp and naked in tearmes, to discharge one vpon another two furious Cleauers, & such, as if they had allighted rightly, would cut & deuide them both from the top to the toe, and open them like a *Pomegranate*. And that in so doubtfull a taking, the delightfull



lightfull History stopped and remained dismembred, the Author thereof leauing vs no notice where we might finde the rest of the narration. This grieued me not a little, but wholly turned the pleasure I tooke in reading the beginning thereof, into disgust, thinking how small commodity was offered, to finde out so much as in mine opinion wanted of this so delectable a tale. It seemed vnto me almost impossible, and contrary to all good order, that so good a Knight should want some wise man, that would vndertake his wonderfull prowesses and feats of Chiuallrie. A thing that none of those Knights Errant euer wanted, of whom people speake; for each of them had one or two wise men of purpose, that did not only write their actes, but also depainted their very least thoughts and toyes, were they neuer so hidden. And surely so good a Knight could not be so vnfortunate, as to want that wherewith *Platyr* and others his like abounded; and therefore could not induce my selfe to belecue, that so gallant a Historie might remaine maimed and lame, and did rather cast the fault vpon the malice of the time, who is a consumer and deuourer of all things, which had either hidden or consumed it.

Me thought on the other side, seeing that among his bookes were found some moderne workes, such as the *Vndeceining of Iealousie*, and *The nymphs & shepheards of Henares*, That also his owne History must haue beene new; and if it were not written, yet was the memory of him fresh among the dwellers of his owne village, and the other villages adioyning. This imagination held me suspended and desirous to learne really and truely all the life and miracles of our famous Spaniard *Don Quixote of the Mancha*, the light and mirror of all *Manchicall* Chiuallrie; being the first who in this our age and time so full of calamities, did vndergoe the trauels and exercise of armes Errant; and vndid wrongs, succour'd widdowes, protected damzels that rode vp and downe with their whips and Palfrayes, and with all their virginity on their backs, from hill

to hill, and dale to dale: for if it hapned not that some lewd miscreant, or some Clowne with a hatchet and long haire, or some monstrous Gyant did force them, damzels there were in times past, that at the end of fourescore yeeres old, all which time they neuer slept one day vnder a roofe, went as intire and pure maydens to their graues, as the very mother that bore them. Therefore I say, that as well for this, as for many other good respects, our gallant *Don-Quixote* is worthy of continuall and memorable praises; nor can the like be iustly denied to my selfe, for the labour and diligence which I vsed, to find out the end of this gratefull Historie; although I know very well, that if Heauen, Chance, and Fortune had not assisted me, the world had bin depriued of the delight & pastime, that they may take for almost two houres together, who shall with attention read it. The maner therfore of finding it, was this:

Being one day walking on the Exchange of *Toledo*, a certaine boy by chance would haue sold diuers old quiers and scroules of bookes to a Squire that walked vp and downe in that place, and I being addiected to reade such scroules, thogh I found the tome in the streets, borne away by this my natural inclination, took one of the quires in my hand, and perceiued it to be written in Arabick Characters, and seeing that although I knew the letters, yet could I not reade the substance, I looked about to view whether I could perceiue thereabouts, any Moore turned Spaniard, that could reade them: nor was it very difficult to finde there such an Interpreter: for if I had searched one of another better and more ancient \* language, that place would easily haue afforded him. In fine, my good fortune presented one to me, to whom telling my desire, & giuing him the book in his hand, he opened it, & hauing read a little therein, began to laugh. I demanded of him why he laughed? & he answered, At that marginal note which the book had. I bad him to expound it to me, and with that took him a little aside: & he continuing stil his laughter, said, There is written  
here

\* *Towit, a Jew.*

here on this margine these words: *This Dulcinea of Toboso so many times spoken of in this historie, had the best hand for powdring of Perkes, of any woman in all the Mancha.* When I heard it make mention of *Dulcinea of Toboso*, I rested amazed and suspended, and imagined forthwith, that those quires contained the *Historie of Don-Quixote*. With this conceit I hastned him to read the beginning, which he did, and translating the *Arabick* into *Spanish* in a trice, hee said that it began thus, *The Historie of Don-Quixote of the Mancha, written by Cyde Hamete Benengeli, an Arabick Historiographer.* Much discretion was requisite to dissemble the content of mind I conceiued: when I heard the title of the booke, and preuenting the Squire, I bought all the boyes scroles and papers for a Riall: and had hee beeing of discretion, or knowne my desire, hee might haue promised himselfe easily, and also borne away with him more then sixe Rials for his Merchandize. I departed after with the Moore, to the Cloyster of the great Church, and I requested him to turne mee all the *Arabick* sheetes that treated of *Don-Quixote* into *Spanish*, without adding or taking away any thing from them, and I would pay him what hee would desire for his paines: hee demanded fifty pounds of Raisins and three bushels of Wheate, and promised to translate them speedily, well, and faithfully. But I, to hasten the matter more, lest I should lose such an vnexpected and welcome treasure, brought him to my house, where hee translated all the worke in lesse then a moneth and a halfe, euen in the manner that it is heere recounted.

There was painted in the first Quire, very naturally, the battell betwixt *Don-Quixote* and the *Biscaine*; euen in the same manner that the History relateth it, with their swords lifted aloft; the one couered with his Buckler, the other with the Cushion: and the *Biscaines Mule* was deliuered so naturally, as a man might perceiue it was hired; although he stood farther off then the shot of a Crossbow: the

the *Biscaine* had a title written vnder his feet that said, *Don Sancho de Azpetia*, for so belike hee was called : and at *Roxinante* his feete there was another that said, *Don-Quixote*. *Roxinante* was mardellous well pourtrated, so long and lanke, so thinne and leane, so like one labouring with an incurable consumption, as hee did shew very cleerely with what consideration and propriety he had giuen vnto him the name *Roxinante*. By him stood *Sancho Pança*, holding his Asse by the halter ; at whose feete was another scroule, saying, *Sancho Cancau* : and I thinke the reason thereof was, that as his picture shewed, hee had a great belly, a short stature, and thicke legges. And therefore I iudge he was called *Pança* or *Canca* ; for both these names are written of him indifferently in the History.

There were other little things in it worthy the noting, but all of them are of no great importance ; nor any thing necessary for the true relation of the Historie, for none is ill if it be true. And if any obiection bee made against the truth of this, it can bee none other, then that the Author was a Moore, and it is a knowne propriety of that Nation to bee lying : yet in respect that they hate vs so mortally, it is to bee coniectured, that in this History there is rather want and concealment of our Knights worthy Actes, then any superfluity ; which I imagine the rather, because I finde in the progresse thereof many times, that when hee might and ought to haue aduanced his penne in our Knights prayses, hee does as it were of purpose passe them ouer in silence. Which was very ill done, seeing that Historiographers ought and should bee very precise, true, and vnpassionat, and that neither profit, or feare, rancour or affection should make them to tread awry from the truth, whose mother is History, the Emulatresse of Time, the Treasury of actions, the witnesse of things past, and aduertiser of things to come.

In this Historie I know a man may finde all that hee can desire in the most pleasing manuer ; and if they want any

F thing

thing to be desired, I am of opinion that it is through the fault of that vngracious knaue that translated it, rather then through any defect in the subiect. Finally, the second part thereof (according to the translation) began in this manner:

The trenchant swords of the two valorous and intraged combatants being lifted aloft, it seemed that they threatened Heauen, the earth, and the depths. Such was their hardinesse and courage: and the first that discharged his blow was the *Biscaine*, which fell with such force and fury, as if the sword had not turned a little in the way, that on-ly blow had beene sufficient to set an end to the rigorous contention, and all other the aduentures of our Knight. But his good *Fortune* which reserued him for greater affaires, did wrest his aduersaries sword awry in such sort, as though hee strooke him on the left shoulder, yet did it no more harme, then disarme all that side; carrying away with it a great part of his Beauer, with the halfe of his eare; all which fell to the ground with a dreadfull ruine, leaving him in very ill case for a good time. Good God! who is he that can well describe at this present the fury that entered into the heart of our *Manchegan*, seeing himselfe vsed in that manner? Let vs say no more, but that it was such, that stretching himselfe againe in the stirrops, and griping his sword fast in both his hands, he discharged such a terrible blow on the *Biscaine*, hitting him right vpon the Cushion, and by it on the head, that the strength and thickness thereof so little auailed him, that as if a whole mountaine had fallen vpon him, the blood gushed out of his mouth, nose, and eares, all at once, and hee tottered so on his Mule, that euery steppe hee tooke hee was ready to fall off, as hee would indeed, if hee had not taken him by the necke: yet neuerthelesse hee lost the stirrops, and loosing his gripe of the Mule, it being likewise frighted by that terrible blow, ranne away as fast as it could about the fields, and within two or three winces, ouerthrew him to the ground.

All which *Don-Quixote* stood beholding with great quietnesse, and as soone as he saw him fall, hee leapt off his horse, and ranne ouer to him very speedily, and setting the point of his sword on his eyes, he bad him yeeld himselfe or else he would cut off his head. The *Biscaine* was so amazed, as he could not speake a word, and it had succeeded very ill with him, considering *Don-Quixotes* fury, if the Ladies of the Coach, (which vntill then had beheld the conflict with great anguish) had not come where hee was, and earnestly besought him to do them the fauour to pardon their Squires life. *Don-Quixote* answered with a great loftinesse "and grauity; Truly, faire Ladies, I am well appaid to grant your request, but it must be with this agreement & condition, that this Knight shall promise mee to goe to *Toboso*, and present himselfe in my name to the Peerelesse *Ladie Dulcinea*, to the end she may dispose of him as she pleaseth.

The timorous and comfortlesse Lady, without considering what *Don-Quixote* demanded, or asking what *Dulcinea* was, promised that her Squire should accomplish all that he pleased to command. Why then, quoth *Don-Quixote*, trusting to your promise, I'll do him no more harme, although he hath well deserued it at my hands.

## CHAP. II.

*Of that which after befell vnto Don-Quixote, when hee had left the Ladies.*

**B**Y this *Sancho Pança* had gotten vp, though somewhat abused by the Friers Lackeyes, and stood attentiuely beholding his Lords combat, and prayed to God with all his heart, that it would please him to giue him the victory; and that he might therein win some Island, whereof he might make him gouernour, as he had promised.



And seeing the controuerſie ended at laſt, and that his Lord remounted vpon *Rozinante*; hee came to hold him the ſtirrop, and caſt himſelfe on his knees before him ere he got vp, and taking him by the hand, he kiſt it, ſaying, I deſire that it will pleaſe you good my Lord *Don-Quixote*, to beſtow vpon mee the gouernment of that Iſland which in this terrible battell you haue wonne; for though it were neuer ſo great, yet doe I finde my ſelfe able enough to gouerne it, as well as any other whatſoeuer that euer gouerned Iſland in this world.

To this demand *Don-Quixote* answered, Thou muſt note, friend *Sancho*, that this aduventure, and others of this kind, are not aduentures of Iſlands, but of thwartings and high-ways, wherein nothing elſe is gained but a broken pate, or the loſſe of an eare. Haue patience a while, for aduentures will be offered, whereby thou ſhalt not only bee made a gouernour, but alſo a greater man. *Sancho* rendred him many thanks, and kiſſing his hand againe, and the ſkirt of his Habergeon, he did helpe him to get vp on *Rozinante*, and he leapt on his Aſſe, and followed his Lord: who, with a ſwift pace, without taking leaue, or ſpeaking to thoſe of the Coach, entred into a wood that was hard at hand. *Sancho* followed him as faſt as his beaſt could trotte, but *Rozinante* went off ſo ſwiftly, as he perceiuing hee was like to bee left behinde, was forced to call aloud to his Maſter that hee would ſtay for him. Which *Don-Quixote* did by checking *Rozinante* with the bridle, vntill his wearied Squire did arriue, who as ſoone as hee came, ſaid vnto him: Me thinkes (Sir) that it will not bee amiſſe to retire our ſelues to ſome Church; for according as that man is ill dight with whom you fought, I certainly perſwade my ſelfe that they will giue notice of the fact to the holy brotherhood, and they will ſeek to apprehend vs; which if they doe, in good faith before wee can get out of their clawes, I feare mee we ſhall ſweate for it. Peace, quoth *Don-Quixote*, where haſt thou euer read or ſeene that

Knight

Knight errant that hath beene brought before the Iudge, though he committed neuer so many homicides & slaughters. I know nothing of Omicilles, quoth *Sancho*, nor haue I cared in my life for any : but well I wot, that it concerns the *holy Brotherhood*, to deale with such as fight in the fields, and in that other I will not intermeddle. Then be not afraid, friend, quoth *Don-Quixote*, for I will deliuer thee out of the hands of the *Caldeans*, how much more out of those of the *Brotherhood*. But tell mee in very good earnest, whether thou didst euer see a more valorous Knight then I am, throughout the face of the earth ? Didst thou euer read in Histories, of any other that hath, or euer had more courage in assaying, more breath in perseuering, more dexteritie in offending, or more art in ouerthrowing, then I ? The truth is (quoth *Sancho*) that I haue neuer read any Historie, for I can neyther read nor write, but that which I dare wager, is, that I neuer in my life serued a bolder Master then you are ; and I pray God that wee pay not for this boldnesse, there where I haue said, That which I request you, is, that you will cure your selfe, for you lose much blood by that eare ; and here I haue Lint, and a little *Vnguentum Album* in my Wallet.

All this might be excused, quoth *Don-Quixote*, if I had remembred to make a Viol full of the *Balsamum* of *Fierabras*, for with one drop of it, we might spare both time, and want well all those other medicines. What Violl, and what *Balsamum* is that, said *Sancho Pança* ? It is, answered *Don-Quixote*, a *Balsamum* whereof I haue the receit in memory, which one possessing, he needs not feare death, nor ought he to thinke that he may be killed by any wound : and therefore after I haue made it, and given it vnto thee, thou hast nothing else to doe, but when thou shalt see that in any battell, I be cleauen in twaine (as many times it happens) thou shalt take faire and softly that part of my body that is false to the ground, and put it vp againe with great subtilty on the part that rests in the saddle, before the blood

congeale, hauing euermore great care that thou place it iust and equally; then presently after, thou shalt giue mee two draughts of that *Balsamum*, of which I haue spoken, & thou shalt see me streight become sounder then an Apple. If that be true (quoth *Sancho*) I do presently here renounce the gouernement of the Island you promised, and will demand nothing else in recompence of my seruices of you, but only the receit of this precious liquor; for I am certaine that an ounce thereof will be worth two Rials in any place, and when I haue it, I should need nothing else to gaine my liuing easily and honestly. But let me know, is it costly in making? With lesse then three Rials, quoth *Don-Quixote*, a man may make three gallons of it. But I meane to teach thee greater secrets then this, and do thee greater fauors also. And now let me cure my selfe, for mine eare grieues me more then I would wish. *Sancho* then tooke out of his Wal- let his lint and oyntment to cure his Master.

But when *Don-Quixote* saw that the Vizar of his Helmet was broken, hee was readie to runne madde, and setting his hand to his sword, and lifting vp his eyes to heauen, hee said, I vow to the Creator of all things, and to the foure Gospels where they are largest written, to lead such another life as the great *Marquess of Mantua* did; when he swore to reuenge the death of his Nephew *Valdouinos*, which was, not to eate on Table-cloth, nor sport with his wife, and other things, which although I doe not now remember, I giue them heere for expressed, vntill I take complete reuenge on him that hath done mee this outrage. *Sancho* hearing this, said, You must note, Sir *Don-Quixote*, that if the Knight hath accomplished that which you ordayned, to goe and present himselfe before my Ladie *Dulcinea of Toboso*, then hath he fully satisfied his debt, and deserues no new punishment, except he commit a new fault. Thou hast spoken wel & hit the marke right, said *Don-Quixote*, and therefore I disanull the othe in that of taking any new reuenge on him: but I make it,  
and

and confirme it againe, that I will lead the life I haue said, vntill I take another Helmet like, or as good as this perforce from some Knight. And doe not thinke, *Sancho*, that I make this resolution lightly, or (as they say) with the smoke of strawes; for I haue an author whom I may verie well imitate herein, for the very like in euery respect, past about *Mambrinos* Helmet, which cost *Sacripante* so dearely. I would haue you resigne those kind of othes to the Deuill (quoth *Sancho*) for they will hurt your health, and preiudice your conscience. If not, tell me now, I beseech you, if we shall not these many dayes encounter with any that weares a Helmet, what shall we doe? Will you accomplish the othe, in despite of all the inconueniences and discomforties that ensue thereof? to wit, to sleepe in your clothes; not to sleepe in any dwelling; and a thousand other penitencies, which the othe of the madde old man, the *Marquesse of Mantua* contayned, which you meane to ratifie now? Doe not you consider that armed men trauell not in any of these wayes, but Cartiers and Waggoners, who not onely carry no Helmets, but also for the most part neuer heard speak of them in their liues? Thou dost deceiue thy selfe saying so, replied *Don-Quixote*, for wee shall not haunt these wayes two houres before we shall see more armed Knights then were at the siege of *Albraca*, to conquer *Angelica the faire*.

Well then, let it be so (quoth *Sancho*) and I pray God it befall vs well; whom I deuoutly beseech that the time may come of gayning that Island which cost me so deare, and after let me dye presently, and I care not. I haue already said to thee, *Sancho*. (quoth his Lord) that thou shouldest not trouble thy selfe in any wise about this affaire; for if an Island were wanting, we haue then the Kingdome of *Demarke*, or that of *Sobradisa*, which will come as fit for thy purpose as a ring to thy finger, and principally thou art to reioyce, because they are on the Continent. But omitting this till his owne time, see whether thou hast any thing in thy

thy Wallet, and let vs eat it, that afterWard wee may goe search out some Castle, wherein we may lodge this night, and make the *Balsamum* which I haue told thee. For I vow to God, that this eare grieues mee maruellously. I haue here an Onion, replyed the Squire, a piece of Cheese and a few crusts of bread, but such grosse meats are not besitting so noble a Knight as you are. How ill dost thou vnderstand it, answered *Don. Quixote*? I let thee to vnderstand, *Sancho*, that it is an honour for Knights errant, not to eat once in a moneths space; and if by chance they should eate, to eate onely of that which is next at hand. And this thou mightest certainly conceiue, hadst thou read so many bookes as I haue done. For though I past ouer many, yet did I neuer find recorded in any, that Knights errant did euer eat, but by meere chance and aduenture, or in some costly banquets that were made for them, and all the other dayes they past ouer with herbes and roots: and though it is to be vnderstood that they could not liue without meat, and supplying the other needes of nature, because they were, in effect, men as we are: It is likewise to be vnderstood, that spending the greater part of their liues in Forrests and desarts, and that too without a Cooke, that their most ordinary meats were but course and rusticall, such as thou dost now offer vnto mee. So that, friend *Sancho*, let not that trouble thee which is my pleasure, nor goe not thou about to make a new world, or to hoist Knight Errantry off of her hindges.

Pardon me, good Sir (quoth *Sancho*;) for by reason I can neyther read nor write, as I haue said once before, I haue not salne rightly in the rules and Lawes of Knighthod; and from henceforth my Wallet shall bee well furnished with all kindes of dry fruits for you, because you are a Knight; and for my selfe, seeing I am none, I will prouide fowles and other things, that are of more substance. I say not, *Sancho* (quoth *Don. Quixote*) that it is a forcible law to Knights errant, not to eate any other things then such fruits,

fruits, but that their most ordinary sustenance could bee none other then those, and some herbes they found vp and downe the fields, which they knew very well, and so doe I also.

It is a vertue, quoth *Sancho*, to know those herbes: for as I imagine, that knowledge will some day stand vs in stead: and saying so, he took out the prouision he had, which they both ate together with good conformity. But being desirous to search out a place where they might lodge that night, they did much shorten their poore dinner, and mounting anon on horsebacke, they made as much haste as they could, to find out some dwellings, before the night did fall: but the Sunne and their hopes did fayle them at once, they being neere the Cabins of certaine Goat-heards; and therefore they concluded to take vp their lodging there for that night; for though *Sancho's* griefe was great to lye out of a Village, yet *Don-Quixotes* ioy exceeded it farre, considering he must sleepe vnder open heauen, because hee made account as oft as this befell him, that hee did a worthy act, which did facilitate and ratifie the practice of his Chiuallrie.

## C H A P. III.

*Of that which passeth betwene Don-Quixote, and certayne Goat-heards.*

**H**E was entertained very cheerefully by the Goat-heards: and *Sancho* hauing set vp *Rosinante*, and his Asse, as well as he could, he presently repayed to the smell of certaine pieces of Goat-flesh that stood boyling in a Kettle over the fire, and although he thought in that verie moment to trie whether they were in season to be translated out of the Kettle into the stomake, he did omit it, because he saw the Heards take them off the fire, and spreading certaine Sheep-skins, which



which they had for that purpose on the ground, lay in a trice their rusticall Table, and inuited the Master and man with very cheerefull mind, to come and take part of that which they had. There sate downe round about the skinnes fixe of them, which were all that dwelled in that Fold, hauing first (vsing some course complements) placed *Don-Quixote* vpon a trough, turning the bottome vp.

*Don-Quixote* sate downe, and *Sancho* stood, to serue the cuppe, which was made of horne. His Master seeing him a-foot, said, *Sancho*, to the end that thou mayest perceiue the good included in wandring Knighthood, and also in what possibilitie they are, which exercise themselues in any ministry thereof to arriue briefly to honour and reputation in the world. My will is, that thou dost sit here by my side, and in company with this good people, and that thou bee'st one and the very selfe-same thing with mee, who am thy Master and naturall Lord, that thou eate in my dish, and drinke in the same cuppe wherein I drinke: for the same may be said of Chivalrie that is of Loue, to wit, that it makes all things equall.

I yeeld you great thankes (quoth *Sancho*) yet dare I avouch vnto you, that so I had wherewithall to eat well, I could eat it as well or better standing and alone, then if I sate by an *Emperour*. And besides, if I must say the truth, me thinks, that which I eat in a corner without ceremonies, curiosity, or respect of any, though it were but bread and an Onion, smacks a great deale better, then Turkey-Cockes at other tables, where I must chaw my meat leisurely, drinke but little, wipe my hands often, must not neese nor cough, though I haue a desire or be like to choke, nor doe other things that solitude and libertie bring with them. So that, (good Sir) I would haue you conuert these honours that you would bestow vpon me, in respect that I am an adherent to Chivalrie, as I am beeing your Squire, into things more essentiall and profitable for me then these; and though I remayne as thankfull for them, as if they were receiued,

receiued, yet doe I here renounce from this time vntill the worlds end. For all that, thou shalt sit, for the humble shall be exalted; and so taking him by the arme, hee forced him to sit downe neere himselfe.

The Goat-heads did not vnderstand that *Gibbriſh* of *Squires* and *Knights errant*, and therefore did nothing else but eat, and hold their peace, and looke on their gheſts, that tossed in with their fists whole slices, with good grace and Romakes. The course of flesh being ended, they serued in on the rugges a great quantitie of sheld Akorns, and halfe a Cheese harder then if it were made of rough-casting. The horse stood not the while idle, for it went round about so often, now full, now empty, much like a conduit \* of *Noria*: And in a trice it emptied one of the two wine bags that lay there in the publique view. After that *Don. Quixote* had satisfied his appetite well, he tooke vp a handfull of *A-cornes*, and beholding them earnestly, he began to discourse in this manner:

\* *Arcauzed Noria*, p. 76.

“ Happy time, and fortunate ages were those, whereon  
“ our Ancestors bestowed the title of Golden, not because  
“ Gold (so much prized in this our yron age) was gotten  
“ in that happie time, without any labours, but because  
“ those which liued in that time, knew not these two  
“ words, *Thine* and *Mine*, in that holy age all things were  
“ in common: No man needed for his ordinarie suste-  
“ nance to doe ought else then lift vp his hand, and take  
“ it from the strong Oke, which did liberally inuite them,  
“ to gather his sweet and sauorie fruit. The cleere Foun-  
“ taines, and running Riuers, did offer them these sauorie  
“ and transparent Waters in magnificent abundance. In the  
“ Clifts of Rockes, and hollow Trees, did the carefull and  
“ discrete *Bees* erect their common-wealth, offering to  
“ euery hand without interest, the fertill croppe of their  
“ sweetest trauells. The loftie Corke-tree did dismisſe (of  
“ themſelues, without any other art then that of their native  
“ liberalitie) their broad and light Rindes, wherewithall  
horses

“horses were at first couered, being sustayned by rusticall  
“stakes, to none other end, but for to keepe backe the  
“inclemencies of the Ayre. All then was peace, all ami-  
“tie, and all concord: as yet the plowshare presumed  
“not with rude encounter to open and search the com-  
“passionate bowels of our first mother; for she without  
“compulsion offered vp thorow all the parts of her fer-  
“till and spacious bosome, all that which might satisfie,  
“sustayne, and delight those children which it then had:  
“yea, it was then that the simple and beautifull young  
“Sheepheardeesses went from valley to valley, and hill to  
“hill, with their haire sometimes playted, sometimes di-  
“sheuled, without other apparrell then that, which was  
“requisite to couer comelily, that which modesty wils  
“and euer would haue concealed. Then were of no re-  
“quest the attires and ornaments which are now vsed,  
“by those that esteeme the Purple of Tyre, and the so-ma-  
“ny-wayes-martyrized Silke so much: but onely certaine  
“greene leaues of *Bur-docks* and *Iuie* intertexted and wo-  
“uen together, wherewithall perhaps they went as gor-  
“geously and comelily deckt, as now our Court-dames  
“with all the rare and outlandish inuentions that idle-  
“nesse and curiositie hath found out. Then, were the a-  
“morous conceits of the mind, simply and sincerely de-  
“liuered and imbelished in the very forme and manner  
“that shee had conceyued them, without any artificiall  
“contexture of words to indeere them: fraud, deceit,  
“or malice had not then meddled themselves with plain-  
“nesse and truth: Iustice was in her proper termes, fauor  
“daring not to trouble or confound her, or the respect of  
“profit, which doe now prosecute, blemish, and disturbe  
“her so much. The Law of corruption or taking bribes  
“had not yet possessed the vnderstanding of the Iudge; for  
“then was neyther Iudge nor person to be iudged. May-  
“dens and honesty wandred then, I say, where they listed,  
“alone, Signiorizing secure, that no stranger liberty or la-  
“sciuious

“sciuious intent could preiudice it, or their owne natieue  
“desire or will any way endamage it. But now in these  
“our detestable times no damzell is safe, although shee be  
“hid and shut vp in another new Labyrinth, like that of  
“Crete; for euen there it selfe the amorous plague would  
“enter, either by some cranie, or by the ayre, or by the  
“continuall vrgings of cursed care, to infect her. For whose  
“protection and security was last instituted. By successe of  
“times the order of Knighthood; to defend damzels,  
“protect widowes, and assist Orphans and distressed  
“wights. Of this order am I, friends Goatheards, whom  
“I doe heartily thanke for the good intertainement which  
“you giue vnto me and my Squire: for although that eue-  
“ry one liuing is obliged by the law of nature to fauour  
“Knights Errant; yet notwithstanding, knowing that  
“you knew not this obligation, and yet did receiue and  
“make much of me, it stands with all reason that I do ren-  
“der you thanks with all my heart.

Our Knight made this long Oration (which might haue  
beene well excused) because the Acornes that were giuen  
vnto him, called to his minde the golden world: and there-  
fore the humour tooke him to make the Goat-heards that  
vnprofitable discourse, who heard him all amazed and  
suspended with very great attention all the while. *Sancho*  
likewise held his peace, eating Acornes, and in the meane  
while visited very often the second wine bagge, which be-  
cause it might be fresh, lay hanged vpon a Corke tree.

*Don-Quixote* had spent more time in his speech then in  
his supper; at the end whereof one of the Goat-heards  
said, To the end that you may more assuredly know, Sir  
Knight Errant, that we doe intertaine you with prompt  
and ready will, we will likewise make you some pastime,  
by hearing one of our companions sing, who is a Heard of  
good vnderstanding, and very amorous withall; and can  
besides reade and write, and playes so well on a Rebecke,  
that there is nothing to be desired. Scarce had the Goat-  
heard

heard ended his speech, when the sound of the Rebecke touched his eare, and within a while after he arriued that played on it, being a Youth of some twenty yeers old, and one of a very good grace and countenance. His fellowes demanded if he had supped, and answering that he had; he which did offer the curtisie, said, Then *Anthony*, thou mayst do vs a pleasure by singing a little, that this Gentleman our guest may see, that we enioy amidst these groues & woods, those that know what musicke is: we haue told him already thy good qualities, and therefore we desire that thou shew them, to verifie our words. And therefore I desire thee by thy life, that thou wilt sit and sing the Dittie which thy Vncle the Prebendary made of thy loue, and was so well liked of in our village. I am content, quoth the Youth, and without further intreaty, sitting downe on the truncke of a lopped Oke, he tuned his Rebecke, and after a while began with a singular good grace to sing in this manner:

**I** Know, *Olalia!* thou dost me adore,  
 Though yet to me, the same thou hast not said:  
 Nor shewne it once, by one poore glance or more,  
 Since lone is soonest by such tongues bewray'd.  
 Yet cause I euer held thee to be wise,  
 It me assures, thou bearest me good will:  
 And he is not unfortunate that sees  
 How his affections are not taken ill.  
 Yet for all this, *Olalia!* tis true  
 I by obseruance gather to my woe:  
 Thy minde is fram'd of brasse by art vndew  
 And flint thy bosome is, though it seemes snow.  
 And yet amidst thy rigor's Winter face  
 And other shifts thou v'sest to delay mee,  
 Sometime hope peeping out, does promise grace  
 But woe is mee, I feare tis to betray mee.

*Sweetest!*

Sweetest! once in the ballance of thy minde  
Poyze with iust waights my faith, which neuer yet  
Diminisht, though disfaueur it did finde;  
Nor can increase more, though thou fauour'd'st it.  
If loue be courteous, as some men say;  
By thy humanity, I must collect:  
My hopes, hows' euer thou dost vse delay,  
Shall reape at last, the good I doe expect.  
If many seruices be of esteeme,  
Or power to render a hard heart benigne:  
Such things I did for thee, as make me deeme,  
I haue the match gain'd, and thou shalt be mine.  
For if at any time, thou hast tane heede,  
Thou more then once mightst view, how I was clad.  
To honour thee, on Mundayes with the weede,  
Which worne on Sundayes, got me credit had:  
For loue and brauery still themselves consort,  
Because they both shoote euer at one end:  
Which made me, when I did to thee resort,  
Still to be neat and fine I did contend.  
Heere I omit the dances I haue done,  
And Musiques I haue at thy window giuen:  
When thou didst at Cockcrow listen alone,  
And seem'd'st hearing my voyce, to be in heauen.  
I doe not eke, the prayes here recount  
Which of thy beauty I so oft haue said:  
Which though they all were true, were likewise wont  
To make the enuious, mee for spight upbraide.  
When to Teresa, shee of Berrocal,  
I of thy worths discourse did sometime shape:  
Good God! quoth shee, you seeme an Angels thrall,  
And yet for Idoll, you adore an Ape.

Shee



Shee to her bugles, thanks may giue and chaines,  
False haire, and other shifts that she doth vse,  
To mend her beauty, with a thousand paynes  
And guiles; which might loues very selfe abuse.

Wroth at her words, I gaue her streights the lie,  
Which did her and her Cousin so offend:  
As me to fight, he challeng'd presently,  
And well thou knowst of our debate the end:

I meane not thee, to purchase at a clap,  
Nor to that end, doe I thy fauour sue:  
Thereby thine honour either to intrap,  
Or thee perswade, to take courses vndue.

The Church hath bands, which doe so surely hold,  
As no silke string for strength comes to them neere:  
To thrust thy necke once in the yoke be bold,  
And see if I to follow thee will feare.

If thou wilt not, here solemnly I vow  
By holliest Saints, enwrap't in precious shrine,  
Nener to leaue those hills where I dwell now,  
If't be not to become a Capucine.

Heere the Goat-heard ended his Ditty, and although Don-Quixote intreated him to sing somewhat else, yet would not Sancho Pança consent to it; who was at that time better disposed to sleepe then to heare musicke: and therefore said to his Master, You had better prouide your selfe of a place wherein to sleepe this night, then to heare musicke, for the labour that these good men indure all the day long, doth not permit that they likewise spend the night in singing.

I vnderstand thee well enough, Sancho, answered Don-Quixote, nor did I thinke lesse, but that thy manifold visitations of the Wine-bottle, would rather desire to be recompenced

compenced with sleepe then with musicke. The Wine liked vs all well, quoth *Sancho*: I doe not denie it, replied *Don-Quixote*, but goe thou, and lay thee downe where thou pleasest, for it becomes much more men of my profession to watch then to sleepe. Yet notwithstanding it will not be amisse to lay somewhat againe to mine eare; for it grieues me very much. One of the Goat-heards beholding the hurt, bad him be of good cheere, for he would apply a remedie that should cure it easily. And taking some Rosemary leaues of many that grew thereabouts, he hewed them, and after mixed a little salt among them, and applied this medicine to the eare; he bound it vp well with a cloth, assuring him that he needed to vse no other medicine, as it prooued after in effect.

## C H A P. IIII.

*Of that which one of the Goat-heards recounted to those that were with Don-Quixote.*

**A**Bout this time arriued another Youth, one of those that brought them prouision from the Village, who said, Companions, doe not you know what passeth in the Village? How can we know it being absent, saies another of them? Then wir, quoth the Youth, that the famous Sheepheard, and Student *Chrysostome* died this morning, and they murmure, that he died for loue of that deuillish Lasse *Marcela*, *William* the rich his daughter, she that goes vp and downe these plaines and hills among, vs, in the habite of a *Sheep-beardesse*. Dost thou meane *Marcela*, quoth one of them? Euen her, I say, answered the other; and the iest is, that he hath commanded in his Testament, that he be buried in the fields as if he were a Moore; and that it be at the foote of the Rocke, where the fountaine stands of the Corke tree. For that according to fame, and as they say, he him-  
G selfe

selfe affirmed, was the place wherein he viewed her first. And he hath likewise commended such other things to be done, as the ancients sort of the Village doe not allow, nor thinke fit to be performed; for they seeme to be ceremonies of the Gentiles. To all which objections his great friend *Ambrosio* the Student, who likewise apparelled himselfe like a Sheeheard, at once with him answers, that all shall be accomplished, without omission of any thing, as *Chrysostome* hath ordained, & all the Village is in an vppore about this affaire, and yet it is said that what *Ambrosio* and all the other Sheehearths his friends doe pretend, shall in fine be done: and to morrow morning they will come to the place I haue named, to burie him with great pompe. And as I suppose, it will be a thing worthy the seeing: at leastwise, I will not omit to goe and behold it, although I were sure that I could not returne the same day to the Village. We will all doe the same, quoth the Goathearths, and will draw lots who shall tarry here to keepe all our Hearths. Thou sayest well, *Peter*, quoth one of them, although that labour may be excused; for I meane to stay behinde for you all; which you must not attribute to any vertue, or little curiosity in me, but rather to the forke that prickt my foot the other day, and makes me vnable to trauell from hence. We doe thanke thee notwithstanding, quoth *Peter*, for thy good will. And *Don-Quixote*, who heard all their discourse, intreated *Peter* to tell him who that dead man was, and what the Sheeheardesse of whom they spoke.

*Peter* made answer, that what he knew of the affaire was, that the dead person was a rich Gentleman of a certaine Village, seated among those mountaines, who had studied many yeeres in *Salamanca*, and after returned home to his house, with the opinion to be a very wise and learned man: but principally it was reported of him, that he was skilfull in Astronomie, and all that which passed aboue in heauen, in the Sunne and the Moone; for he would  
tell

tell vs most punctually the clips of the Sunne and the Moone. Friend, quoth *Don-Quixote*, the darkening of these two greater *Luminaries*, is called an *Eclipse*, and not a *Clipse*: but *Peter* stopping not at those trifles, did prosecute his History, saying, He did also Prognosticate when the yeere would be abundant or *Estil*. Thou wouldest say *Steril*, quoth *Don-Quixote*, *Steril* or *Estil*, said *Peter*, all is one for my purpose: and I say, that by his words, his father and his other friends, that gaue credit to him, became very rich. For they did all that he counsell'd them, who would say vnto them, Sow Barley this yere and no Wheat. In this you may sow Pease and no Barley. The next yeere will be good for Oyle. The three ensuing you shall not gather a drop. That science is called *Astrologie*, quoth *Don-Quixote*. I know not how it is called, replied *Peter*; but I know well, he knew all this and much more.

Finally, a few moneths after he came from *Salamanca*, he appeared one day apparelled like a Sheepheard with his flocke, and leather coat; hauing laid aside the long habites that he wore, being a Scholer, and ioyntly with him came also a great friend of his, and fellow Student called *Ambrosio*, apparelled like a Sheepheard. I did almost forget to tell how *Chrysofome* the dead man, was a great maker of verses; insomuch that he made the Carrols of Christmas day at night, and the playes for *Corpus Christi* day, which the Youthes of our Village did represent, and all of them affirmed, that they were most excellent. When those of the Village saw the two Scholers so suddenly clad like Sheepheards, they were amazed and could not ghesse the cause that mooued them to make so wonderfull a change. And about this time *Chrysofomes* Father died, and he remained possessed of a great deale of goods, as well mooueable as immoueable, and no little quantity of cattell great and small; and also a great summe of money; of all which the yong man remained a dissolute Lord. And truly he deserued it all; for he was a good fellow, & a charitable,

and a friend of good folke, & he had a face like a blessing. It came at last to be vnderstood, that the cause of changing his habit was none other, then for to goe vp and downe thorow these desarts after the *Sheepheardeffe Marcela*, whom our Heard named before; of whom the poore dead *Chrysofome* was become enamoured. And I will tell you now, because it is fit you should know it, what this wanton Lasse is, perhaps, and I thinke without perhaps you haue not heard the like thing in all the daies of your life, although you had liued more yeeres then *Sarna*. Say *Sarra*, quoth *Don-Quixote*, being not able to heare him any longer to change one word for another.

The *Sarna* or scabbe, quoth *Peter*, liues long enough too. And if you goe thus, Sir, interrupting my tale at euery pace, we shall not be able to end it in a yeere. Pardon me, friend, quoth *Don-Quixote*, for I speake to thee by reason there was such difference betweene *Sarna* and *Sarra*. But thou didst answer well; for the *Sarna* or scabbe liues longer then *Sarra*. And therefore prosecute thy Historie: for I will not interrupt thee any more. I say then, deare Sir of my soule, quoth the Goat-heard, that there was in our Village a farmer that was yet richer then *Chrysofomes* Father, who was called *William*, to whom fortune gaue in the end of his great riches a daughter called *Marcela*, of whose birth her mother died, who was the best woman that dwelled in all this circuit. Me thinkes I doe now see her quicke before me, with that face, which had on the one side the Sunne, and on the other the Moone, and aboue all, shee was a thriftie house-wife, and a great friend to the poore: For which I belecue that her soule is this very very houre enioying of the gods in the other world. For griefe of the losse of so good a wife, her husband *William* likewise died, leauing his daughter *Marcela* yong and rich in the custody of his Vnkle, who was a Priest, and Curate of our Village. The childe grew with such beauty, as it made vs remember that of her mother, which was very great. And yet not with-

✓

notwithstanding they iudged that the daughters would surpasse hers, as indeed it did: for when shee arriued to the age of foureteene or fiftene yeeres old, no man beheld her, that did not blesse God for making her so faire: and most men remained enamoured and cast-away for her loue.

Her Vncle kept her with very great care and closeness: and yet neuerthelesse the fame of her great beautie did spread it selfe in such sort, that as well for it, as for her great riches, her Vncle was not onely requested by those of our Village, but also was prayed, solicited, and importuned by all those that dwelled many leagues about, and that by the very best of them, to giue her to them in marriage. But he (who is a good Christian euery inch of him) although he desired to marry her presently as soone as she was of age, yet would he not doe it without her good wil; without euer respecting the gaine and profit hee might make by the possession of her goods, whilst he desired her marriage.

And in good sooth this was spoken of, to the good Priest his commendation, in more then one meeting of the people of our Village. For I would haue you to wit, Sir Errant, that in these little Villages they talke of all things, and make account, as I doe, that the Priest must haue bin too good, who could oblige his Parishioners to speake so well of him, and especially in the Villages. Thou hast reason, quoth *Don-Quixote*, and therefore follow on, for the Historie is very pleasant; and thou, good *Peter*, dost recount it with a very good grace.

I pray God, said *Peter*, that I neuer want our Heards; for it is that which makes to the purpose. And in the rest you shall vnderstand, that although her Vncle propounded and told to his Neece the quality of euery wooer, of the many that desired her for wife, and intreated her to marry and chuse at her pleasure; yet would shee neuer answer other, but that shee would not marry as then, and that in respect of her ouer-greene yeeres, shee did not finde her



selfe able enough yet to beare the burden of marriage. With these iust excuses which shee seemed to giue, her Vnkle left of importuning of her, and did expect vntill shee were farther entred into yeeres, and that she might know how to chuse one that might like her. For he was wont to say, and that very well, *That Parents were not to place or bestow their children where they bore no liking.* But see here, when we least imagined it, the coy *Marcela* appeared one morning to become a *Sheepheardesse*, and neither her Vnkle nor all those of the Village which dissuaded her from it, could worke any effect, but she would needs goe to the fields, and keepe her owne sheepe with the other yong Lasses of the towne. And shee comming thus in publike, when her beauty was seene without hinderance, I cannot possibly tell vnto you, how many rich Youthes, as well Gentlemen as Farmers, haue taken on them the habit of *Chrysostome*, and follow wooing of her vp and down those fields. One of which, as is said already, was our dead man, of whom it is said, that leauing to loue her, he had at last made her his Idoll. Nor is it to be thought, that because *Marcela* set her selfe in that liberty, and so loose a life, and of so little or no keeping, that therefore she hath giuen the least token or shadow of dishonesty or negligence: nay rather, such is the watchfulnesse wherewithall shee lookes to her honour, that among so many as serue and sollicite her, not one hath praised or can iustly vaunt himselfe to haue receiued at her hands, the least hope that may be to obtaine his desires. For although she did not flie or shunne the company and conuersation of *Sheepheards*, and doth vse them courteously and friendlily, whensoeuer any one of them begin to discover their intention, be it euer so iust and holy, as is that of *Matrimony*, shee casts them away from her, as with a sling. And with this manner of proceeding shee does more harme in this country, then if the plague had entred into it by her meanes: for her affability and beauty doth draw to it the  
hearts

hearts of those which doe serue; and loue her. But her disdain and resolution doe conduct them to termes of desperation; and so they know not what to say vnto her, but to call her with a loude voyce, Cruell and vngratefull, with other titles like vnto this, which doe cleerely manifest the nature of her condition. And Sir, if you staid here but a few daies, you should heare these mountaines resound with the lamentations of those wretches that follow her.

There is a certaine place not farre off, wherein are about two doozen of Beech-trees, and there is not any one of them in whose rynde is not ingrauen *Marcelas* name, and ouer some names grauen also a crowne in the same tree, as if her louer would plainly denote that *Marcela* beares it away, and deserues the garland of all humane beauty. Heere sighes one Sheepeheard; there another complains, in another place are heard amorous ditties, heere in another, dolefull and despayring laments.

Some one there is that passeth ouer all the whole houres of the night at the foote of an Oke or a rocke; and without folding once his weeping eyes, swallowed & transported by his thoughts, the Sun finds him there in the morning.

And some other there is, who without giuing way or truce to his sighes, doth amidst the seruor of the most fastidious heate of the Summer, stretcht vpon the burning sand, breathe his pittifull complaints to heauen, and of this, and of him, and of those, and these, the beautifull *Marcela* doth indifferently and quietly triumph: all we that know her, doe await to see wherein this her loftinesse will finish, or who shall be so happy as to gaine dominion ouer so terrible a condition, & enioy so Peerelesse a beauty. And because all that I haue recounted, is so notorious a truth, it makes me more easily belecue that our companion hath told, that is said of the occasion of *Chrysothomes* death: and therefore I doe counsell you, Sir, that you doe not omit to be present to morrow at his burial, which wil be worthy the seeing, for *Chrysothome* hath many friends, & the place

wherein he commanded himselfe to be buried, is not halfe a league from hence. I doe meane to be there, said *Don-Quixote*, and doe render thee many thanks for the delight thou hast giuen me, by the relation of so pleasant a Historie. O, quoth the Goat-heard, I doe not yet know the halfe of the aduentures succeeded to *Marcelus* louers, but per-aduenture we may meete some Sheeheard on the way to morrow that will tell them vnto vs. And for the present, you will doe well to goe take your rest vnder some roofe, for the ayre might hurt your wound, although the medicine be such that I haue applied to it, that any contrary accidents need not much to be feared. *Sancho Pança* being wholly out of patience with the Goat-heards long discourse, did sollicite for his part his Master so effectually, as he brought him at last into *Peters* Cabin to take his rest for that night; whereinto after he had entred, he bestowed the remnant of the night in remembrances of his Lady *Dulcinea*, in imitation of *Marcelus* louers. *Sancho Pança* did lay himselfe downe betweene *Roxinante* and his Ass, and slept it out, not like a dis-fauoured louer, but like a man stamped and bruised with tramlings.

## C H A P. V.

Wherein is finished the Historie of the Sheehearresse *Marcela*, with other accidents.

**B**V T scarce had the day begun to discouer it selfe by the Orientall windowes, when fise of the sixe Goat-heards arising, went to awake *Don-Quixote*, and demanded of him whether he yet intended to goe to *Chrysostomes* buriall, and that they would accompany him. *Don-Quixote* that desired nothing more, got vp and commanded *Sancho* to saddle and empannell in a trice; which he did with great expedition, and with the like they all presently began their

their journey. And they had not yet gone a quarter of a league, when at the crossing of a path-way they saw sixe Shepheards coming towards them, apparrelled with black skins, and crowned with Garlands of *Cypresse* and bitter *Enula campana*. Euery one of them caried in his hand a thicke truncheon of Elme. There came likewise with them two Gentlemen a horse-backe, very well furnished for the way, with other three Lackeyes that attended on them. And as soone as they encountred, they saluted one another courteously, and demanded whither they trauelled; and knowing that they all went towards the place of the buriall, they began their journey together. One of the horse-men speaking to his companion, said, I thinke (*M. Vinaldo*) we shall account the time well employed that we shall stay to see this so famous an intertainment; for it cannot chuse but bee famous, according to the wonderfull things these Shepheards haue recounted vnto vs, as well of the dead Shepheard, as also of the murdering *Shepheardesse*. It seemes so to me likewise, quoth *Vinaldo*. And I say I would not onely stay one day, but a whole weeke, rather then misse to behold it. *Don-Quixote* demanded of them what they had heard of *Marcela* and *Chrysothome*? The traeller answered, That they had encountred that morning with those Shepheards, and that by reason they had seene them apparrelled in that mournfull attire, they demanded of them the occasion thereof, and one of them rehearsed it, recounting the strangenesse and beauty of a certaine *Shepheardesse* called *Marcela*; and the amorous pursuits of her by many, with the death of that *Chrysothome*, to whose buriall they rode. Finally, he told all that againe to him, that *Peter* had told the night before.

This discourse thus ended, another began, and was, that hee who was called *Vinaldo*, demaunded of *Don-Quixote* the occasion that mooued him to trauell thus armed thorow so peaceable a countrey? To whom *Don-Quixote* answered, The profession of my exercise doth not license,

or

or permit me to doe other : good dayes, cockering and ease  
 were inuented for soft Courtiers ; but trauell, vnrest, and  
 armes were onely inuented and made for those which the  
 world termes Knights Errant, of which number I my selfe  
 (although vnworthy) am one, and the least of all. Scarce  
 had they heard him say this, when they all held him to bee  
 wood. And to finde out the truth better, *Vinaldo* did aske  
 " him againe, what meant the word *Knights Errant* ? Haue  
 " not you read then, quoth *Don-Quixote*, the Histories and  
 " Annals of England, wherein are treated the famous actes  
 " of King *Arthur*, whom we continually call in our *Casti-*  
 " *lian*, Romance King *Artus* ? of whom it is an ancient and  
 " common tradition in the Kingdome of Great Brittain  
 " that hee neuer died, but that he was turned by art of in-  
 " chantment into a Crow, and that in processe of time hee  
 " shall returne againe to raigne, and recouer his Scepter  
 " and Kingdome. For which reason, it cannot bee proued  
 " that euer since that time vntill this, any Englishman hath  
 " killed a Crow. In this good Kings time was first insti-  
 " tuted the famous order of Knighthood of the Knights  
 " of the *Round Table*, and the loue that is there recounted,  
 " did in euery respect passe, as it is laid downe betweene  
 " Sir *Launcelot du Lake*, and Queene *Guenener*, the honou-  
 " rable Ladie *Quintaniona* being a dealer, and priue ther-  
 " to. Whence sprung that so famous a Dittie, and so cele-  
 " brated here in Spaine, of, *Neuer was Knight of Ladies so*  
 " *well serued, as Launcelot, when that he in Britanie arrived,*  
 " &c. With that progresse so sweet and delightfull of his  
 " amorous and valiant actes : and from that time forward  
 " the order of Knight went from hand to hand, dilating  
 " and spreading it selfe thorow many and sundry parts of  
 " the world : and in it were famous and renoumed for  
 " their feats of armes, the valiant *Amadis of Gaule*, with all  
 " his progenie vntill the fift generation : and the valorous  
 " *Felixmarte of Hircania*, and the neuer-duely prayfed *Ti-*  
 " *rante the White*, together with Sir *Beuis of Hampton*, Sir  
 " *Guy*

"Guy of Warwicke, Sir Eglemore, with diuers others of  
"that Nation and age. And almost in our dayes wee  
"saw, and communed, and heard of the inuincible and  
"valiant Knight *Don Belianis of Greece*. This then, good  
"Sirs, is to be a Knight Errant, and that which I haue said,  
"is the order of Chiuallry: wherein, as I haue already  
"sayd, I (although a finner) haue made profession, and the  
"same doe I professe, that those Knights professed, whom  
"I haue aboue mentioned; and therefore I trauell thorow  
"these solitudes and Desarts, seeking aduentures, with full  
"resolution to offer mine owne arme and person to the  
"most dangerous that fortune shall present, in the aide of  
"weake and needy persons.

By these reasons of *Don-Quixotes*, the trauellers perfectly  
perceiued that hee was none of the wisest, and knew the  
kinde of folly wherewithall he was crossed, whereat those  
remained wonderfully admired, that by the relation of  
the others came to vnderstand it: and *Vinaldo* who was  
very discreete, and likewise of a pleasant disposition, to the  
end they might passe ouer the rest of the way without hea-  
uiness, vnto the rocke of the buriall, which the Sheep-  
heards said was neere at hand, he resolued to giue him fur-  
ther occasion to passe onward with his follies, and there-  
fore said vnto him, Me thinkes, Sir Knight, that you haue  
profest one of the most austere professions in the world:  
And I doe constantly hold, that euen that of the *Charter-*  
"house Monkes is not neere so straight. It may bee as  
"straight as our profession, quoth *Don-Quixote*, but that it  
"should bee so necessary for the world, I am within the  
"breadth of two fingers to call it in doubt. For if wee  
"would speake a truth, the souldier that puts in executi-  
"on his Captaines command, doth no lesse then the very  
"Captaine that commands him. Hence I inferre, that re-  
"ligious men doe with all peace and quietnesse seeke of  
"heauen the good of the earth: but souldiers and wee  
"Knights doe put in execution that which they demand,  
"defending



“ defending it with the valour of our armes, and files of  
“ our swords : not vnder any roose, but vnder the wide  
“ heauens, made as it were in Summer a marke to the in-  
“ supportable Sunne-beames, and in Winter to the rage of  
“ withering frosts. So that we are the ministers of God on  
“ earth, and the armes wherewith hee executeth here his  
“ iustice. And as the affaires of warre and things there-  
“ unto pertayning, cannot bee put in execution, without  
“ sweate, labour and trauell; it followes; that those which  
“ professe warfare, take questionlesse greater paine, then  
“ those which in quiet peace and rest doe pray vnto God,  
“ that he will fauour, and assist those that neede it. I meane  
“ not therefore to affirme, nor doth it once passe through  
“ my thought, that the state of a Knight Errant is as per-  
“ fect as that of a retyred religious man, but onely would  
“ inferre through that which I my selfe suffer, that it is  
“ doubtlesly more laborious, more battered, hungry,  
“ thirly, miserable, torne and lowlie. For the Knights Er-  
“ rant of times past did, without al doubt, suffer much woe  
“ and miserie in the discourse of their life. And if some of  
“ them ascended at last to Empires, won by the force of  
“ their armes, in faith it cost them a great part of their  
“ sweate and bloud: and if those which mounted to so  
“ high a degree, had wanted those Enchanters & Wisemen  
“ that assisted them, they would haue remained much de-  
“ frauded of their desires, and greatly deceiued of their  
“ hopes. I am of the same opinion, replied the Traueller:  
but one thing among many others hath seemed to me very  
ill in Knights Errant, which is, when they perceiue them-  
selues in any occasion to begin any great and dangerous  
aduenture: in which appeares manifest perill of losing their  
liues, they neuer in the instant of attempting it, remember  
to commend themselves to God, as euery *Christian* is bound  
to doe in like dangers, but rather doe it to their Ladies  
with so great desire & deuotion as if they were their God;  
a thing which in mine opinion smels of *Gentilisme*.

“ Sir,

" Sir, quoth *Don-Quixote*, they can doe no lesse in any  
" wise, and the Knight Errant which did any other, would  
" digresse much from his duty. For now it is a receiued  
" vse and custome of Errant Chiuallry, that the Knight ad-  
" uenturous, who attempting of any great feate of armes  
" shall haue his Lady in place, doe mildely and amorously  
" turne his eyes towards her, as it were by them deman-  
" ding that she doe fauour and protect him in that ambi-  
" guous trance which he vndertakes; and moreouer, if none  
" doe heare him, hee is bound to say certaine words be-  
" tweene his teeth, by which hee shall with all his heart  
" commend himselfe to her: and of this we haue innu-  
" merable examples in Histories. Nor is it therefore to bee  
" vnderstood, that they doe omit to commend themselues  
" to God, for they haue time and leisure enough to doe it,  
" in the progresse of the worke.

For all that, replied the Traueller, there remaines in mee yet one scruple, which is, that oftentimes, as I haue read, some speech begins betweene two Knights Errant, and from one word to another their choler begins to be inflamed, and they to turne their horses, and to take vp a good piece of the field, and without any more adoe to runne as fast as euer they can driue to incounter againe; and in the midst of their race, doe commend themselues to their Dames, and that which commonly ensues of this incountring is, that one of them falls downe throwne ouer the crooper of his horse, past thorow and thorow by his enemies Lance, and it befalls the other, that if hee had not caught fast of his horse mane, he had likewise falne.

And here I cannot perceiue, how hee that is slaine, had any leisure to commend himselfe ynto God in the discourse of this so accelerat and hasty a worke. Me thinkes it were better that those words which he spent in his race on his Lady, were bestowed as they ought, and as euery *Christian* is bound to bestow them. And the rather, because I coniecture, that all Knights Errant haue not Ladies

to whom they may commend themselves; for all of them are not amorous.

“ That cannot be answered, *Don-Quixote*, I say it cannot be that there's any Knight Errant without a Lady; for it is as proper and essentiall to such to be enamoured, as to heauen to haue starres: and I dare warrant that no Historie hath yet bin seene, wherein is found a Knight Errant without Loue: for by the very reason that he were found without them, he would be conuinc'd to be no legitimate Knight, but a bastard, and that he entred into the Fortresse of *Chinalrie*, not by the gate, but by leaping ouer the *Staccado* like a robber and a thiefe.

Yet notwithstanding, replied the other, I haue read (if I doe not forget my selfe, that *Don Gataor*, brother to the valorous *Amadis de Gaule*, had neuer any certaine Mistressse, to whom he might commend himselfe; and yet for all that, he was nothing lesse accounted of, and was a most valiant and famous Knight. To that obiection our *Don-Quixote* answered, One Swallow makes not a Summer. How much more that I know, that the Knight whom you alledge, was secretly very much enamoured: besides that, that his inclinatio<sup>n</sup> of louing al Ladies wel, which he thought were faire, was a naturall inclination, which he could not gouerne so well. But it is in conclusion sufficiently verified, that yet he had one Lady whom he crowned Queene of his will, to whom he did also commend himselfe very often and secretly, for he did not a little glory to be so secret in his Loues.

Then Sir, if it be of the essence of all Knights Errant to be in loue, quoth the traueller, then may it likewise be presumed that you are also enamoured, seeing that is annex to the profession? And if you doe not prize your selfe to be as secret as *Don Gataor*, I doe intreate you as earnestly as I may, in all this companies name and mine owne, that it will please you to tell vs the name, countrey, quality and beauty

beauty of your Ladie ; for I am sure shee would account  
 her selfe happy, to thinke that all the world doth know she  
 is beloued and serued by so worthy a Knight as is your self.  
 “ Here *Don-Quixote* breathing forth a deepe sigh, said,  
 “ I cannot affirme whether my sweet enemy delight or no,  
 “ that the world know how much shee is beloued, or that  
 “ I serue her. Onely I dare auouch. (answering to that  
 “ which you so courteously demanded) that her name is  
 “ *Dulcinea*, her countrey *Toboso*, a Village of *Mancha* :  
 “ her calling must be at least of a Princeesse, seeing shee is  
 “ my Queene and Lady, her beauty Soueraigne ; for in  
 “ her are verified and giue glorious lustre to all those im-  
 “ possible and *Chimericall* attributes of beauty, that *Poets*  
 “ giue to their Mistresses : that her haire is gold, her  
 “ forehead the *Elisian* fields, her browes the *Arkes* of  
 “ heauen, her eyes *Sunnes*, her cheekes *Roses*, her lips  
 “ *Corall*, her teeth *Pearles*, her necke *Alabaster*, her bo-  
 “ some *Marble*, *Iuorie* her hands, and her whiteneffe *Snow*,  
 “ and the parts which modesty conceales from humane  
 “ sight, such as I thinke and vnderstand, that the discreete  
 “ consideration may prize, but neuer be able to equalize  
 “ them. Her linage, progeny, and pedigree we desire to  
 “ know likewise, quoth *Vinaldo*. To which *Don-Quixote*  
 “ answered, Shee is not of the ancient *Romane Curcios*,  
 “ *Cayos*, or *Scipios*, nor of the moderne *Colomnas* or *Vrsinos*,  
 “ nor of the *Moncadas* or *Requesenes* of *Cataluna*, and  
 “ much lesse of the *Rebelias* and *Villanonas* of *Valencia*, *Pa-*  
 “ *lfoxes*, *Nucas*, *Rocabertis*, *Corelias*, *Alagones*, *Vrreas*,  
 “ *Foxes* and *Gurreas* of *Aragon*, *Cerdas*, *Manziquez*, *Men-*  
 “ *docas*, and *Guzmanes* of *Castile*, *Lancasters*, *Palias* and  
 “ *Meneses* of *Portugal* ; but shee is of those of *Toboso* of  
 “ the *Mancha* ; a linage, which though it be moderne, is  
 “ such as may giue a generous beginning to the most No-  
 “ ble families of ensuing ages. And let none contradict me  
 “ in this, if it be not with those conditions that *Cerbino*  
 “ put at the foote of *Orlundos* armour, to wit :

Let

Let none from hence presume these armes at all to moue,  
 But be that with Orlando dares his force to proue.

Although my linage be of the *Cachopines* of *Laredo*, replied the trauellet, yet dare I not to compare it with that of *Toboso* in the *Mancha*, although to speake sincerely, I neuer heard any mention of that linage you say, vntil now. What, quoth *Don-Quixote*, is it possible that you neuer heard of it till now?

All the company trauelled, giuing maruellous attention to the reasons of those two; and euen the very Goat-herds and Sheepeherds began to perceiue the great want of iudgement that was in *Don-Quixote*: onely *Sancho Pança* did verily belecue, that all his Masters words were most true, as one that knew what hee was, from the very time of his birth. But that wherein his beliefe staggered somewhat, was of the beautifull *Dulcinea* of *Toboso*; for he had neuer heard speake in his life before of such a name, or Princeesse, although he had dwelled so many yeeres hard by *Toboso*.

And as they trauelled in these discourses, they beheld descending betwixt the clift of two loftie mountaines, to the number of twenty Sheepeherds, all apparelled in skinnes of blacke wooll, and crowned with Garlands; which as they perceiued afterward, were all of Yew and Cypresse; sixe of them carried a Beare, couered with many sorts of flowers and boughes. Which one of the Goat-herds espying, hee said, Those that come there, are they which bring *Crysothorus* body, and the foot of that mountaine is the place where he hath commanded them to burie him. These words were occasion to make them haste to arriue in time; which they did iust about the instant that the others had laid downe the corpes on the ground: and foure of them with sharpe Pickaxes, did digge the graue at the side of a hard Rocke. The one and the others saluted themselves very courteously: and then *Don-Quixote*, and such as came with him, beganne to behold the Beare, wherein

wherein they saw laid a dead body all couered with flowers, and apparrelled like a Sheepheard, of some thirtie yeeres old; and his dead countenance shewed that he was very beautifull, and an able-bodied man.

He had placed round about him in the Beare certaine bookes, and many Papers, some open and some shut, and all together, as well those that beheld this, as they which made the graue, and all the others that were present kept a maruellous silence, vntill one of them which had carried the dead man, said to another,

See well, *Ambrosio*, whether this bee the place that *Chrysothome* meant, seeing that thou wouldest haue all so punctually obserued, which hee commanded in his Testament? This is it, answered *Ambrosio*: for many times my vnfortunate friend recounted to mee in it the History of his mis-haps: euen there he told mee that hee had seene that cruell enemy of mankind first; and there it was, where hee first broke his affection too, as honest as they were amorous: and there was the last time, wherein *Marcela* did end to resolute, and beganne to disdain him, in such sort as she set end to the Tragedie of his miserable life. And here in memory of so many misfortunes, he commanded himselfe to be committed to the bowels of eternall obliuion: and turning himselfe to *Don-Quixote*, and to the other trauellers, hee said, This body, Sirs, which you doe now behold with pitifull eyes, was the treasury of a soule, wherein heauen had hoorded vp an infinite part of his treasures.

This is the body of *Chrysothome*, who was peerelesse in wit, without fellow for courtesie, rare for comelineesse, a Phoenix for friendship, magnificent without measure, graue without presumption, pleasant without offence; and finally, the first in all that which is good, and second to none in all vnfortunate mischances. Hee loued well, and was hated; hee adored, and was disdained; he prayed to one no lesse sauege then a beast; hee importuned

H

a heart



a heart as hard as Marble; he pursued the winde, he cried to Desarts, he serued ingratitude, and hee obtayned for reward the spoyles of death in the midst of the Careere of his life: to which a Sheepheardesse hath giuen end, whom he laboured to eternize, to the end shee might euer liue in the memories of men: as those papers which you see there might very well proue, had he not commanded mee to sacrifice them to the fire, as soone as his body was rendred to the earth.

If you did so, quoth *Vinaldo*, you would vse greater rigour and crueltie towards them then their very Lord, nor is it discreete or iustly done, that his will be accomplished, who commands any thing repugnant to reason. Nor should *Augustus Caesar* himselfe haue gained the reputation of wisdome, if he had permitted that to bee put in execution, which the diuine *Mantuan* had by his will ordained. So that, Seignior *Ambrosio*, now that you commit your friends body to the earth, doe not therefore commit his labour to obliuion: for though he ordained it as one iniured, yet are not you to accomplish it, as one void of discretion: but rather cause, by giuing life to these Papers, that the crueltie of *Marcela* may liue eternally, that it may serue as a document to those that shall breathe in ensuing ages, how they may auoid and shunne the like downefalls: for both my selfe and all those that come here in my companie, doe already know the Historie of your enamoured and despairing friend, the occasion of his death, and what he commaunded ere he deceased. Out of which lamentable relation may be collected, how great hath beene the crueltie of *Marcela*, the loue of *Chrysostome*, the faith of your affection, and the conclusion which those make, which doe rashly run thorow that way, which indiscreete loue doeth present to their view.

We vnderstood yesternight of *Chrysostomes* death, and that he should be interred in this place, and therefore wee omitted our intended Iourneyes, both for curiositie and pitie,

pitie, and resolu'd to come and behold with our eyes that, the relation whereof did so much grieve vs in the hearing; and therefore we desire thee (discreete *Ambrosio*) both in reward of this our compassion, and also of the desire which springs in our breasts, to remedie this disaster if it were possible; but chiefly I for my part request thee, that omitting to burne these Papers, thou wilt licence mee to take away some of them. And saying so, without expecting the Shepherds answer, hee stretched out his hand, and tooke some of them that were next to him. Which *Ambrosio* perceiuing, said, I will consent, Sir, for courtesies sake, that you remaine Lord of those which you haue seized vpon, but to imagine that I would omit to burne these that rest, were a very vaine thought.

*Vinaldo*, who did long to see what the papers contained which hee had gotten, did vnfold presently one of them, which had this title, *A Ditty of despaire*. *Ambrosio* ouerheard him, and said; That is the last paper which this vnfortunate Sheeheard wrote, and because, Sir, that you may see the termes to which his mis-haps conducted him, I pray you to read it, but in such manner as you may bee heard; for you shall haue leisure enough to doe it whilst the graue is a digging. I will doe it with all my heart, replied *Vinaldo*: and all those that were present, hauing the like desire to heare it, they gathered about him, and he reading it with a cleere voyce, pronounced it thus:

## CHAP. VI.

Wherein are rehearsed the despayring Verses of the  
dead Sheepeheard, with other unexpected accidents.

## The Canzone of Chrysofome.

- 1 **S**ince cruell thou (I publish) dost desire,  
From tongue to tongue, and th' one to th' o-  
The efficacy of thy rigor sharpe (ther pole,  
I le hell constrain i' assist my soules desire,  
And in my brest infuse a tune of dole,  
Whereon my voice, as it is wont may harpe,  
And labour as I wish, at once to carpe,  
And tell my sorrowes and thy murdering deedes :  
The dreadfull voyce and accent shall agree,  
And with them meete for greater torture bee,  
Lumpes of my wretched bowels, which still bleedes.  
Then listen, and lend once attentive eare,  
Not well comforted tunes, but howling i' beare,  
That from my bitter bosoms depth takes flight,  
And by constraind raving borne away,  
Issues forth for mine ease and thy despight.
- 2 The Lions roaring and the dreadfull howles  
Of frauening Wolfe; and hissing terrible  
Of squamy Serpent : and the fearefull bleate  
Of some sad monster : of foretelling fowles,  
The Pies crackling, and rumor horrible  
Of the contending winde, as it doth beate  
The Sea : and implacable bellawing, yet  
Of vanquisht Bull : and of the Turtle sole

The feeling mourning, and the dolefull song  
Of th' enuious Owle, with the dyre plaints among,  
Of all th' infernall Squadron full of dole,  
Sallie with my lamenting soule a round,  
All mixed with so strange vnusuall sound,  
As all the senses may confounded be.

For my fierce torments a new way exact,  
Wherein I may account my miserie.

- 3 The dolefull Ecchoes of so great confusion,  
Shall not resound or'e father Tagus sands,  
Nor touch the Olive-watring Betis eares,  
Of my dyre pangs I le onely make effusion  
'Mong it those steeper rocks, and hollow bottome lands,  
With mortified tongue, but liuing teares,  
Sometimes in hidden dales where nought appears,  
Or in vnhauunted Playnes free from accesse:  
Or where the Sunne could ne're intrude a beame,  
Amidst the venomous crue of beasts vncleane,  
Whose wants with bountie, the free Plaines redresse.  
For though among those vast and desert Downes  
The hollow Eccho indistinctly sounds  
Thy matchlesse rigor, and my cruell paine,  
Yet by the priuiledge of my niggard fates,  
It will their force throughout the world proclaime.

- 4 A disdain kills; and patience runs a-ground,  
By a suspicion eyther false or true:  
But iealousie with greater rigour slayes,  
A prolix absence doth our life confound.  
Against feare of obliuion to insue,  
Firme hope of best successe, gines little ease,  
Ineuitable death lurkes in all these,  
But I (O vnseene miracle) doe still line

Jealous, absent, disdain'd, and certaine too  
 Of the suspicions that my life vndoo,  
 Drown'd in obliuion which my fire reuiues,  
 And amongst all those paynes I neuer scope  
 Got, to behold the shadow once of hope:  
 Nor thus despair'd, would I it allow.  
 But cause I may more aggrauate my moanes,  
 To line euer without it, here I vow.

- 3 Can hope and feare at once in one consist?  
 Or is it reason that it should be so?  
 Seing the cause more certayne is of feare.  
 If before mee dyre Jealousie exist,  
 Shall I defleēt mine eyes? since it will shew  
 It selfe by a thousand wounds in my soule there.  
 Or who will not the gates vnto despaire  
 Wide open set, after that he hath spide  
 Murdring disdain? and noted each suspicion,  
 To seeming truths transform'd, O sowre conuersion!  
 Whilst veritie by falshood is belide?  
 O Tyrant of Loues state, fierce Jealousie,  
 With cruell chaines these hands together tie,  
 With stubborne cords couple them, rough disdain.  
 But, woe is mee, with bloody victorie,  
 Your memorie is by my sufferance slaine.
- 6 I die in fine, and cause I le not expect  
 In death or life for the least good successe,  
 I obstinate will rest in Fantasie,  
 And say he doth well, that does affect,  
 And eke the soule most libertie possesse,  
 That is most thrall to loues old Tyrannie,  
 And will affirme mine euer enemy,  
 In her faire shrine, a fayrer soule containes:

And

*And her obliuion from my fault to spring,  
And to excuse her wrongs will witnesse bring,  
That loue by her in peace his state maintaines,  
And with a hard knot and this strange opinion,  
I will accelerate the wretched summon,  
To which guided I am by her scornes rise,  
And offer to the ayre body and soule,  
Without hope or reward of future life.*

- 7 *Thou that by multiplying wrongs dost show,  
The reason forcing me t' vse violence  
Vnto this loathsome life, growne to me hatefull,  
Since now by signes notorious thou maist know  
From my hearts deepest wound; how willingly sense  
Doth sacrifice me to thy scornes vngratefull.  
If my deserts haue seem'd to thee so bootfull,  
As thy faire eyes cleare heauen should be orecaust,  
And clouded at my death: yet doe not so,  
For I le no recompence take for the woe,  
By which, of my soules spoyles possessest thou wast;  
But rather laughing at my funerals sad,  
Shew how mine end begins to make thee glad.  
But tis a folly to aduise thee thus:*

*For I know in my deaths acceleration  
Consists thy glorie, and thy chiefest blisse.*

- 8 *Let Tantalus from the profoundest deepes,  
Come, for it is high time now, with his thirst:  
And Sifus with his oppressing stone.  
Let Ticius bring his Ranc that neuer sleepe,  
And Ixion make no stay with wheele accurst,  
Nor the three Sisters euer labouring on.  
And let them a'l at once their mortall moane,  
Translate into my brest, and lonely sound,*



(If it may be a debt due to despaire)  
 And chaunt sad obsequies with dolefull ayre,  
 Ouer a coarse unworthy of the ground,  
 And the three-fac'd infernall Porter grimme,  
 With thousand Monsters, and Chymæras dimme,  
 Rellish the dolorous descant out amaine:  
 For greater Pompe then this I thinke not fit  
 That any dying louer should obtaine.

- 9 Despayring Canzone, doe not thou complaine,  
 When thou my sad societie shalt refraine:  
 But rather since the cause whence thou didst spring,  
 By my misfortune growes more fortunate,  
 Euen in the graue, thou must shunne sorrowing.

*Chrysothomes Canzone* liked wonderfully all the hearers, although the reader thereof affirmed, that it was not conformable to the relation that hee had receyued of *Marcelus* vertue and care of her selfe. For in it *Chrysothome* did complayne of ieaiousies, suspicions and absence, being all of them things that did preiudice *Marcelus* good fame. To this obiection *Ambrosio* answered (as one that knew very well the most hidden secrets of his friend) You must vnderstand, Sir, to the end you may beter satisfie your owne doubt, that when the vnfortunate Sheepeheard wrote that *Canzone*, hee was absent from *Marcela*; from whose presence he had wittingly withdrawne himselfe, to see if hee could deface some part of his excessiue passions, procured by absence. And as euery thing doth vexe an absent Louer, and euery feare afflict him; so was *Chrysothome* likewise tormented by imagined ieaiousies, and feared suspicions, as much as if they were reall and true. And with this remaynes the truth in her perfection and poynt of *Marcelus* vertue, who excepting that she is cruell, and somewhat arrogant, and very disdainefull, very enuy  
 it

it selfe neyther ought nor can attaynt her of the least defect. You haue reason (quoth *Vinaldo*,) and so desiring to read another paper, he was interrupted by a marvellous vision (for such it seemed) that vnexpectedly offered it selfe to their view: Which was, that on the top of the rocke wherein they made the graue, appeared the Sheepheardesse *Marcela*, so fayre, that her beautie surpassed farre the fame that was spred thereof; such as had not beheld her before, did looke on her then with admiration and silence: and those which were wont to view her, remayned no lesse suspended then the others, which neuer had seene her. But scarce had *Ambrosio* eyed her, when with an irefull and disdayning mind he spake these words; Com'st thou by chance, O fierce Basiliske of these mountaines, to see whether the wounds of this wretch will yet bleed at thy presence? Or dost thou come to insult and vaunt in the Tragicall seats of thy sterne nature? Or to behold from that height, like another mercilesse *Nere*, the fire of inflamed *Rome*? Or arrogantly to trample this unfortunate Carcasse, as the ingratefull daughter did her father *Tarquines*? Tell vs quickly, why thou comest? or what thou dost most desire? for seeing I know that *Chrysothomes* thoughts neuer disobeyed thee in life, I will likewise cause that all those his friends shall serue and reuerence thee.

" I come not here, good *Ambrosio*, to any of those ends  
" thou sayest (quoth *Marcela*) but onely to turne for  
" mine honour, and giue the world to vnderstand how  
" little reason haue all those which make me the authour  
" eyther of their owne paynes, or of *Chrysothomes* death;  
" and therefore I desire all you that bee here present, to  
" lend attention vnto me; for I meane not to spend much  
" time or words, to perswade to the discreet, so manifest  
" a truth. Heaven, as you say, hath made me beautifull, and  
" that so much, that my feature moues you to loue, almost  
" whether you will or no. And for the affection you shew  
" vnto

“vnto me, you say, I and you affirme that I ought to loue  
“you agayne. I know by the naturall instinct that  
“*loue* hath bestowed on me, that each faire thing is ami-  
“able: but I cannot conceiue, why for the reason of be-  
“ing beloued, the partie that is so beloued for her beau-  
“tie, should be bound to loue her loue, although he be  
“foule. And seeing that foule things are worthie of hate,  
“it is a bad argument to say, I loue thee because faire;  
“therefore thou must affect mee, although vncomely. But  
“set the case that the beauties occurre equall on both  
“sides, it followes not therefore that their desires should  
“runne one way. For all beauties doe not enamour, for  
“some doe onely delight the sight, and subiect not the  
“will; for if all beauties did enamour and subiect toge-  
“ther, mens wils would euer runne confused and stray-  
“ing, without beeing able to make any election; for the  
“beautiful subiects being infinite, the desires must also  
“perforce be infinite: and as I haue heard, true loue  
“brookes no diuision, and must needs be voluntary, and  
“not inforced. Which being so, as I presume it is, why  
“would you haue me subiect my will forcibly, without a-  
“ny other Obligation then that, that you say you loue  
“mee? If not, tell me, if heauen had made me foule, as it  
“hath made mee beautifull, could I iustly complaine of  
“you because you affected mee not? How much more,  
“seeing you ought to consider, that I did not chuse the  
“beautie I haue: for such as it is, heauen bestowed it *gra-*  
“*tis*, without my demanding or electing it. And euen as  
“the Viper deserues no blame for the poyson shee carries,  
“although therewithall shee kill, seeing it was bestowed  
“on her by nature, so doe I as little merit to be repre-  
“hended because beautifull; for beautie in an honest  
“woman, is like fire a farre off, or a sharp-edged sword;  
“for neyther that burnes, nor this cuttes any but such as  
“come neere them. Honour and vertues are the orna-  
“ments of the soule, without which, the fairest body is  
“not

“not to be esteemed such. And if that honesty be one of  
“the vertues that adorneth and beautifies most the bodie  
“and soule, why should shee that is beloued because faire,  
“aduenture the losse thereof, to answer his intention,  
“which onely for his pleasures sake labours that shee may  
“lose it with all his force and industrie? I was borne free,  
“and because I might liue freely, I made election of the  
“solitude of the fields. The trees of these mountaines are  
“my companions, the cleare water of these streames my  
“mirrours. With the Trees and Waters I communicate  
“my thoughts and beautie: I am a parted fire, and a sword  
“laid aloofe. Those whom I haue enamoured with my  
“sight, I haue vndeceyued with my words. And if de-  
“sires be sustayned by hopes, I neuer hauing given any to  
“*Chrysothome* or to any other, it may well be said that he  
“was rather slayne by his owne obstinacie, then by my  
“cruelty: and if I be charged that his thoughts were ho-  
“nest, and that I was therefore obliged to answer vnto  
“them, I say, that when in that very place where you  
“make his Sepulchre, hee first broke his mind vnto mee:  
“I told him that mine intencion was to liue in perpetuall  
“solitude, and that onely the earth should gather the  
“fruits of my solitarinesse, and the spoyles of my beautie;  
“and if hee would after this my resolution persist obsti-  
“nately without all hope, and sayle against the wind,  
“what wonder is it that hee should bee drowned in the  
“midst of the gulse of his rashnesse? If I had intertayned  
“him, then were I false: if I had pleased him, then should  
“I doe against my better purposes and proiects. He str-  
“ued, being perswaded to the contrary: he dispayred e’re  
“he was hated. See then if it bee reason that I beare the  
“blame of his torment? Let him complayne who hath  
“beene deceyued; let him despayre, to whom his promi-  
“sed hopes haue sayled; let him confesse it, whom I shall  
“euer call; let him vaunt, whom I shall admit. But let  
“him not call me cruell or an homicide, whom I neuer  
“promised,

"promised, deceiued, called, or admitted. Heauen hath not  
 "yet ordayned that I should loue by destiny, and to thinke  
 "that I would doe it by election, may bee excused. And  
 "let this generall Caueat serue every one of those which  
 "sollicit me for his particular benefit: and let it be known,  
 "that if any shall hereafter dye for my loue, that hee dyes  
 "not iealous or vnfortunate: for whosoever loues not any,  
 "breedes not in reason iealousie in any, nor should any re-  
 "solutions to any be accounted disdaynings. He that calls  
 "me a Sauage, and Basiliske, let him shunne me as a hurt-  
 "full and preiudiciall thing: he that calls me vngratefull,  
 "let him not serue me: he that's strange, let him not know  
 "me: he that's cruell, let him not follow me: for this sa-  
 "uage, this Basiliske, this ingrate, this cruell and strange  
 "one, will neyther seeke, serue, know, or pursue any of  
 "them. For, if *Chrysothomes* impatience and head-long de-  
 "fire slew him, why should mine honest proceeding and  
 "care be inculped therewithall? if I preserue mine integri-  
 "tie in the Society of these Trees, why would any desire me  
 "to lose it, seeing every one couets to haue the like him-  
 "selfe, to conuerse the better among men? I haue, as you  
 "all know, riches enough of mine owne, and therefore doe  
 "not couet other mens. I haue a free condition, and I doe  
 "not please to subiect me. Neyther doe I loue or hate any.  
 "I doe not deceyue this man, or sollicite that other; nor  
 "doe I iest with one, and passe the time with another. The  
 "honest conuersation of the *Pastors* of these Villages, and  
 "the care of my Goats doe intertaine me. My desires are  
 "limited by these mountaines, and if they doe issue from  
 "hence, it is to contemplate the beautie of Heauen; steps  
 "wherewithal the soule trauels towards her first dwelling.

And ending here, without desiring to heate any answer,  
 she turned her back, and entred into the thickest part of the  
 wood, that was there at hand, leauing all those that were  
 present, maruellously admired at her beautie and discre-  
 tion.

Some

Some of the Sheepheards present, that were wounded by the powerfull beames of her beautifull eyes, made proffer to pursue her, without reaping any profit out of her manifest resolution made there in their hearing; which *Don-Quixote* noting, and thinking that the use of this Chivalry did iump fitly with that occasion, by succouring distressed damzels; laying hand on the pummell of his sword, he said in loud and intelligible words: Let no person of whatsoever state or condition he be, presume to follow the faire *Marcela*, vnder paine of falling into my furious indignation. Shee hath shewne by cleere and sufficient reasons, the little or no fault she had in *Chrysofomes* death, and how farre she liues from meaning to condescend to the desires of any of her louers; for which respect it is iust, that in stead of being pursued and persecuted, she be honoured and esteemed by all the good men of the world; for she shewes in it, that it is onely she alone, that liues therein with honest intention. Now whether it was through *Don-Quixotes* menaces, or whether because *Ambrosio* requested them to conclude with the obligation they ought to their good friend; none of the Sheepheards mooued or departed from thence, vntill the graue being made, and *Chrysofomes* papers burned, they laid the body into it, with many teares of the beholders. They shut the Sepulchre with a great stone, vntill a monument were wrought, which *Ambrosio* said he went to haue made, with an Epitaph to this sence:

**H**ere of a louing Swaine  
 The Frozen Carcasse lies:  
 Who was a Heard likewise,  
 And died through disdaine.  
 Sterne rigour hath him slaine,  
 Of a coy, faire, ingrate,  
 By whom lone doth dilate  
 Her Tyrannie amaine.

They



They presently strowed on the graue many flowers and boughes, and euery one condoling a while with his friend *Ambrosio*, did afterward bid him farewell and departed. The like did *Vinaldo* and his companion: and *Don-Quixote* bidding his Oast and the trauellers adieu, they requested him to come with them to *Simill*, because it was a place so fit for the finding of aduentures, as in euery streete and corner of it, are offered more then in any other place whatsoever. *Don-Quixote* rendred them thanks for their aduice, and the good will they seemed to haue to gratifie him, and said, he neither ought, nor would goe to *Simill*, vntill he had freed all those mountaines of theues and robbers, whereof as fame ranne, they were full. The trauellers perceiuing his good intention, would not importune him more, but bidding him againe farewell, they departed, and followed on their iourney: In which they wanted not matter of discourse, as well of the History of *Marcela* and *Chrysostome*, as of the follies of *Don-Quixote*; who determined to goe in the search of the *Sherpherdesse Marcela*, and offer vnto her all that he was able to doe in her seruice. But it befell him not as he thought, as shall be rehearsed in the discourse of this true Historie, giuing end heere to the second Part.





THE DELIGHTFVLL  
 Historie of the most VVittie  
*Knight* Don-Quixote of  
 the MANCHA.

*The third Booke.*

CHAP. I.

*Wherein is rehearsed the unfortunate Adventure  
 hapned to Don-Quixote, by encontring with  
 certaine Yanguelian Carriers.*



**I**N wife Cid Hamete Ven-  
 nengeli recounteth, that as  
 soone as Don-Quixote had  
 taken leaue of the Goat-  
 hears his Oasts the night  
 before, and of all those  
 that were present at the  
 buriall of the Shepheard  
*Chrysofome*, he and his  
 Squire did presently enter  
 into the same wood, into  
 which they had seene the  
 beautifull Shepheardesse *Marsla* enter before. And  
 hauing

hauing trauelled in it about the space of two houres, without finding of her, they arriued in fine to a pleasant meadow, enriched with abundance of flourishing grasse, neere vnto which runnes a delightfull and refreshing streame, which did inuite, yea constraîne them thereby to passe ouer the heat of the day, which did then begin to enter with great feruour and vehemencie.

*Don-Quixote* and *Sancho* alighted, and leauing the *Ass* and *Rozinante* to the spaciousnesse of these plaines, to feed on the plenty of grasse that was there, they ransackt their Wallet, where without any ceremony the Master and man did eate, with good accord and fellowship, what they found therein. *Sancho* had neglected to tie *Rozinante* sure, that he knew him to be so sober and little wanton, as all the Mares of the Pasture of *Cordona* could not make him to thinke the least sinister thought. But fortune did ordaine, or rather the Diuell, who sleepest not at all houres, that a troupe of *Galician* Mares belonging to certaine *Yanguesian* Carriers, did feede vp and downe in the same valley: which Carriers are wont with their beasts to passe ouer the heats in places situated neere vnto grasse and water.

And that wherein *Don-Quixote* hapned to be, was very fit for their purpose. It therefore befell, that *Rozinante* tooke a certaine desire to solace himselfe with the Ladie Mares, and therefore as soone as he had smelt them, abandoning his naturall pace and custome, without taking leaue of his Master, he began a little swift trot, and went to communicate his necessities to them. But they, who as it seemed, had more desire to feed, then to solace them, entertained him with their heeles and teeth in such sort, as they broke all his gyrts, and left him in his naked haire, hauing ouerthrowne the Saddle. But that which surely grieved him most was, that the Carriers perceiuing the violence that was offered by him to their Mares, repaired presently to their succours, with clubs and trunchions, and did so be-labour him, as they fairely laid him along. Now

in

in this season *Don-Quixote* and *Sancho* (which beheld the bombasting of *Rozinante*) approached breathlesse; and *Don-Quixote* said to *Sancho*, for as much as I can persecue friend *Sancho*, these men are no Knights, but base rascally people of vile quality: I say it, because thou mayest helpe me to take due reuenge, for the outrage which they haue done before our faces to *Rozinante*. What a Diuell, quoth *Sancho*, what reuenge should we take, if these be more then twentie, and we but two, and peradventure but one and a halfe? I am worth a hundred, replied *Don-Quixote* and without making any longer discourse, he set hand to his sword, & flew vpon the *Tanguesians* and *Sancho Pança*, moued by his Lords example, did the like, when with the first blow *Don-Quixote* pitching a buffe coate that one of them wore, wounded him grievously in the shoulder. The *Tanguesians* seeing themselves so rudely handled by two men onely, they being so many, ran to the stakes and truncheons of their carriage, and hemming in their aduersaries in the midst of them, they laid on them with admirable speede and vehemencie. True it is, that at the second peale they stricke *Sancho* downe to the ground, and the like hapned to *Don-Quixote*; his dexterity and courage being nothing auailable in that trance: and his fate to ordaining, he fell iust at his Coursers feet, who had not yet gotten vp: by which we may ponder the fury where-withall truncheons batter, being placed in wrathfull and rusticall fists.

The Carriers perceiuing the euill they had committed, trussing vp their loading with all possible speede, followed on their way, leaving both the Adventurers in a bad fashion, and a worse talent. The first that came to himselfe, was *Sancho Pança*, who seeing his Lord neere vnto him, said with a weake and plaintiue voyce, Sir, *Don-Quixote*! O Sir *Don-Quixote*! What wouldst thou haue, brother *Sancho*, replied the Knight with the like effeminate and dolefull tune? I would, quoth *Sancho*, haue of your worship, a draught of

two of the liquot of *Fesblas*, if you haue any of it at hand, perhaps it is good to cure broken bones, as well as it helps wounds. What would we want, vnhappy that I am, replied *Don-Quixote*, if I had it here? But I sweare vnto thee, *Sancho Pança*, by the faith of a Knight Errant, that before two daies passe (if fortune dispose not otherwise) I will haue it in my power, or it shall hardly escape my hands. I pray you, quoth *Sancho*, within how many dayes, thinke you, shall we be able to stirre our feet? I can say of my selfe, quoth the crushed Knight, that I cannot set a certaine terme to the dayes of our recouery, but I am in the fault of all, for I should not haue drawne my sword against men that are not Knights, as well as I am, and therefore I beleue that the God of battels hath permitted, that this punishment should be giuen vnto mee, in paine of transgressing the lawes of Knighthood.

Wherefore, brother *Sancho*, it is requisite that thou beest aduertised of that which I shall say vnto thee now, for it importeth both our goods very much, and is, that when thou beholdest, that the like rascally Rabble doe vs any wrong, doe not wait till I set hand to my sword against them; for I will not doe it in any sort. But draw thou thine, and chastise them at thy pleasure; and if any Knights shall come to their assistance and succour, I shall know then how to defend thee, and offend them with all my force; for thou hast by this perceiued by a thousand signes and experiences, how far the valor of this mine invincible arme extendeth it selfe, (so arrogant remained the poore Knight, through the victory he had gotten of the hardy *Biscaine*.) But this aduice of his Lord, seemed not so good to *Sancho Pança*, as that he would omit to answer vnto him, saying, Sir, I am a peaceable, quiet, and sober man, and can dissemble any iniurie, for I haue wife and children to maintaine and bring vp: wherefore let this likewise be an aduice to you (seeing it cannot be a commandement) that I will not set hand to my sword in any wise, be it against Clowne or Knight:

Knight: and that from this time forward I do pardon before God all the wrongs that they haue done, or shall doe vnto me, whether they were, be, or shall be done by high or low person, rich or poore, Gentleman or Churle, without excepting any state or condition. Which being heard by his Lord, he said; I could wish to haue breath enough, that I might answer thee with a little more ease, or that the griefe which I feele in this ribbe, were asswaged euer so little, that I might, *Panpa*, make thee vnderstand the error wherein thou art.

Come here, poore foole; if the gale of Fortune hitherto so contrarie, doe turne in our fauour, swelling the sayles of our desire, in such sort as we may securely and without any hinderance, arriue at the Hauen of any of those Ilands, which I haue promised vnto thee, what would become of thee, if I conquering it, did make thee Lord thereof, seeing thou wouldest disable thy selfe in respect thou art not a Knight, nor desirest to be one, nor wouldest haue valour or will to reuenge thine iniuries, or to defend thy Lordships? For thou must vnderstand, that in the Kingdomes and Provinces newly conquered, the minds of the inhabitants are neuer so thorowly appeased or wedded to the affection of their new Lord, that it is not to be feared, that they will worke somenoueltie to alter things againe, and turne, as men say, afresh to trie fortune. And it is therefore requisite that the new possessour haue vnderstanding to gouerne, and valour to offend and defend himselfe, in any aduenture whatsoever. In this last that hath befallne vs, quoth *Sancho*, I would I had had that vnderstanding and valour of which you speake; but I vow vnto you, by the faith of a poore man, that I am now fitter for plaisters then discourses. I pray you trie whether you can arise, and we will helpe *Rosinante*, although he deserues it not, for he was the principall cause of all these troubles; I would neuer haue beleueed the like before of *Rosinante*, whom I euer held to be as chaste and peaceable a person as my selfe. In fine, they say well,



well, that one must haue a long time to come to the knowledge of bodies; and that ther's nothing in this life secure. Who durst affirme, that after those mightie blowes which you gaue to that vnfortunate Knight Errant, would succeed so in poste, and as it were in your pursuite this so furious a tempest of staues, that hath discharged it selfe on our shoulders? Thine, *Sancho*, replied *Don-Quixote*, are perhaps accustomed to beare the like showres, but mine nursed betwene \* *Cottons* and *Hollands*, it is most euident that they must feele the grieue of this disgrace. And were it not that I imagine, (but why doe I say I imagine?) I know certainly that all these incommodities are annex to the exercise of armes, I would here die for very wrath and displeasure. To this the Squire answered, Sir, seeing these disgraces are of the \* essence of Knighthood, I pray you whether they succeed very often, or whether they haue certaine times limited wherein they befall. For me thinks that within two aduentures more, we shall wholly remaine disabled for the third, if the Gods in mercy doe not succour vs.

Know, friend *Sancho*, replied *Don-Quixote*, that the life of Knights Errant, is subiect to a thousand dangers and misfortunes; and it is also as well in the next degree and power, to make them Kings and Emperours, as experience hath shewne in sundry Knights, of whose Histories I haue intire notice. And I could recount vnto thee now, (did the paine I suffer permit me) of some of them which haue mounted to those high degrees which I haue said, onely by the valour of their arme: And the very same men found them both before and after in diuers miseries and calamities. For the valorous *Amadis of Gaul* saw himselfe in the power of his mortall enemy *Aracelm* the inchanter, of whom the opinion runnes infallible, that he gaue vnto him being his prisoner, more then two hundred stripes with his horse bridle, after he had tied him to a piller in his base-court. And there is moreover a secret Author of no little credit, who sayes, that the *Cavalier de l'Espe*, being

\* *Sinabafat*.

\* *Cofecha*.

being taken in a Ginne like vnto a snatch that slip vnder his feet, in a certaine Castell, after the fall, found himselfe in a deepe dungeon vnder the earth bound hands and feet; and there they gaue vnto him a glister of snow-water and sand, which brought him almost to the end of his life; and were it not that he was succoured in that great distresse, by a wise man his very great friend, it had gone ill with the poore Knight. So that I may very well passe among so many worthy persons: for the dangers and disgraces they suffered, were greater then those which we doe now indure. For, *Sancho*, I would haue thee to vnderstand, that these wounds which are giuen to one, with those instruments that are in ones hand by chance, doe not disgrace a man; and it is written in the lawes of single combat in expresse termes, that if the Shoo-maker strike another with the Last which he hath in his hand, although it be certainly of wood, yet cannot it be said, that he who was stricken, had the Bastinado. I say this, to the end thou maist not thinke, although we remaine bruised in this last conflict, that therefore we be disgraced; for the armes which those men bore, and wherewithall they belaboured vs, were none other then their packe-staues, and as farre as I can remember, neuer a one of them had a tucke, sword, or dagger. They gaue me no leisure, answered *Sancho*, to looke to them so neerely, for scarce had I laid hand on my Truncheon, when they blest my shoulders with their Pines, in such sort as they wholly depriued me of my sight, and the force of my feet together, striking me downe on the place where I yet lie straught, and where the paine of the disgrace receiued by our Cudgelling, doth not so much pinch me, as the griefe of the blowes, which shall remaine as deeply imprinted in my memorie, as they doe in my backe.

For all this thou shalt vnderstand, brother *Pança*, replied *Don-Quixote*, that there is no remembrance, which time will not end, nor griefe, which death will not consume. What greater misfortune, quoth *Sancho*, can there be,

then that, which onely expecteth time and death to end and consume it? If this our disgrace were of that kinde, which might be cured by a payre or two of playsters, it would not be so euill; but I begin to perceiue, that all the salues of an Hospitall will not suffice to bring them to any good termes. Leauē off, *Sancho*, and gather strength out of weakenesse, said *Don-Quixote*, for so will I likewise doe, and let vs see how doth *Rozinante*; for me thinks that the left part of this mis-hap hath not falne to his lot. You ought not to maruell at that, quoth *Sancho*, seeing he is likewise a Knight Errant; that whereat I wonder, is that mine Asse remains there without payment, where we are come away without ribbes. Fortune leauēs alwaies one doore open in disasters, quoth *Don-Quixote*, whereby to remedie them. I say it, because that little beast may supply *Rozinantes* want, by carrying of me from hence vnto some Castle, wherein I may be cured of my wounds. Nor doe I hold this kinde of riding dishonourable, for I remember to haue read, that the good old *Silenus* tutor of the merry god of laughter, when he entred into the Citie of the hundred gates, rode very fairely mounted on a goodly Asse. It is like, quoth *Sancho*, that he rode as you say vpon an Asse; but there is great difference betwixt riding, and being cast athwart vpon one like a Sacke of rubbish. To this *Don-Quixote* answered, The wounds that are receiued in battell, doe rather giue honour, then depriue men of it. Wherefore friend *Pança*, doe not reply any more vnto me, but as I haue said, arise as well as thou canst, and lay me as thou pleasest vpon thy beast; and let vs depart from hence, before the night ouertake vs in these Desarts. Yet I haue heard you say, quoth *Pança*, that it was an ordinary custome of Knights Errant to sleepe in Downes and Desarts, the most of the yeere, and that so to doe, they hold for very good hap.

That is, said *Don-Quixote*, when they haue none other shift, or when they are in loue; and this is so true, as there hath

hath beene a Knight that hath dwelt on a rocke exposed to the Sunne, and the shadow, and other annoyances of heauen for the space of two yeeres, without his Ladies knowledge, and *Amadis* was one of that kinde, when calling himselfe *Beltinebros*, he dwelt in the *Poore Rocke*; nor doe I know punctually eight yeeres or eight moneths, for I doe not remember the Historie well; let it suffice that there he dwelt doing of penance, for some disgust which I know not, that his Ladie *Oriana* did him. But leauing that apart, *Sancho*, dispatch and away, before some other disgrace happen like that of *Rozinante*, to the Asse.

Euen there lurkes the Diuell, quoth *Sancho*: and so breathing thirty sobs, and threescore sighes, and a hundred and twenty discontents and execrations against him, that had brought him there, he arose, remaining bended in the midst of the way, like vnto a Turkish bow, without being able to addresse himselfe: and notwithstanding all this difficulty, he harnessed his Asse (who had beene also somewhat distracted, by the ouermuch liberty of that day) and after he hoysted vp *Rozinante*, who were he indued with a tongue to complaine, would certainly haue borne his Lord and *Sancho* companie. In the end, *Sancho* laid *Don-Quixote* on the Asse, and tied *Rozinante* vnto him, and leading the Asse by the halter, trauelled that way, which he deemed might conduct him soonest towards the highway. And fortune which guided his affaires from good to better, after he had trauelled a little league, discovered it vnto him, neere vnto which he saw an Inne, which in despite of him, and for *Don-Quixotes* pleasure must needs be a Castle. *Sancho* contended that it was an Inne, and his Lord that it was not; and their controuersie indured so long, as they had leifure before they could decide it, to arriue at the lodging; into which *Sancho*, without farther verifizing of the dispute, entred with all his loading.

## C H A P. II.

*Of that which hapned vnto the ingenuous Knight, within the Inne, which he supposed to be a Castle.*

**T**H E Inne-keeper seeing *Don-Quixote* laid o-uertwart vpon the Asse, demanded of *Sancho*, what disease he had? *Sancho* answered, that it was nothing but a fall downe from a rocke, and that his ribs were thereby somewhat bruised. This Inne-keeper had a wife, not of the condition that those of that Trade are wont to be, for she was of a charitable nature, and would grieue at the calamities of her neighbours, and did therefore presently occurre to cure *Don-Quixote*, causing her daughter, a very comely yong Mayden, to assist her to cure her ghest. There likewise serued in the Inne an *Asturian* Wench, who was broad-faced, flat-pated, saddle-nosed, blinde of one eye, and the other almost out; true it is, that the comeliness of her body supplied all the other defects. She was not seuen palmes long from her feet vnto her head, and her shoulders which did somewhat burden her, made her looke oftner to the ground then shee would willingly. This beautifull piece did assist the yong Mayden, and both of them made a very bad bed for *Don-Quixote* in an old wide chamber, which gaue manifest tokens of it selfe, that it had sometimes serued many yeeres only to keepe chopt straw for horses; in which was also lodged a Carrier, whose bed was made a little way off from *Don-Quixotes*, which, though it was made of Canuasse, and coverings of his Mules, was much better then the Knights, that onely contained foure boords roughly plained, placed on two vnequall treffels; *A floskebed*, which in the thinnesse seemed rather a Quilt; full of pellets, and had not they showne that they were wooll, through certaine breaches made by antiquity on the Ticke, a man would by the hardnesse rather take them to be stones: a  
paire

paire of sheets made of the skinnes of Targets, and a couerlet, whose threeds, if a man would number, he should not lose one onely of the account. In this vngracious bed did *Don-Quixote* lie: and presently the Oastesse and her daughter anoint him all ouer, and *Maritornes* (for so the *Asturian* Wench was called) did hold the candle. The Oastesse at the playstring of him, perceiuing him to be so bruised in sundry places, she said vnto him, that those signes rather seemed to proceed of blowes then of a fall. They were not blowes, replied *Sancho*, but the rocke had many sharpe ends and knobs on it, whereof euery one left behind it a token; and I desire you, good Mistresse, quoth he, to leaue some flaxe behind, and there shall not want one that needeth the vse of it; for I assure you, my backe doth likewise ake. If that be so, quoth the Oastesse, it is likely that thou didst also fall. I did not fall, quoth *Sancho Pança*, but with the suddaine affright that I tooke at my Masters fall, my body doth so grieue me, as mee thinkes, I haue beene handsomely belaboured. It may well happen as thou saiest, quoth the Oastesse daughter: for it hath befallne me sundry times to dreame, that I fell down from some high Tower, and could neuer come to the ground: and when I awaked, I did find my selfe so troubled and broken, as if I had verily falne.

There is the point, Masters, quoth *Sancho Pança*, that I without dreaming at all, but being more awake then I am at this houre, found my selfe to haue very few lesse tokens and markes then my Lord *Don-Quixote* hath. How is this Gentleman called, quoth *Maritornes* the *Asturian*? *Don-Quixote of the Mancha*, replied *Sancho Pança*, and he is a Knight Errant, and one of the best and strongest that haue beene seene in the world these many ages. What is that, a Knight Errant, quoth the Wench? Art thou so yong in the world, that thou knowest it not, answered *Sancho Pança*? Know then, sister mine, that a Knight Errant is a thing, which in two words you see well cudgelled, and after be-  
comes



comes an Emperour. To day hee is the most vnfortunate creature of the world, and the most needy; and to morrow he will haue two or three Crownes of Kingdomes to bestow vpon his Squire. If it bee so, quoth the Oastesse, Why then hast not thou gotten at least an Earledom, seeing thou art this good Knight his Squire? It is yet too soone, replied *Sancho*, for it is but a month sithence we began first to seeke aduentures; and we haue not yet encountred any worthy of the name. And sometimes it befalls, that searching for one thing, wee encounter another. True it is, that if my Lord *Don-Quixote* recouer of this wound or fall, and that I be not changed by it, I would not make an exchange of my hopes for the best title of Spaine.

*Don-Quixote* did very attentiuely listen vnto all these discourses, and sitting vp in his bed as well as hee could, taking his Oastesse by the hand, he said vnto her, Beleeue me, beautifull Lady, that you may count your selfe fortunate; for hauing harboured my person in this your Castle, which is such, that if I doe not praise it, it is because men say, that proper praise stinkes, but my Squire will informe you what I am: onely this I will say my selfe, that I wil keepe eternally written in my memory the seruice that you haue done vnto me, to be gratefull vnto you for it whilst I liue. And I would it might please the highest heauens, that Loue held me not so intralld and subiect to his lawes as hee doth, and to the eyes of that ingratefull faire, whose name I secretly mutter, then should those of this beautifull damzell presently signiorize my liberty.

The Oastesse, her daughter, and the good *Maritornes* remained confounded, hearing the speech of our Knight Errant, which they vnderstood as well as if hee had spoken Greeke vnto them, but yet they conceiued that they were words of complements and loue, and as people vnused to heare the like language, they beheld and admired him, and he seemed vnto them a man of the other world, and so returning

turning him thanks, with Tauernly phraſe for his large offers, they departed. And the *Aſturian Maritornes* cured *Sancho*, who needed her helpe no leſſe then his Maſter.

The Carrier and ſhe had agreed to paſſe the night together: and ſhe had giuen vnto him her word, that when the gheſts were quiet and her Maſter ſleeping, ſhe would come vnto him, and ſariſſie his deſire, as much as hee pleaſed. And it is ſaid of this good wench, that ſhe neuer paſſed the like promiſe, but that ſhee performed it, although it were giuen in the miſt of a wood, and without any witneſſe; for ſhe preſumed to bee of gentle blood, and yet ſhee held it to be no diſgrace to ſerue in an Inne: for ſhee was wont to affirme, that diſgraces and miſfortunes brought her to that ſtate. The hard, narrow, niggard, and counterſait bed, whereon *Don. Quixote* lay, was the firſt of the foure, and next vnto it was his Squires, that onely contained a Matte and a Couerlet, and rather ſeemed to be of ſhorne Canaſſe, then Wooll. After theſe two Beddes, followed that of the Carrier, made, as wee haue ſaid, of the pannels and furniture of two of his beſt Mules, although they were twelue all in number, faire, fat, and goodly beaſts; for hee was one of the richeſt Carriers of *Arenale*, as the Author of this hiſtory affirmeth, who maketh particular mention of him, becauſe he knew him very well: and beſides, ſome men ſay, that hee was ſomewhat a kinne vnto him. Omitting that *Cid Mahamat Benengeli* was a very exact Hiſtoriographer, and moſt curious in all things, as may be gathered very well, ſeeing that thoſe which are related, being ſo minute and triuiall, he would not ouer-ſlip them in ſilence.

By which thoſe graue Hiſtoriographers may take example, which recount vnto vs matters ſo ſhort and ſuccinctly, as they doe ſcarce arriue to our knowledge, leauing the moſt ſubſtantiall part of the workes drowned in the Inkehome, either through negligence, malice, or ignorance.

\* Here the Author ſaith ſome one cunningly, to be deſcended of a Moorish race.

Many

Many good fortunes fall the Author of *Tablante de Ricamonte*, and him that wrote the booke wherein are rehearsed the acts of the *Comte Tomillas*. Lord, with what precisenesse doe they describe every circumstance? To conclude, I say, that after the Carrier had visited his Mules, and giuen vnto them their second refreshing, he stretched himselfe in his couerlets, and expected the comming of the most exquisite *Maritornes*. *Sancho* was also by this plaistered and laid downe in his bed, and though he desired to sleepe, yet would not the griefe of his ribs permit him. And *Don-Quixote* with the paine of his sides, lay with both his eyes open like a Hare.

All the Inne was drowned in silence, and there was no other light in it, then that of a lampe, which hung lighting in the midst of the entry. This maruailous quietnesse, and the thoughts which alwaies represented to our Knight the memory of the successes, which at every pace are recounted in bookes of Knighthood (the principall Authors of his mis-hap) called to his imagination one of the strangest follies that easily may be coniectured, which was, he imagined that he arriued to a famous Castle (for as we haue said, all the Innes wherein he lodged, seemed vnto him to be such) & that the In-keepers daughter was the L<sup>d</sup>. daughter of the Castle, who ouercome by his comelinesse and valour, was enamoured of him, and had promised, that shee would come to solace with him for a good space, after her Father and Mother had gone to bed. And holding all this Chimera and fiction, which he himselfe had built in his braine, for most firme and certaine, he began to be vexed in minde, and to thinke on the dangerous trance, wherein his honesty was like to fall, and did firmly purpose in heart, not to commit any disloyaltie against his Lady *Dulcinea of Toboso*, although very *Queene Gueneuer* with her Lady *Queintanon*, should come to sollicite him. Whilst thus he lay thinking of these \* follies, the houre approached (that was vn lucky for him) wherein the *Asturian* Wench

\* *Desperatus.*

wench should come, who entred into the Chamber in search of her Carrier, in her smocke, barefooted, and her haire trust vp in a coiffe of suttian, with soft and wary steps. But she was scarce come to the dore, when *Don-Quixote* felt her, and arising & sitting vp his in bed in despite of his plaisters, and with great greefe of his ribbes, he stretched forth his armes to receive his beautifull Damzell the *Asburian*, who crouching, and silently went groping with her hands, to finde out her sweet-heart, and incountred with *Don-Quixotes* armes, who presently seized very strongly vpon one of her wrists, and drawing her towards him (the daring not to speake a word) he caused her to sit vpon his beds-side, and presently groped her smocke, and although it was of <sup>b</sup> the strongest Canuasse, hee thought it was most subtil and fine Holland. Shee wore on her wrists certaine braceless of glasse, which he esteemed to be precious Orientall pearles. Her haire, which was almost as rough as a horse-taile, he held to be wires of the glisteringst gold of *Arabia*, whose brightnesse did obscure that of the Sunne. And her breath, which certainly smelled like to stale salt fish, referu'd from ouer-night, seemed vn-to him a most redolent, aromaticall and sweet smell: and finally hee painted her in his phantasie of the same very forme and manner, as he had read in his bookes of Knight-hood, of a certaine Princesse which came to visit a Knight who was grievously wounded, being ouercome by his loue, embellished with all the Ornaments that here wee haue recounted: and the blindness of this poore Gallant was such, as neither the touching, saueur, or other things that accompanied the good Damzell, could vndeceiue him, being such as were able to make any other; saue a Carrier, vomit vp his bowels, but rather hee made full account, that hee held the Goddesse of loue betweene his armes, and holding her still very fast, hee beganne to court her with a low and amorous voice in this manner:

I could wish to finde my selfe in termes, most high  
and

a *Bismar.*b *Harpillar.*

"and beautifull Lady, to bee able to recompence so  
 "great a fauour, as that which with the presence of  
 "your matchlesse feature you haue shewne vnto mee: but  
 "fortune (who is neuer weary of persecuting the good)  
 "hath pleased to lay me in this bedde, therein I lie so bro-  
 "ken and bruised, that although I were desirous to sa-  
 "tisfie your will, yet is it impossible; specially seeing to  
 "thy impossibility may bee added a greater, to wit, the  
 "promised faith which I haue giuen to the vnmatchable  
 "*Dulcinea of Toboso*, the onely Lady of my most hidden  
 "thoughts: for did not this let mee, doe not hold mee to  
 "be so senselesse and madde a Knight, as to ouerslip so for-  
 "tunate an occasion as this, which your bounty hath of-  
 "fered to me.

*Maritornes* remained sweating, through anxiety to  
 see her selfe held so fast by *Don-Quixote*, and without ei-  
 ther vnderstanding, or giuing attention to his words,  
 shee laboured all that shee could, to free her selfe from him  
 without speaking a word. The Carrier, whose bad intenti-  
 on kept him still waking, did feare his Lady from the time  
 that shee first entred into the roome, and did attentiuely  
 giue eare to all *Don-Quixotes* discourses, and ieaious that  
*Asturian* should breake promise with him for any other,  
 he drew neerer vnto *Don-Quixotes* bedde, and stood quiet,  
 to see whereunto those words which he could not vnder-  
 stand, tended.

But viewing that the wench striued to depart, and *Don-  
 Quixote* laboured to with-hold her, the iest seeming euill  
 vnto him, he vp with his arme, and discharged so terrible a  
 blow on the inamoured Knights iawes, as he bathed all his  
 mouth in bloud, and not content herewithall, he mounted  
 vpon the Knight, and did tread on his ribbes, and passed  
 them all ouer with more then a trot. The bed which was  
 somewhat \* weake, and not very firme of foundation,  
 being vnable to suffer the addition of the Carrier, fell  
 downe to the ground, with so great a noise, as it waked  
 the

\* *Endeble.*

the Inne-keeper; who presently suspecting, that it was one of *Maritornes* conflicts, because shee answered him not, hauing called her lowdly, he forth with arose, and lighting of a lampe, he went towards the place where he heard the noise. The wench perceiuing that her Master came, and that hee was extreme chollericke, did all ashamed and troubled runne into *Sancho Pança's* bedde, who slept all this while very soundly, and there crouched, and made herselfe as little as an Egge. Her Master entered crying, Whore, where art thou? I dare warrant that these are some of thy doings. By this *Sancho* awaked, and feeling that bulke lying almost wholly vpon him, hee thought it was the night-Mare, and beganne to lay with his fists here and there about him very swiftly, and among others raught *Maritornes* (I know not how) many blowes; who grieved for the paine she indured there, casting all honesty aside, gaue *Sancho* the exchange of his blowes so trimly, as she made him to awake in despite of his sluggishnesse. And finding himselfe to bee so abused of an vncouth person, whom he could not behold, hee arose and caught hold of *Maritornes* as well as hee could, and they both began the best fight and pleasantest skirmish of the world.

The Carrier perceiuing by the light which the Inne-keeper brought in with him, the lamentable state of his Mistris, abandoning *Don-Quixote*, he instantly repaired to giue her the succor that was requisite; which likewise the Inne-keeper did, but with an other meaning, for hee approached with intention to punish the wench, beleeuing that shee was infallibly the cause of that harmony. And so as men say, the Cat to the Rat, the Rat to the Cord, the Cord to the Post; so the Carrier stricke *Sancho*, *Sancho* the wench, shee returned him againe his liberality with interest, and the Inne-keeper laide lode vpon his maide also. And all of them did mince it with such expedition, as there was no leasure at all allowed to any one of them for breathing. And the best of all was, that the Inne-



Inne-keepers lampe went out, and then finding themselves in darkenesse, they belaboured one another so without compassion, and at once, as wheresoeuer the blow fell, it bruised the place pittifully.

\* The holy brotherhood, or the Santa Hermandad, are a certaine number of men, whose chiefe office is to free the highway from Robbers.

There lodged by chance that night in the Inne one of the Squadron of these, which are called of the old<sup>a</sup> holy brotherhood of *Toledo*, hee likewise hearing the wonderfull noise of the fight, he laid hand on his rodde of office, and the tinne-boxe of his titles, and entred into the chamber without light, saying, Stand still to the officer of Justice, and to the holy brotherhood. And saying so, the first whom he met, was the poore battered *Don-Quixote*, who lay ouerthrowne in his bed, stretched, with his face vpward without any feeling, and taking hold of his beard, he cryed out incessantly, Helpe the Justice. But seeing that he whom hee held fast, bowed neither hand or foote, hee presently thought that he was dead, and that those battailants that fought so eagerly in the roome, had slaine him; wherefore he lifted his voice and cryed out loudly, saying, Shut the Inne dore, and see that none escape, for here they haue kild a man. This word astonished all the combatants so much, as euery one left the battaile in the very termes, wherein this voice had ouertaken them. The Inne-keeper retyred himselfe to his chamber, the Carrier to his couerlets, the wench to her couch, and onely the vnfortunate *Don-Quixote* and *Sancho*, were not able to moue themselves from the place wherein they lay. The officer of the holy brotherhood, in this space letting slip poore *Don-Quixotes* beard, went out for light, to search and apprehend the delinquents; but hee could not finde any, for the Inne-keeper had purposely quenched the lampe, as hee retyred to his bed: wherefore the officer was constrained to repaire to the chimney, where, with great difficulty, after he had spent a long while doing of it, hee at last lighted a candle.

## CHAP. III.

Wherein are rehearsed the innumerable misfortunes, which Don-Quixote and his good Squire Sancho suffered in the Inne, which he to his harme thought to be a Castle.

**B**Y this time *Don-Quixote* was come to himselfe againe out of his trance, and with the like lamentable note, as that where-withall hee had called his Squire the day before, when hee was ouer-throwne in the Vale of the Pack-staues, hee called to him, saying, Friend *Sancho*, art thou asleepe? sleepest thou, friend *Sancho*? What, I asleepe? I renounce my selfe, quoth *Sancho*, full of griefe and despite, if I thinke not all the deuils in hell haue beene visiting of mee here this night.

Thou maist certainly beleuee it, replied *Don-Quixote*, for either I know very little, or else this Castle is iuchanted. For I let thee to wit, but thou must first sweare to keepe secret that which I meane to tell thee now, vntill after my death. So I sweare, quoth *Sancho*. I say it, quoth *Don-Quixote*, because I cannot abide to take away any bodies honour. Why, quoth *Sancho* againe, I sweare that I will conceale it vntill after your Worships daies, and I pray God that I may discouer it to morrow.

Haue I wrought thee such harme, *Sancho*, replied the Knight, as thou wouldest desire to see mee end so soone? It is not for that, Sir, quoth *Sancho*, but because I cannot abide to keepe things long, lest they should rotte in my custody. Let it be for what thou pleasest, said *Don-Quixote*, for I doe trust greater matters then that to thy loue and courtesie. And that I may rehearse it vnto thee briefly, know that a little while since, the Lord of this Castels Daughter came vnto me, who is the most faire & beauti-

" beautifull Damzell, that can be found in a great part  
 " of the earth, What could I say vnto thee of the ornāmets  
 " of her person? what of her excellent wit? what of other  
 " secret things, which, that I may preserue the faith due  
 " vnto my Lady *Dulcinea* of *Toboso*, I passe ouer in silence?  
 " I will only tell thee, that heauen, enuious of the inestima-  
 " ble good that fortune had put in my hands; or perhaps  
 " (and that is most probable) this Castell, as I haue said, is  
 " enchanted, iust at the time when we were in most sweet  
 " and amorous speech, I being not able to see or know  
 " from whence it came, there arriued a hand ioyned to the  
 " arme of some mighty Giant, and gaue me such a blow on  
 " the iawes, as they remaine all bathed in bloud, and did  
 " after so thumpe and bruisse mee, as I feele my selfe worse  
 " now, then yesterday when the Carriers, through *Roxi-*  
 " *nantes* madnesse, did vse vs as thou knowest; By which I  
 " coniecture that the treasure of this Damzels beauty, is  
 " kept by some enchanted Moore, is not reserued for me.

Nor for mee, quoth *Sancho*, for I haue beene bum-  
 basted by more then foure hundred Moores, which haue  
 hammered mee in such sort, as the bruising of the Packe-  
 staues, was gilded bread and spice-cakes in comparison of  
 it: but, Sir, I pray you tell me, how can you call this a good  
 and rare aduenture, seeing we remaine so pittifully vsed af-  
 ter it? and yet your harmes may be accounted lesse, in re-  
 spect you haue held, as you said, that incomparable beauty  
 betwene your armes: but I, what haue I had other then  
 the greatest blowes that I shall euer haue in my life? Vn-  
 fortunate that I am, and the Mother which bare mee, that  
 neither am an Errant Knight, nor euer meanes to bee any,  
 & yet the greatest part of our mis-haps stil falls to my lot. It  
 seems that thou wast likewise beaten, replied *Don-*  
*Quixote*. Euill befall my linage, quoth *Sancho*, haue not I  
 told you I was? Be not grieued friend, replied the Knight,  
 for I will now compound the precious *Balsamum*, which  
 will cure vs in the twinkling of an eye.

The officer hauing by this time lighted his Lampe, entered into the roome to see him, whom he accounted to bee dead: and as soone as *Sancho* saw him; seeing him to come in, in his shirt, his head lapt vp in a kerchiefe, the Lampe in his hand, hauing withall a very euil-fauoured countenance, hee demanded of his Lord, Sir, is this by chance the enchanted Moore, that turnes anew to torment vs, for somewhat that is yet unpunished? Hee cannot bee the Moore, answered *Don-Quixote*, for Nigromancers suffer not themselves to be seene by any.

If they suffer not themselves to be seene, quoth *Sancho*, they suffer themselves at least to bee felt: if not, let my shoulders beare witnesse. So might mine also, said *Don-Quixote*: but notwithstanding this is no sufficient argument to prooue him whom wee see, to be the enchanted Moore. As thus they discoursed, the officer arriued, and finding them to commune in so peaceable and quiet manner, he rested admired. Yet *Don-Quixote* lay with his face vpward as he had left him, and was not able to stirre himselfe, hee was so beaten and be-plastered. The officer approaching demanded of him, Wel, how dost thou, good fellow? I would speake more mannerly, quoth *Don-Quixote*, if I were but such a one as thou art: is it the custome of this Countrey, you bottle-head, to talke after so rude a manner to Knights Errant? The other impatient, to see one of so vile presence, vse him with that bad language, could not indure it, but lifting vp the Lampe, oyle and all, gaue *Don-Quixote* such a blow on the pate with it, as he broke his head in one or two places, and leauing all in darkenesse behinde him, departed presently out of the Chamber. Without doubt (quoth *Sancho* seeing this accident) Sir, that was the enchanted Moore, and I thinke hee keepeth the treasure for others, and reserueth only for vs fistis, and Lampe-blowes. It is as thou saiest, quoth *Don-Quixote*, and therefore wee are not to make account of these enchantments, or be wroth and angry at them: for in respect

that they are invisable and fantastically, wee shall not finde him on whom wee may take reuenge, though wee labour euer so much to doe it. Arise therefore, *Sancho*, if thou beest able, and call to the Constable of this Fortresse, and procure me some oile, wine, salt, and vineger, that I make the wholsome *Balsamum*: for verily I beleuee that I doe neede it very much at this time, the blood runneth so fast out of the wound which the spirit gaue mee euen now. *Sancho* then got vp with grieft enough of his bones, and went without light towards the Inne-keepers, and incountred on the way the officer of the holy brother-hood, who stood hearkning what did become of his enemy; to whom he said, Sir, whosoeuer thou beest, I desire thee do vs the fauor and benefit to giue me a little Rosemary, Oile, Wine, and Salt, to cure one of the best Knights Errant that is in the earth, who lieth now in that bed sorely wounded by the hands of an enchanted Moore that is in this Inne. When the officer heard him speake in that manner, he held him to bee out of his wits; and because the dawning beganne, hee opened the Inne dore, and told vnto the Oast, that which *Sancho* demanded. The Inne-keeper presently prouided all that hee wanted: and *Sancho* carried it to his Master, who held his head betweene both his hands, and complained much of the grieft that the blow of his head caused, which did him no other hurt then to raise vp two blisters somewhat great, and that which he supposed to bee blood, was onely the humour, which the anxiety and labour of minde he past in this last darke aduventure, had made him to sweate.

In resolution *Don-Quixote* tooke his simples, of which he made a compound, mixing them all together, and then boiling of them a good while, vntill they came (as hee thought) to their perfection, hee asked for a Violl where in he might lay this precious liquor: but the Inne being vnable to afford him any such, hee resolved at last to

\* *Hofa de lata.* put it into \* a tinne Oyle-pot, which the Oast did freely  
giue

giue him; and forthwith hee said ouer the pot eighty *Pater-nosters*, and as many *Aues*, *Salues*, and *Creedes*, and accompanied euery word with a Croffe, in forme of benediction, at all which ceremonies *Sancho*, the Inne-keeper, and the Officer of the holy brother-hood were present, for the Carrier went very soberly to dresse and make ready his Mules.

The liquor being made, hee himselfe would presently make experience of the vertue of that precious *Balsamum*, as he did imagine it to bee, and so did drinke a good draught of the ouer-plus that could not enter into his pot, being a quart or thereabouts; and scarce had he done it, when he began to vomit so extremely, as hee left nothing vncastr vp in his stomacke, and through the paine and agitation caused by his vomits, hee fell into a very abundant and great sweate, and therefore commanded himselfe to bee well couered, and left alone to take his ease. Which was done forthwith, and hee slept three houres: and then awaking, found himselfe so wonderfully eased, and free from all bruising and paine, as hee doubted not but that hee was thorowly whole; and therefore did verily perswade himselfe, that hee had happened on the right manner of compounding the *Balsamum of Fierabras*: and that hauing that medicine, hee might boldly from thenceforth vndertake any ruines, battailes, conflicts, or adventures, how dangerous soeuer. *Sancho Pança*, who likewise attributed the suddaine cure of his Master to miracle, requested, that it would please him to giue him leaue to sippe vp the remainder of the *Balsamum*, which rested in the kettle, and was no small quantity; which *Don-Quixote* granted: and hee lifting it vp betwene both hands, did with a good faith, and better talent, quasse it off all, being little lesse then his Master had drunke. The successe then of the Historie is, that poore *Sancho's* stomacke was not so delicate as his Lords, wherefore before hee could cast, hee was



tormented with so many cruell pangs, loathings, sweats, and dismayes, as he did verily perswade himselfe, that his last houre was come: and perceiuing himselfe to bee so afflicted and troubled, he cursed the *Balsamum*, and the Theefe which had giuen it to him. *Don-Quixote* seeing of him in that pitifull taking, said, I belecue, *Sancho*, all this euill befallerth thee, because thou art not dub'd Knight: for I perswade my selfe, that this liquor cannot helpe any one that is not. If your Worship knew that, quoth *Sancho*, (euill befall mee and all my lineage) why did you therefore consent that I should taste it?

In this time the drench had made his operation, and the poore Squire did so swift and vehemently discharge himselfe by both channels, as neither his Mat, or Canuasse-co-uering could serue after to any vse. He swet, and swet againe, with such excessiue swoonings, as not only himselfe, but likewise all the beholders did verily deeme, that his life was ending. This storme and mis-hap endured about some two houres, after which, he remained not cured as his Master, but so weary and indisposed, as he was not able to stand.

But *Don-Quixote*, who, as we haue said, felt himselfe eased and cured, would presently depart to seeke adu-entures, it seeming vnto him, that all the time which he abode there, was no other then a depriuing, both of the world and needfull people, of his fauour and assistance: and more through the security and confidence that he had in his *Balsamum*. And carried thus away by this desire, he himselfe saddled his Horse *Rozinante*, and did empannell his Squires beast, whom he likewise holpe to apparell himselfe, and to mount vpon his Asse. And presently getting a Horse-backe, he road ouer to a corner of the Inne, and laid hand on a lauelin that was there, to make it serue him in stead of a Lance. All the people that were in the Inne, stood beholding of him, which were about twentie in number.

The Inne-keepers Daughter did also looke vpon him, and he did neuer withdraw his eye from her, and would euer and anon breathe forth so dolefull a sigh, as if he had plucked it out from the bottome of his heart, which all the beholders tooke to proceed from the griefe of his ribs, but specially such as had seene him playstered the night before. And being both mounted thus a Horse-backe, he called the Inne-keeper, and said vnto him with a graue and "stayed voyce, Many and great are the fauours, Sir Constable, which I haue receiued in this your Castle, and doe remaine most obliged, to gratifie you for them, all the dayes of my life. And if I may pay or recompence them by reuenging of you vpon any proud Miscreant, that hath done you any wrongs, know, that it is mine Office to helpe the weake, to reuenge the wronged, and to chastise Traytours. Call therefore to memory, and if you finde any thing of this kinde to commend to my correction, you need not but once to say it, for I doe promise vnto you, by the Order of Knighthood, which I haue receiued, to satisfie and appay you according vnto your owne desire.

The Inne-keeper answered him againe with like grauity and stayednesse, saying, Sir Knight, I shall not need your assistance when any wrong is done to me, for I know very well my selfe, how to take the reuenge that I shall thinke good when the iniurie is offered. That only which I require, is, that you defray the charges whereat you haue bin here in the Inne this night, as well for the Straw and Barley giuen to your two horses, as also for both your beds. This then is an Inne, quoth *Don-Quixote*? That it is, and an honourable one too, replied the Inne-keeper. Then haue I hitherto liued in an errour, quoth *Don-Quixote*: for in very good sooth, I tooke it till now to be a Castle, and that no meane one neither. But since that it is no Castle but an Inne, that which you may doe for the present time, is to forgiue me those expences, for I cannot doe

ought against the customes of Knights Errant; of all which I most certainly know (without euer hauing read vntill this present, any thing to the contrarie) that they neuer paie for their lodging, or other thing, in any Inne wheresoeuer they lay. For by all Law and right, any good entertainment that is giuen vnto them, is their due, in recompence of the insupportable trauels they indure, seeking of aduentures both day and night, in Summer and Winter afoote and a horse-backe, with thirst and hunger, in heate, and cold, being subiect to all the distemperatures of Heauen, and all the discommodities of the earth. All that concerns mee nothing, replied the Inne-keeper: pay vnto me my due, and leaue these tales and Knight-hoods apart, for I care for nothing else, but how I may come by mine owne. Thou art a mad and a bad Oast, quoth *Don-Quixote*: and saying so, he spurd *Rozinante*, and flourishing with his Iauelin, hee issued out of the Inne, in despite of them all, and without looking behind him to see once whether his Squire followed, hee rode a good way off from it.

The In-keeper seeing hee departed without satisfying him, came to *Sancho Pança*, to get his money of him: who answered, that since his Lord would not pay, hee would likewise giue nothing: for being, as hee was Squire to a Knight Errant, the very same rule and reason that exempted his Master from payments in Innes and Tauernes, ought also to serue and be vnderstood as well of him. The In-keeper grew wroth at these words, and threatned him, that if he did not pay him speedily, he would recouer it in manner that would grieue him. *Sancho* replied, swearing by the order of Knight-hood which his Lord had receiued, that he would not pay one *denier*, though it cost him his life; for the good and ancient customes of Knights Errant, should neuer through his default bee infringed, nor should their Squires which were yet to come into the world, euer complaine on him, or vpbraide him for

trans.

transgressing or breaking so iust a dutie. But his bad fortune ordained, that there were at the very time in the same Inne foure Clothiers of *Segonia*, and three Point-makers of the Stewes of *Cordona*, and two neighbours of the Market of *Simill*, all pleasant folke, well-minded, malicious, and playesome, all which pricked and in a manner moued all at one time, and by the very same spirit, came neere to *Sancho*, and pulling him downe off his Asse, one of them ran in for the Inne-keepers Couerlet, and casting him into it, they looked vp, and seeing the House was somewhat too low for their intended businesse, they determined to goe into the base Court, which was ouer-head onely limited by heauen: and then *Sancho* being laid in the midst of the Blanket, they began to tolle him aloft, and sport themselves with him, in the manner they were wont to vse Dogs at Shrouetide. The out-cries of the miserable betossed Squire were so many and so lowd, as they arriued at last to his Lords hearing, who standing awhile to listen attentiuely what it was, beleueed that some new aduenture did approach, vntill he perceiued at last, that he which cried, was his Squire: wherefore turning the Reines, he made towards the Inne with a loathsome gallop, and finding it shut, he rode all about it, to see whether he might enter into it.

But scarce was he arriued at the walles of the base Court which were not very hie, when he perceiued the foule play that was vsed towards his Squire; for he saw him descend and ascend into the ayre againe with such grace and agilitie, that did his choller permit, I certainly perswade my selfe he would haue burst for laughter. He assayed to mount the wall from his Horse, but he was so bruised and broken, as he could not doe as much as alight from his backe. Wherefore from his backe he vsed such reprochfull and vile language to those which tossed *Sancho*, as it is impossible to lay them downe in writing. And notwithstanding all his scornfull speech, yet

\* Gausy.

yet did not they cease from their laughter and labour, nor the flying *Sancho*, from his complaints, now and then meddled with threats, now and then with intreaties; but auailed very little, nor could preuaile, vntill they were constrained by wearinesse to giue him ouer. Then did they bring him his Ass againe, and helping him vp vpon it, they lapt him in his " mantle. And the compassionate *Martines* beholding him so afflicted and ore-laboured, thought it needfull to helpe him to a draught of water, and so brought it him from the well, because the water thereof was coolest. *Sancho* tooke the pot, and laying it to his lips, he abstained from drinking by his Lords perswasion, who cryed to him aloud, saying, Sonne *Sancho*, drinke not water, drinke it not, for it will kill thee. Behold, I haue here with me the most holy *Balsamum* (and shewed him the oyle-pot of the drenches he had compounded) for with only two drops that thou drinkest, thou shalt without all doubt remaine whole and sound. At those words *Sancho* looking behind him, answered his Master with a lowder voice, Haue you forgotten perhaps so soone, how that I am no Knight? or doe you desire, that I vomit the remnant of the poore bowels that remaine in mee since Yesternight? Keepe your liquor for your selfe in the Deuils name, and permit me to liue in peace; and the conclusion of this speech, and his beginning to drinke, was done all in one instant: but finding at the first draught that it was water, he would not tast it any more, but requested *Martines* that shee would giue him some wine, which shee did streight with a very good will, and likewise paid for it, out of her owne purse; for in effect it is written of her, that though shee followed that trade, yet had shee some shadowes and lineaments in her of Christianity. As soone as *Sancho* had drunken, he visited his Ass ribs with his heeles twice or thrice; and the Inne being opened, he issued out of it, very glad that he had payed nothing, and gotten his desire, although it were to the cost of his ordinary sureties;

sureties, to wit, his shoulders. Yet did the Inne-keeper remaine possessor of his wallets, as a payment for that he ought him; but *Sancho* was so distracted when he departed, as he neuer missed them. After he departed, the Inne-keeper thought to haue shut vp the Inne doore againe, but the Gentlemen tossers would not permit, being such folke, that if *Don-Quixote* were verily one of the Knights of the round Table, yet would not they esteeme him two chips.

## C H A P. IIII.

*Wherein are rehearsed the discourses passed betweene Sancho Pança, and his Lord Don-Quixote, with other adventures worthy the recitall.*

**S***ancho* arriued to his Master all wanne and dismayed, in so much as he was scarce able to spur on his beast. When *Don-Quixote* beheld him in that case, he said to him, Now doe I wholly perswade my selfe, friend *Sancho*, that that Castle or Inne is doubtlesly enchanted. For those which made pastime with thee in so cruell manner, what else could they be but spirits, or people of another world? which I doe the rather beleue, because I saw, that whilst I stood at the barrier of the yard, beholding the acts of thy sad Tragedy; I was not in any wise able either to mount, or alight from *Rozinante*: for as I say, I thinke they held me then enchanted. For I vow to thee by mine honour, that if I could haue either mounted or alighted, I would haue taken such vengeance on those lewd and treacherous Caitifs, as they should remember the iest for euer, though I had therefore aduentured to transgresse the laws of Knighthood. Which, as I haue oft-times said vnto thee, permitteth not any Knight to lay hands on one that is not knighted, if it be not in defence of his proper life and person, and that in case of great and vrgent necessity. So would I also haue reuenged.



uenged my selfe, quoth *Sancho*, if I might, were they Knights or no Knights, but I could not: and yet I doe infallibly beleue, that those which tooke their pleasure with me, were neither ghosts, nor enchanted men as you say, but men of flesh and bones as we are, and all of them as I heard them cald, whilst they tossed mee, had proper names, for one was tearmed *Peter Martinez*, and another *Tenorio Herriander*, and I heard also the Inne-keeper called *Iohn Palameque the deafe*: so that for your inability of not leaping ouer the barriers of the yard, or alighting off your horse, was only enchantments in you. Whereby I do clearly collect this much, that these aduentures which we goe in search of, will bring vs at last to so many disuentures, as we shall not be able to know which is our right foot. And that which we might doe best according to my little vnderstanding, were to returne vs againe to our village, now that it is reaping time, and looke to our goods, omitting to leape thus, as they say, out of the Frying-pan into the fire.

How little doest thou know, *Sancho*, replied *Don-Quixote*, what appertaineth to *Chiuallry*? Peace, and haue patience, for a day will come, wherein thou shalt see with thine owne eyes, how honourable it is to follow this exercise. If not, tell me, what greater content may there be in this world, or what pleasure can equall that of winning a battell, and of triumphing ouer ones enemy? none without doubt. I thinke it be so, quoth *Sancho*, although I doe not know it; only this I know, that since we became Knights Errant, or that you are one (for there is no reason why I should count my selfe in so honourable a number) we neuer ouercame any battell, if it was not that of the *Biscaine*, and you came euen out of the very same with halfe your eare and beauerlesse. And euer after that time, we haue had nothing but cudgels, and more cudgels, blowes, and more blowes: I carrying with me besides of ouerplus, the tossing in the blanket, and that, by reason it

was

was done to me by enchanted persons, I cannot be reuenged, and by consequence shall not know that true gulf and delight, that is taken by vanquishing mine enemies, whereof you speake euen now. That is it which grieues me, as it should thee also, *Sancho*, quoth *Don-Quixote*: but I will procure hereafter to get a sword, made with such art, that whosoeuer shall weare it, no kinde of enchantment shall hurt him. And perhaps fortune will present mee the very same which belonged to *Amadis*, when he called himselfe the *Knight of the burning sword*, which was one of the best, that euer Knight had in this world: for besides the vertue that I told, it did also cut like a Razor, and no armour, were it euer so strong or enchanted, could stand before it. I am so fortunate, quoth *Sancho*, that when this befell, and that you found such a sword, it would only serue and be beneficiall, and stand in stead such as are dubb Knights, as doth your *Balsamum*, whilest the poore Squires are cram'd full with sorrowes. Feare not that, *Sancho*, quoth *Don-Quixote*, for fortune will deale with thee more liberally then so.

In these discourses *Don-Quixote* and his Squire rode, when *Don-Quixote* perceiuing a great and thicke dust to arise in the way, wherein he trauailed, turning to *Sancho*, said, This is (*Sancho*) the day, wherein shall be manifest the good which *Fortune* hath reserued for me. This is the day, wherein the force of mine arme must be shewne as much as in any other whatsoeuer, and in it will I doe such feats, as shall for euer remaine recorded in the bookes of fame; doest thou see, *Sancho*, the dust which riseth there? Know that it is caused by a mighty army, and sundry and innumerable Nations, which come marching there. If that be so, quoth *Sancho*, then must there be two armies, for on this other side is raised as great a dust. *Don-Quixote* turned backe to behold it, and seeing it was so indeed, he was maruailous glad, thinking that they were doubtlesly two armies, which came to fight one with another, in the midst  
of

of that spacious Plaine. For he had his fantasie euer replenished with these battels, enchantments, successes, rauiings, loues, and challenges, which are rehearsed in bookes of Knighthood: and all that euer hee spoke, thought, or did, was addrest and applyed to the like things: and the dust which he had scene was raised by two great flocks of Sheepe, that came thorow the same field by two different waies, and could not be discerned by reason of the dust, vntill they were very neere: *Don-Quixote* did affirme that they were two armies, with so very good earnest as *Sancho* beleueed it, and demanded of him, Sir, what then shall we two doe? What should we doe (quoth *Don-Quixote*) but assist the needfull and weaker side? For thou shalt know, *Sancho*, that he who comes towards vs, is the great Emperour *Alisamfaron*, Lord of the great Island of *Trapobana*. The other who marcheth at our backe, is his enemy the King of the *Garamantes*, *Pentapoline of the naked arme*, so called, because he still entereth in battell, with his right arme naked. I pray you, good Sir, quoth *Sancho*, to tell me why these two Princes hate one another so much? They are enemies, replied *Don-Quixote*, because that this *Alisamfaron* is a furious Pagan, and is enamoured of *Pentapolins* Daughter, who is a very beautifull and gracious Princessse, and moreouer a Christian. And her Father refuseth to giue her to the Pagan King, vntill first he abandon *Mahometts* false sect, and become one of his religion. By my beard, quoth *Sancho*, *Pentapolin* hath reason, and I will helpe him all that I may. By doing so, quoth *Don-Quixote*, thou performest thy duty; for it is not requisite that one be a Knight, to the end he may enter into such battels. I doe apprehend that my selfe, quoth *Sancho*, very well: but where shall we leaue this Ass in the meare time, that we may be sure to finde him againe after the confliet, for I thinke it is not the custome to enter into battell, mounted on such a beast?

"It is true, qd. *Don-Quixote*, that which thou maist doe,

"is,

"is, to leaue him to his aduentures, & care not whether he  
 "be lost or found, for we shall haue so many horses, after  
 "comming out of this battell victors, that very *Rozinante*  
 "himselfe, is in danger to be changed for another. But  
 "be attentiuē, for I meane to describe vnto thee the prin-  
 "cipall Knights of both the armies. And to the end thou  
 "maiest the better see and note all things, let vs retire  
 "our selues there to that little hillocke, from whence both  
 "the Armies may easily be descryed.

They did so, and standing on the toppe of a hill, from  
 whence they might haue seene both the flockes, (which  
*Don-Quixote* called an army) very well, if the clouds of  
 dust had not hindred it and blinded their sight, yet not-  
 withstanding our Knight seeing in conceit that which  
 really hee did not see at all, began to say with a loud  
 voice,

"That Knight which thou seest there with the yellow  
 "armour, who beares in his shield a Lyon crownd, crou-  
 "ching at a Damzels feet, is the valorous *Laurelio*,  
 "Lord of the *Siluer Bridge*: the other, whose armes are  
 "powdred with flowers of gold, and Beares in an Azure  
 "field, three Crownes of siluer, is the dreaded *Micoco-*  
 "*tembo*, great Duke of *Quirocia*: the other limmed like  
 "a Gyant, that standeth at his right hand, is the vndaun-  
 "ted *Brandabarbaray of Boliche*, Lord of the three *A-*  
 "*rabinas*, and comes armed with a Serpents skinne, bea-  
 "ring for his shield (as is reported) one of the gates of the  
 "Temple, which *Samson* at his death ouerthrew, to be  
 "reuenged of his enemies. But turne thine eyes to this  
 "other side, and thou shalt see first of all, and in the front  
 "of this other army, the euer victor and neuer vanquish-  
 "ed *Timonel of Carcaiona*, Prince of *new Biskay*, who  
 "comes armed, with armes parted into Blew, Greene,  
 "White, and Yellow quarters, and beares in his shield  
 "in a field of Tawney, a Cat of gold, with a letter that  
 "saies *Mian*, which is the beginning of his Ladies  
 "name,

Callow.

"name, which is, as the report runnes, the peerlesse *Mi-*  
 "anlina, Daughter to Duke *Alfenique* of *Algarue*. The  
 "other that burdens and oppresseth the backe of that  
 "mighty \* Courser, whose armour is as white as snow, and  
 "also his shield without any deuce, is a Knight nouell of  
 "France, called *Pierres Papin*; Lord of the Barony of  
 "Virique. The other that beats his horse sides with his  
 "armed heeles, and beares the armes of pure *Acure*, is  
 "the mighty Duke of *Nerbia Esparsilardo* of the Wood:  
 "Who beares for his deuce, a \* Harrow, with a *Motto* that  
 "saies, *So trailes my Fortune*. And thus he proceeded for-  
 "ward, naming many Knights of the one and the other squa-  
 "dron, euen as he had imagined them, and attributed to  
 "each one, his armes, his colours, imprese, and *Mottos*,  
 "suddainly borne away by the imagination of his wonder-  
 "full distraction. And without stammering he proceeded,  
 "saying, This first squadron containeth folke of many  
 "Nations, in it are those which taste the sweet waters of  
 "famous *Xante*. The Mountainous men that tread the *Ma-*  
 "slicall fields. Those that doe sift the most pure and rare  
 "gold of *Arabia Felix*. Those that possessed the famous  
 "and delightfull bankes of cleare *Termodonte*. Those that  
 "let bloud many and sundry waies the golden *Pactolus*.  
 "The *Numides* vntedfast in their promise. The *Persians*  
 "famous for Archers. The *Parthes* and *Medes* that fight  
 "flying. The *Arabs*, inconstant in their dwellings. The  
 "*Scithes* as cruell as white. The *Ethiops* of boared lips,  
 "and other infinite Nations, whose faces I know and be-  
 "hold, although I haue forgotten their denominations. In  
 "that other army come those that taste the *Christaline*  
 "streames of the *Oline-bearing Betis*, those that dip and  
 "polish their faces with the liquor of the *euer-rich* and  
 "golden *Tagus*. Those that possesse the profitable fluent  
 "of diuine *Genise*. Those that trample the *Tartessian* fields so  
 "abundant in pasture. Those that recreat themselues in  
 "the *Elisean* fields of *Xerez*. The rich *Manchegans* crow-  
 "ned

“ned with ruddy eares of corne. Those apparcled with  
 “yron, the ancient reliques of the *Gothish blond*. Those  
 “that bathe themselues in *Pisuerga*, renowned for the  
 “smoothnesse of his current. Those that feed their flocks  
 “in the vast fields of the wreathing *Gnadiana*, so celebra-  
 “ted for his hidden course. Those that tremble through  
 “the cold of the bushy *Pirens*, and the \* lofty *Apenines*. \* Or white  
 “Finally, all those that *Europe* in it selfe containeth. crested.

Good God, how many Prouinces repeated he at that time, and how many Nations did he name, giuing to euery one of them, with maruailous celerity and briefenes, their proper attributes, being swallowed vp and ingulfed in those things which he had read in his lying bookes! *Sancho Pança*, stood suspended at his speech, and spoke not a word, but only would now and then turne his head to see, whether he could marke those Knights and Gyants, which his Lord had named; and by reason he could not discouer any, he said, Sir, I giue to the Diuell any man, Gyant, or Knight, of all those you said that appeareth, at least I cannot discern them. Perhaps all is but enchantment, like that of the ghosts of yesternight. How? saiest thou so, quoth *Don-Quixote*? Doeſt not thou heare the horses neigh, the trumpets sound, and the noyse of the drummes? I heare nothing else, said *Sancho*, but the great bleating of many Sheepe.

And so it was indeed, for by this time, the two flocks did approach them very neere. The feare that thou conceiuest, *Sancho*, quoth *Don-Quixote*, maketh thee, that thou canst neither heare nor see aright, for one of the effects of feare is to trouble the senses, and make things appeare otherwise then they are: and seeing thou fearest so much, retire thy selfe out of the way, for I alone am sufficient to giue the victory to that part which I shall assist, and hauing ended his speech, he set spurres to *Rozinante*, and setting his Lance in the Rest, he flung downe from the hillocke like a thunderbolt.



Sancho cryed to him as loud as he could, saying, Returne, good Sir *Don-Quixote*, for I vow vnto God, that all those which you go to charge, are but Sheepe and Muttons.

Returne, I say, alas that cuer I was borne, what madnesse is this? looke, for there is neither Giant, nor Knight, nor Cats, nor Armes, nor Shields, parted, nor whole, nor pure Azures, nor diuellish. What is it you doe, wretch that I am? For all this *Don-Quixote* did not returne, but rather rode, saying with a loud voice; On, on, Knights, all you that serue and march vnder the banners of the valorous Emperour *Pentapolin of the naked Arme*, follow me, all of you, and you shall see how easily I will reuenge him on his enemy *Alifamsaron of Trapobana*: and saying so, he entred into the midst of the flocke of Sheepe, and began to Lance them with such courage and fury, as if hee did in good earnest encounter his mortall enemies.

The Sheep-heards that came with the flocke, cryed to him to leaue off: but seeing their words tooke no effect, they vnloosed their slings, and began to salute his pate with stones as great as ones fist. But *Don-Quixote* made no account of their stones, and did sling vp and downe among the Sheepe, saying, Where art thou, proud *Alifamsaron*, where art thou? come to mee, for I am but one Knight alone, who desires to prooue my forces with thee man to man, and depriue thee of thy life, in paine of the wrong thou doest to the valiant *Pentapolin the Garamiante*. At that instant a stone gaue him such a blow on one of his sides, as did bury two of his ribbes in his body. Hee beholding himselfe so ill dight, did presently beleue that hee was either slaine or sorely wounded; and remembring himselfe of his liquor, hee tooke out his oyle-pot, and set it to his mouth to drinke, but ere he could take as much as hee thought was requisite to cure his hurts, there commeth another *Almond* which stricke him so full vpon the hand and oyle-pot, as  
broke

broke it into pieces, and carryed away with it besides three or foure of his cheeke-teeth, and did moreouer bruise very sorely two of his fingers. Such was the first and the second blow, as the poore Knight was constrained to fall downe off his horse. And the Sheep-heads arriving, did verily beleue they had slaine him; and therefore gathering their flocke together with all speede, and carrying away their dead Muttons, which were more then seuen, they went away without verifying the matter any further.

*Sancho* remained all this while on the height, beholding his Masters follies, pulling the haire of his beard for very despite, and cursed the howre and moment wherein he first knew him; but seeing him ouerthrowne to the earth, and the Sheep-heads fled away, he came downe to him, and found him in very bad taking, yet had he not quite lost the vse of his senses, to whom he said; Did not I bid you, Sir, Knight returne, and told you that you went not to invade an army of men, but a flocke of sheepe?

That theefe the wise man who is mine aduersary, quoth *Don-Quixote*, can counterfeit, and make men to seeme such, or vanish away as he pleaseth; for, *Sancho*, thou oughtest to know, that it is a very easie thing for those kinde of men, to make vs seeme what they please: and this *Maligne* that persecuteth me, enuying the glory which hee saw I was like to acquire in this battell, hath conuerted the enemies squadrons into Sheepe; and if thou wilt not beleue me, *Sancho*, yet doe one thing for my sake, that thou maiest remooue thine errour, and perceiue the truth which I affirme: get vp on thine Ass, and follow them faire and softly aloofe, and thou shalt see, that as soone as they are parted any distance from hence, they will turne to their first forme, and leauing to be sheepe, will become men, as right and straight as I painted them to thee at the first: but goe not now; for I haue neede of thy helpe and assistance: draw neerer to me and see, how many cheeke-

teeth and others I want, for mee thinkes there is not one left in my mouth. With that, *Sancho* approched so neere, that he laid almost his eyes on his Masters mouth: and it was iust at the time that the *Balsamum* had now wrought his effect in *Don-Quixote* his stomacke: and at the very season that *Sancho* went about to looke into his mouth, he disgorged all that he had in his stomach, with as great violence as it had beene shot out of a Musket, iust in his compassiue Squires beard.

O holy Mother *Mary*, quoth *Sancho*, what is this that hath befallne me? the poore man is mortally wounded, without doubt, for he vomiteth vp bloud at his mouth. But looking a little neerer to it, he perceiued by the colour and smell, that it was not bloud, but the *Balsamum* of his Masters oyle-bottle; whereat he instantly tooke such a loathing, that his stomacke likewise turned, and he vomited out his very bowels almost, all in his Masters face. And so they both remained like Pearles.

Soone after, *Sancho* ranne to his Asse to take somewhat to cleare himselfe, and to cure his Lord out of his wallet, which when he found \* wanting, he was ready to runne out of his wits: there he began anew to curse himselfe, and made a firme resolution in minde, that he would leaue his Master, and turne to his Countrey againe, although he were sure both to lose his wages, and the hope of the gouernment of the promised Island.

\* Having left  
it behinde him  
in the inn,  
when he ranne  
away and paid  
nothing for his  
lodging.

By this, *Don-Quixote* arose, and setting his left hand to his mouth, that the rest of his teeth might not fall out, he caught hold on the Reines of *Rozinantes* bridle with the other, who had neuer stird from his Master: (such was his loyalty and good nature) he went towards his Squire, that leaned vpon his Asse, with his hand vnder his cheeke, like one pensatiue and male-content. And *Don-Quixote* seeing of him in that guise, with such signes of sadnesse, said vnto him, Know, *Sancho*, that one man is not more then another, if he doe not more then another. All those stormes that fall

on

on vs, are arguments that the time will waxe calme very soone, and that things will haue better successe hereafter, for it is not possible that either good or ill be durable. And hence we may collect, that our misfortunes hauing lasted so long, our fortune and weale must be likewise neere. And therefore thou oughtest not thus to afflict thy selfe for the disgraces that befall me, seeing no part of them fall to thy lot.

How? Nor, quoth *Sancho*? was he whom they tossed yesterday in the couerlet by fortune, any other mans sonne then my Fathers? and the wallet that I want to day, with all my prouision, was it any others then mine owne? What, dost thou want thy wallet, *Sancho*, quoth *Don-Quixote*? I, that I doe, quoth he. In that manner replied *Don-Quixote*, We haue nothing left vs to eate to day. That would be so, quoth *Sancho*, if we could not finde among these fields the hearbs which I haue heard you say you know, wherewithall such vnlucky Knights Errant as you, are wont to supply like needs.

For all that, quoth *Don-Quixote*, I would rather haue now a quarter of a loafe, or a cake & two Pilchers heads, then all the hearbs that *Dioscorides* describeth, although they came glozed by Doct<sup>r</sup> *Laguna* himselfe. But yet for all that, get vpon the beast, *Sancho* the good, and follow me, for God, who is the prouider for all creatures, will not faile vs: And principally seeing we doe a worke so greatly to his seruice as we doe, seeing he doth not abandon the little flies of the aire, nor the wormelings of the earth, nor the spawnlings of the water. And he is so mercifull, that he maketh his Sun shine on the good and the euill, and raines on sinners and iust men. You were much fitter, quoth *Sancho*, to be a Preacher, then for a Knight Errant. Knights Errant knew, and ought to know somewhat of all things, quoth *Don-Quixote*. For there hath beene a Knight Errant in times past, who would make a Sermon or discourse in the midst of a campe Riall, with as good grace, as if he were graduated in the Vniuersity of *Paris*: by which we

may gather that the Lance neuer dulled the Pen, nor the Pen the Lance.

Well then, quoth *Sancho*, let it be as you haue said, and let vs depart hence, and procure to finde a lodging for this night, where, I pray God, may be no couerlets, and tossers, nor spirits, nor enchanted Moores, for if there be, Ile bestow the flocke and the hooke on the Deuill.

Demand that of God, sonne *Sancho*, quoth *Don-Quixote*, and lead me where thou pleasest, for I will leaue the election of our lodging to thy choice for this time: yet I pray thee giue mee thy hand, and feele how many cheeke-teeth or others I want in this right side of the vpper iaw, for there I feele most paine. *Sancho* put in his fingers, and whilest he felt him, demanded, How many cheeke-teeth were you accustomed to haue on this side? Foure, quoth he, besides the hindermost; all of them very whole and sound. See well what you say, Sir, quoth *Sancho*. I say, foure, quoth *Don-Quixote*, if they were not fiue, for I neuer in my life drew or lost any tooth, nor hath any false or beene worne-eaten, or mard by any rhume. Well then, quoth *Sancho*, you haue in this nether part but two cheeke teeth and a halfe, and in the vpper, neither a halfe, nor any, for all there is as plaine as the palme of my hand. Vnfortunate I (quoth *Don-Quixote*, hearing the sorrowfull newes that his Squire told vnto him) for I had rather lose one of mine armes, so it were not that of my sword. For *Sancho*, thou must wit, that a mouth without cheeke-teeth, is like a Mill without a milstone; and a tooth is much more to be esteemed then a Diamond.

But we which professe the rigorous Lawes of Armes, are subiect to all these disastres: wherefore mount, gentle friend, and giue the way, for I will follow thee what pace thou pleasest. *Sancho* obeyed, and rode the way where he thought he might finde lodging, without leauing the high way, which was there very much beaten. And going thus by little and little (for *Don-Quixote* his paine of his iawes

did

did not suffer him rest, or make ouermuch haste.) *Sancho*, to entertaine him and diuert his thought, by saying some things, began to aboard him in the forme we meane to rehearse in the Chapter ensuing.

## C H A P. V.

*Of the discreet discourses passed betweene Sancho, and his Lord; with the aduenture succeeding of a dead body, and other notable occurrences.*

**M**E thinkes, good Sir, that all the mis-haps that befell vs these dayes past, are without any doubt in punishment of the sinne you committed against the order of Knighthood, by not performing the Oath you swore, not to eate bread on table-clothes, nor to sport with the Queene, with all the rest which insueth, and you vowed to accomplish, vntill you had wonne the Helmet of *Malandrino*, or I know not how the Moore is called, for I haue forgotten his name. Thou saiest right, *Sancho*, quoth *Don-Quixote*: but to tell the truth in deede, I did wholly forget it: and thou maiest likewise thinke certainly, that because thou didst not remember it to mee in time, that of the couerlet was inflicted as a punishment on thee. But I will make amends, for we haue also manners of reconciliation for all things in the order of Knighthood. Why, did I by chance sweare any thing, quoth *Sancho*? It little imports, quoth *Don-Quixote*, that thou hast not sworne: let it suffice that I know thou art not very cleare from the fault of an accessary. And therefore at all aduentures it will not be ill, to prouide a remedy. If it be so, quoth *Sancho*, beware you doe not forget this againe, as you did that of the Oath, for if you should, perhaps those spirits will take againe a fanisie to solace themselues with mee, and peraduenture with you your selfe, if they see you obstinate.



Being in these and other such discourses, the night o-  
uertooke them in the way, before they could discover a-  
ny lodging, and that which was worst of all, they were  
almost famisht with hunger, for by the losse of their wal-  
lets, they lost at once both their prouision and warder-  
house. And to accomplish wholly this disgrace, there suc-  
ceeded a certaine aduenture, which certainly hapned as  
we lay it downe, without any addition in the world, and  
was this; The night did shut vp with some darkenesse, yet  
notwithstanding they trauailed on still, *Sancho* beleeu-  
ing that since that was the high way, there must be within a  
league or two in all reason some Inne. Trauelling there-  
fore as I haue said, in a darke night, the Squire being hun-  
gry, and the Master hauing a good stomake, they saw  
comming towards them in the very way they trauelled, a  
great multitude of lights, resembling nothing so well as  
wandering starres. *Sancho* beholding them, was stricke into  
a wonderfull amazement, and his Lord was not much  
better. The one drew his Asse-halter, the other held his  
horse, and both of them stood still, beholding attentiuely  
what that might be, and they perceiued that the lights  
drew still neerer vnto them; and the more they approched,  
they appeared the greater; at the sight *Sancho* did tremble  
like one infected by the saueur of Quick-siluer: and *Don-  
Quixotes* haire did stand vp like bristles, who animating  
himselſe a little, said, *Sancho*, this must be questionlesse a  
great and most dangerous aduenture, wherein it is requisite  
that I shew all my valour and strength.

Vnfortunate I, quoth *Sancho*, if by chance this aduen-  
ture were of ghosts, as it seemeth to me that it is, where  
wil there be ribs to suffer it? Be they neuer so great ghosts,  
said *Don-Quixote*, I will not consent that they touch one  
haire of thy garment: For if they iested with thee the other  
time, it was because I could not leape ouer the walles of the  
yard: but now we are in plaine field, where I may brandish  
my sword as I please.

And

And if they inchant and benumme you as they did the other time, quoth *Sancho*, what will it then auaille vs to be in open field or no? For all that, replied *Don-Quixote*, I pray thee, *Sancho*, be of good courage, for experience shall shew thee how great my valour is. I will and please God, quoth *Sancho*: and so departing somewhat out of the way, they began againe to view earnestly what that of the trauellling lights might be; and after a very little space, they espied many white things, whose dreadfull visions did in that very instant abate *Sancho Pança* his courage, and now began to chatter with his teeth, like one that had the cold of a *Quartane*: and when they did distinctly perceiue what it was, then did his beating and chattering of teeth increase, for they discouered about some twenty all couered with white a horse-backe, with Tapers lighted in their hands, after which followed a Litter couered ouer with blacke, and then insued other fixe a horse-backe, attired in mourning, and likewise their Mules, euen to the very ground; for they perceiued that they were not horses, by the quietnes of their pace. The White folke rode murmuring somewhat among themselues with a low and compassive voice.

Which strange vision, at such an houre, and in places not inhabited, was very sufficient to strike feare into *Sancho's* heart, and euen in his Masters, if it had beene any other then *Don-Quixote*: but *Sancho* tumbled here and there, being quite ouerthrowne with terrour. The contrary hapned to his Lord, to whom in that same houre his imagination represented vnto him most liuely, the aduenture wherein he was, to be such a one as he oft-times had read in his bookes of Chiuallry. For it is figured vnto him, that the Litter was a Beere, wherein was carryed some grievously wounded or dead Knight, whose reuenge was only reserved for him. And without making any other, discourse he set his Lance in the Rest, seated himselfe surely in his saddle, and put himselfe in the midst of the way, by  
which

which the White folke must forcibly passe, with great spirit and courage. And when he saw them draw neere, hee said with a lowd voice, Stand, Sir Knight, whosoever you be, and render mee account what you are? from whence you come? where you goe? and what that is which you carry in that Beere? for according as you shew, either you haue done to others, or others to you some iniury. And it is conuenient and needfull that I know it, either to chastise you for the ill you haue committed, or else to reuenge you of the wrong which you haue suffered. We are in haste, quoth one of the White-men, and the Inne is farre off, and therefore cannot expect to giue so full relation as you request: and with that, spurring his Mule, passed forward.

*Don-Quixote*, highly disdayning at the answer, tooke by the bridle and held him, saying, Stay, proud Knight, and bee better mannered another time, and giue mee account of that which I demanded: if not, I defie you all to mortall battaile.

The Mule whereon the White-man rode, was somewhat fearefull and skittish, and being taken thus rudely by the Bridle, shee tooke such a fright, that rising vp on her hinder legges, shee vnhorsed her Rider. One of the Lackeyes that came with them, seeing him falne, beganne to reuile *Don-Quixote*, who being by this thorowly enraged, without any more adoe, putting his Lance in the Rest, runne vpon one of the Mourners, and threw him to the ground very sore wounded: and turning vpon the Rest, it was a thing worthy the noting, with what dexterity hee did assault, breake vpon them, and put them all to flight, and it seemed none other, but that *Roxinante* had gotten then wings, hee bestirred himselfe so nimbly and courageously.

All those White-men were fearefull people, and vnarmed, and therefore fled away from the skirmish in a trice, and beganne to trauerse that field with their Tapers burning, that they seemed to bee maskers that vse to runne vp  
and

and downe in nights of *Ioue* and recreation. The Mour-ners likewise were so lapped vp and muffled: by their mourning weedes, as they could scarce stirre them: so that *Don-Quixote* did without any danger of his person, giue them all the *Bastinado*, and caused them to forsake their roomes whether they would or no: for all of them did verily thinke that hee was no man, but a Deuill of hell, that met them to take away the dead body which they carried in the Litter. All this did *Sancho* behold, maruailously admired at his Masters boldnesse, which made him say to himselfe, My master is infallibly as strong and valiant as he said.

There lay on the ground by him whom his Mule had first ouer-throwne, a waxe Taper still burning, by whose light, *Don-Quixote* perceiued him, and comming ouer to him, he laid the point of his Lance vpon his face, saying, that he should render himselfe, or else he would slay him. To which the other answered, I am already rendred more then enough, seeing I cannot stirre mee out of the place, for one of my legges is broken: And if you be a Christian, I desire you not to kill mee, for therein you would commit a great sacriledge, I being a Licenciate, and haue receiued the first Orders.

Well then, quoth *Don-Quixote*, what Deuill brought thee hither being a Church-man? Who, Sir, replied the ouer-thrown, but my misfortune? Yet doth a greater threaten thee, said *Don-Quixote*, if thou dost not satisfie me in all that which I first demanded of thee. You shall easily be satisfied, quoth the Licenciate: and therefore you shall wit, that although first of all I said I was a Licenciate, I am none, but a Bachelor, and am called *Alonso Lopez*, borne at *Alconendas*, and I came from the City of *Baeca*, with eleuen other Priests, which are those that fled away with the Tapers; wee trauell towards *Segonia*, accompanying the dead body that lies in that Litter, of a certaine Gentleman who dyed in *Baeca*, and was there deposited  
for

for a while, and now as I say, wee carry his bones to his place of buriall, which is in *Segonia*, the place of his birth.

And who killed him, quoth *Don-Quixote*? God, quoth the Bachelor, with certaine pestilentiall Feauers that hee tooke. In that manner, quoth *Don-Quixote*, our Lord hath deliuered me from the paines I would haue taken to reuenge his death, if any other had slaine him. But hauing kild him, hee that did it, there is no other remedy but silence, and to lift vp the shoulders: for the same I must my selfe haue done, if he were likewise pleased to slay me. And I would haue your Reuerence to vnderstand, that I am a Knight of the *Mancha*, called *Don-Quixote*, and mine office and exercise is to goe thorowout the world, righting of wrongs, and vndoing of iniuries.

I cannot vnderstand how that can bee of righting wrongs, quoth the Bachelor, seeing you haue made mee who was right before, now very crooked, by breaking of my legge, which can neuer bee righted againe, as long as I liue, & the iniury which you haue vndone in me, is none other but to leaue me so iniured, as I shall remaine iniured for euer. And it was a very great disuenture to haue encountered with you, that go about to seek aduentures. All things, quoth *Don-Quixote*, succeed not of one fashion: the hurt was, Master Bachelor *Alonso Lopez*, that you trauailed thus by night couered with those Surplices, with burning Tapers, and couered with weedes of dole, so that you appeared most properly some bad thing, and of the other world, and so I could not omit to fulfill my duty, by assaulting you, which I would haue done, although I verily knew you to bee the *Satans* themselues of hell: For, for such I iudged and accounted you euer till now.

Then since my bad fortune hath so disposed it, quoth the Bachelor, I desire you, good Sir Knight Errant (who hath giuen me so euill an Errant) that you will helpe mee

to get vp from vnder this Mule, who holds still my leg betwixt the Stirrop & Saddle. I would haue staid talking vntill to morrow morning, quoth *Don-Quixote*, and why did you expect so long to declare your griefe to me? He presently called to *Sancho Pança* to come ouer: but hee had little minde to doe, for hee was otherwise imployed, ransacking of a Sumpster-Mule, which those good folke brought with them, well furnished with belly ware. *Sancho* made a bagge of his Casocke, and catching all that hee might, or could containe, hee laid it on his beast, and then presently after repaired to his Master, and holpe to deliuer the good Bachelor from the oppression of his Mule. And mounting him againe on it, hee gaue him his Taper, and *Don-Quixote* bad him to follow his fellowes, of whom he should desire pardon in his name, for the wrong hee had done them: for it lay not in his hands to haue done the contrary. *Sancho* said to him also, If those Gentlemen would by chance know, who the valorous Knight is, that hath vsed them thus, you may say vnto them, that he is the famous *Don-Quixote of Mancha*, otherwise called, The Knight of the *Il-fauoured face*.

With this the Bachelor departed, and *Don-Quixote* demaunded of *Sancho*, what had mooued him to cal him *The Knight of the Il-fauoured face*, more at that time, then at any other? I will tell you that, quoth *Sancho*; I stood beholding of you a pretty while by the Taper-light, which that vnucky man carrieth, and truely you haue one of the euill-fauouredst countenances of late, that euer I saw: Which either proceedeth of your being tyred after this battell, or else through the losse of your teeth. That is not the reason, said *Don-Quixote*. But rather, it hath seemed fit to the wise-man, to whose charge is left the writing of my History, that I take some appellatiue name, as all the other Knights of yore haue done: for one called himselfe, *The Knight of the burning sword*. Another, *That of the Vnicorne*; this, *Him of the Phoenix*.

The



The other, That of the *Damzels*. Another, The *Knight of the Griphin*. And some other, *The Knights of Death*. And by these names and deuices, they were knowne thorow-  
out the compasse of the earth. And so I say, that the wise-  
man whom I mentioned, set in thy minde and tongue the  
thought to call me *The Knight of the Il-fauoured face*, as I  
meane to call my selfe from henceforth: and that the name  
may become me better, I will vpon the first occasion cause  
to be painted in my shield, a most ill fauoured counte-  
nance.

You neede not, quoth *Sancho*, spend so much time and  
money in hauing the like countenance painted; but that  
which you may more easily doe, is, to discouer your owne,  
and looke directly on those that behold you, and I will  
warrant you, that without any more adoe, or new painting  
in your shield, they will call you, *Him of the Il-fauoured  
face*. And let this bee said in iest, that hunger and the  
want of your teeth, haue giuen you, as I haue said, so *enill  
fauoured a face*, as you may well excuse all other heauie  
portraitures. *Don-Quixote* laught at his Squires con-  
ceit, and yet neuerthelesse he purposed to call himselfe by  
that name, as soone as euer he should haue commodity to  
paint his shield, or buckler. And after hee had pawled a  
while, he said to *Sancho*, I belecue, *Sancho* that I am ex-  
communicated, for hauing laid violent hands vpon a con-  
secrated thing. \* *In iuxta illud, Si quis suadente diabolo, &c.*  
Although I am certaine I laid not my hands vpon him, but  
onely this *Iauelin*: and besides, I did not any way suspect  
that I offended Priests or Church-men, which I doe re-  
spect and honour as a Catholike and faithfull Christian;  
but rather that they were shadowes and spirits of the  
other world.

And if the worst happened, I remember well that which  
befell the *Cid Ruy Diaz*, when hee broke that other  
Kings Ambassadors chaire before the Popes Holinesse,  
for which hee excommunicated him: and yet for all that,  
the

\* Canon. 71.

Distin. 134.

the good *Rodericks Vinar* behaued himselfe that day like an honourable and valiant Knight.

About this time the Bachelor departed, as is said, without speaking a word, and *Don-Quixote* would faine haue seene whether the Corps that came in the Litter, was bones, or no; but *Sancho* would not permit him, saying, Sir, you haue finished this perillous Aduenture, most with your safetie, of any one of those I haue seene. This people, although ouercome and scattered, might perhaps fall in the consideration, That he who hath ouercome them, is but one person alone, and growing ashamed thereof, would perhaps ioyne and vnite themselues, and turne vpon vs, and giue vs enough businesse to doe. The Asse is in good plight, according to my desire, and the Mountaine at hand, and hunger oppresseth vs; therefore wee haue nothing else to doe at this time, but retyre our selues with a good pace, and as it is said, *To the Graue with the dead, and let them that liue, to the Bread.* And pricking on his Asse, he requested his Matter to follow him, who seeing that *Sancho* spoke not without reason, he spurd after him without replying. And hauing trauailed a litle way, betweene two smal mountains they found a large & hidden valley, where they alighted, and *Sancho* lightning his beast; and lying both along vpon the greene grasse, holpen by the sauce of hunger, they broke their fasts, dyned, at their Beauer and supper all at one time; satisfying their appetites with more then one dish of cold meate, which the dead Gentlemans Chaplaines (which knew how to make much of themselues) had brought for their prouision. But here succeeded another discommodity which *Sancho* accounted not as the least, which was, that they had no wine to drinke; no, nor as much as a drop of water to rinse their mouthes, and being scorched with drought, *Sancho* perceiving the field where they were full of thicke and greene grasse, said that which shall ensue in the Chapter following.

## CHAP. VI.

Of a wonderfull adventure, archieued with lesse hazard, then  
 euer any other Knights did any, by the valorous Don-  
 Quixote of Mancha.

**I**T is not possible, my Lord, but that these greene  
 hearbs doe argue, that neere vnto this place  
 must be some Fountaine or streame that water-  
 reth them; and therefore I pray you let vs goe  
 a little farther, and wee shall meete that which may miti-  
 gate the terrible thirst that afflicts vs, which sets vs questi-  
 onlesse in more paine then did our hunger. This counsell  
 was allowed by *Don-Quixote*: and therefore leading *Ro-  
 xinante* by the bridle, and *Sancho* his Asse by the halter,  
 after laying vp the reuerfion of their supper, they set on  
 through the Plaine, onely guided by their ghesse; for the  
 night was so darke, as they could not see a iot. And scarce  
 had they trauailed two hundred paces, when they heard a  
 great noise of water, as if it fell head-long from some great  
 and steepe Rocke. The noise did cheere them very much;  
 and standing to heare from whence it sounded, they heard  
 vnawares another noise, which watered all the Conti-  
 nent; they conceiued before, specially in *Sancho*, who,  
 as I haue noted, was naturally very fearefull and of little  
 spirit: They heard (I say) certaine blowes stricken with  
 proportion, with a kinde of rattling of yrons and chaines,  
 which accompanied by the furious sound of the water,  
 might strike terrour into any other heart but *Don-  
 Quixotes*.

The night, as we said, was darke, and they happened to  
 enter in among certaine tall and loftie trees, whose leaues  
 mooued by a soft gale of wind, made a fearefull and still  
 noyse. So that the solitude, situation, darkenesse, and the  
 noyse of the water, and trembling of the leaues, concurring  
 did

did breed horreur and affright. But specially, seeing that the Blowes neuer ceased, the Wind slept not, nor the Morning approached; whereunto may be added, that they know not the place where they were. But *Don-Quixote* accompanied with his valiant Heart, leaped on *Roxinante*, and embracing his Buckler, brandished his Launce, and said:

“ Friend *Sancho*, I would haue thee know, that I was  
“ borne by the disposition of Heauen, in this our Age of  
“ yron, to resuscitate in it that of Gold, or the Golden  
“ World, as it is called. I am he, for whom are reserued all  
“ dangerous, great, and valorous feats. I say againe, that I  
“ am, he which shal set vp againe those of the *Round Table*,  
“ the *Twelue Peeres of France*, and the *Nine Worthies*. I  
“ am he, who shall cause the acts to be forgotten of those  
“ *Platires*, *Tablantes*, *Olinantes*, and *Tirantes*. The *Pho-*  
“ *busses*, *Belianises*, with all the crue of the famous Knights  
“ errant of times past, doing in this wherein I liue, such great  
“ and wonderfull feats of Armes, as shall obscure the bra-  
“ uest that euer they atchieued. Thou notest well, faithfull  
“ and loyall Squire, the darknesse of this Night, the strange  
“ silence, the deafe and confused trembling of these Trees,  
“ the dreadfull noyse of that Water, in whose search wee  
“ come, which seemes to throw it selfe head-long downe  
“ from the steepe mountaines of the Moone, the inceassa-  
“ ble blowes which doe still wound our eares; all which  
“ together, and euery one apart, are able to strike terrour,  
“ feare, and amazement into the very minde of *Mars*,  
“ how much more in his that is not accustomed to the  
“ like chances and aduentures? Yet all this which I haue  
“ depainted to thee, are inciters and rowzers of my minde,  
“ which now causeth my heart almost to burst in my  
“ brest, with the desire it hath to trie this aduenture, how  
“ difficult soeuer it shewes it selfe. Wherefore tie my horse-  
“ gyrts a little straighter, and farewell: here in this place  
“ thou mayest expect mee three dayes and no more. And

M

“ if

“ if I shall not returne in that space, thou mayest go backe  
 “ to our village, and from thence (for my sake ) to *Toboso*,  
 “ where thou shalt say to my incomparable Lady *Dulci-*  
 “ *nea*, that her captiue Knight died, by attempting things  
 “ that might make him worthy to be called hers.

When *Sancho* heard his Lord speake these words, hee  
 beganne to weepe with the greatest compassion of the  
 world, and say vnto him, Sir, I see no reason why you  
 should vndertake this fearefull aduenture : it is now night,  
 and no body can perceiue vs, wee may very well crosse the  
 way, and apart our selues from danger, although we should  
 therefore want drinke these three dayes. And seeing none  
 behold vs, there will be much lesse any one to take notice  
 of our cowardize ; the rather because I heard oft-times  
 the Curate of our Village whom you know very well,  
 preach, *That he which seekes the danger, perisheth therein*;  
 so that, it is not good to tempt God, vndertaking such a  
 huge affaire, out of which you cannot escape, but by mira-  
 cle : and let those which heauen hath already wrought  
 for you, suffice, in deliuering you from being tost in a Co-  
 uerlet, as I was, and bringing you away Victor, free, and  
 safe, from among so many enemies, as accompanied the  
 dead man.

And when all this shall not moue or soften your hard  
 heart, let this moue it, to thinke and certainly beleeeue, that  
 scarce shal you depart from this place, when through very  
 feare I shall giue vp my soule to him that pleaseth to take  
 it. I left my countrey, wife, and children to come & serue  
 you, hoping thereby to be worth more and not lesse : but  
 as *conetousnesse breakes the sacke*, so hath it also torne my  
 hopes, seeing when they were most pregnant and liuely, to  
 obtaine that vn lucky and accursed Island, which you pro-  
 mised me so often : I see that in exchange and pay thereof,  
 you meane to forsake me here in a Desart, out of all fre-  
 quentation. For Gods sake doe not mee such a wrong, my  
 Lord; & if you will not wholly desist from your purpose, yet  
 desist

defer it at least till the morning; for as my little skill that I learned when I was a shep-heard, telleth me, the dawning is not three houres off,\*for the mouth of the fish is ouer the head, and maketh mid-night in the line of the left arme.

\* *Porque la boca de la borina estalucina de la cabeza. p. 163.*

How canst thou, *Sancho*, quoth *Don-Quixote*, see where is the line, or that mouth, or that taile, of which thou speakest, seeing the night is so darke, that one starre alone appeareth not? That is true, quoth *Sancho*, but feare hath eyes, which can see things vnder the ground, and much more in the skies. And besides, wee may gather by good discourse, that the day is not farre off. Let it be as little off as it lists, quoth *Don-Quixote*, it shall neuer bee recorded of mee, that either teares or prayers could euer dissuade me from performing the dutie of a Knight: and therefore, good *Sancho*, hold thy peace, for God who hath inspired me to attempt this vnseene and fearefull aduenture, will haue an eye to my Weale, and also to comfort thy sorrow. And that thou hast therefore to doe, is to make straight my gyrts, and remaine here, for I will returne shortly either aliue or dead.

*Sancho* perceiuing his Lords last resolution, and how little his teares, counsailes, or prayers, could auaille, resolved to profit himselfe a little of his wit, and make him if hee could to expect vntill day, and so when hee did fasten the gyrts, hee softly without being felt, tied his Asses halter to both *Rozinantes* legges, so fast, that when *Don-Quixote* thought to depart, he could not, for that his horse could not goe a steppe, but leaping.

*Sancho* seeing the good successe of his guile, said, Behold, Sir, how heauen moued by my teares and prayers, hath ordained that *Rozinante* should not goe a step: and if you wil be still contending, & spurring, & striking him, you will do nothing but inrage fortune, & as the prouerbe saies, *But spurne against the pricke.* *Don-Quixote* grew wood at this, and yet the more he spurred him, hee was the lesse able to goe: wherefore without perceiuing the cause of



his horses stay, hee resolu'd at last to be quiet, and expect either till the morning, or else till *Rozinante* would please to depart, beleeuing verily, that the impediment came of some other cause, and not from *Sancho*, and therefore said vnto him, Since it is so, *Sancho*, that *Rozinante* cannot stir him, I am content to tarry till the dawning, although her tardinesse cost me some teares. You shall haue no cause to weepe, reply'd *Sancho*, for I will entertaine you, telling of Histories vntill it be day, if you will not alight and take a nap vpon these greene hearbs, as Knights Errant are wont; that you may be the fresher and better able to morrow to attempt that monstrous aduenture which you expect.

What doest thou call alighting, or sleeping, quoth *Don-Quixote*? am I peraduenture one of those Knights that repose in time of danger? sleepe thou, who wast borne to sleepe, or doe what thou please, for I will doe that which I shall see fittest for my pretence. Good Sir, bee not angry, quoth *Sancho*, for I did not speake with that intention: & so drawing neere vnto him, he set one of his hands on the Pummell of the Saddle, and the other hinder in such sort, that he rested imbracing his Lords left thigh, not daring to depart from thence the breadth of a finger; such was the feare hee had of those blowes, which all the while did sound without ceasing.

Then *Don-Quixote* commanded him to tell some tale to passe away the time, as hee had promised, and *Sancho* said he would, if the feare of that which hee heard would suffer him. Yet, quoth he, for all this I will encourage my selfe to tell you one, whereon if I can hit aright, and that I bee not interrupted, is the best History that euer you heard, and bee you attentiu, for now I beginne. *It was that it was, the good that shall befall be for vs all, and the harme for him that searches it.* And you must be aduertised, good Sir, that the beginning that Ancient men gaue to their tales, was not of ordinary things, and it was a sentence of *Cato the Romane Conrozin*: Which saies, *And the harme*

harme be for him that searches it: which is as fit for this place, as a Ring for a Finger, to the end that you may be quiet, & not to go seeke your owne harme to any place, but that we turne vs another way, for no body compelleth vs to follow this, where so many feares doe surprise vs.

Prosecute this tale, *Sancho*, (said *Don-Quixote*) and leaue the charge of the way we must goe, to *ma*

I say then, quoth *Sancho*, that in a Village of *Estremadura*, there was a Sheepe-heard, I would say a Goat-heard: And, as I say of my tale, this Goat-heard was called *Lope Ruyz*; and this *Lope Ruyz* was enamoured of a Shepheardesse, who was called *Terralua*; the which Shepheardesse, called *Terralua*, was Daughter to a rich Heard-man, and this rich Heard-man-----

If thou tellest thy tale, *Sancho*, after that manner (quoth *Don-Quixote*) repeating every thing twice that thou sayst, thou wilt not end it this two dayes. Tell it succinctly, and like one of iudgement, or else say nothing.

Of the very same fashion that I tell, are all tales told in my Countrey, and I know not how to tell it any other, nor is it reason that you should ask of me to make new customs.

Tell it as thou pleasest, quoth *Don-Quixote*, for since fortune will not otherwise, but that I must heare thee, goe forward.

So that, my deare Sir of my soule, quoth *Sancho*, that as I haue said already, this Shepheard was in loue with *Terralua* the Shepheardesse, who was a round wench, scornful, and drew somewhat neere to a man, for she had mochachoes: for mee thinks I see her now before my face. Belike then, quoth *Don-Quixote*, thou knowest her? I did not know her, quoth *Sancho*: but he that told me the tale, said it was so certaine and true, that I might, when I told it to any other, very well sweare and affirme that I had seene it all my selfe. So that dayes passing and dayes coming, the Deuil, who sleepes not, and \* that troubles all, wrought in such sort, as the loue that the Shepheard bore to the Shepheardesse, turned

\* Yque todo lo  
anajca.  
Pag. 171.

\* A Spanish  
Proverbe touch-  
ing their ieal-  
ousie.

ned into man-slaughter and ill-will, and the cause was according to bad tongues, a certaine quantity of little iealousies that she gaue him, such as they pass the line, and came to the forbidden\*. And the Sheepheard did hate her so much afterward, that he was content to leaue all that Countrey, because he would not see her, and go where his eyes should neuer looke vpon her. *Torrallua*, that saw her selfe disdained by *Lope*, did presently loue him, better then euer shee did before. That is a naturall condition of women, quoth *Don-Quixote*, to disdain those that loue them, and to affect those which hate them. Passe forward, *Sancho*.

It hapned, quoth *Sancho*, that the Sheepheard set his purpose in execution, and gathering vp his Goats, he travelled thorow the fields of *Estremadura*, to passe into the Kingdome of *Portugal*. *Torrallua*, which knew it well, followed him a-foot, & bare-legged, a far off, with a pilgrims staffe in her hand, and a wallet hanging at her necke, where (they say) that she carried a piece of a Looking-glasse, and another of a Combe, and I know not what little Bottle of changes for her face. But let her carrie what she carries, for I wil not put my selfe now to verifie that: Only Ile say that they say, that the Sheepheard arrived with his Goats to passe over the Riuer *Guadiana*, which in that season was swollen very much, and over-flowed the bankes, and at the side where he came, there was neyther Boat nor Barke, nor any to passe himselfe or his Goats over the Riuer, for which he was very much grieved, because hee saw that *Torrallua* came very neere, and shee would trouble him very much with her prayers and teares. But hee went so long looking vp and downe, that he espied a Fisher-man, who had so little a Boat, as it could onely hold one man and a Goat at once, and for all that, he spoke and agreed with him, to passe himselfe and three hundred Goats that hee had over the Riuer. The Fisher-man entred into the Boat, and carried ouer one Goat, hee returned and past ouer another, and turned backe agayne, and past ouer another. Keepe you, Sir,

Sir, good account of the Goats, that the Fisher-man ferries ouer; for if one onely be forgotten, the tale will end, and it will not be possible to tell one word more of it. I follow on then, and I say, that the landing place on the other side was very dyrtie and slipperie, which made the Fisherman spend much time coming to and fro. Yet for all that, he turned for another Goat, and another, and another.

Make account, quoth *Don-Quixote*, that thou hast past them all ouer, for otherwise thou wilt not make an end of passing them in a whole yeares space. How many, said *Sancho*, are already past ouer?

What a Deuill know I, said *Don-Quixote*? See there, that which I said, quoth *Sancho*, that you should keepe good account: By *some* the tale is ended therefore, for there is no passing forward.

How can that be, said *Don-Quixote*? is it so greatly of the essence of this Historie, to know the Goats that are past so exactly and distinctly, that if one of the number be misse, thou canst not follow on with thy tale? No Sir, in no sort, said *Sancho*, for as soone as I demanded of you to tell me how many Goats past ouer, and that you answered mee you knew not, in that very instant went from me out of my memorie all that was to be told, and ysaith it was of great vertue and content.

So then, quoth *Don-Quixote*, the tale is ended? it is as certainly ended as is my Mother, quoth *Sancho*. Surely, replied *Don-Quixote*, thou hast recounted one of the rarest tales or Histories that any one of the world could think vpon, and that such a manner of telling or finishing a tale, was neuer yet seene, or shall be seene againe, although I neuer expected any other thing from thy good discourse. But I doe not greatly maruell; for perhaps those senselesse strokes haue troubled thine vnderstanding. All that may bee, said *Sancho*, but I know, in the discourse of my tale there is no more to be said, but that there it ends,

where the error of counting the Goats that were wasted over the River begins. Let it end in a good houre where it lists, answered *Don-Quixote*, and let vs try whether *Rozinante* can yet stirre himselſe. Then did he turne again to giue him the spurres, and he to leape as he did at the first, and reſt anew, beeing vnable to doe other, hee was ſo well ſhacked.

It hapned about this time, that eyther through the cold of the morning, or that *Sancho* had eaten at Supper ſome lenatiue meats, or that it was a thing naturall (and that is moſt credible) he had a deſire to doe that which others could not doe for him; but ſuch was the feare that entred into his heart, as hee dared not depart from his Lord the breadth of a Straw: and to thinke to leaue that which he had deſired yndone, was alſo impoſſible: therefore his reſolution in that perplexed exigent (be it ſpoken with pardon) was this; Hee looſed his right hand, wherewithall he held faſt the hinder-part of the Saddle, and therewithall very ſoftly, and without any noiſe, hee vntyed the Codpiece-poynt, wherewithall his Breeches were onely ſupported, which (that being let ſlippe) did preſently fall downe about his Legges like a payre of Bolts: After this, liſting vp his Shirt the beſt hee could, hee expoſed his Buttocks to the Ayre, which were not the leaſt. This beeing done, which as he thought was the chiefeſt thing requiſite to iſſue out of that terrible anguiſh and plunge, hee was ſuddenly troubled with a greater; to wit, that he knew not how to diſburden himſelſe, without making a noiſe: which to auoyd, firſt he ſhut his Teeth cloſe, liſted vp his Shoulders, and gathered vp his breath as much as he might: yet notwithstanding all theſe diligences, he was ſo vafortunate, that he made a little noiſe at the end, much different from that which made him ſo fearefull. *Don-Quixote* heard it, and ſaid, What noiſe is that, *Sancho*? I know not, Sir, quoth he: I thinke it be ſome new thing: for adventures, or rather diſventures neuer begin with a little.

little. Then turned he once againe to try his hap: and it succeeded so well, that without making any rumour or noyse, but that which he did at the first, he found himselfe free of this loading that troubled him so much.

But *Don. Quixote* having the sense of smelling as perfect as that of his hearing; and *Sancho* stood so neere, or rather ioyned to him, as the vapors did ascend vpward, almost by a direct line, he could not excuse himselfe, but that some of them must needs touch his Nose. And scarce had they arrived, but that he occurr'd to the vsuall remedy, and stopped it very well betweene his Fingers, and then said with a snaf-fling voyce; Me thinkes, *Sancho*, that thou art much afraid. I am indeed, replied *Sancho*; but wherein, I pray you, doe you perceiue it now more then euer? In that thou smellst now more then euer, quoth *Don. Quixote*, and that not of *Amber*.

It may be so, quoth *Sancho*, yet the fault is not mine, but yours, which brings mee at such vnseasonable houres, thorow so desolate and fearefull places. I pray thee, friend, retire thy selfe two or three steps back, quoth *Don. Quixote*, holding his Fingers stil vpon his Nose, and from henceforth haue more care of thy person, and of the respect thou owest to mine; for I see, the ouermuch familiaritie that I vse with thee, hath ingendred this contempt. I dare wager, quoth *Sancho*, that you thinke I haue done somewhat with my person that I ought not. Friend *Sancho*, quoth *Don. Quixote*, it is the worse to stirre it thus. And thus in these, and such like conuersation, the Master and the man passed over the night. And *Sancho* seeing that the morning approached, he loosed *Roxinante* very wrrily, and tied vp his hofe. *Roxinante* feeling himselfe (although he was not naturally very courageous) he seemed to reioyce, & began to beat the ground with his hooves; for by his leaue he could neuer yet curvet. *Don. Quixote* seeing that *Roxinante* could now stir, accounted it to be a good signe, and an incouragement of him to attempt that timorous aduenture.

By



By this, *Aurora* did display her purple mantle ouer the face of Heauen, and euery thing appeared distinctly, which made *Don-Quixote* perceiue that he was among a number of tall Chestnut-trees, which commonly make a great shadow. He heard likewise those incessable strokes, but could not espy the cause of them; wherefore, giuing *Roxinante* presently the spur, and turning backe againe to *Sancho* to bid him farewell, he commanded him to stay for him there three dayes at the longest, and that if he returned not after that space, he should make full account, that *Joue* was pleased he should end his dayes in that dangerous aduventure. Hee repeated to him againe the embassage and errant hee should carrie in this behalfe to his Ladie *Dulcinea*, and that touching the reward of his seruices, he should not feare any thing, for he had left his Testament made before hee departed from his Village, where hee should find himselfe gratified, touching all that which pertayned to his hyre, according to the rate of the time hee had serued. But if God would bring him off from that aduventure, safe and sound, & without danger, he might fully account to receiue the promised Iland.

Here *Sancho* began anew to weepe, hearing againe the pittifull discourses of his good Lord, and determined not to abandon him, vntill the last trance and end of that affaire, and out of these reares and honourable resolution of *Sancho*, the Author of this History collects, that it is like he was wel borne, or at the very least, an old *Christian*, whose griefe did moue his Master a little, but not so much as he should shew the least argument of weakenesse, but rather dissembing it the best that he could, he followed on his way towards the way of the water, and that where the strokes were heard. *Sancho* followed him afoot, leading as hee was wont, his Ass by the Halter, who was the inseparable fellow of his prosperous or aduerser fortunes.

And hauing trauelled a good space among those Chestnut and shadie trees, they came out into a little Plaine that  
flood

flood at the foot of certaine steepe rocks, from whose tops did precipitate it selfe a great fall of water. There were at the foot of those rockes certaine houses, so ill made, as they rather seemed ruines of buildings then houses, from whence as they perceyued, did issue the fearefull rumour and noyse of the strokes, which yet continued.

*Rosinante* at this dreadfull noyse did start, and beeing made quiet by his Lord *Don-Quixote*, did by little and little draw neere to the houses, recommending himselfe on the way most deuoutly to his Ladie *Dulcinea*, and also to *Ioue*, desiring him that he would not forget him.

*Sancho* neuer departed from his Lords side, and stretched out his necke and eyes as farre as he might thorow *Rosinante* his legges, to see if he could perceiue that which held him so fearefull and suspended. And after they had trauelled about a hundred paces more, at the doubling of a poynt of a mountaine they saw the very cause, patent and open (for there could be none other) of that so hideous and fearefull a noyse that had kept them all the night so doubtfull and affrighted, and was (O Reader, if thou wilt not take it in bad part) sixe yron Maces that sulled Cloth, which, with their interchangeable blowes, did forme that maruellous noyse.

When *Don-Quixote* saw what it was, hee waxed mute and all ashamed. *Sancho* beheld him, and saw that hee hanged his head on his brest with tokens that he was somewhat ashamed. *Don-Quixote* looked also on his Squire, and saw that his cheekes were swolne with laughter, giuing withall euident signes that he was in danger to burst, if he did not permit that violent passion to make a sally, whereat, all *Don-Quixotes* melancholy little preuayling, he could not (beholding *Sancho*) but laugh also himselfe. And when *Sancho* saw that his Master had begun the play, he let slip the prisoner, in such violent manner, to presse his sides hardly with both his hands to saue himselfe from bursting. Foure times he ended, and other  
four

four hee renewed his laughter with as great impulse and force as at the first: whereat *Don-Quixote* was wonderfully enraged, but chiefly hearing him say in gibing manner, I would haue thee know, friend *Sancho*, that I was borne by the disposition of heauen in this our age of yron, to renue in it that of Gold, or the Golden world. I am hee for whom are reserued all dangerous, great, and valorous Feats. And in this sort he went, repeating all or the greatest part of the words *Don-Quixote* had sayd the first time that they heard the timorous blowes. *Don-Quixote* perceyuing that *Sancho* mockt him, grew so ashamed and angry withall, that lifting vp the end of his Lance, he gaue him two such blowes on the Backe, as if he had receyued them on his Pate, would haue freed his Master from paying him any wages, if it were not to his heires.

*Sancho* seeing that hee gained so ill earnest by his iests, fearing that his Master should goe onward with it, hee said vnto him with very great submission; Pacifie your selfe, good Sir, for by *Ioue* I did but iest. But why dost thou iest? I tell thee, I doe not iest, quoth *Don-Quixote*. Come here, Master Merriman, thinkest thou that as those are yron Maces to full cloth, they were some other dangerous aduventure, that I haue not shown resolution enough to vndertake & finish it? Am I by chance obliged, being as I am a Knight to know and distinguish noyses, and perceyue which are of a fulling Mill or no? And more it might (as it is true) that I neuer saw any before as thou hast done, base Villaine that thou art, borne and brought vp among the like: if not, make thou that these sixe Maces bee conuerted into sixe Giants, and cast them in my beard one by one, or all together: and when I doe not turne all their heeles vp, then mocke me as much as thou pleatest.

No more, good Sir, quoth *Sancho*: for I confesse I haue beene somewhat too laughsome. But tell me, I pray you, now that wee are in peace, as God shall deliuer you out of all aduentures that may befall you as whole and sound, as  
he

he hath done out of this; hath not the great feare we were in, beene a good subiect of laughter, and a thing worthy the telling? At least I, for of you I am certaine that you doe not yet know what feare or terror is. I doe not deny, quoth *Don-Quixote*, but that which befell vs, is worthy of laughter: yet ought it not to be recounted, for as much as all persons are not so discrete, as to know how to discern one thing from another, and set euery thing in his right point. You know at least wise, quoth *Sancho*, how to set your Iauelin in his point, when pointing at my pate, you hit me on the shoulders, thanks be to God, and to the diligence I put in going aside. But farewell it, for all will away in the bucking; and I haue heard old folke say, That man loues thee well, who makes thee to weepe: and besides, great Lords are wont after a bad word which they say to one of their Seruingmen, to bellow on him presently a paire of hose. But I know not yet what they are wont to giue them after blows, if it be not that Knights Errant giue after the *bastinado*, Islands, or Kingdomes on the Continent.

The Die might runne so fauourably, quoth *Don-Quixote*, as all thou hast said, might come to passe: and therefore pardon what is done, since thou art discrete, and knowest that a mans first motions are not in his hand. And be aduertised of one thing from hence-forward (to the end to abstaine, and carry thy selfe more respectiuelly in thy ouermuch liberty of speech with me) that in as many bookes of Chiuallry as I haue read, which are infinite, I neuer found that any Squire spoke so much with his Lord, as thou dost with thine; which in good sooth I doe attribute to thy great indiscretion and mine, thine, in respecting me so little; mine, in not making my selfe to be more regarded. Was not *Gandalin Amadis de Gaules* Squire, Earle of the *firme Island*? and yet it is read of him that he spoke to his Lord with his Cap in his hand, his head bowed, and his body bended (*more Turcesco.*) What then shall we say of *Gasabel Don Gataors* Squire, who was so silent, as to declare.

declare vs the excellencie thereof, his name is but once repeated in all that so great and authentically a History? Of all which my words, *Sancho*, thou must inferre, that thou must make difference betweene the Master and the man, the Lord and his Seruingman, the Knight and his Squire. So that from this day forward we must proceed with more respect, not letting the clew runne so much, for after what way soeuer I grow angry with thee, it will be bad for the Pitcher. The rewards and benefits that I haue promised thee, will come in their time, and if they doe not, thy wages cannot be lost (as I haue already said to thee.)

You say very well, quoth *Sancho*: but faine would I learne (in case that the time of rewards came not, and that I must of necessity trust to my wages) how much a Knight Errants Squire did gaine in times past? Or if they did agree for moneths, or by dayes, as Masons men.

I doe not thinke, quoth *Don-Quixote*, that they went by the hire, but onely trusted to their Lords curtesie. And if I haue assigned wages to thee in my sealed Testament, which I left at home, it was to preuent the worst, because I know not yet what successe *Chinatrie* may haue in these our so miserable times, and I would not haue my soule suffer in the other world for such a minuity as is thy wages. For thou must vnderstand, that in this world there is no state so dangerous as that of Knights Errant. That is most true, replied *Sancho*, seeing the onely sound of the Maces of a fulling Mill, could trouble and disquiet the heart of so valiant a Knight as you are. But you may be sure, that I will not hereafter once vnfold my lips to iest at your doings, but onely to honour you as my Master and naturall Lord. By doing so, replied *Don-Quixote*, thou shalt liue on the face of the earth; for next to our parents, we are bound to respect our Masters, as if they were our fathers.

## C H A P. VII.

*Of the high adventure and rich winning of the Helmet of Mambrino, with other successes befallne the invincible Knight.*

**H**E began about this time to raine, and *Sancho* would faine have entred into the fulling Mills, but *Don-Quixote* had conceiued such hate against them for the iest recounted, as he would in no wise come neere them, but turning his way on the right hand, he fell into a high way, as much beaten as that wherein they rode the day before; within a while after, *Don-Quixote* espied one a horsebacke, that bore on his head, somewhat that glistered like gold; and scarce had he seene him, when he turned to *Sancho*, and said, Me thinkes, *Sancho*, that there's no prouerbe that is not true, for they are all sentences taken out of experience it selfe, which is the vniuersall mother of Sciences; and specially that prouerbe that sayes, *Where one doore is shut, another is opened*. I say this, because if fortune did shut yesternight the doore that we searched, deceiuing vs in the adventure of the yron Maces, it layes vs now wide open the doore that may addresse vs to a better and more certaine adventure, whereon if I cannot make a good entry, the fall shall be mine, without being able to attribute it to the little knowledge of the fulling Maces, or the darkenesse of the night; which I affirme, because if I be not deceiued, there comes one towards vs, that weares on his head the Helmet of *Mambrino*, for which I made the oath.

See well what you say, Sir, and better what you doe, quoth *Sancho*: for I would not wish that this were new Maces to batter vs and our vnderstanding.

The Deuill take thee for a man, replied *Don-Quixote*: what difference is there betwixt a Helmet and fulling Maces? I know not, quoth *Sancho*, but if I could speake as  
much



much now as I was wont, perhaps I would giue you such reasons, as you your selfe should see how much you are deceiued in that you speake.

How may I be deceiued in that I say, scrupulous traytor, quoth *Don-Quixote*? Tell me, seest thou not that Knight which comes riding towards vs on a dapple gray horse, with a helmet of gold on his head? That which I see and find out to be so, answered *Sancho*, is none other then a man on a gray Ass like mine owne, and brings on his head somewhat that shines. Why, that is *Mambrino's* helmet, quoth *Don Quixote*: stand aside, and leaue me alone with him, thou shalt see how without speech to cut of delayes, I will conclude this aduventure, and remaine with the Helmet as mine owne, which I haue desired so much. I will haue care to stand off, but I turne againe to say, that I pray God, that it be a purchase of gold, and not fulling Mills. I haue already said to thee, that thou doe not make any more mention, no not in thought of those Maces; for if thou dost, said *Don-Quixote*, I vow, I say no more, that I will batter thy soule. Hereat *Sancho* fearing lest his Master would accomplish the vow which he had throwne out as round as a bowle, held his peace.

This therefore is the truth of the History of the Helmet, Horse and Knight which *Don-Quixote* saw: There was in that Commarke two villages, the one so little, as it had neither Shop nor Barber, but the greater that was neere vnto it, was furnished of one, and he therefore did serue the little Village when they had any occasion, as now it befell, that therein lay one sicke, and must be let bloud, and another that desired to trimme his beard; for which purpose the Barber came, bringing with him a brazen Basen: and as he trauelled, it by chance began to raine, and therefore clapt his Basen on his head, to saue his Hat from staying, because it belike was a new one. And the Basen being cleane skowred, glistred halfe a league off. He rode on a gray Ass, as *Sancho* said; and that was the reason why  
*Don*

*Don-Quixote* tooke him to be a dapple gray Steede, a Knight and a Helmet of gold; for he did with all facility apply euery thing which he saw, to his rauing Chiuallry and ill-errant thoughts. And when he saw that the poore Knight drew neere, without settling himselfe to commune with him, he inrested his \* Iauelin low on the thigh, and ranne with all the force *Rozinante* might, thinking to strike him thorow and thorow. And drawing neere vnto him, without stopping his horse, he cried, Defend thy selfe, Caytiffe, or else render vnto mee willingly, that which is my due by all reason.

The Barber, who so without fearing or surmising any such thing, saw that Fantasiue and spirit come vpon him, had no other remedy to auoide the blow of the Lance, but to fall off of his Asse to the ground: and scarce had he touched the earth, when rising vp againe as light as a Deere, he runne away so swiftly thorow the plaine, as the winde could scarce ouertake him; leauing behind him on the ground his Bason, wherewithall *Don-Quixote* rested content, and said, That *Pagan* which lost it was discreet, and did imitate the *Castor*, who seeing himselfe hotly pursued by the hunters, which teares and cuts away that with his teeth, for which he knows by natural instinct he is follow'd.

Then he commanded *Sancho* to take vp the Helmet, who lifting it, said, The Bason is a good one, and is as well worth a Riall of eight as a Maruedie; and giuing it to his Lord, he presently set it on his head, turning it about euery way, to see whether he could get the Beauer: and seeing he could not finde it, he said, The *Pagan* for whom this famous Helmet was first forged, had doubtlesly a very great head; and that which grieues me principally, is, that this Helmet wants the one halfe.

When *Sancho* heard him call the Bason a Helmet, he could not containe his laughter, but presently remembring on his Masters choler, he checkt it in the midst. Why dost thou laugh, *Sancho*, quoth *Don-Quixote*? I laugh, said

N

he,

he, to thinke on the great head the *Pagan* owner of this Helmet had. For it is for all the world like a Barbers Bason.

Know, *Sancho*, that I imagine, quoth *Don-Quixote*, that this famous piece of this enchanted Helmet did fall by some strange accident into some ones hands that knew not the worth thereof, and seeing it was of pure gold; without knowing what he did, I thinke he hath molten the halfe, to profit himselfe therewithall, and made of the other halfe, this which seemes a Barbers Bason, as thou sayest. But be what it list, to me who knowes well what it is, his transmutation makes no matter, for I will dresse it so in the first towne, where I shall finde a Smith, as that which the god of forges made for the god of warre, shall not surpass, no nor come neere it; and in the meane while I will weare it as I may: for something is better then nothing; and more, seeing it may very well defend me from the blow of a stone.

That's true, quoth *Sancho*, if it be not throwne out of a sling, such as that of the battell of the two armies, when they blessed your Worships cheeke-teeth, and broke the bottle wherein you carried the most blessed drench which made me vomit vp my guts.

I doe not much care for the losse of it, *Sancho*, qd. *Don-Quixote*, for as thou knowest, I haue the receit in memory. So haue I likewise, quoth *Sancho*: but if euer I make it or taste it againe in my life, I pray God that here may be mine end. How much more, I neuer meane to thrust my self into any occasion wherein I should haue need of it; for I meane with all my five senses to keepe my selfe from hurting any, or being hurt. Of being once againe tost in a Couerlet I say nothing, for such disgraces can hardly be prevented: and if they befall, there is no other remedy but patience, and to lift vp the shoulders, keepe in the breath, shut the eyes, and suffer our selues to be borne where Fortune and the Couerlet pleaseth.

Thou

Thou art a bad Christian, *Sancho*, qd. *Don-Quixote*, hearing him say so; for thou neuer forgettest the iniuries that are once done to thee: know that it is the duty of noble & generous minds, not to make any account of toys. What leg hast thou brought away lame, what rib broken, or what head hurt, that thou canst not yet forget that iest? for the thing being well examined, it was none other then a iest or pastime; for if I did not take it to be such, I had returned by this to that place, and done more harme in thy reuenge, then that which the *Greeks* did for the rape of *Helen*: who if she were in these times, or my *Dulcinea* in hers, she might be sure shee should neuer haue gained so much fame for beauty as she did: and saying so, he pierced the skie with a sigh. Then said *Sancho*, Let it passe for a iest, since the reuenge cannot passe in earnest. But I know well the quality both of the iests and earnest, and also that they shall neuer fall out of my memory, as they will neuer out of my shoulders. But leauing this apart, what shall we doe with this dapple gray Steed that lookes so like a gray Asse, which that *Martin* left behinde, whom you ouerthrew, who according as he laid feet on the dust and made haste, he minds not to come backe for him againe, and by my beard the gray beast is a good one.

I am not accustomed, quoth *Don-Quixote*, to ransacke and spoyle those whom I ouercome, nor is it the practice of Chiuallry to take their horses, and let them go afoot, if that it befall the Victor to lose in the conflict his owne; for in such a case it is lawfull to take that of the vanquished, as wonne in faire warre. So that, *Sancho*, leaue that Horse, or Asse, or what else thou pleasest to call it, for when his owner sees vs departed, he will returne againe for it. God knowes, quoth *Sancho*, whether it wil be good or no, for me to take him, or at least change for mine owne, which mee thinkes is not so good. Truly, the lawes of Knighthood are straight, since they extend not themselues to licence the exchange of one Asse for another:

and I would know whether they permit at least to change the one harnessse for another. In that I am not very sure, quoth *Don-Quixote*, and as a case of doubt (vntill I be better informed) I say that thou exchange them, if by chance thy neede be extreme. So extreme, quoth *Sancho*, that if they were for mine owne very person, I could not neede them more. And presently enabled by the licence, he made *mutatio Caparum*, and set forth his beast like a hundred holy-dayes.

This being done, they broke their fast with the Relickes of the spoyles they had made in the Campe of Sumpter-horse, and drunke of the Mills streames, without once turning to looke on them (so much they abhord them for the maruellous terror they had stricken them in) and hauing by their repast cut away all Cholericke and Melancholick humours, they followed on the way which *Rozinante* pleased to leade them (who was the depository of his Masters will, and also of the Asses, who followed him alwayes wherefoeuer he went in good amitie and company.) For all this they returned to the high way, wherein they trauelled at randome, without any certaine deliberation which way to goe. And as they thus trauelled, *Sancho* said to his Lord, Sir, will you giue me leaue to commune a little with you; for since you haue imposed vpon me that sharpe commandement of silence, more then foure things haue rotted in my stomake, and one thing that I haue now vpon the tip of my tongue, I would not wish for any thing that it should mis-carry? Say it, quoth *Don-Quixote*, and be brieft in thy reasons, *For none is delightfull if it be prolix.*

I say then, quoth *Sancho*, that I haue beene these later dayes, considering how little is gained by following these aduentures that you doe, thorow these desarts and crosse waies, where though you ouercome and finish the most dangerous, yet no man sees nor knowes them, and so they shall remaine in perpetuall silence, both to your prejudice, and that of the same which they deserue. And therefore

me

me thinks it were better (still excepting your better iudgement herein) that we went to serue some Emperour, or other great Prince that maketh warre, in whose seruice you might shew the valour of your person, your maruellous force, and wonderfull iudgement: which being perceiued by the Lord whom we shall serue, he must perforce reward vs, every one according to his deserts; and in such a place will not want one to record your noble acts for a perpetuall memory: of mine I say nothing, seeing they must not transgresse the Squire-like limits: although I dare auouch, that if any notice be taken in Chiuallry of the feats of Squites, mine shall not fall away betwixt the lines.

*Sancho*, thou sayest not ill, quoth *Don-Quixote*: but  
“ before such a thing come to passe, it is requisite to spend  
“ some time vp and downe the world, as in probation,  
“ seeking of aduentures, to the end that by atchieuing  
“ some, a man may acquire such fame and renowne, as  
“ when he goes to the Court of any great Monarke, he be  
“ there already knowne by his workes, and that he shall  
“ scarcely be perceiued to enter at the gates by the boyes  
“ of that Citie, when they all will follow and inuiron him,  
“ crying out aloud; This is the Knight of the Sunne, or  
“ the Serpent, or of some other deuice vnder which hee  
“ hath atchieued strange aduentures. This is he (will they  
“ say) who ouer came in single fight, the huge Gyant *Bro-*  
“ *cabrano* of the inuincible strength. He that disinchanted  
“ the great *Sophie of Persia*, of the large enchantment  
“ wherein he had lyen almost nine hundred yeeres. So  
“ that they will thus goe proclayming his actes from  
“ hand to hand, and presently the King of that King-  
“ dome, moued by the great bruit of the boyes and other  
“ people, will stand at the windowes of his Palace to see  
“ what it is; and as soone as he shall eye the Knight,  
“ knowing him by his armes, or by the *Impresa* of his  
“ shield, he must necessarily say, Vp, goe all of you my  
“ Knights, as many of you as are in my Court forth, to re-  
“ ceiu



"ceiue the flower of Chiuallry, which comes there: at  
 "whose commandement they all will sally, and he himselfe  
 "will come downe to the midst of the staires, and will  
 "embrace him most straightly, and will giue him the  
 "peace, kissing him on the cheeke: and presently will  
 "carry him by the hand to the Queenes chamber, where  
 "the Knight shall finde her accompanied by the Princeesse  
 "her daughter, which must be one of the fairest and debon-  
 "naire damzels that can bee found thorowout the vast  
 "compasse of the earth; after this will presently and in a  
 "trice succeed, that she will cast her eye on the Knight, and  
 "he on her, and each of them shall seeme to the other no  
 "humane creature, but an Angell, and then without know-  
 "ing how, or how not, they shall remaine captiue and in-  
 "tangled in the intricate amorous net, and with great  
 "care in their minds, because they know not how they  
 "shall speake to discouer their anguish and feeling. From  
 "thence the King will carry him (without doubt) to some  
 "quarter of his Palace richly hanged; where hauing ta-  
 "ken off his armes, they will bring him a rich mantle of  
 "Scarlet, furred with Ermines to weare: and if he see-  
 "med well before being armed, he shall now looke as well  
 "or better out of them. The night being come, he shall  
 "sup with the King, Queene and Princeesse, where he shall  
 "neuer take off his eye off her, beholding vnawares of  
 "those that stand present: and she will doe the like with  
 "as much discretion; for as I haue said, she is a very dif-  
 "creete damzell. The Tables shall be taken vp, there shall  
 "enter vnexpectedly into the Hall an ill-sauoured little  
 "dwarfe, with a faire Ladie that comes behind the  
 "dwarfe betweene two Gyants, with a certaine aduen-  
 "ture wrought by a most ancient wiseman, and that he  
 "who shall end it, shall be held for the best Knight of the  
 "world. Presently the King will command all those that  
 "are present to proue it, which they do, but none of them  
 "can finish it, but onely the new-come Knight, to the great  
 "proofe

“proofe of his fame. Whereat the Princeesse will remaine  
“very glad, and will be very ioyfull and well appaide, be-  
“cause shee hath settled her thoughts in so high a place.  
“And the best of it is, that this King, or Prince, or what else  
“he is, hath a very great warre with another as mighty as  
“he; and the Knight his ghest doth aske him (after he  
“hath bin in the Court a few dayes) licence to goe and  
“serue him in that warre. The King will giue it with a ve-  
“ry good will, and the Knight will kisse his hands cour-  
“teously for the fauour he doth him therein: and that  
“night he will take leaue of his Ladie the Princeesse by  
“some window of a garden that lookes into her bed-  
“chamber; by the which he hath spoken to her oft-times  
“before, being a great meanes and help thereto, a certaine  
“damzell which the Princeesse trusts very much. He sighes,  
“and she will fall in a swoond, and the damzell will bring  
“water, to bring her to her selfe againe. Shee will be also  
“full of care because the morning drawes neere, and shee  
“would not haue them discouered for any her Ladies ho-  
“nour. Finally the Princeesse will returne to her selfe, and  
“will giue out her beautifull hands at the window to the  
“Knight, who will kisse them a thousand and a thousand  
“times, and will bathe them all in teares. There it will  
“remaine agreed betweene them two, the meanes that  
“they will vse to acquaint one another with their good or  
“bad successes; and the Princeesse will pray him to stay a-  
“way as little time as he may, which he shall promise vn-  
“to her, with many oathes and protestations. Then will  
“he turne againe to kisse her hands, and take his leaue of  
“her with such feeling, that there will want but little to  
“end his life in the place: he goes from thence to his cham-  
“ber, and casts himselfe vpon his bed, but he shall not be  
“able to sleepe a nappie for sorrow of his departure: he  
“will after get vp very early, and will goe to take leaue  
“of the King, the Queene and Princeesse. They tell him  
“(hauing taken leaue of the first two) that the Princeesse is

“ill at ease, and that shee cannot be visited: the Knight  
“thinks that it is for griefe of his departure, and the  
“which tidings lanceth him anew to the bottome of  
“his heart, whereby he will be almost constrained to giue  
“manifest tokens of his griefe: the damzell that is pri-  
“uy to their loues will be present, and must note all that  
“passeth, and goe after to tell it to her Mistresse, who  
“receiues her with teares, and sayes vnto her, that one  
“of the greatest afflictions shee hath, is, that shee does  
“not know who is her Knight, or whether he be of  
“blood royall or no: Her damzell will assure her againe,  
“that so great bountie, beauty and valour as is in her  
“Knight, could not finde place but in a great and royall  
“subiect. The carefull Princeesse will comfort her selfe  
“with this hope, and labour to be cheerefull, lest shee  
“should giue occasion to her parents to suspect any fini-  
“ster thing of her: and within two dayes againe she will  
“come out in publique. By this the Knight is departed,  
“he fights in the warre, and ouercomes the Kings ene-  
“my, he winnes many Cities, and triumphs for many  
“battels, he returnes to the Court, he visits his Lady, and  
“speakes to her at the accustomed place, he agreeth with  
“her to demand her of the King for his wife, in reward of  
“his seruices, whercunto the King will not consent, be-  
“cause he knowes not what he is: but for all this, ei-  
“ther by carrying her away, or by some other manner, the  
“Princeesse becomes his wife, and he accounts himselfe  
“therefore very fortunate, because it was after knowne  
“that the same Knight is sonne to a very valorous King  
“of I know not what Countrey; for I belecue it is not  
“in all the Mappe. The Father dies, and the Princeesse doth  
“inherit the Kingdome, and thus in two words our  
“Knight is become a King. Heere in this place enters pre-  
“sently the commoditie to reward his Squire, and all  
“those that holpe him to ascend to so high an estate. He  
“marries his Squire with one of the Princeesses damzels,  
“which

"which shall doubtlesly be the very same that 'was acquainted with his loue, who is some principall Dukes daughter.

That's it I seeke for, quoth *Sancho*, and all will goe right; therefore I will leane to that, for euery whit of it which you said will happen to your selfe, without missing a iot, calling your selfe *The Knight of the ill-fanoured face*. Neuer doubt it, *Sancho*, quoth *Don-Quixote*, for euen in the very same manner, and by the same steps that I haue recounted here, Knights Errant doe ascend and haue ascended to be Kings and Emperours. This only is expedient, that we enquire what King among the Christians or Heathens makes warre and hath a faire daughter: but we shall haue time inough to bethinke that, since as I haue said, we must first acquire fame in other places, before we goe to the Court. Also I want another thing, that put case that we finde a Christian or Pagan King, that hath warres and a faire daughter, and that I haue gained incredible fame throughout the wide world, yet cannot I tell how I might finde that I am descended from Kings, or at the least, Cousin Germane remooued of an Emperour? For the King will not giue me his Daughter, vntill this be first very well proued, though my workes deserue it neuer so much; so that I feare to lose through this defect, that which mine owne hath merited so well. True it is, that I am a Gentleman of a knowne house of proprietie and possession; and perhaps the wise man that shall write my History, will so beautifie my kindred and descent, that he will finde me to be the fift or sixt descent from a King; for thou must vnderstand, *Sancho*, that there are two maners of lineages in the world. Some that deriue their pedigree from Princes and Monarkes, whom time hath by little and little diminished and consumed, and ended in a point like a *Pyramydes*. Others that tooke their beginning from base people, and ascend from degree vnto degree, vntill they become at last great Lords. So that all the difference

ference is, that some were that which they are not now, and others are that which they were not. And it might be that I am of those, and after good examination, my beginning might be found to haue beene famous and glorious; wherewithall the King my father in law ought to be content, whosoever hee were: and when he were not, yet shall the Princesse loue mee in such sort, that shee shall in despite of her fathers teeth, admit mee for her Lord and Spouse, although she knew me to be the sonne of a Water-bearer. And if not, here in this place may quader well, the carrying of her away perforce, and carrying of her where best I liked; for either time or death must needes end her fathers displeasure.

Here comes well to passe that *Sancho*, which some damned fellows are wont to say, *Seeke not to get that with a good will, which thou mayest take perforce*; although it were better said, *The leape of a shrubbe is more worth then good mens intreaties*. I say it to this purpose, that if the King your father in law will not condescend to giue vnto you the Princesse my Mistresse, then there's no more to be done, but as you say to her, *steale away & carrie her to another place*: but all the harme is, that in the meane while that composition is vnmade, and you possesse not quietly your Kingdome, the poore Squire may whistle for any benefit or pleasure you are able to doe him, if it be not that the damzell of whom you spoke euen now, runne away with her Ladie, and that hee passe away his misfortunes now and then with her, vntill heauen ordaine some other thing: for I doe thinke that his Lord may giue her vnto him presently, if shee please to bee his lawfull Spouse. There's none that can deprive thee of that, quoth *Don-Quixote*. Why, so that this may befall, quoth *Sancho*, there's no more but to commend our selues to God, and let fortune runne where it may best adresse vs. God bring it so to passe, quoth *Don-Quixote*, as I desire, and thou halt neede of *Sancho*; and let him be a wretch that accounts himselfe

himselfe one. Let him bee so, quoth *Sancho*, for I am an old Christian; and to bee an Earle, there is no more requisite.

I, and tis more then enough, quoth *Don-Quixote*, for that purpose: and though thou werest not, it made not much matter; for I being a King, I may giue thee nobility, without either buying of it, or seruing me with nothing. For in creating thee an Earle, loe, thereby thou art a Gentleman: and let men say what they please, they must in good faith call thee right honourable, although it grieue them neuer so much. And thinke you, quoth *Sancho*, that I would not authorize my *Litado*? Thou must say *Distado* or dignity, quoth *Don-Quixote*, and not *Litado*, for that's a barbarous word. Let it bee so, quoth *Sancho Pança*, I say that I would accommodate all very well, for I was once by my life, the warner of a *Confraternity*, and the warners gowne became mee so well, that euery one said I had a presence fit for the Prouost of the fame. Then how much more, when I shall set on my Shoulders the Royall Robe of a Duke, or bee apparrelled with gold and pearles after the custome of strange Earles? I doe verily beleeue that men will come a hundred leagues to see mee.


Thou wilt seeme very well, quoth *Don-Quixote*, but thou must shaue that beard very often: for as thou hast it now so bushie, knit, and vnhandsome, if thou shauest it not with a razor at the least euery other day, men will know that thou art as farre from Gentilitie as a Musket can carie. What more is there to be done, quoth *Sancho*, then to take a Barber, and keepe him hired in my house? yea, and if it be necessary, hee shall ride after me, as if hee were a Master of horse to some Nobleman. How knowest thou, quoth *Don-Quixote*, that Noblemen haue their Masters of horses riding after them? Some few yeeres agoe I was a moneth in the Court, and there I saw that as a young little Lord rode by for his pleasure, they said, hee



he was a great *Grande*: there followed him still a horse-backe, a certaine man turning euery way that he went, so as he verily seemed to be his horse taile. I then demanded the cause why that man did not ride by the others side, but still did follow him so? They answered me, that he was Master of his horses, and that the *Grandes* were accustomed to carry such men after them. Thou sayest true, quoth *Don-Quixote*, and thou mayest carry thy Barber in that manner after thee; for *customes came not all together*, nor were not inuented at once. And thou mayest be the first Earle that carried his Barber after him. And I doe assure thee that it is an office of more trust to trim a mans beard, then to saddle a horse. Let that of the Barber rest to my charge, quoth *Sancho*, and that of procuring to be a King, and of creating me an Earle to yours. It shall be so, quoth *Don-Quixote*; and thus lifting vp his eyes, he saw that which shall be recounted in the chapter following.

## C H A P. VIII.

*Of the liberty Don-Quixote gaue to many wretches, who were a carrying perforce to a place they desired not.*

 *Ide Hamete Benengeli*, an *Arabicall* and *Manchegan* Author, recounts in this most graue, lofty, diuine, sweet, conceited History, that after these discourses past betweene *Don-Quixote*, and his Squire, *Sancho Pança*, which we haue laid downe in the last Chapter, *Don-Quixote* lifting vp his eyes, saw that there came in the very same way wherein they rode, about some twelue men in a company on foote, inserted like Bead-stones in a great chaine of yron that was tyed about their neckes, and euery one of them had manacles besides on their hands. There came to conduct them two on horsebacke, and two others a-foot; the horsemen had firelocke pieces, those that came a-foot, darts and swords.

And

And as soone as *Sancho* saw them, hee said, This is a chaine of Gally-slaues, people forced by the King to goe to the Gallies. How? people forced, demanded *Don-Quixote* is it possible that the King will force any body? I say not so, answered *Sancho*, but that it is people which are condemned for their offences to serue the King in the Gallies perforce. In resolution, replied *Don-Quixote*, (howsoeuer it be) this folke, although they be conducted, goe perforce, and not willingly. That's so, quoth *Sancho*. Then if that be so, here falls in iustly the execution of my function, to wit, the dissoluing of violences and outrages, and the succouring of the afflicted and needefull. I pray you, Sir, quoth *Sancho*, to consider that the Iustice, who represents the King himselfe, doth wrong or violence to no body, but onely doth chastise them for their committed crimes.

By this the chaine of slaues arriued, and *Don-Quixote* with very courteous termes requested those that went in their guard, that they would please to informe him of the cause wherefore they carried that people away in that manner? One of the guardians a horse-backe answered, That they were slaues condemned by his Maiestie to the Gallies, and there was no more to be said, neither ought he to desire any farther knowledge. For all that, replied *Don-Quixote*, I would faine learne of euery one of them in particular the cause of his disgrace; and to this did adde other such and so courteous words, to mooue them to tell him what he desired, as the other guardian a horse-backe said,

Although wee carie here the Register and testimony of the condemnations of euery one of these wretches, yet this is no time to hold them here long, or take out the Proccesses to reade: draw you nearer and demand it of themselves, for they may tell it and they please, and I know they will; for they are men that take delight both in acting and relating knaueries.

With

With this licence, which *Don-Quixote* himselfe would haue taken, although they had not giuen it him, he came to the chaine, and demanded of the first, for what offence he went in so ill a guise? Hee answered, That his offence was no other then for being in loue; for which cause onely hee went in that manner. For that and no more, replied *Don-Quixote*? Well, if enamoured folke bee cast into the Gallies, I might haue beene rowing there a good many dayes agoe. My loue was not such as you coniecture, quoth the slaue, for mine was that I loued so much a basket well heaped with fine linnen, as I did imbrace it so straightly, that if the Iustice had not taken it away from me by force, I would not haue forsaken it to this houre by my good will. All was done in *Flagrante*, there was no leisuere to giue mee torment, the cause was concluded, my shoulders accommodated with a hundred, and for a supplement three prices of *Garrupes*, and the worke was ended. What are *Garrupes*, quoth *Don-Quixote*? *Garrupes* are Gallies, replied the slaue, who was a yong man of some foure and twenty yeeres old, and said hee was borne in *Piedrahita*.

*Don-Quixote* demanded of the second, his cause of offence, who would answere nothing, he went so sad and melancholy. But the first answered for him, and said, Sir, this man goes for a *Canarie-bird*, I meane, for a Musician and Singer. Is it possible, quoth *Don-Quixote*, that Musicians and Singers are likewise sent to the Gallies? Yes, Sir, quoth the slaue, for there's nothing worse then to sing in anguish. Rather, quoth *Don-Quixote*, I haue heard say, that he *which sings*, doth affright and chase away his harms. Here it is quite contrary, quoth the slaue, for *He that sings once, weepes all his life after*. I doe not vnderstand it, said *Don-Quixote*; but one of the guardians said to him, Sir Knight, to *sing in anguish*, is said among this people *non Sancta*, to confesse vpon the racke. They gaue this poore wretch the torture, and hee confessed his delight, that hee

was a *Quartrezo*, that is, a stealer of beasts. And because he hath confessed, hee is likewise condemned to the Gallies for sixe yeeres, with an *Amen* of two hundred blowes, which hee beares already with him on his shoulders; and he goes alwaies thus sad and pensatiue, because the other thecues that remaine behinde, and also those which goe heere, doe abuse, despise, and scorne him for confessing, and not hauing a courage to say *Non*. For they say a *No*, hath as many letters as an *Yea*, and that a delinquent is very fortunate, when his life or his death onely depends of his owne tongue, and not of witnesses or proofes: and in mine opinion they haue very great reason. I likewise thinke the same, quoth *Don-Quixote*.

And passing to the third, hee demanded that which hee had done, of the rest, who answered him out of hand, and that pleasantly, I goe to the Lady *Garrupes* for siue yeeres, because I wanted tenne Ducats. I will giue twenty with all my heart to free thee from that misfortune, quoth *Don-Quixote*. That, quoth the slaue, would be like to one that hath money in the midst of the Gulfe, and yet dies for hunger, because hee can get no meate to buy for it. I say this, because if I had those twenty Ducats which your Worships liberality offers me in due season, I would haue so anoynted with them the Notaries penne, and whetted my Lawyers wit so well, that I might to day see my selfe in the midst of the Market of *Cocodoner* of *Toledo*, and not in this way trayled thus like a Grey-hound: but God is great. Patience; and this is enough.

*Don-Quixote* went after to the fourth, who was a man of a venerable presence, with a long white beard, which reached to his bosome. Who hearing himselfe demanded the cause why hee came there, began to weepe, and answered not a word. But the fift slaue lent him a tongue, and said, This honest man goes to the Gallies for foure yeeres, after he had walked the Ordinary apparelled in pompe, and a horse-backe. and I quoth *Don-Quixote* and agreed not

That

This is, quoth *Sancho Pança*, as I take, after he was carried about to the shame and publike view of the people. You are in the right, quoth the Slaue, and the crime for which hee is condemned to this paine, was, for being a Broker of the eare, I and of all the body too; for in effect I meane, that this Gentleman goeth for a Bawde, and likewise for hauing a little smacke and entrance in Witch-craft.

If that smacke and insight in Witch-craft were not added, quoth *Don-Quixote*, hee merited not to goe and row in the Gallies for being a pure Bawde, but rather deferred to gouerne and be their Generall. For the office of a Bawde is not like euery other ordinary office, but rather of great discretion and most necessary in any Commonwealth well gouerned, and should not be practised but by people well borne; and ought besides to haue a *Veedor*, and examiner of them, as are of all other Trades, and a certaine appointed number of men knowne, as are of the other Brokers of the Exchange.

\* *Veedor* is an office in Spaine of great trust, yet by the King to examine and search the dealing of other under-officers, an Overseer or Controulor.

And in this manner many harmes that are done, might be excused, because this Trade and Office is practised by indiscreete people of little vnderstanding; such as are women of little more or lesse, young Pages and Iesters of few yeeres standing, and of lesse experience, which in the most vrgent occasions, and when they should contriue any thing artificially, the crummes freeze in their mouthes and fists, and they know not which is their right hand.

Faine would I passe forward, and g'ue reasons why it is conuenient to make choise of those which ought in the Commonwealth to practise this so necessary an office: but the place and season is not fit for it. One day I will say it to those which may prouide and remedy it: onely I say now, That the assumpt or addition of a Witch, hath depriued me of the compassion I should otherwise haue, to see those gray-haires and venerable face in such distresse for being a Bawde: Although I know very well, that no sorcery

forcery in the world can mooue or force the will, as some ignorant persons thinke (for our will is a free power, and ther's no hearb nor charme can constrain it.) That which certaine simple women, or coozening companions make, are some mixtures and poysons, wherewithall they cause men runne madde, and in the meane while perswade vs that they haue force to make one loue well, being (as I haue said) a thing most impossible to constrain the *Will*. That is true, quoth the old man, and I protest, Sir, that I am wholly innocent of the imputation of Witchcraft: as for being a Bawd, I could not denie it: but yet I neuer thought that I did ill therein; for all mine intention was, that all the world should disport them, and liue together in concord and quietnesse without griefes or quarrels: but this my good desire auailed me but little to hinder my going there; from whence I haue no hope euer to returne, my yeeres do so burden me, and also the stone, which lets me not rest an instant. And saying this, he turned againe to his lamentations as at the first, and *Sauecho* tooke such compassion on him, as setting his hand into his bosome, he drew out a couple of shillings, and gaue it him as an almes.

From him *Don-Quixote* past to another, and demanded his fault; who answered with no lesse, but with much more pleasantnesse then the former: I goe heere, because I haue iested somewhat too much with two coozen Germanes of mine owne, and with two other sisters, which were none of mine. Finally, I iested so much with them all, that thence resulted the increase of my kindred so intricately, as there is no Casuist that can well resolute it. All was procured by me, I wanted fauour, I had no money, and was in danger to lose my head. Finally, I was condemned for sixe yeeres to the Gallies. I consented, it is a punishment of my fault; I am yong, and let my life but hold out a while longer, and all will goe well. And if you, Sir Knight, carry any thing to succour vs poore folke, God  
O will



will reward you it in heauen, and wee will haue care here on earth to desire God in our daily prayers for your life and health, that it bee as long and as good as your good countenance deserues. Hee that said this, went in the habite of a Student, and one of the Guard told him that he was a great talker, and a very good Latinist.

After all these came a man of some thirty yeeres old, of very comely personage, saue onely that when hee looked, hee seemed to thrust the one eye into the other. Hee was differently tied from the rest; for he carried about his legges so long a chain, that it tired all the rest of his body: and hee had besides, two yron rings about his necke, the one of the chaine, and the other of that kinde which are called *A keepe friend*, or the foote a friend. From whence descended two yrons vnto his middle, out of which did sticke two manacles, wherein his hands were lockt vp with a great hanging locke; so as he could neither set his hands to his mouth, nor bend downe his head towards his hands.

*Don-Quixote* demanded why hee was so loaden with yron more then the rest? The Guard answered, Because he alone had committed more faults then all together, and was a more desperate knaue, and that although they carried him tied in that sort, yet went they not sure of him, but feared he would make an escape. What faults can hee haue so grieuous, quoth *Don-Quixote*, since he hath onely deserued to be sent to the Gallies? He goeth, replied the Guard, to them for ten yeeres, which is equivalent to a ciuill death: neuer strue to know more, but that this man is the notorious *Gines of Passamonte*, who is otherwise called *Ginesfilio of Parapilla*. Master Commissarie, quoth the slaue, hearing him say so, goe faire and softly, and run not thus dilating of names and surnames, I am called *Gines* and not *Ginesfilio*, and *Passamonte* is my surname, and not *Parapilla*, as you say, and let euery one turne about him, and he shall not doe little. Speake with lesse swelling, quoth the

Com-

Commissarie, Sir thiefe of more then the \* Marke, if you will not haue me to make you hold your peace, maugre your teeth. It seemes well (quoth the slaue) that a man is carried as pleaseth God; but one day some body shal know whether I be called *Ginesilio of Parapilla*. Why, doe not they call thee so, coozener, quoth the Guárd? They doe, said *Gines*, but I will make that they shall not call me so, or I will sleece them there where I mutter vnder my teeth. Sir Knight, if you haue any thing to bellow on vs, giue it vs now, and be gone in the name of God; for you doe tire vs with your too curious search of knowing other mens liues: and if you would know mine, you shall vnderstand that I am *Gines of Passamonte*, whose life is written (shewing his hand) by these two fingers.

\* Marke, a certaine length appointed in Spain for swordes, which if any transgresse, he is punished, and the sword forfeited.

Hee sayes true, quoth the Commissary, for hee himselfe hath penned his owne Historie so well, as there is nothing more to bee desired: and leaues the booke pawned in the prison for two hundred Rials: and likewise meanes to redeeme it, quoth *Gines*, though it were in for as many Ducats. Is it so good a worke, said *Don-Quixote*? It is so good, replied *Gines*, that it quite puts downe *Lazarillo de Tormes*, and as many others as are witten or shall write of that kind: for that which I dare affirme to you, is, that it treates of true accidents, and those so delightfull, that no like inuention can bee compared to them. And how is the booke intituled, quoth *Don-Quixote*? It is called, said hee, *The life of Gines of Passamonte*. And is it yet ended, said the Knight? How can it be finished, replied he, my life being not yet ended? since all that is written is from the houre of my birth vntill, that instant that I was sent this last time to the Gallies. Why then, belike you were there once before (quoth *Don-Quixote*?) To serue God and the King, I haue beene in there another time foure yeeres, and I know already how the Bisket and Prouant agree with my stomacke (quoth *Gines*) nor doth it grieue mee very much to returne vnto them: for there I shall haue

leisure to finish my booke, and I haue many things yet to say: and in the Gallies of Spaine, there is more resting time then is requisite for that businesse, although I shall not need much time to penne what is yet vnwritten; for I can, if neede were, say it all by roate.

Reyeses. p. 102.

Thou seem'st to be ingenuous, quoth *Don-Quixote*. And vnfortunate withall, quoth *Gines*; for mis-haps do still persecute the best wits. They persecute knaues, quoth the Commissary. I haue already spoken to Master Commissary, quoth *Passamonte*, to go faire and softly; for the Lords did not giue you that rode, to the end you should abuse vs wretches that goe here, but rather to guide and carry vs where his Maiesty hath commanded: if not, by the life of, tis enough that perhaps one day may come to light, the sports that were made in the Inne. And let all the world peace and liue well, and speake better, for this is now too great a digression. The Commissary held vp his rod to strike *Passamonte* in answer of his threats: but *Don-Quixote* put himselfe betweene them, and intreated him not to vse him hardly, seeing it was not much that one who carried his hands so tyed, should haue his tongue somewhat free: and then turning himselfe towards the slaues, he said:

I haue gathered out of all that which you haue said, deare brethren, that although they punish you for your faults, yet that the paines you goe to suffer, doe not very well please you, and that you march towards them with a very ill will, and wholly constrained, and that perhaps the little courage this fellow had on the racke, the want of money that the other had, the small fauour that a third enioyed; and finally, the wrested sentence of the Iudge, and the not executing that iustice that was on your sides, haue beene cause of your misery. All which doth present it selfe to my memory in such sort, as it perswadeth, yea, and forceth me to effect that for you, for which heauen sent me into the world, and made me professse that order of Knighthood which I follow, and that vow which I made therein,

therein to fauour and affist the needfull, and those that are oppressed by others more potent. But for as much as I know that it is one of the parts of prudence, not to doe that by foule meanes, which may bee accomplished by faire; I will intreate those Gentlemen your guardians and Commissary, they will please to loose and let you depart peaceably; for there will not want others to serue the King in better occasions; for it seemes to mee a rigorous manner of proceeding, to make slaues of them whom God and nature created free. How much more, good Sirs of the guard (added *Don-Quixote*) seeing these poore men haue neuer committed any offence against you? let them answer for their sinnes in the other world: there is a God in heauen, who is not negligent in punishing the euill, nor rewarding the good: and it is no wise decent, that honourable men should be the executioners of other men, seeing they cannot gaine or lose much thereby. I demand this of you in this peaceable and quiet manner, to the end that if you accomplish my request: I may haue occasion to yeeld you thanks; and if you will not doe it willingly, then shall this Lance and this Sword, guided by the inuincible valour of mine arme, force you to it.

This is a pleasant doting, answered the Commissary, and an excellent iest, wherewithall you haue finished your large reasoning. Would you haue vs leaue vnto you those the King forceth, as if we had authority to let them goe, or you to command vs to doe it? Goe on your way in a good houre, gentle Sir, and settle the Basen you beare on your head somewhat righter, and search not thus whether the Cattie hath three feete. Thou art a Cattie, and a Rat, and a knaue, quoth *Don-Quixote*, and so with word and deed at once he assaulted him so suddenly, as without giuing him leisure to defend himselfe, he struck him downe to the earth very sore wounded with a blow of his Lance, and as fortune would, this was he that had the fire-locke Peece; the rest of the guard remained astonished at the vn-

expected accident; but at last returning againe to themselves, the horsemen set hand to their swords, and the footmen to their Darts, and all of them set vpon *Don-Quixote*, who did expect them very quietly: and doubtlesly he would haue beene in danger, if the slaues perceiving the occasion offered to bee so fit to recouer libertie, had not procured it by breaking the chaine wherein they were linked. The hurly-burly was such, as the guards now began to runne to hinder the slaues from vntying themselves, now to offend *Don-Quixote*, who assaulted them; so that they could doe nothing auailable to keepe their prisoners. *Sancho* for his part holpe to lose *Gines of Passamonte*, who was the first that leaped free into the field without clogge, and setting vpon the ouer-throwne Commissary, he disarmed him of his sword and Peece: and now ayming at the one, and then at the other with it, without discharging, made all the guards to abandon the fiedle, as well for feare of *Passamonte's* Peece, as also to shunne the maruellous showre of stones that the slaues now deliuered, powred on them. *Sancho* grew maruellous sad at this successe; for hee suspected that those which fled away, would goe and giue notice of the violence committed to the *Holy brother-hood*: which would presently issue in troupes, to search the delinquents: and said as much to his Lord, requesting him to depart presently from thence and imboske himselfe in the mountaine, which was very neere. All is well, quoth *Don-Quixote*, I know now what is fit to be done, and so calling together all the slaues that were in a tumult, and had stript the Commissary naked, they came all about him to heare what he commanded, to whom he said:

It is the part of people well-borne, to gratifie and acknowledge the benefits they receiue, ingratitude being one of the finnes that most offendeth the Highest. I say it, Sirs, to this end, because you haue by manifest triall seene, that which you haue receiued at my hand, in reward whereof I  
desire,

desire, and it is my will, that all of you loaden with that chaine from which I euen now freed your necks, goe presently to the City of *Toboso*, and there present your selues before the Lady *Dulcinea* of *Toboso*, and recount vnto her that her Knight of the *Il-famoured face* sends you there to remember his seruice to her: and relate vnto her at large the manner of your freedome, all you that haue had such noble fortune, and this being done, you may after goe where you please.

*Gines de Passamonte* answered for all the rest, saying; That which you demand, good Sir (our releaser) is most impossible to be performed, by reason that we cannot goe all together thorow these wayes, but alone and deuided, procuring each of vs to hide himselfe in the bowels of the earth, to the end we may not be found by the *Holy brotherhood*, which will doubtlesly set out to search for vs: that therefore which you may and ought to doe in this exigent is, to change this seruice and homage of the Lady *Dulcinea* of *Toboso*, into a certaine number of *Aue Marias* and *Creedes*, which wee will say for your intention, and this is a thing that may bee accomplished by night or by day, running or resting, in Peace or in Warre; but to thinke that wee will returne againe to take vp our chaines, or set our selues in the way of *Toboso*, is as hard as to make vs beleue, that it is now night, it being yet scarce ten of the clocke in the morning, and to demanda such a thing of vs, is as likely as to seeke for Peares of the Elme tree. I swear by such a one (quoth *Don-Quixote* thorowly enraged) Sir sonne of a whore, *Don Ginesilio* of *Paropillio*, or howsoeuer you are called, that thou shalt goe thy selfe alone with thy taile betweene thy legges, and beere all the chaine in thy necke. *Passamonte* who was by nature very cholericke, knowing assuredly that *Don-Quixote* was not very wise (seeing hee had attempted such a desperate act, as to seeke to giue them liberty) seeing himselfe thus abused, winked on his companions,



and going a little aside, they sent such a showre of stones on *Don-Quixote*, as hee had no leifure to couer himselfe with his Buckler, and poore *Rozinante* made no more account of the spurre, then if his sides were made of Brasse. *Sancho* ranne behinde his Asse, and by his meanes sheltred himselfe from the cloud and showre of stones, that rained vpon both.

And *Don-Quixote* could not couer himselfe so well, but that a number of stones stricke him in the body with so great force, as they ouer-threw him at last to the ground: and scarce was hee salne, when the Student leapt vpon him and tooke the Basen off his head, and gaue him three or foure blowes with it on the shoulders, and after stricke it so oft about the ground, as hee almost broke it to pieces. They tooke from him likewise a Cassocke which he wore vpon his armour, and thought also to take away his Stockins, but that they were hindred by his Greaues. From *Sancho* they tooke away his Cassocke, and left him in his haire: and diuiding all the spoiles of the battaile among themselves, they departed, euery one by the way hee pleased, troubled with greater care how to escape from the *Holy-brother-hood* which they feared, then to lade themselves with the yron chaine, and goe and present themselves before the Lady *Dulcinea* of *Toboso*. The Asse, and *Rozinante*, *Sancho*, and *Don-Quixote*, remained alone.

The Asse stood pensatiue, with his head hanging downwards, shaking now and then his eares, thinking that the storme of stones was not yet past, but that they still buzzed by his head. *Rozinante* lay ouer-throwne by his Master, who was likewise stricke downe by another blow of a stone. *Sancho* in feare of the bullets of the *Holy brother-hood*, and *Don-Quixote* most discontent to see himselfe so misused by those very same, to whom hee had done so much good.

## C H A P. IX.

Of that which befell the famous Don-Quixote in Sierra Morena, which was one of the most rare adventures, which in this or any other so authentick a History is recounted.

**D**On-Quixote seeing himselfe in so ill plight, said to his Squire *Sancho*, I haue heard say oft-times, that to doe good to men vnthankfull, is to cast water into the Sea. If I had beleeued what thou saidst to me, I might well haue preuented all this griefe: but now that is past: patience, and be wiser another time. You will take warning as much by this, quoth *Sancho*, as I am a *Turke*. But since you say, that if you had beleeued me, you had auoided this griefe; beleue me now, and you shall eschew a greater: for you must wite, that no Knighthood nor Chiuallry is of any authoritie with the *Holy Brotherhood*; for it cares not two farthings for all the Knights Errants in the world, and know, that me thinkes I heare their arrowes buzze about mine eares already.

*Sancho*, thou art a naturall Coward, quoth *Don-Quixote*: but because thou mayest not say, that I am obstinate, and that I neuer follow thine aduice, I will take thy counsell this time, and conuey my selfe from that fury which now thou fearest so much: but it shall be on a condition, that thou neuer tell aliue nor dying to any mortall creature, that I retired or withdrew my selfe out of this danger for feare, but onely to satisfie thy requests: For if thou sayest any other thing, thou shalt belie me most falsly: and euen from this very time till that, and from thence vntill now, I giue thee the lie herein, and I say thou liest, and shalt lie as oft-times as thou sayest or doest thinke the contrary: and doe not reply to me. For in onely thinking that I withdraw my selfe out of any perill, but principally this, which seemes to carry with it some shadow of feare, I am about to remaine and expect heere alone, not onely for the *Holy Brotherhood*-

Brother-hood, which thou namest and fearest, but also for the brethren of the *Twelve Tribes*, for the *Seven Macchabees*, for *Castor* and *Pollux*, and for all the other brothers and brother-hoods in the world.

Sir, answered *Sancho*, to retire, is not to flie, nor to expect, is wisdom, when the danger exceedeth all hope; and it is the part of a wise man, to keepe himselfe safe to day for to morrow; and not to adventure himselfe wholly in one day. And know, that although I be but a rude Clowne, yet doe I for all that vnderstand somewhat of that which men call good gouernment: and therefore doe not repent your selfe for following mine aduice, but mount on *Rozinante* if you be able; if not, I will helpe you, and come after me, for my minde giues me that we shall now haue more vse of legs then of hands.

*Don-Quixote* leaped on his horse without replying a word, and *Sancho* guiding him on his Asse, they both entered into that part of \* *Sierra Morena* that was neere vnto them; *Sancho* had a secret designe to crosse ouer it all, and issue at *Viso* or *Amodouar* of *Campo*, and in the meane time to hide themselues for some daies, among those craggy and intricate rocks, to the end they might not be found by the *Holy brother-hood*, if it did inake after them. And he was the more encouraged to doe this, because he saw, their prouision which he carried on his Asse, had escaped safely out of the skirmish of the Gally-slaues: a thing which he accounted to be a miracle, considering the diligence that the slaues had vsed to search and carrie away all things with them. They arriued that night into the very midst and bowels of the mountaine, and there *Sancho* thought it fittest to spend that night, yea and some other few dayes also, at least as long as their victuals indured, and with this resolution they tooke vp their lodging among a number of Corke trees that grew betweene two Rockes. But fatall chance, which according to the opinion of those that haue not the light of faith, guideth, directeth, and compoun-  
deth

\* A great and  
large mountaine  
of Spaine.

death all as it liketh, ordained that that famous Coozener and Thiefe *Gines de Passamonte*, who was before deliuered out of chaines by *Don-Quixotes* force and folly, perswaded through feare he conceiued of the *Holy brother-hood* (whom he had iust cause to feare) resolued to hide himselfe likewise in that mountaine, and his fortune and feares led him iust to the place where it had first addrest *Don-Quixote* and his Squire, iust at such time as he might perceiue them, and they both at that instant salue asleepe. And as euill men are euermore ingratefull, and that necessity forceth a man to attempt that which it vrgeth, and likewise that the present redresse preuents the expectation of a future, *Gines*, who was neither gratefull nor gracious, resolued to steale away *Sancho* his Ass, making no account of *Roxinante*, as a thing neither saleable nor pawnable. *Sancho* slept soundly, and so he stole his beast, and was before morning so farre off from thence, as he feared not to be found.

*Aurora* sallied forth at last to refresh the earth, and affright *Sancho* with a most sorrowfull accident, for he presently missed his Ass, and so seeing himselfe deprived of him, he began the most sadde and dolefull lamentation of the world: in such sort as he awaked *Don-Quixote* with his out-cries, who heard that he said thus, O childe of my bowels, borne in mine owne house, the sport of my children, the comfort of my wife, and the enuie of my neighbours; the ease of my burdens, and finally the sustainer of halfe of my person; for with sixe and twentie *Marnedys* that I gained daily by thee, I did defray halfe of mine expences.

*Don-Quixote*, who heard the plaint, and knew also the cause, did comfort *Sancho* with the best words he could deuise, and desired him to haue patience, promising to giue a letter of exchange, to the end that they of his house might deliuer him three Asses of fiue, which he had left at home,

*Sancho*

*Sancho* comforted himselfe againe with this promise, and dried vp his teares, moderated his sighes, and gaue his Lord thanks for so great a fauour. And as they entred in farther among those mountaines, we cannot recount the ioy of our Knight, to whom those places seemed most accomodate to atchieue the aduentures he searched for. They reduced to his memory the maruellous accidents that had befallne Knights Errant in like solitudes and Desarts: and he rode so ouerwhelmed & transported by these thoughts, as he remembred nothing else. Nor *Sancho* had any other care (after he was out of feare to be taken) but how to fill his belly with some of these reliques which yet remained of the Clericall spoyle; and so he followed his Lord, taking now and then out of a basket, (which *Roxinante* carried for want of the Ass) some meat, lining therewithall his panch; and whilst he went thus employed, he would not haue giuen a mite to encounter any other aduenture how honourable foucr.

But whilst he was thus busied, he espyed his Master labouring to take vp with the point of his Iauelin, some bulke or other that lay on the ground, and went towards him to see whether he needed his helpe, iust at the season that he lifted vp a saddle cushion, and a Port-mantue fast to it, which were halfe rotten, or rather wholly rotted by the weather; yet they weighed so much, that *Sancho's* assistance was requisite to take them vp: and straight his Lord commanded him to see what was in the Waller. *Sancho* obeyed with expedition. And although it was shut with a chaine and hanging locke, yet by the parts which were torne he saw what was within, to wit, foure fine Holland shirts, and other linnens both curious and cleane: and moreouer a hand-kercher, wherein was a good quantity of gold: which he perceiuing, said, Blessed be heauen, which hath once presented to vs a beneficiall aduenture: and searching for more, he found a Tablet very costely bound. This *Don-Quixote* tooke of him, commanding

ding him to keepe the gold with himselfe; for which rich fauour *Sancho* did presently kisse his hands: and after, taking all the linnen, he clapt it vp in the bagge of their victuals.

*Don-Quixote* hauing noted all these things, said, Me thinkes, *Sancho* (and it cannot be possible any other) that some traoueller hauing left his way, past thorow this mountaine, and being encountred by thecues, they slew him, & buried him in this secret place. It cannot be so, answered *Sancho*, for if they were thecues, they would not haue left this money behind them. Thou sayest true, quoth *Don-Quixote*; and therefore I cannot coniecture what it might be: but stay a while, we will see whether there be any thing written in these Tablets, by which we may vent and finde out that which I desire. Then he opened it, and the first thing that he found written in it, as it were a first draught, but done with a very faire Character, was a Sonnet which he read aloud, that *Sancho* might also heare it, and was this which ensues.

O R lone of vnderstanding quite is voyde:  
 Or he abounds in cruelty, or my paine  
 Th'occasion equals not; for which I bide  
 The torments dyxe, he maketh me sustaine.  
 But if lone be a God, I dare maintaine  
 He nought ignores: and reason aye decides;  
 Gods should not cruell be: then who or daines  
 This paine I worshipping, which my heart diuides?  
 Filis! I erre, if thou I say it is:  
 For so great ill and good cannot consist.  
 Nor doth this wracke from heau'n befall, but yet,  
 That shortly I must die, can no way misse:  
 For th'euill, whose cause is hardly well exprest,  
 By miracle alone, true cure may get.

Nothing



\* An allusion to  
the Spanish word  
Hilo, signifying  
a thread.

Nothing can be learned by that verse, quoth *Sancho*, if by that \* *Hilo* or three d which is said there, you gather not where lies the rest of the clue. What *Hilo* is here, quoth *Don-Quixote*? Me thought, quoth *Sancho*, that you read *Hilo* there. I did not, but *Fili*, said *Don-Quixote*, which is without doubt the name of the Lady, on whom the Author of this Sonnet complains, who in good truth seemes to be a reasonable good Poet, or else I know but little of that Art.

Why then, quoth *Sancho*, belike you doe also vnderstand Poetry? That I doe, and more then thou thinkest, quoth *Don-Quixote*; as thou shalt see when thou shalt carry a letter from me to my Lady *Dulcinea del Toboso*, written in verse from the one end to the other: For I would thou shouldest know, *Sancho*, that all, or the greater number of Knights Errant, in times past were great Versifiers and Musicians: for these two qualities, or graces as I may better terme them, are annext to amorous Knights Adventurers. True it is, that the verses of the ancient Knights are not so adorned with words, as they are rich in conceits.

I pray you reade more, quoth *Sancho*, for perhaps you may finde somewhat that may satisfie. Then *Don-Quixote* turned the leafe, and said, This is prose, and it seemes to be a letter. What Sir, a missive letter, quoth *Sancho*? No, but rather of loue, according to the beginning, quoth *Don-Quixote*. I pray you therefore, quoth *Sancho*, reade it loud enough, for I take great delight in these things of loue. I am content, quoth *Don-Quixote*, and reading it loudly as *Sancho* had requested, it said as ensueth.

Thy false promise and my certaine misfortune, doe carry me to such a place, as from thence thou shalt sooner receiue newes of my death, then reasons of my iust complaints. Thou hast disdained me (*O ingrate*) for one that hath more, but not for one that is worth more then I am: but if vertue were a treasure of estimation, I would not Emulate other mens fortunes, nor weepe thus for mine owne misfor-

misfortunes. That which thy beauty erected, thy workes haue ouerthrowne: by it I deemed thee to be an Angell, and by these, I certainly know thee to be but a woman. Rest in peace (*O canser of my warre*) and let heauen worke so, that thy Spouses deceits remaine still concealed, to the end thou maist not repent what thou didst, and I be constrained to take reuenge of that I desire not.

Having read the letter, *Don-Quixote* said, We can collect lesse by this then by the verses, what the Author is, other then that he is some disdained louer: and so passing ouer all the booke, he found other Verses and Letters, of which he could reade some, others not at all. But the summe of them all were, accusations, plaints, and mistrusts, pleasures, griefes, fauours, and disdaines, some solemnized, others deplored. And whilest *Don-Quixote* past ouer the booke, *Sancho* past ouer the mallet, without leauing a corner of it, or the cushion vnsearched, or a seame vnripte, nor a locke of wooll vncarded, to the end nothing might remaine behind for want of diligence, or carelesnesse: they found gold which past a hundred crownes, had stird in him such a greedinesse to haue more. And though he got no more then that which he found at the first, yet did he account his flights in the couerlet, his vomiting of the drench, the benedictions of the packetaues, the blowes of the Carrier, the losse of his wallet, the robbing of his Caslocke, and all the hunger, thirst, and wearinesse that he had past in the seruice of his good Lord and Master, for well imployed; accounting himselfe to be more then well payed, by the gifts receiued of the money they found. The Knight of the *Ill-fauoured face* was the while possessed with a maruellous desire to know who was the owner of the mallet, coniecturing by the Sonnet, & letter, the gold, and linnen, that the enamoured was some man of worth, whom the disdain and rigour of his Lady had conducted to some desperate termes. But by reason that no body appeared, through that inhabitable  
and

and Desart place, by whom he might be informed; hee thought on it no more, but only rode on, without choosing any other way, then that which pleased *Rozinante* to trauell, who tooke the plainest and easiest to passe thorow: hauing still an imagination that there could not want some strange aduenture, amidst that Forrest.

And as he rode on with this conceit, he saw a man on the top of a little mountaine that stood iust before his face, leape from rocke to rocke, and tuffe to tuffe, with wonderfull dexterity. And as he thought, he was naked, had a blacke and thicke beard, the haire many and confusedly mingled, his feet and legges bare, his thighes were couered with a paire of hose, which seemed to be of Murry Veluet, but were so torne, that they discouered his flesh in many places: his head was likewise bare, and although he past by with the haste we haue recounted, yet did *The Knight of the Ill-fauoured face* note all these particularities, and although he indeuoured, yet could not he follow him, for it was not in *Rozinantes* power, in that weake state wherein he was, to trauell so swiftly among those rocks, chiefly being naturally very slow and flegmatike.

*Don-Quixote* after espying him, did instantly imagine him to be owner of the Cushion and Mallet; and therefore resolued to goe on in his search, although he should spend a whole yeere therein among those mountaines: and commanded *Sancho* to goe about the one side of the mountaine, and he would goe the other, and quoth he, it may befall that by vsing this diligence, we may incounter with that man, which vanished so suddainely out of our sight.

I cannot doe so, quoth *Sancho*, for that in parting one step from you, feare presently so assaults me, with a thousand visions and affrightments. And let this serue you hereafter for a warning, to the end you may not from henceforth part me the blacke of a naile from your presence. It shall be so, answereth *The Knight of the Ill-fauoured face*. And I am very glad that thou dost thus build vpon my valour,

valour, the which shall neuer faile thee, although thou didst want thy very soule: and therefore follow me by little and little, or as thou maist, and make of thine eyes two Lant-hornes, for we will giue a turne about this little rocke, and perhaps we may meete with this man whom we saw euen now, who doubtlesly can be none other then the owner of our bootie.

To which *Sancho* replyed, It were much better not to finde him: for if we should meet him, and were by chance the owner of this money, it is most euident that I must restore it to him, and therefore it is better without vsing this vnprofitable diligence, to let me possesse it *bona fide*, vntill the true Lord shall appeare by some way lesse curious and diligent: which perhaps may fall at such a time as it shall be all spent; and in that case I am freed from all processes by priuiledge of the King.

Thou deceiuest thy selfe, *Sancho*, therein, quoth *Don-Quixote*: for seeing we are false already into suspition of the owner, we are bound to search and restore it to him: and when we would not seeke him out, yet the vehement presumption that we haue of it, hath made vs possessors *mala fide*, and renders vs as culpable, as if he whom we surmise, were verily the true Lord.

So that, friend *Sancho*, be not grieued to seeke him, in respect of the grieve whereof thou shalt free mee if he be found. And saying so, spurd *Rozinante*, and *Sancho* followed after afoot, animated by the hope of the yong Asses his his Master had promised vnto him; and hauing compassed a part of the mountaine, they found a little streame, wherein lay dead, & halfe deuoured by Dogs and Crows, a Mule saddled and bridled, all which confirmed more in them the suspition, that he which fled away, was owner of the Mule and cushion. And as they looked on it, they heard a whistle, much like vnto that which Shepheards vse, as they keepe their flocks, and presently appeared at their left hand a great number of Goats, after whom the Goat-heard

that kept them, who was an aged man, followed on the top of the mountaine; and *Don-Quixote* cried to him, requesting him to come downe to them: who answered them againe as loudly, demanding of them, who had brought them to those desarts, rarely trodden by any other then Goats, Wolues, or other Sauage beasts which frequented those mountaines? *Sancho* answered him, that if he would descend where they were, they would giue him account thereof.

With that the Sheepheard came downe, and arriuing to the place where *Don-Quixote* was, he said, I dare wager that you looke on the hyred Mule which lies dead there in that bottom; well, in good faith he hath lien in that very place these fixe moneths. Say, I pray you, haue not you met in the way with the Master thereof? We haue encountred no body but a Cushion and a little Mallet, which we found not very farre off from hence. I did likewise finde the same, replied the Goat-heard, but I would neuer take it vp nor approach to it, fearefull of some misdemeanour, or that I should be hereafter demanded for it as for a stealth. For the Diuell is crafty, and now and then something riseth, euen from vnder a mans feet, whereat he stumbles and falles, without knowing how, or how not.

That is the very same, I say, quoth *Sancho*: for I likewise found it, but would not approach it the cast of a stone. There I haue left it, and there it remaines as it was; for I would not haue a dogge with a bell. Tell me good fellow, quoth *Don-Quixote*, dost thou know who is the owner of all these things?

That which I can say, answered the Goat-heard, is, that about some fixe moneths past; little more or lesse, there arriued at a certaine Sheepe-fold some three leagues off, a yong Gentleman of comely personage, and presence, mounted on that very Mule which lies dead there, and with the same Cushion and Mallet which you say you met, but touched nor. He demanded of vs, which was the  
most

most hidden and inaccessible part of the mountaine? And we told him, that this wherein we are now : and it is true; for if you did enter but halfe a league farther, perhaps you would not finde the way out againe so readily : and I doe greatly maruell how you could find the way hither it selfe; for there is neither high way nor path that may addresse any to this place.

I say then, that the yong man, as soone as he heard our answer, he turned the bridle, and trauelled towards the place we shewed to him, leauing vs all with very great liking of his comelineffe, and maruelled at his demand and speed, wherewith he departed and made towards the mountaine : and after that time, we did not see him a good many of daies, vntill by chance one of our Sheepherds came by with our prouision of victuals, to whom he drew neere, without speaking a word, and spurned and beat him welsauour'dly, and after went to the Assc which carried our victuals, and taking away all the bread and cheefe that was there, he fled into the mountaine with wonderfull speede.

When we heard of this, some of vs Goat-heards, we went to search for him, and spent therein almost two dayes in the most solitary places of this mountaine, and in the end found him lurking in the hollow part of a very tall and great Corke tree, who as soone as he perceiued vs, came forth to meet vs with great stayednesse : his apparell was all torne, his visage dis-figured, and totted with the Sunne in such manner, as we could scarce know him, if it were not that his attire, although rent, by the notice we had of it, did giue vs to vnderstand, that he was the man for whom we sought. He saluted vs courteously, and in brieffe and very good reasons he said, that we ought not to maruell, seeing him goe in that manner : for that it behoued to doeso, that he might accomplish a certaine penance inioyned to him, for the many sinnes he had committed. We prayed him to tell vs what he was : but wee could



neuer perswade him to it. We requested him likewise that whensoever he had any neede of meat (without which he could not liue) he should tell vs where wee might finde him, and we would bring it to him with great loue and diligence; and that if he also did not like of this motion, that he would at least-wise come and aske it, and not take it violently as he had done before from our-Sheepheards. Hee thanked vs very much for our offer, and intreated pardon of the assaults passed, and promised to aske it from thence-forward for Gods sake, without giuing annoyance to any one. And touching his dwelling or place of abode, he said that he had none other then that where the night ouertooke him, and ended his Discourse with so feeling laments, that we might well be accounted stones which heard him, if therein we had not kept him company, considering the state wherein we had seene him first; and that wherein now he was. For as I said, he was a very comely and gracious yong man, and shewed by his courteous and orderly speech, that he was well borne, and a Court-like person. For though we were all Clownes, such as did heare him, his Gentility was such, as could make it selfe knowne, euen to rudenesse it selfe: and being in the best of his Discourse, he stopt and grew silent, fixing his eyes on the ground a good while, wherein wee likewise stood still suspended, expecting in what that distraction would end, with no little compassion to behold it; for we easily perceiued that some accident of madnesse had surprised him, by his staring and beholding the earth so fixedly, without once moouing the eyelidde, and other times by the shutting of them, the biting of his lips, and bending of his browes. But very speedily after, hee made vs certaine thereof himselfe: for rising from the ground (whereon he had throwne himselfe a little before) with great furie, hee set vpon him that fate next vnto him, with such courage and rage, that if we had not taken him away, he would haue slaine him  
with

with blowes and bites, and he did all this, saying, O treacherous *Fernando*, here, here thou shalt pay me the iniurie that thou didst me: these hands shall rent out the heart, in which doe harbour and are heaped all euils together, but principally fraud and deceit: and to these he added other words, all adrest to the dispraise of that *Fernando*, and to attach him of treason and vntruth.

We tooke from him at last, not without difficultie, our fellow, and he without saying a word departed from vs, embushing himselfe presently among the bushes & brambles, leauing vs wholly disabled to follow him in those rough and vnhaunted places. By this we gathered that his madnesse comes to him at times, and that some one called *Fernando*, had done some ill work of such weight, as the termes shew, to which it hath brought him. All which hath after beene yet confirmed as often, (which were many times) as he came out to the fields, sometimes to demanda meat of the Shepheards, and other times to take it of them perforce: for when he is taken with this fit of madnesse, although the Shepheards doe offer him meat willingly, yet will not he receiue, vnlesse he take it with buffets: and when he is in his right sense, he asks it for Gods sake, with courtesie & humanity, & renders many thanks, & that not without teares. And in very truth, Sirs, I say vnto you, quoth the Goatheard, that I & foure others, wherof two are my men, other two my friends, resolu'd yesterday to search vntil we found him; and being found, either by force or faire means, we wil carry him to the towne of *Almodanar*, which is but eight leagues from hence; and there will we haue him cured, if his disease may be holpen, or at least we shall learne what he is, when he turnes to his wits, and whether he hath any friends to whom notice of his misfortune may be giuen. This is, Sirs, all that I can say concerning that which you demanded of mee; and you shall vnderstand that the owner of those things which you saw in the way, is the very same, whom you saw passe by you so naked and nimble:

for *Don-Quixote* had told him by this, that he had seene that man goe by, leaping among the Rockes.

*Don-Quixote* rested maruellously admired at the Goat-herds tale, and with greater desire to know who that vnfortunate mad-man was, purposed with himselfe, as he had alreadie resolued, to search him thorow-out the mountains, without leauing a Corner or Caue of it vnsought, vntill he had gotten him. But fortune disposed the matter better then he expected: for he appeared in that very instant in a cleft of a Rock, that answered to the place where they stood speaking, who came towards them, murmuring somewhat to himselfe, which could not be vnderstood neere at hand, and much lesse a farre off: His apparrell was such as wee haue deliuered, onely differing in this, as *Don-Quixote* perceiued when he drew neerer, that he wore on him, although torne, a leather Ierkin perfumed with *Amber*. By which he thorowly collected, that the person which wore such attire, was not of the least quality.

When the young man came to the place where they discoursed, he saluted them with a hoarse voice, but with great courtesie: and *Don-Quixote* returned him his greetings with no lesse complement; and alighting from *Rozinante*, he aduanced to imbrace him with very good carriage and countenance, and held him a good while straightly between his armes, as if he had knowne him of long time. The other, whom we may call The vnfortunate Knight of the Rock, as wel as *Don-Quixote*, The Knight of the Ill-fauoured face, after he had permitted himselfe to be imbraced a while, did step a little off from our Knight; and laying his hand on his shoulders, began to behold him earnestly, as one desirous to call to mind whether he had euer seene him before: being perhaps no lesse admired to see *Don-Quixotes* figure, proportion and armes, then *Don-Quixote* was to view him. In resolution, the first that spoke after the imbracing, was the ragged Knight, and sayd what wee will presently recount.

## C H A P. X.

*Wherein is prosecuted the adventure of  
Sierra Morena.*

**T**He Historie affirms, that great was the attention, wherewithal *Don-Quixote* listened to the vnfortunate *Knight of the Rocks*, who began his speech in this manner: Truly, good Sir, whatsoeuer you be (for I know you not) I doe with all my heart gratifie the signes of affection and courtesie which you haue vsed towards me, and wish heartily that I were in termes to serue with more then my will, the good will you beare towards me, as your courteous intertainment denotes: but my fate is so niggardly, as it affords me no other meanes to repay good workes done to me, then onely to lend me a good desire sometime to satisfie them.

So great is mine affection, replied *Don-Quixote*, to serue you, as I was fully resolu'd neuer to depart out of these mountaines vntil I had found you, and knowne of your selfe whether there might be any kind of remedy found for the griefe that this your so vnusuall a kind of life argues, doth possesse your soule; and if it were requisite, to search it out with all possible diligence: and when your disaster were known of those which clap their doores in the face of comfort, I intended in that case to beare a part in your lamentations, and plaine it with the dolefullest note; for it is a consolation in afflictions, to haue one that condoles in their. And if this my good intention may merit any acceptance, or be gratified by any courtesie, let me intreat you, Sir, by the excesse thereof, which I see accumulated in your bosom; and ioynly I coniure you by that thing which you haue, or doe presently most affect, that you wil please to disclose vnto me who you are, and what the cause hath beene that perswaded you to come, to liue and dye in these Desarts, like a bruit beast, seeing you liue among such, so alienated from  
your

your selfe, as both your attire & countenance demonstrate. And I doe vow (quoth *Don-Quixote*) by the high order of Chivalrie, which I (although vnworthie and a sinner) have receiued, and by the profession of Knights errant, that if you doe pleasure me herein, to assist you with as good earnest as my profession doth bind me, eyther by remedying your disaster, if it can be holpen; or else by assisting you to lament it, if it be so desperate.

The *Knight of the Rock*, who heard him of *The Il-fauoured face* speake in that manner, did nothing else for a great while, but behold him again and again, and re-behold him from top to toe. And after viewing him wel, he said, If you haue any thing to eate, I pray you giue it mee for Gods sake, and after I haue eaten, I will satishe your demand thoroughly, to gratifie the many courtesies and vndeserued prof-fers you haue made vnto mee. *Sancho*, and the Goatheard presents the one out of his Waller, the other out of his Scrip, tooke some meat and gaue it to the Knight of the Rocke to allay his hunger, and he did eate so fast, like a distracted man, as he left no intermission between bit and bit, but clapt them vp so swiftly, as he rather seemed to swallow then to chew them; and whilst he did eat, neither he or any of the rest spoke a word: and hauing ended his dinner, he made them signes to follow him, as at last they did, vnto a little Meadow seated hard by that place, at the folde of a mountaine; where being arriued he stretched himselfe on the grasse, which the rest did likewise in his imitation, without speaking a word, vtill that he after settling himselfe in his place, began in this manner; If, Sirs, you please to heare the exceeding greatnesse of my disasters briefly rehearsed, you must promise me, that you will not interrupt the file of my dolesfull narration, with eyther demand or other thing; for in the very instant that you shall do it, there also must remaine that which I say depending. These words of our ragged Knights, called to *Don-Quixotes* remembrance the tale which his Squire had told vnto him, where he erred

in the account of his Goats, which had passed the riuer, for which that Historie remained suspended. But returning to our ragged man, he said, This preuention which now I giue, is to the end that I may compendiously passe ouer the discourse of my mis-haps: for the reuoking of them to remembrance, onely serues me to none other stead, then to increase the old, by adding of new misfortunes; and by how much the fewer your questions are, by so much the more speedily shall I haue finished my pittifull Discourse; and yet I meane not to omit the essentiall poynt of my woes vntoucht, that your desires may be herein sufficiently satisfied. *Don-Quixote* in his owne, and his other companions name, promised to performe his request; whereupon he began his relation in this manner:

My name is *Cardenio*, the place of my birth, one of the best Cities in *Audaluzia*, my linage noble, my parents rich, and my misfortunes so great, as I thinke my parents haue ere this deplored, and my kinsfolke condoled them; being very little able with their wealth to redresse them; for the goods of fortune are but of small vertue to remedie the disasters of heauen. There dwelt in the same Cittie a heauen, wherein loue had placed all the glorie that I could desire; so great is the beauty of *Luscinda*, a damzel as noble and rich as I: but more fortunate, and lesse constant then my honourable desires expected. I loued, honoured, and adored this *Luscinda*, almost from my verie infancie; and she affected me likewise, with all the integritie and good will, which with her so young yeeres did accord. Our parents knew our mutuall amitie, for which they were nothing agriued, perceyuing very well, that although wee continued it, yet could it haue none other end but that of Matrimonie; a thing which the equality of our blood and substance, did of it selfe almost inuite vs to. Our age and affection increased in such sort, as it seemed fit for *Luscinda's* father, for certaine good respects, to denie me the entrance of his house any longer; imitating in a manner therein



therein *Tubi*, so much solemnized by the Poets, her parents; which hinderance serued only to adde flame to flame, and desire to desire: for although it set silence to our tongues, yet would they not impose it to our Pens, which are wont to expresse to whom it pleased, the most hidden secrecies of our soules, with more libertie then the tongue; for the presence of the beloued doth often distract, trouble, and strike dumbe the boldest tongue and firmest resolution. O Heauens! how many Letters haue I written vnto her? What cheerefull and honest answers haue I receyued? How many Ditties and amorous Verses haue I composed, wherein my soule declared and published her passions, declined her inflamed desires, intertayned her remembrance, and recreated her will? In effect, perceyuing my selfe to be forced, and that my soule consumed with a perpetuall desire to behold her, I resolved to put my desires in execution, and finish in an instant that which I deemed most expedient for the better atchieuing of my desired and deserued reward; which was (as I did indeed) to demand her of her father for my lawfull Spouse.

To which he made answer, that he did gratifie the good will which I shewed by honouring him, and desire to honour my selfe with pawnes that were his: but yet seeing my father yet liued, the motion of that matter properly most concerned him. For if it were not done with his good liking and pleasure, *Luscinda* was not a woman to be taken or given by stealth. I rendred him thanks for his good will, his words seeming vnto me very reasonable, as that my father should agree vnto them, as soone as I should expaine the matter; and therefore departed presently to acquaint him with my desires; who, at the time which I entered into a Chamber, wherein he was, stood with a Letter open in his hand; and espying me, e're I could breake my mind vnto him, gaue it me, saying, By that Letter, *Cardenio*, you may gather the desire that Duke *Ricardo* beares, to doe you any pleasure or fauour.

This

This Duke *Ricardo*, as I thinke, you know, *Sirs*, already, is a *Grande* of *Spayne*, whose Dukedome is seated in the best part of all *Andalusia*.

I tooke the Letter and read it; which appeared so vrgent, as I my selfe accounted it would be ill done, if my father did not accomplish the contents thereof, which were indeed, that he should presently addresse me to his Court, to the end I might be companion (and not seruant) to his eldest sonne; and that he would incharge himselfe with the aduancing of me to such preferments as might be answerable vnto the value and estimation he made of my person. I past ouer the whole Letter, and was stricken dumbe at the reading thereof, but chiefly hearing my father to say, *Cardenio*, thou must depart within two dayes, to accomplish the Dukes desire; and omit not to render Almighty God thanks, which doth thus open the way, by which thou mayest attaine in fine to that which I know thou dost merite; and to these words added certaine others of fatherly counsell and direction. The terme of my departure arriued, and I spoke to my *Luscinda* on a certaine night, and recounted vnto her all that passed, and likewise to her father, intreating him to ouerslip a few dayes, and deferre the bestowing of his daughter else-where, vntill I went to vnderstand Duke *Ricardo* his will: which he promised me, and she confirmed it with a thousand othes and promises.

Finally, I came to Duke *Ricardoes* Court, and was so friendly receyued and intertayned by him, as euen verie then enuie began to exercise her accustomed function, being forthwith emulated by the ancient Seruitors; perswading themselves, that the tokens the Duke shewed to doe me fauours, could not but turne to their preiudice. But he that reioyced most at mine arriuall, was a second sonne of the Dukes, called *Fernando*, who was young, gallant, very comely, liberall, and amorous; who within a while after my comming, held mee so dearely, as euerie one wondred thereat: and though the elder loued me well, and did me fauour,

fauour, yet was it in no respect comparable to that wherewithall *Don Fernando* loued and treated mee. It therefore befell, that as there is no secreſie amongſt friends ſo great, but they will communicate it the one to the other, and the familiaritie which I had with *Don Fernando*, was now paſt the limits of fauour, and turned into deareſt amitie, he reuealed vnto me all his thoughts, but chiefly one of his loue, which did not a little moleſt him. For he was enamoured on a Farmers daughter that was his Fathers vaſſall, whoſe parents were maruellous rich, and ſhe her ſelfe ſo beautifull, warie, diſcreet, and honeſt, as neuer a one that knew her, could abſolutely determine wherein, or in which of all her perſections ſhee did moſt excell or was moſt accompliſhed. And thoſe good parts of the beautifull Countrey-maid, reduced *Don Fernando* his deſires to ſuch an exigent, as he reſolued that he might the better gaine her good will, and conquer her integritie, to paſſe her a promiſe of marriage; for otherwiſe he ſhould labour to affect that which was impoſſible, and but ſtrive againſt the ſtreame. I, as one bound thereunto by our friendſhip, did thwart and diſſwade him from his purpoſe with the beſt reaſons, and moſt efficacious words I might: and ſeeing all could not preuayle, I determined to acquaint the Duke *Ricardo* his father therewithall. But *Don Fernando* beeing verie craftie and diſcreet, ſuſpected and feared as much, becauſe hee conſidered that in the law of a faithfull ſeruant, I was bound not to conceale a thing that would turne ſo much to the preiudice of the Duke my Lord: and therefore both to diuert and deceiue me at once, that he could find no meanes ſo good, to deſace the remembrance of that beautie out of his mind, which held his heart in ſuch ſubiection, then to abſent himſelf for certaine moneths: and he would likewiſe haue that abſence to bee this, that both of vs ſhould depart together, and come to my fathers houſe, vnder pretence (as hee would informe the Duke) that he went to ſee and chea-  
pen

pen certaine great horses that were in the Citie wherein I was borne; a place of breeding the best horses in the world.

Scarce had I heard him say this (when borne away by the naturall propension each one hath to his Countrey, and my loue ioynd) although his designment had not beene so good, yet would I haue ratified it, as one of the most expedient that could bee imagined, because I saw occasion and oportunitie so fairely offred, to returne and see againe my *Luscinda*. And thereof set on by this thought and desire, I approued his opinion, and did quicken his purpose, perswading him to prosecute it with all possible speed, for absence would in the end worke her effect in despite of the most forcible and vrgent thoughts; and when hee said this to me, he had already vnder the title of a husband (as it was afterward knowne) reaped the fruits of his longing desires, from his beautifull countrey-maide, and did onely await an oportunitie to reueale it without his owne detriment; fearefull of the Duke his fathers indignation, when he should vnderstand his errour.

It afterward hapned, that as loue in young men is not for the most part loue, but lust, the which (as it euer propoeth to it selfe as his last end, and period is delight) to as soone as it obtaineth the same, it likewise decaieth and maketh forcibly to retire that which was tearmed loue; for it cannot transgresse the limits which Nature hath assigned it, which boundings or meares, Nature hath in no wise allotted to true and sincere affection. I would say, that as soone as *Don Ferdinando* had inioyed his Country Lasse, his desires weakened, and his importunities waxed cold; and if at the first he fained an excuse to absent himselfe, that he might with more facility compasse them, hee did now in very good earnest procure to depart, to the end hee might not put them in execution. The Duke gaue him licence to depart, and commanded me to accompany him. Wee came to my Citie, where my father entertayned him  
accor-

according to his calling. I saw *Luscinda*, and then againe were reuiu'd (although indeed they were neither dead nor morified) my desires, and acquainted *Don Fernando* (alas, to my totall ruine) with them, because I thought it was not lawfull by the law of anity to keepe any thing concealed from him. There I dilated to him, on the Beauty, Wit, and Discretion of *Luscinda*, in so ample manner, as my prayes stirred in him a desire to view a Damzell so greatly adorned, and enriched with so rare endowments: and this his desire I (through my misfortune) satisfied, shewing her vnto him by the light of a Candle, at a Window where we two were wont to parle together; where hee beheld her to be such, as was sufficient to blot out of his memory all the beauties which euer hee had viewed before. Hee stood mute, beside himselfe, and rauished: and moreouer rested so greatly enamoured, as you may perceiue in the Discourse of this my dolefull narration. And to inflame his desires the more, (a thing which I fearefully auoyded, and onely discovered to heauen) fortune so disposed, that he found after me one of her letters, wherein she requested that I would demand her of her father for wife; which was so discreet, honest and amorously penned, as hee said, after reading it, that in *Luscinda* alone were included all the graces of Beauty and Vnderstanding ioyntly, which were diuided and separate in all the other women of the world.

Yet in good sooth I will here confesse the truth, that although I saw cleerely how deseruedly *Luscinda* was thus extold by *Don Ferdinando*, yet did not her praises please me so much pronounced by him; and therefore began to feare and suspect him, because he let no moment ouer-slip vs, without making some mention of *Luscinda*, and would still himselfe begin the Discourse, were the occasion euer so far-fetched: a thing which rowled in me I cannot tell what iealousie; not that I did feare any trauersie in *Luscindus* loyalty, but yet for all my Fates made me the very thing

thing which they most assured mee : and *Don Ferdinando* procured to read all the papers I sent to *Luscinda*, or she to me, vnder pretext that he tooke extraordinary delight to note the witty conceits of vs both. It therefore fell out, that *Luscinda* hauing demanded of mee a booke of Chiuallry to read, wherein shee tooke maruellous delight, and was that of *Amadis du Gaule*.

Scarce had *Don-Quixote* well heard him make mention of bookes of Knight-hood, when hee replied to him, If you had, good Sir, but once told mee at the beginning of your Historicall narration, that your Lady *Luscinda* was affected to the reading of Knightly aduentures, you needed not to haue vled any amplification to indeere or make plaine vnto mee the eminencie of her wit ; which certainly could not in any wise bee so excellent and perspicuous as you haue figured it, if shee wanted the propension and feeling you haue rehearsed, to the perusing of so pleasing Discourses : so that henceforth with me, you need not spend any more words to explaine and manifest the height of her beauty, worths and vnderstanding ; for by this onely notice I haue receiued of her deuotion two Bookes of Knight-hood, I doe confirme her for the most faire and accomplished woman for all perfections in the world : and I would to God, good Sir, that you had also sent her together with *Amadis*, the Histories of the good *Don Rugel of Grecia* ; for I am certaine, the Lady *Luscinda* would haue taken great delight in *Darayda* and *Garayda*, and in the wittie conceits of, the Sheepeheard *Darinell*, and in those admirable verses of his Bucolicks, sung and rehearsed by him with such grace, discretion and liberty. But a time may come, wherein this fault may be recompenced, if it shall please you to come with mee to my Village ; for there I may giue you three hundred Bookes, which are my soules greatest contentment, and the intertainment of my life ; althoug I do now verily beleue that none of them are left, thanks be to the malice  
of



of euill and enuious Inchanters. And I beseech you to pardon me this transgression of our agreement at the first, promised not to interrupt your Discourses: for when I heare any motion made of Chiuallry or Knights Errant, it is no more in my power to omit to speake of them, then in the Sunne-beames to leaue off warming, or in the Moones, to render things humid. And therefore I inreat pardon, and that you will prosecute your History, which is that which most imports vs.

Whilest *Don-Quixote* spoke those words, *Cardenio* hanged his head on his brest, giuing manifest tokens that hee was exceeding sad. And although *Don-Quixote* requested him twice to follow on with his Discourse, yet neither did hee lift vp his head, or answere a word, till at last, after he had stood a good while musing, he held vp his head and said; It cannot be taken out of my minde, nor is there any one in the world can depriue me of the conceit, or make mee belecue the contrary: and he were a bottle-head, that would thinke or belecue otherwise then that the great villaine, Master *Elisabat* the Barber kept Queene *Madasima* as his Lemman.

That is not so, I vow by such and such, quoth *Don-Quixote* in great choler (and as he was wont, rapt out three or foure round oathes) and it is great malice, or rather villany to say such a thing. For Queene *Madasima* was a very Noble Lady, and it ought not to be presumed, that so high a Princeesse would fall in loue with a Quack-saluer: and whosoeuer thinkes the contrary, lies like an arrant Villaine; as I will make him ynderstand a horse-backe or a-foote, armed or disarmed, by night or by day, or as he best liketh. *Cardenio* stood beholding him very earnestly as he spoke these words, whom the accident of his madnesse had by this possessed, and was not in plight to prosecute his History: nor would *Don-Quixote* giue care to it, hee was so mightily disgusted to heare Queene *Madasima* detracted.

A maruellous accident, for hee tooke her defence as earnestly, as if she were verily his true and naturall Princeesse; his wicked bookes had so much distracted him. And *Cardenio* being by this furiously madde, hearing himselfe answered with the lie, and the denomination of a Villaine, with other the like outrages, hee tooke the rest in ill part, and lifting vp a stone that was neere vnto him, gaue *Don-Quixote* such a blow therewithall, as hee ouer-threw him to the ground on his backe. *Sancho Pança* seeing his Master so roughly handled, set vpon the foole with his fist shut; and the ragged man receiued his assault in such manner, as hee likewise ouerthrew him at his feete with one fist, and mounting afterward vpon him, did worke him with his feete like a piece of Dough: and the Goat-heard, who thought to succour him, was like to incurre the same danger. And after he had ouer-throwne and beaten them all very well, hee departed from them and entred into the wood very quietly. *Sancho* arose, and with rage to see himselfe so be-laboured without desert, hee ranne vpon the Goat-heard to bee reuenged on him, saying that hee was in the fault, who had not premonished them, how that mans rauing fits did take him so at times; for had they beene aduertised thereof, they might haue stood all the while on their guard.

The Goat-heard answered, that he had already aduised them thereof; and if hee had not beene attentiuue thereunto, yet he was therefore nothing the more culpable.

*Sancho Pança* replied, and the Goat-heard made a reioynder thereunto: but their disputation ended at last, in the catching hold of one anothers beards, and be-sitting themselves so vncompassionately, as if *Don-Quixote* had not pacified them, they would haue torne one another to pieces. *Sancho* holding still the Goat-heard fast, said vnto his Lord, Let me alone, Sir Knight of the Il-fauoured face, for on this man who is a Clowne as I am my selfe, and no dubbed Knight, I may safely satisfie my selfe of the wrong  
Q hee

he hath done mee, by fighting with him hand to hand like an honourable man. It is true, quoth *Don-Quixote*, but I know well that hee is in no wise culpable of that which hath hapned. And saying so, appeased them; and turned againe to demand of the Goat-heard, whether it were possible to meet againe with *Cardenio*; for he remained possessed with an exceeding desire to know the end of his History.

The Goat-heard turned again to repeat what he had said at the first, to wit, that he knew not any certaine place of his abode; but if he haunted that Commarke any while, he would some-time meete with him, either in his madde or modest humour.

---

C H A P. XI.

*Which treates of the strange adventures that happened to the Knight of the Mancha, in Sierra Morena: and of the penance he did there, in imitation of Beltinebros.*

**D**On-Quixote tooke leaue of the Goat-heard, and mounting once againe on *Rozinante*, hee commanded *Sancho* to follow him, who obeyed, but with a very ill will; and thus they traueled by little and little, entring into the thickest and roughest part of all the mountaine: and *Sancho* went almost burst with a desire to reason with his Master, and therefore wished in minde that he would once begin, that he might not transgresse his commandement of silence imposed on him, but growing at last wholly impotent to containe himselfe speechelesse any longer: Good Sir *Don-Quixote*, I pray you giue me your blessing, and licence; for I meane to depart from this place, and returne to my house, my wife and children, with whom I shall be at least admitted to reason and speake my pleasure; for that you would desire to haue mee keepe you company thorow these Desarts  
night

night and day, and that I may not speake when I please, is but to bury mee aliue. Yet if fortune had so happily disposed our affaires, as that beasts could speake as they did in *Guisopetes* time, the harme had beene lesse, for then would I discourse a while with *Roxinante* (seeing my niggardly fortune hath not consented I might doe it with mine Asse) what I thought good, and in this sort would I weaue my mis-haps; for it is a stubborne thing, and that cannot be borne with patience, to trauell all the dayes of our life, and not to encounter any other thing then trappings vnder feete, tossings in Couerlets, blowes of stones, and buffets, and bee besides all this forced to sow vp our mouthes, a man daring not to breake his minde, but to stand mute like a post. *Sancho*, I vnderstand thee now, quoth *Don-Quixote*, thou diest with longing to speake that which I haue forbidden thee to speake: account therefore that commandement reuoked, and say what thou pleasest, on condition that this reuocation bee onely auailable and of force whilest we dwell in these mountaines, and no longer.

So be it, quoth *Sancho*, let me speake now, for what may after befall, God onely knowes; and then beginning to take the benefit of his licence, hee said, I pray you tell mee what benefit could you reape by taking *Queene Magimas* part? Or what was it to the purpose that that Abbat was her friend or no? For if you had let it slip, seeing you were not his Iudge, I verily belecue that the foole had prosecuted his tale, and wee should haue escaped the blow of the stone, the trampling vnder feete and spurnings, yea and more then siue or sixe good buffets. Yfaith, *Sancho*, quoth *Don-Quixote*, if thou knewest as well as I did, how honorable and principall a Lady was *Queene Madasima*, thou wouldest rather say, that I had great patience, seeing I did not strike thee on the mouth, out of which such blasphemies issued: for it is a very great dishonour to auerre or thinke that any *Queene* would fall in loue with a Barber.

For the truth of the History is, that Master *Elisabar*, of whom the mad man spoke, was very prudent, and a man of a sound iudgement, and serued the Queene as her Tutor and Phisician; but to thinke that she was his Lemman, is a madnesse worthy the seuerest punishment: and to the end thou mayest see that *Cardenio* knew not what he said, thou must vnderstand that when he spoke it, hee then was wholly beside himselfe.

That's it which I say, quoth *Sancho*, that you ought not to make account of words spoken by a Foole; for if fortune had not assisted you, but addrest the stone to your head, as it did to your brest, wee should haue remained in good plight, for hauing turned so earnestly in that my Ladies defence, whom God confound: and thinke you that *Cardenio* would not escape the dangers of the Law, by reason of his madnesse? Any Knight Errant, answered *Don-Quixote*, is bound to turne for the honour of women, of what quality soeuer, against madde or vnmad men: How much more for Queenes of so high degree and worth, as was Queene *Madesina*, to whom I beare particular affections for her good parts? for besides her being maruellous beautifull, she was morcouer very prudent and patient in her calamities, which were very many, and the company and counsels of Master *Elisabar* proued very beneficiall, and necessary to induce her to beare her mishaps with prudence and patience: and hence the ignorant and ill-meaning vulgar tooke occasion to suspect and affirme, that shee was his friend: but I say againe they lie, and all those that doe either thinke or say it, doe lie a thousand times.

Why, quoth *Sancho*, I neither say it nor thinke it; let those affirme any such thing, eate that lye & swallow it with their bread: and if they of whom you spoke, liued lightly, they haue giuen account to God therof by this. I come from my Vineyard, I know nothing. I am not a friend to know other mens liues. For he that buies & lies, shal feelee it in his purse.

How

How much more seeing I was borne naked, and am now naked, I can neither win nor lose? A man is but a man, though he haue a hofe on his head; but howfoeuer, what is that to me? And many thinke there is a Sheepe where there is no Fleece. But who shal bridle a man his vnderstanding, when men are prophane? Good God, quoth *Don-Quixote*, how many follies hast thou inserted here, and how wide from our purpose are those prouerbs which thou hast recited? Honest *Sancho*, hold thy peace, and from henceforth endeuour to serue thy Master, & do not meddle in things which concerne thee nothing; and vnderstand with al thy fiue senses, that whatsoeuer I haue done, do, or shall doe, is wholly guided by reason, and conformable to the rules of Knight-hood, which I know better then all the other Knights that euer profest them in the world. Sir, quoth *Sancho*, and is it a good rule of Chiuallry, that we goe wandring and lost among these mountains in this sort, without path or way in the search of a mad-man, to whom peraduenture after hee is found, will returne a desire to finish what hee began, not of his tale, but of your head and my ribbes, by endeuouring to breake them soundly and thorowly?

Peace, I say, *Sancho*, once againe, quoth *Don-Quixote*, for thou must wit, that the desire of finding the mad-man alone, brings mee not into these parts so much, as that which I haue in my mind to atchieue a certaine aduenture, by which I shall acquire eternall renowne and fame, thorowout the vniuersal face of the earth: and I shal therewithall scale all that which may render a Knight Errant complete and famous. And is the aduenture very dangerous, quoth *Sancho Pança*? No, answered the *Knight of the Il-fauoured face*, although the Die might run in such sort, as we might cast a hazard in stead of an incounter; but all consists in thy diligence. In mine, quoth *Sancho*? Yes (quoth *Don-Quixote*) for if thou returnest speedily from the place whereunto I meane to send thee, my paine will



also end shortly, and my glory commence very soone after: and because I will not hold thee long suspended, awayting to heare the effect of my words, I would haue thee to know, that the famous *Amadis du Gaule*, was one of the most accomplished Knights Errant. I doe not say well, saying hee was one; for hee was the onely, the first, and Prime Lord of as many as liued in his age. An euill yeere and a worse moneth for *Don Belianis*, or any other that shall dare presume to compare with him; for I sweare, that they all are questionlesse deceiued. I also say that when a Painter would become rare and excellent in his art, hee procures to imitate the patternes of the most singular Masters of his science. And this very rule runnes currant thoroughout all other Trades and exercises of account, which serue to adorne a wel-disposed Common-wealth; and so ought & doth he, that means to obtaine the name of a prudent and patient man, by imitating *Vlysses*, in whose person and dangers doth *Homer* delineate vnto vs the true portaiture of patience and sufferance; as likewise *Virgil* demonstrates vnder the person of *Eneas*, the duety and valour of a pious sonne, and the sagacity of a hardy and expert Captaine, not shewing them such as indeed they were, but as they should be, to remaine as an example of Vertue, to ensuing posterities. And in this very manner was *Amadis* the North-star, and the Sunne of valorous and amorous Knights, whom all wee ought to imitate which march vnder the ensignes of Loue and Chiuallry. And this being so manifest as it is, I finde, friend *Sancho*, that the Knight Errant who shall imitate him most, shall likewise be neereest to attaine the perfection of armes: and that wherein this Knight bewrayed most his Prudence, Valour, Courage, Patience, Constancy and Loue, was when he retyred himselfe to doe penance, being disdained by his Lady *Oriana* to the *Poore Rocke*, changing his name vnto that of *Belte-nebros*, a name certainly most significatiue and proper for the life which hee had at that time willingly chosen.

And

And I may more easily imitate him herein, then in cleaving of *Gyants*, beheading of Serpents, killing of Monsters, ouerthrowing of Armies, putting Nauies to flight, and finishing of Inchantments. And seeing that this Mountaine is so fit for that purpose, there is no reason why I should ouerslip the occasion, which doth so commodiously proffer me her Lockes.

In effect, quoth *Sancho*, what is it you meane to doe in these remote places? Haue not I told to thee already, said *Don-Quixote*, that I meane to follow *Amadis*, by playing here the despaired, wood and furious man? To imitate likewise the valiant *Orlando*, where hee found the tokens by a Fountaine that *Angelica the faire* had abused her selfe with *Medoso*, for griefe whereof hee ran mad, and pluckt vp Trees by their rootes, troubled the Water of cleere Fountaines, slew Shepheards, destroyed their Flocks, fired the Sheep-folds, ouerthrew houses, trayled Mares after him, and committed a hundred thousand other infolencies, worthy of eternall fame and memorie? And although I meane not to imitate *Roldan*, or *Orlando*, or *Rowland*, (for he had all these names) exactly in euery mad prauke which he played: Yet will I doe it the best I can, in those things which shall seeme vnto me most essentiall. And perhaps I may rest contented with the only imitation of *Amadis*, who without iudamaging any by his rauings, and only vsing these of feeling laments, arriuing to as great fame thereby as any one whatsoeuer.

I beleeeue, replied *Sancho*, that the Knights which performed the like penances, were moued by some reasons to doe the like austerities and follies: but, good Sir, what occasion hath beene offered vnto you to become madde? What Lady hath disdained you? Or what arguments haue you found, that the Lady *Dulcinea of Toboso* hath euer dallied with Moore or Christian? There is the point, answered our Knight, and therein consists the perfection of mine affaires; for that a Knight Errant doe runne mad

vpon any iust occasion, deserues neither praise nor thanks: the wit is in waxing madde without cause, whereby my Mistresse may vaderstand, that if drie, I could doe this, what would I haue done being watered? How much more seeing I haue a iust motiue through the prolixie absence that I haue made from my euer-supremest Lady *Dulcinea of Toboso*? For as thou mightest haue heard read in *Marias Ambrosio* his Sheeheard:

*To him that absent is*

*All things succeed amisse.*

So that, friend *Sancho*, I would not haue thee lauish time longer in aduising, to let slip so rare, so happy, and singular an imitation. I am madde, and will be madde, vntill thou returne againe with answere vpon a letter, which I meane to send with thee to my Lady *Dulcinea*: and if it be such as my loyaltie deserues, my madnesse and penance shall end: but if the contrary, I shall runne madde in good earnest, and bee in that state that I shall apprehend nor feele any thing. So that howsoeuer I be answered, I shall issue out of the conflict and paine wherein thou leauest mee, by ioying the good thou shalt bring mee, as wise, or not feeling the euill thou shalt denounce, as mad. But tell mee *Sancho*, keepest thou charily yet the helmet of *Mambrino*, which I saw thee take vp from the ground the other day, when that vngrateful fellow thought to haue broken it into pieces, but could not; by which may be collected the excellent temper thereof?

*Sancho* answered to this demand, saying, I cannot suffer or beare longer, Sir *Knight of the Il-fauoured face*, nor take patiently many things which you say, and I begin to suspect by your words, that all that which you haue said to me of *Chinatri*, and of gaining Kingdomes and Empires, of bestowing Ilands and other gifts and great things, as Knights Errant are wont, are all matters of ayre and lies, all couzenage or couzening, or how eise you please to terme it: for hee that shall heare you name a Barbers Ba-

son,

son, *Mambrinos* Helmet, and that you will not abandon that errour in more then foure dayes; what other can he thinke, but that he who affirms such a thing, doth want wit and discretion? I carry the Bason in my bagge all battered and bored, and will haue it mended, and dresse my beard in it at home, if God shall doe me the fauour that I may one day see my wife and barnes.

Behold, *Sancho*, quoth *Don-Quixote*, I doe likewise sweare, that thou hast the shallowest pate that euer any Squire had or hath in the world: is it possible, that in all the time thou hast gone with me, thou couldest not perceiue, that all the aduentures of Knights Errant doe appeare *Chimera's*, follies and desperate things, being quite contrary? Not that they are indeed such, but rather by reason that we are still haunted by a crue of Inchanters, which change and transforme our actes, making them seeme what they please, according as they like to fauour or annoy vs. And so this which seemes to thee a Barbers Bason, is in my conceit *Mambrino* his Helmet; and to another will appeare in some other shape. And it is doubtlesly done by the profound science of the wiseman my friend, to make that seeme a Bason, which really & truly is *Mambrino's* Helmet: because that it being so precious a Jewell, all the world would pursue me to depriue me of it; but now seeing that it is so like a Barbers Bason, they endeuour not to gaine it; as was cleerely shewed in him that thought to breake it the other day, and would not carry it with him, but left it lying behind him on the ground, for ysaith he had neuer left it, did he know the worthinesse thereof. Keepe it, friend, for I neede it not at this present, wherein I must rather disarme my selfe of the Armes I weare, and remaine as naked as I was at the houre of my birth, if I shall take the humour rather to imitate *Oriando* in doing of my penance then *Amadis*.

Whilst thus he discoursed, he arriued to the foot of a lofty mountaine, which stood like a hewne rocke, diuided

from

from all the rest; by the skirt whereof glided a smooth Riuer, hemmed in on euery side by a greene and flourishing meddow, whose verdure did maruellously delight the greedy-beholding eye. There were in it also many wilde trees, and some plants and flowers which rendred the place much more pleasing. *The Knight of the Ill-fauoured face* made choice of this place to accomplish therein his penance: and therefore as soone as he had viewed it, he began to say with a loud voyce, like a distraſt man, these words ensuing: This is the place where the humour of mine eyes shall increase the liquid veines of this Crystill current: and my continuall and deepe sighes shall giue perpetuall motion to the leaues of these mountainy trees, in testimony of the paine which my oppressed heart doth suffer. O you, whosoever ye be, rusticall Gods, which haue your Mansion in this inhabitable place, giue care to the plaints of this vnfortunate Lover, whom a long absence, and a few imagined suspitions haue conducted to deplore his state among these Desarts; and make him exclaime on the rough condition of that Ingrate and Faire, who is the top, the Sunne, the period, terme and end of all humane beauty. O ye *Napeau* and *Driades*; which doe wontedly inhabite the Thickets and Groues, so may the nimble and lasciuious *Satyres*, by whom (although in vaine) you are beloued, neuer haue power to interrupt your sweet rest, as you shall assist me to lament my disasters, or at least, attend them whilst I dolefully breathe them. O *Dulcinea of Toboso*, the day of my night, the glory of my paine, North of my trauels, and starre of my fortunes: so heauen enrich thee with the highest, whensoever thou shalt demand it, as thou wilt consider the place and passe vnto which thine absence hath conducted me, and answer my faith and desires in compassionate and gracious manner. O solitary trees (which shall from hence-forward keepe company with my solitude) giue tokens with the soft motion of your boughes, that my presence doth not dislike you. O thou my Squire,

Squire, and gratefull companion in all prosperous and aduerse successes, beare well away, what thou shalt see me doe here, to the end that thou mayest after promptly recount it to the totall cause of my ruine. And saying so, he alighted from *Rozinante*, and taking off in a trice his bridle and saddle, he stricke him on the buttocke, saying, He giues thee liberty, that wants it himselfe, O horse, as famous for thy workes, as thou art vnfortunate by thy fates. Goe where thou pleasest, for thou bearest written in thy forehead, how that neither the *Hippogrifon* of *Astolfo*, nor the renowned *Frontino*, which cost *Bradamant* so deere, could compare with thee for swiftnesse.

When *Sancho* had viewed and heard his Lord speake thus, he likewise said, Good betide him that freed vs from the paines of vnpannelling the gray Asse; for if hee were here, yfaith he should also haue two or three claps on the buttockes, and a short Oration in his praise: yet if hee were here, I would not permit any other to vnpannell him, seeing there was no occasion why; for he good beast was nothing subiect to the passions of loue, or despaire, no more then I, who was his Master when it pleased God. And in good sooth, Sir Knight of the Ill-fauoured face, if my departure & your madnes be in good earnest, it will be needfull to saddle *Rozinante* againe, that he may supply the want of mine Asse; for it will shorten the time of my departure, and returne againe: and if I make my voyage afoot, I know not when I shall arriue there, or returne here backe vnto you; for in good earnest I am a very ill footman.

Let it bee as thou likest, quoth *Don-Quixote*, for thy designe displeaseth mee nothing; and therefore I resolute that thou shalt depart from hence after three dayes, for in the meane space thou shalt behold what I will doe and say for my Ladies sake, to the end thou maiest tell it to her. Why, quoth *Sancho*, what more can I view, then that which I haue seene already? Thou

art



art altogether wide of the matter, answered *Don-Quixote*, for I must yet teate mine apparell, throw away mine Armour, and beate my head about these Rockes, with many other things of that kinde, that will strike thee into admiration. Let mee beseech you, quoth *Sancho*, see well how you giue your selfe those knockes about the Rockes; for you might happen vpon some one so vngracious a Rocke, as at the first rap would dissolue all the whole *Machina* of your aduentures and penance. And therefore I would be of opinion, seeing that you doe hold it necessarie that some knockes bee giuen, with the head, and that this enterprize cannot be accomplished without them, that you content your selfe, seeing that all is but fayned, counterfeited, and a Iest, that you should, I say, content your selfe with striking it on the water, or on some other soft thing, as Cotton or Wooll, and leaue to my charge the exaggeration thereof, for I will tell to my Ladie, that you strike your head against the point of a Rocke, which was harder then a Diamond.

I thanke thee, *Sancho*, for thy good will, quoth *Don-Quixote*, but I can assure thee that all these things which I doe are no Iests, but very serious earnest, for otherwise wee should transgresse the Statutes of Chiuahrie, which command vs not to auouch any vntruth, on paine of relapse, and to doe one thing for another, is as much as to lye. So that my head-knockes must bee true, firme, and sound ones, without any sophisticall or fantasticall shadow: and it will bee requisite that thou leaue mee some lint to cure mee, seeing that Fortune hath deprivied vs of the *Balsamm* which wee lost. It was worse to haue lost the Assle, quoth *Sancho*, seeing that at once with him we haue lost our lint, and all our other provision: and I intreat you most earnestly not to name againe that accursed drinke, for in onely hearing it mentioned, you not onely turne my guts in me, but also my soule. And I request you moreouer, to make account that the terme of three  
dayes

dayes is already expired, wherein you would haue mee take notice of your follies; for I declare them already for scene, and will tell wonders to my Ladie: wherefore goe write your Letter, and dispatch me with all haste; for I long already to returne, and take you out of this Purgatory, wherein I leaue you.

Dost thou call it a Purgatory, *Sancho*, qd. *Don-Quixote*? Thou hadst done better, hadst thou called it hell; or rather worse, if there be any thing worse then that. I call it so (quoth *Sancho*) *Quia in inferno nulla est retentio*, as I haue heard say.

I vnderstand not, said *Don-Quixote*, what *retentio* meaneth. *Retentio* (quoth *Sancho*) is that, whosoever is in hell, neuer comes, nor can come out of it. Which shall fall out contrary in your person, or my feet shall goe ill, if I may carry spurs to quicken *Rozinante*: and that I may safely arriue before my Lady *Dulcinea* in *Toboso*; for I will recount vnto her such strange things of your follies and madnesse (for they be all one) that you haue, and doe daily, as I will make her as soft as a gloue, although I found her at the first harder then a Corke tree: with whose sweet and hony answer, I will returne in the ayre as speedily as a Witch, and take you out of this Purgatorie, which is no hell, although it seemes one, seeing there is hope to escape from it; which as I haue said, they want which are in hell: and I beleue you will not contradict me herein.

Thou hast reason, answered *The Knight of the Ill-fanored face*: but how shall I write the Letter? and the warrant for the receipt of the Colts also, added *Sancho*. All shall be inserted together, quoth *Don-Quixote*: and seeing wee haue no paper, we may doe well, imitating the ancient men of times past, to write our minde in the leaues of trees or waxe; yet waxe is as hard to be found here as paper. But now that I remember my selfe, I know where we may write our minde well, and more then well, to wit, in *Cardenia's* Tablets, and thou shalt haue care to cause the letters

letters to be writtten out : gaine fairely in the first Village, wherein thou shalt finde a Schoole-master; or if such a one bee wanting, by the Clerke of the Church : and beware in any sort, that thou giue it not to a Notary or Court-Clerke to bee copied; for they write such an intangling-confounded proceffe letter, as *Satan* himselfe would scarce bee able to reade it. And how shall wee doe for want of your name and subscription, quoth *Sancho*? Why, answered *Don-Quixote*, *Amadis* was neuer wont to subscribe to his Letters. I, but the warrant to receiue the three Asses must forcibly bee subsigned : and if it should afterward bee copied, they would say the former is false, and so I shall rest without my Coltes. The Warrant shall bee written and firmed with my hand in the Tablets, which as soone as my Neece shall see, shee will make no difficulty to deliuer thee them. And as concerning the loue-letter, thou shalt put this subscription to it; *Tours untill death, the Knight of the Ill-fauoured face*. And it makes no matter though it bee written by any stranger, for as much as I can remember, *Dulcinea* can neither write nor reade : nor hath shee scene any Letter, no, nor as much as a Character of my writing all the dayes of her life. For my loue and hers haue beene euer *Platonicall*, neuer extending themselues farther, then to an honest regard, and view the one of the other : and euen this same so rarely, as I dare boldly sweare, that in these doozen yeres which I loue her more deereley then the light of these mine eyes, which the earth shall one day deuoure, I haue not scene her foure times, and perhaps of those same foure times shee hath scarce perceiued once that I beheld her. Such is the care and closenesse wherewithall her parents *Lorenzo Corcuelo* and her Mother *Aldonca Nogales*; haue brought her vp. Ta, ta, quoth *Sancho*, that the Lady *Dulcinea* of *Toboso* is *Lorenzo Corcuelo* his Daughter, called by another name *Aldonca Lorenzo*? The same is shee, quoth *Don-Quixote*, and it is shee that merites to bee Empresse  
of

of the vast Vniuerse. I know her very well, replied *Sancho*, and I dare say, that she can throw an yron barre as well as any the strongest Lad in our Parish. I vow by the giuer, that tis a Wench of the marke, tall and stout, and so sturdy withall, that she will bring her chinne out of the mire, in despite of any Knight Errant, or that shall erre, that shall honour her as his Lady. Out vpon her, what a strength and voyce she hath? I saw her on a day stand on the toppe of the Church steeple, to call certaine seruants of her fathers, that laboured in a fallow field; and although they were halfe a league from thence, they heard her as well as if they were at the foot of the Steeple: and the best that is in her is, that she is nothing coy, for she hath a very great smacke of Courtship, and playes with euery one, and libes and Iests at them all. And now I affirme, Sir *Knight of the Ill-fauoured face*, that not only you may, and ought to commit rauing follies for her sake, but eke you may with iust title also despaire and hang your selfe: for none shall heare thereof, but will say you did very well, although the Diuell carried you away. And faine would I be gone, if it were for nothing else but to see her: for it is many a day since I saw her, and I am sure she is changed by this, for womens beauty is much impaired by going alwaies to the field, exposed to the Sunne and weather.

And I wil now *Sir Don-Quixote*, confesse a truth vnto you, that I haue liued vntill now in a maruellous errour, thinking well and faithfully that the Lady *Dulcinea* was some great Princeesse, on whom you were enamoured, or such a person as merited those rich presents which you bestowed on her, as well of the *Biscaines*, as of the Slaues, and many others that ought to be, as I suppose, correspondent to the many victories which you haue gained, both now and in the time that I was not your Squire. But pondering well the matter, I cannot conceiue why the Lady *Aldonca Lorenzo*; I meane the Lady *Dulcinea* of *Toboso*, of these should care whether these vanquished men

men which you send or shall send, doe goe and kneele before her? For it may befall, that shee at the very time of their arriuell be combing of flaxe, or threshing in the barme, whereat they would be ashamed, and she likewise laugh, and be somewhat displeased at the present.

I haue oft told thee, *Sancho*, many times that thou art too great a prattler, quoth *Don-Quixote*, and although thou hast but a grosse wit, yet now and then thy frumps nippe: but to the end thou mayest perceiue the faultinesse of thy braine, and my discretion, I will tell thee a short History, which is this: There was once a widdow faire, yong, free, rich, and withall very pleasant and iocund, that fell in loue with a certaine round and well-set seruant of a Colledge: his Regent came to vnderstand it, and therefore said on a day to the widdow by the way of fraternall correction, Mistresse, I doe greatly maruell, and not without occasion, that a woman so principall, so beautifull, and so rich, and specially so wittie, could make so ill a choice, as to waxe enamoured on so foule, so base, and foolish a man as such a one, we hauing in this house so many Masters of Art, Graduates, and Diuines, amongst whom you might haue made choise as among Peares, saying, I will take this, and I will not haue that? But wee answered him thus, with a very pleasant and good grace; You are, Sir, greatly deceiued, if you deeme that I haue made an ill choice in such a one, let him seeme neuer so great a foole: for to the purpose that I meane to vse him, he knowes as much or rather more Philosophy then *Aristotle*. And so, *Sancho*, likewise is *Dulcinea* of *Toboso* as much worth as the highest Princeesse of the world, for the effect I meane to vse her. For all the Poets which celebrate certaine Ladies at pleasure, thinkest thou that they all had Mistresses? No. Doist thou belecue that the *Amarillis*, the *Files*, *Siluius*, *Dianas*, *Galatea*, *Alcidas*, and others such like, wherewithall the bookes, Ditties, Barbers shops, and Theaters are filled, were truly Ladies of flesh and bones, and their Mistresses which haue  
and

and doe celebrate them thus? No certainly, but were for the greater part fained, to serue as a subiect of their verses, to the end the Authors might be accounted amorous, and men of courage enough to be such. And thus it is also sufficient for me to beleue and thinke that the good *Aldonca Lorenzo* is faire and honest: as for her parentage it matters but little; for none will send to take information thereof, to giue to her an habit; and I make account of her as of the greatest Princeesse in the world. For thou oughtest to know, *Sancho*, if thou knowest it not already, that two things alone incite men to loue more then all things else, and those be surpassing beauty, and a good name. And both these things are found in *Dulcinea* in their prime: for none can equall her in fairenesse, and few come neere her for a good report. And for a finall conclusion, I imagine, that all that which I say, is really so, without adding or taking ought away. And I doe imagine her in my fantasie to be such, as I could wish her as well in beauty as principality: and neither can *Helen* approach, nor *Lucrece* come neere her, no, nor any of those other famous women, Greeke, Barbarous, or Latine, of foregoing ages. And let euery one say what he pleaseth: for though I should be reprehended for this by the ignorant, yet shall I not therefore be chastised by the more obseruant, and rigorous sort of men.

I auouch, qd. *Sancho*, that you haue great reason in all that you say, and that I am my selfe a very Ass. But alas, why do I name an Ass with my mouth, seeing one should not make mention of a Rope in ones house that was hanged? But giue me the Letter, and farewell, for I will change. With that *Don-Quixote* drew out his Tablets, and going a little aside, he began to indite his Letter with a great grauitie; and hauing ended it, called *Sancho* to him and said, that he would reade it to him, to the end he might beare it away in memory, lest by chance he did lose the Tablets on the way, for such were his crosse fortunes, as made him

R

feare



feare euery euent. To which *Sancho* answered, saying, Write it there twice or thrice in the booke, and giue me it after; for I will carry it safely by Gods grace. For to thinke that I wil be euer able to take it by roate, is a great folly; for my inemory is so short, as I doe many times forget mine owne name. But yet for all that, reade it to me, good Sir, for I would be glad to heare it, as a thing which I suppose to be as excellent, as if it were cast in a mould. Heare it then, sayes *Don-Quixote*, for thus it sayes.

---

*The Letter of DON-QUIXOTE to  
DULCINEA of Toboso.*

Soueraigne Ladie,

**T**H E wounded by the point of absence, and the hurt by the Darts of thy heart, sweetest *Dulcinea of Toboso*, doth send thee that health which he wanteth himselfe. If thy beauty disdain me, if thy valour turne not to my benefit, if thy disdain conuert themselves to my harme, maugre all my patience, I shall be ill able to sustaine this care, which besides, that it is violent, is also too durable. My good Squire *Sancho* will giue thee certaine relation, O beautifull, ingrate, and my dearest beloued enemy of the State wherein I remaine for thy sake: if thou please to fauour me, I am thine; and if not, doe what thou likest; for by ending of my life, I shall both satisfie thy cruelty and my desires.

Thine vntill death,

*The Knight of the Ill-fauoured face.*

By

By my fathers life, quoth *Sancho*, when he heard the Letter, it is the highest thing that euer I heard in my life. Good God, and how well doe you say euery thing in it, and how excellently haue you applyed the subscription of *The Knights of the Ill-famoured face*! I say againe in good earnest, that you are the Deuill himselſe, and there's nothing but you know it. All is necessary, answered *Don-Quixote*, for the office that I professe. Put then (quoth *Sancho*) in the other side of that lease, the warrant of the three Colts, and firme it with a legible letter, that they may know it at the first sight. I am pleased, said *Don-Quixote*, and so writing it, he read it after to *Sancho*, and it said thus:

*You shall please, good Neece, for this first of Colts to deliuer unto my Squire Sancho Pança, three of the fine that I left at home, and are in your charge: the which three Colts I command to bee deliuered to him, for as many others counted and receiued here: for with this, and his acquittance they shall be intily deliuered. Given in the bowels of Sierra Morena, the two and twentieth of August, of this present yeere.*

It goes very well (quoth *Sancho*): subſigne it therefore, I pray you. It needs no ſeale (quoth *Don-Quixote*) but onely my Rubricke, which is as valible as if it were ſubſcribed, not onely for three Aſſes, but alſo for three hundred. My truſt is in you, answered *Sancho*, permit mee, for I will goe ſaddle *Rozinante*, and prepare your ſelfe to giue me your bleſſing, for I purpoſe preſently to depart, before I ſee any madde pranke of yours; for I will ſay that I ſaw you play ſo many, as no more can be deſired. I will haue thee ſtay, *Sancho* (and that becauſe it is requiſite) at leaſt to ſee me ſtarke naked, playing a doozen or two of rauing trickes, for I will diſpatch them in leſſe then halfe an houre; becauſe that thou hauing viewed them with thine owne eyes, mayeſt ſafely ſwear all the reſt that thou pleaſeſt to adde; and I aſſure thee, that thou canſt not tell

so many as I meane to performe. Let mee intreate you, good Sir, that I may not see you naked, for it will turne my stomacke, and I shall not be able to keepe my selfe from weeping: and my head is yet so sore since yesternight through my lamentations, for the losse of the gray beast, as I am not strong enough yet to endure new plaints: but if your pleasure be such, as I must necessarily see some follies, doe them in *Jones* name in your clothes briefly, and such as are most necessary: Chiefely seeing none of these things were requisite for me; and as I haue said, we might excuse time (that shall now be laished in these trifles) to returne speedily with the newes you desire and deserue so much. And if not, let the Lady *Dulcinea* provide her selfe well; for if shee answer not according to reason, I make a solemne vow to him that I may, that Ile make her disgorge out of her stomake a good answer, with very kickes and fists. For how can it be suffered, that so famous a Knight Errant as your selfe should thus run out of his wits, without, nor for what, for one? Let not the Gentlewoman constraine me to say the rest, for I will out with it, and venter all vpon twelue, although it neuer were sold.

In good faith, *Sancho* (quoth *Don-Quixote*) I thinke thou art growne as madde as my selfe. I am not so madde, replied *Sancho*, but I am more cholericke. But setting that aside, say, What will you eate vntill my returne? Doe you meane to doe as *Cardenio*, and take by the high-waies side perforce from the Shepheards? Care thou not for that, replied *Don-Quixote*, for although I had it, yet would I not eate any other thing then the hearbes and fruits that this field and trees doe yeeld; for the perfection of mine affaire consists in fasting, and the exercise of other castigations. To this *Sancho* replied, Doe you know what I feare? That I shall not finde the way to you againe heere where I leaue you, it is so difficult and obscure. Take well the markes, and I will endeauour to keepe here-about, quoth

quoth *Don-Quixote*, vntill thou come backe againe: and will moreouer about the time of thy returne mount to the tops of these high Rockes, to see whether thou appearest: but thou shouldest doe best of all, to the end thou maiest not stay and misse me, to cut downe here and there certaine boughes, and strow them on the way as thou goest, vntill thou beest out in the Plaines, and those may after serue thee as bounds and markes, by which thou mayst againe finde me when thou returnest, in imitation of the clue of *Theseus* Labyrinth.

I will doe so, quoth *Sancho*: and then cutting downe certaine boughes, he demanded his Lords blessing, and departed not without teares on both sides. And mounting vpon *Rozinante*, whom *Don-Quixote* commended very seriously to his care, that he should tender him as he would his owne person, he made on towards the Plaines, strowing here and there on the way his branches, as his Master had aduised him; and with that departed, although his Lord importuned him to behold two or three follies ere hee went away. But scarce had he gone a hundred paces, when he returned and said, I say, Sir, that you said well, that to the end I might sweare with a safe conscience that I haue scene you play these mad trickes, it were necessary that at least I see you doe one, although that of your abode here is one great enough.

Did not I tell thee so, quoth *Don-Quixote*? Stay, *Sancho*, for I will doe it in the space of a Creed; and taking off with all haste his hose, he remained the half of him naked, and did instantly giue two or three Ierkes in the ayre, and two tumbles ouer and ouer on the ground, with his head downward, and his legs aloft, where he discovered such things, as *Sancho*, because he would not see them againe, turned the bridle, and rode away, resting contented and satisfied, that he might sweare that his Lord was mad. And so we will leaue him traouelling on his way, vntill his returne, which was very soone after.

## C H A P. XII.

Wherein are prosecuted the pranks played by Don-Quixote in his amorous humours, in the mountaines of Sierra Morena.



AND turning to recount what *The Knight of the Ill-favoured face* did when he was all alone, the Hittory sayes, that after *Don-Quixote* had ended his frisks and leapes, naked from the gyrdle downward, and from that vpward apparelled; seeing that his Squire *Sancho* was gone, and would behold no more of his mad pranks; he ascended to the top of a high rocke, and began there to thinke on that whereon he had thought oftentimes before, without euer making a full resolution therein, to wit, whether were it better to imitate *Orlando* in his vnmeasurable furies, then *Amadis* in his melancholy moods: and speaking to himselfe, would say, If *Orlando* was so valorous and good a Knight, as men say, what wonder, seeing in fine he was enchanted and could not be slaine, if it were not by clapping a pinne to the soale of his foot; and therefore did weare shooes still, that had feuen folds of yron in the soales? although these his draughts stood him in no stead at *Roncesuales* against *Bernardo del Carpio*, which vnderstanding them, pressed him to death betweene his armes. But leauing his valour apart, let vs come to the losing of his wits; which it is certaine he lost through the signes he found in the Forrest, and by the newes that the Sheeheard gaue vnto him, that *Angelica* had slept more then two noone-tydes with the little Moore *Medora* of the curled lockes, him that was Page to King *Agramante*: and if he vnderstood this, and knew his Lady had playd beside the cushion, what wonder was it that he should runne madde? But how can I imitate him in his furies, if I cannot imitate him in their occasion? for I dare sweare for my *Dulcinea* of *Toboso*, that all the dayes of her

her life she hath not seene one *Moore*, euen in his owne attire as he is, and she is now right as her mother bore her : and I should doe her a manifest wrong, if vpon any false suspition, I should turne mad, of that kinde of folly that did distract furious *Orlando*.

On the other side, I see that *Amadis du Gaule*, without losing his wits, or vsing any other rauing trick, gained as great fame of being amorous, as any one else whatloeuer. For that which his Historie recites, was none other, then that seeing himselfe disdained by his Lady *Oriana*, who had commanded him to withdraw himselfe from her presence, and not appeare againe in it, vntill she pleased : he retired himselfe in the company of a certaine Hermit, to the poore rocke, and there crammed himselfe with weeping, vntill that heauen assisted him in the midst of his greatest cares and necessity. And this being true, as it is, why should I take now the paines to strip my selfe all naked, and offend these trees, which neuer yet did me any harme ? Nor haue I any reason to trouble the cleere waters of these brooks, which must giue me drinke when I am thirstie. Let the remembrance of *Amadis* liue, and be imitated in euery thing as much as may be by *Don-Quixote of the Mancha* : of whom may be said, what was said of the other, that though he atchieued not great things, yet did he die in their pursuit. And though I am not contemned or disdained by my *Dulcinea*, yet it is sufficient as I haue said already, that I be absent from her : therefore hands, to your taske, and ye famous actions of *Amadis*, occurre to my remembrance, and instruct me where I may best begin to imitate you. Yet I know already, that the greatest thing he did vse was prayer, and so will I. And saying so, he made him a paire of Beades of great Gaules, and was very much vexed in minde for want of an Eremit, who might heare his confession, and comfort him in his afflictions : and therefore did entertaine himselfe walking vp and down the little greene field, writing and grauing in the rindes of trees, and on the



smooth sands many verses, all accommodated to his sadness, and some of them in the praise of *Dulcinea*. But those that were found thorowly finished, and were legible after his owne finding againe in that place, were onely these ensuing.

O Ye plants, ye hearbes, and ye Trees,  
That flourish in this pleasant site;  
In lofty and verdant degrees,  
If my harmes doe you not delight,  
Heare my holy plants, which are these.  
And let not my grieve you molest,  
Though it euer so feelingly went,  
Since here for to pay your rest,  
Don-Quixote his teares hath addrest,  
Dulcinea's want to lament

Of Toboso.

In this very place was first spied  
The loyallest Louer and true,  
Who him selfe from his Lady did hyde.  
But yet felt his sorrowes anew,  
Not knowing whence they might proceede.  
Loue doth him cruelly wrest  
With a passion of euill discent;  
Which rob'd Don-Quixote of rest,  
Till a pipe with teares was full prest,  
Dulcinea's want to lament

Of Toboso.

He searching aduentures blinde,  
Among these dearne woods, and rockes,  
Still curseth on pittiless mind:  
For a wretch amidst bushie lockes,  
And craggies, may misfortunes finde.

*Loue with his whip wounded his brest,  
And not with soft bands him pent,  
And when he his noddle had prest,  
Don-Quixote his teares did forth wrest,  
Dulcinea's want to lament  
Of Toboso.*

The addition of *Toboso* to the name of *Dulcinea*, did not cause small laughter in those which found the verses recited, because they imagined that *Don-Quixote* conceiued, that if in the naming of *Dulcinea* he did not also adde that *Of Toboso*, the time could not be vnderstood; and in truth it was so, as he himselfe did afterward confesse. He composed many others, but as we haue related, none could be well copied or found intire, but these three *Stanza's*. In this, and in sighing, and inuoking the *Faunes* and *Siluanes* of these woods, and the *Nymphes* of the adioyning streams, with the dolorous and hollow *Eccho*, that it would answer, and they comfort and listen vnto him; and in the search of some hearbes to sustaine his languishing forces; he interrained himselfe all the time of *Sancho* his absence: who, had he staied three weekes away, as he did but three dayes, *The Knight of the Ill-fauoured face* should haue remained so disfigured, as the very mother that bore him would not haue knowne him.

But now it is congruent, that leauing him swallowed in the gulphes of sorrow and versifying, we turne and recount what hapned to *Sancho Pança* in his Embassage; which was, that issuing out to the high way, he presently tooke that, which led towards *Toboso*, and arriued the next day following to the Inne, where the disgrace of the Couerlet befell him: and scarce had he well espied it, but presently he imagined that he was once againe flying in the ayre, and therefore would not enter into it, although his arriual was at such an houre, as he both might and ought

ought to haue stayed, being dinner time, and he himselfe likewise posselt with a maruellous longing to taste some warme meate; for many dayes past hee had fed altogether on cold viands. This desire inforced him to approach to the Inne, remaining still doubtfull notwithstanding whether he should enter into it or no. And as hee stood thus suspended, there issued out of the Inne two persons, which presently knew him, and the one said to the other, Tell me, Master Licenciat, is not that horseman that rides there *Sancho Pança*, hee whom our radaenturers old woman said departed with her Master for his Squire? It is, quoth the Licenciat, and that is our *Don-Quixote* his horse: and they knew him so well, as those that were the Curate and Barber of his owne village; and were those that made the searh and formall processe against the Bookes of Chivalry: And therefore as soone as they had taken full notice of *Sancho Pança* and *Rozinante*, desirous to learne newes of *Don-Quixote*, they drew neere vnto him, and the Curate called him by his name, saying, Friend *Sancho Pança*, where is your Master? *Sancho Pança* knew them instantly, and desirous to conceale the place and manner wherein his Lord remained, did answer them that his Master was in a certaine place with-held by affaires for a few daies, that were of great consequence and concerned him very much, and that hee durst not for both his eyes discouer the place to them. No, no (quoth the Barber) *Sancho Pança*, if thou dost not tell vs where hee sojourneth, we must imagine as we doe already, that thou hast rob'd and slaine him, specially seeing thou comest thus on his horse; and therefore thou must in good faith get vs the horses Owner, or else stand to thine answer. Your threats feare mee nothing, quoth *Sancho*, for I am not a man that robs or murders any one; euery man is slaine by his destinie, or by God that made him. My Lord remains doing of penance in the midst of this mountaine, with very great pleasure. And then he presently recounted vnto them,

them, from the beginning to the end, the fashion wherein he had left him, the adventures which had befallne, and how he carried a Letter to the Lady *Dulcinea of Toboso*, who was *Lorenzo Corcueto* his daughter, of whom his Lord was enamoured vp to the liuers.

Both of them stood greatly admired at *Sancho's* relation, and although they knew *Don-Quixotes* madnesse already, and the kinde thereof, yet as often as they heard speake thereof, they rested newly amazed. They requested *Sancho* to shew them the letter that he carried to the Lady *Dulcinea of Toboso*. He told them that it was written in Tablets, and that he had expresse order from his Lord to haue it fairely copied out in paper, at the first village whereunto he should arriue. To which the Curate answered, bidding shew it vnto him, and he would write out the copie very fairely.

Then *Sancho* thrust his hand into his bosome, and searched the little booke, but could not finde it, nor should not, though he had searched till Doomes day, for it was in *Don-Quixotes* power, who gaue it not to him, nor did he euer remember to demand it. When *Sancho* perceiued that the booke was lost, his visage waxed as pale and wanne as a dead man, and turning againe very speedily to feele all the parts of his body, he saw cleerely that it could not be found; and therefore without making any more adoe, he laid hold on his owne beard with both his fists, and drew almost the one halfe of the haire away, and afterward bestowed on his face and nose in a *memento* halfe a doozen such cuffes, as he bathed them all in bloud; which the Curate and Barber beholding, they asked of him, what had befallne him, that he intreated himselfe so ill? What should befall me, answered *Sancho*, but that I haue lost at one hand, and in an instant three Colts, whereof the least was like a Castle? How so, quoth the Barber? Marry, said *Sancho*, I haue lost the Tablets wherein were written *Dulcineas* Letter, and a schedule of my Lords, addrest to his Neece, wherein

wherein hee commaunded her to deliuer vnto mee three Colts, of spure or fiue that remained in his house. And saying so, hee recounted the losse of his gray Ass: The Curate comforted him, and said, that as soone as his Lord were found, he would deale with him to renew his grant, and write it in paper, according to the common vie and practice; for as much as those which were written in Tablets, were of no vaw, and would neuer be accepted, nor accomplished.

With this *Sancho* tooke courage, and said, If that was so, he cared not much for the lesse of *Dulcinea's* Letter; for he knew it almost all by rote. Say it then, *Sancho*, quoth the Barber, and we will after write it. Then *Sancho* stood still, and began to scratch his head, to call the letter to memory, and now would he stand vpon one leg, and now vpon another. Sometimes he looked on the earth, others whiles vpon heauen, and after hee had gnawne off almost the halfe of one of his nailes, and held them all the while suspended, expecting his recitall thereof, hee said after a long pawse: On my soule, Master Licenciat, I giue to the Deuill any thing that I can remember of that Letter, although the beginning was thus; *High and vsauorie Ladie*: I warrant you, quoth the Barber, he said not, but *Super-humane* or *Soueraigne Ladie*.

It is so, quoth *Sancho*; and presently followed, if I well remember. *Hee that is wounded and wants sleepe, and the hurt man doth kisse your worships hands, ingrate and very scornefull faire.* And thus he went rousing vntill he ended in *Yours vntill death, the Knight of the Ill-fauoured face.* Both of them tooke great delight to see *Sancho's* good memory, and praysed it to him very much, and requested him to repeat the Letter once or twice more to them, that they might also beare it in memorie, to write it at the due season. *Sancho* turned to recite it againe and againe, and at euery repetition said other three thousand Errours. And after this he told other things of his Lord, but spoke not a word

word of his owne tossing in a Couerlet, which had be-  
falne him in that Inne, into which he refused to enter. He  
added besides, how his Lord, in bringing him a good dis-  
patch from his Ladie *Dulcinea* of *Toboso*, would forth-  
with set out to endeavour how he might become an Em-  
perour, or at the least a Monarch; for they had so agreed  
betweene themselves both: and it was a very easie mat-  
ter for him to become one, such was the valour of his per-  
son and strength of his arme. And that when he were one,  
he would procure him a good marriage; for by that time  
he should be a widdower at the least. And he would giue  
him one of the Emperours Ladies to wife, that were an  
Inheretrix of some great and rich state on the firme land,  
for now he would haue no more Islands. And all this was  
related so seriously by *Sancho*, and so in his perfect sence, he  
scratching his nose euer and anon as hee spoke; so as the  
two were stricken into a new amazement, pondering the  
vehementie of *Don-Quixotes* srensie, which carried quite  
away with it in that sort the iudgement of that poore man,  
but would not labour to dispossesse him of that Errour,  
because it seemed to them, that since it did not hurt his  
conscience, it was better to leaue him in it, that the recital  
of his follies might turne to their greater recreation; and  
therefore exhorted him to pray for the health of his Lord;  
for it was a very possible and contingent thing to arriue in  
the discourse of time to the dignity of an Emperour, as hee  
said, or at least, to that of an Archbishop, or other calling  
equiualent to it.

Then *Sancho* demanded of them, Sirs, if fortune should  
turne our affaires to another course, in such sort, as my  
Lord abandoning the purpose to purchase an Empire,  
would take in his head that of becomming a Cardinall,  
I would faine learne of you heere, what Cardinall Errants  
are wont to giue to their Squires? They are wont to giue  
them (quoth the Curate) some simple Benefice, or some  
Parsonage, or to make them Clerkes, or Sextons, or Ver-  
gers



gers off some Church, whose living amounts to a good penny rent, beside the profit of the Altar, which is oft-times as much more. For that it is requisite (quoth *Sancho*) that the Squire be not married, and that he know how to helpe Masse at least: and if that be so vnfortunate, I, that both am married, and knowes not besides the first letter of the A. B. C. what will then become of me, if my Master take the humour to be an Archbishop, and not an Emperour, as is the custome and vse of Knights Errant? Doe not afflict thy minde for that, friend *Sancho* (quoth the Barber) for we will deale with thy Lord heere, and we will counsell him, yea we will vrge it to him as a matter of conscience, that he become an Emperour, and not an Archbishop; for it will be more easie for him to be such a one, by reason that he is more valorous then learned.

So me thinkes (quoth *Sancho*) although I know he hath ability enough for all. That which I meane to doe for my part, is, I will pray vnto our Lord to conduct him to that place, wherein he may serue him best, and giue me greatest rewards. Thou speakest like a discreet man (quoth the Curate) and thou shalt doe therein the dutie of a good Christian. But that which we must indeuour now, is to deuise how we may winne thy Lord from prosecuting that vnprofitable penance he hath in hand, as thou sayest: And to the end we may thinke on the manner how, and eate our dinner withall seeing it is time, let vs all enter into the Inne. *Sancho* bade them go in, and he would stay for them at the doore, and that he would asertell them the reason why he had no minde to enter, neither was it in any sort conuenient that he should: but he intreated them to bring him somewhat forth to eate, that were warme, and some Prouand for *Rozinante*. With that they departed into the lodging, and within a while after the Barber brought forth vnto him some meate: and the Curate and Barber, after hauing pondered well with themselues what course they were to take to attaine their designe; the Curate fell on a deuce

deuice very fit both for *Don-Quixotes* humour, and also to bring their purpose to passe; and was as he told the Barber, that he had bethought him, to apparell himselfe like a Lady Aduenturous, and that he therefore should doe the best that he could to fit himselfe like a Squire, and that they would goe in that habit to the place where *Don-Quixote* sojournd, sayning that she was an afflicted and distressed Damzell, and would demand a boone of him, which he as a valorous Knight Errant would in no wise denie her; and that the gift which he meant to desire, was to intreat him to follow her where she would carry him, to right a wrong which a naughtie Knight had done vnto her: and that she would besides pray him not to command her to vnmaske her selfe, or inquire any thing of her estate, vntill he had done her right, against that bad Knight. And by this meanes he certainly hoped, that *Don-Quixote* would grant all that he requested in this manner. And in this sort they would fetch him from thence, and bring him to his village, where they would labour with all their power, to see whether his extrauagant frensie could be recouered by any remedy.

## C H A P. XIII.

*How the Curate and the Barber put their designe in practice, with many other things, worthy to be recorded in this famous Historie.*

**T**H E Curates inuention disliked not the Barber, but rather pleased him so well, as they presently put it in execution. They borrowed therefore of the In-keepers wife a Gowne and a Kerchiefe, leauing her in pawne thereof a faire new Cassock of the Curates. The Barber made him a great beard of a pyed Oxestayle, wherein the In-keeper was wont to hang his Horse-combe. The Oastesse demanded of them the occasion

sion why they would vse these things ? The Curate recounted in brieft reasons of *Don-Quixotes* madnesse, and how that disguisement was requisite , to bring him away from the Mountaine , wherein at that present he made his abode.

Presently the Inne-keeper and his wife remembred themselues how hee had beene their ghest, and of his *Balsamum*, and was the tossed Squires Lord ; and then they rehearsed againe to the Curate all that had passed betweene him and them in that Inne, without omitting the accident that had befallne *Sancho* himselfe ; and in conclusion the Oastesse tricked vp the Curate so handsomely , as there could be no more desired : for shee attired him in a gowne of broad-cloth, laid ouer with guardes of blacke Veluet, euery one being of a span breadth, full of gasches and cuts : the bodies & sleeues of Greene Veluet, welked with white Sattin : which gowne and doublet, as I suspect, were both made in the time of King *Bamba*. The Curate would not permit them to vaile and be-kerchiefe him , but set on his head a white-quilted-linnen-night-cap ; which he carried for the night , and girded his fore-head with a blacke Tassata garter , and with the other hee masked his face, wherewithall he couered his beard and visage very neatly. Then did hee incaske his pate in his hat , which was so broad, as it might serue him excellently for a *Quitafoll*; and lapping himselfe vp handsomly in his long cloke, hee went to horse, and rode as women vse. Then mounted the Barber likewise on his Mule , with his beard hanging downe to the girdle , halfe red and halfe white , as that which as wee haue said was made of the taile of a pyed coloured Oxe : then taking leaue of them all, and of the good *Mari-sornes*, who promised (although a sinner) to say a Rosary to their intention, to the end that God might giue them good successe in so Christian and difficult an aduenture, as that which they vndertooke. But scarce were they gone out of the Inne, when the Curate beganne to dread a little that  
he

he had done ill, in apparrelling himselfe in that wise, accounting it a very indecent thing, that a Priest should dight himselfe so, although the matter concerned him neuer so much. And acquainting the Barber with his surmise, hee intreated him that they might change attires, seeing it was much more iust that hee, because a Lay-man, should faine the oppressed Ladie, and himselfe would become his Squire, for so his dignity would bee lesse prophaned: to which if he would not condescend, hee resolved to passe on no farther, although the Deuill should carrie therefore *Don-Quixote* away. *Sancho* came ouer to them about this season; and seeing of them in that habit, he could not containe his laughter. The Barber (to bee briefe) did all that which the Curate pleased, and making thus an exchange of inuentions, the Curate instructed him how hee should behaue himselfe; and what words hee should vse to *Don-Quixote*, to presse and moue him to come away with him, and forsake the propension and loue to that place, which hee had chosen to performe his vaine penance.

The Barber answered, that he would set euery thing in his due point and perfection, though he had neuer lessoned him; but would not set on the array, vntil they came neere to the place where *Don-Quixote* abode, and therefore folded vp his clothes, and Master Parson his beard, and forthwith went on their way, *Sancho Pança* playing the guide; who recounted at large to them all that had happened with the mad-man, whom they found in the Mountaine; concealing notwithstanding the booty of the Maller, with the other things found therein: for although otherwise most simple, yet was our young man an ordinary vice of fooles, and had a spice of couetousnesse.

They arriued the next day following to the place where *Sancho* had left the tokens of boughes, to finde that wherein his Master sojourned: and hauing taken notice

thereof, hee said vnto them, that that was the entry, and therefore they might doe well to apparrell themselues, if by change that might be a meane to procure his Lords libertie; for they had told him already that on their going and apparrelling in that manner, consisted wholly the hope of freeing his Lord, out of that wretched life hee had chosen; and therefore did charge him on his life, not to reueale to his Lord in any case what they were, nor seeme in any sort to know them: and that if hee demanded (as they were sure he would) whether hee had deliuered his letter to *Dulcinea*, he should say that hee did, and that by reason she could not read, shee answered him by word of mouth, saying, that she commanded, vnder paine of her indignation, that presently abandoning so austere a life, hee would come and see her; for this was most requisite, to the end that moued therewithall, and by what they meant likewise to say vnto him, they made certaine account to reduce him to a better life, and would besides perswade him to that course instantly, which might set him in the way how to become an Emperour or Monake; for as concerning the being an Archbishop, hee needed not to feare it at all.

*Sancho* listened to all the talke and instructions, and bore them away well in memory, and gaue them great thanks for the intention they had to counsell his Lord to become an Emperour, and not an Archbishop: for as hee said, he imagined in his simple iudgement, that an Emperour was of more ability to reward his Squire then an Archbishop Errant. He likewise added, that he thought it were necessary hee went somewhat before them to search him, and deliuer his Ladies answer: for perhaps it alone would be sufficient to fetch him out of that place, without putting them to any further paines. They liked of *Sancho Panças* deuice, and therefore determined to expect him, vntill his returne with the newes of finding his Master. With that, *Sancho* entred in by the Clifts of the Rockes  
(leauing

(leaving them both behinde together) by which ran a little smooth streame, to which other Rockes and some trees that grew neere vnto it, made a fresh and pleasing shadow. The heats, and the day wherein they arrived there, was one of those of the moneth of August, when in those places the heate is intolerable: the houre, about three in the afternoone. All which did render the place more gratefull, and invited them to remaine therein vntill *Sanchos* returne. Both therefore arresting there quietly vnder the shadow, there arrived to their hearing the sound of a voyce, which without being accompanied by any instrument, did resound so sweet and melodiously, as they remained greatly admired, because they esteemed not that to be a place wherein any so good a Musician might make his abode. For although it is vsually said, that in the Woods and Fields are found Shepheards of excellent voyces, yet is this rather a Poeticall indecrement, then an approued truth; and most of all, when they perceiued that the verses they heard him singing were not of rusticke composition, but rather of delicate and Courtly inuention. The truth whereof is confirmed by the verses, which were these:

**W***Ho doth my Weale diminish thus and staine?  
Disdaine.*

*And say by whom, my woes augmented be?*

*By Iealousie.*

*And who my patience doth by triall wrong?*

*An absence long.*

*If that be so, then for my grievous wrong,*

*No remedie at all I may obtaine,*

*Since my best hopes I cruelly finde slaine*

*By Disdaine, Iealousie, and Absence long.*

*Who in my minde, those dolours still doth moue?*

*Dire Loue.*



And who my glories ebbe, doth most importune?  
Fortune.

And to my plaints, by whom increase is giuen?  
By heauen.

If that be so, then my mistrust iumps euen,  
That of my wondrous euill, I needes must die:  
Since in my harme ioyn'd and vnited be,  
Loue, wauering Fortune, and a rig'rous Heauen.  
Who, better hap can vnto me bequeath?

Death.

From whom his fauors doth not loue e strange?  
From change.

And his too serious harmes, who cureth wholly?  
Follie.

If that be so, it is no wisedom truely,  
To thinke by humane meanes to cure that care,  
Where th' only Antidotes, and med'cines are,  
Desired death, light change, and endlesse folly.

The houre, the time, the solitarines of the place, voice,  
and art of him that sung, strucke wonder and delight in the  
hearer's mindes, which remained still quiet, listning whe-  
ther they might heare any thing else: but perceiuing that  
the silence continued a pretie while, they agreed to issue  
and seeke out the Musician, that sung so harmoniously.  
And being ready to put their resolution in practice, they  
were againe arrested by the same voyce; the which  
touched their eares anew with this Sonnet.

### A SONNET.

**H**oly Amitie! which with nimble wings  
Thy semblance leaning heere on earth behinde,  
Among the blessed soules of heauen, vp-flings,  
To

To those Imperiall roomes to cheere thy mind.  
And thence to vs, is when thou lik'st assign'd  
Iust Peace, whom shadie vaile so couer'd brings :  
As oft in stead of her, Deceit wee find  
Clad in the Weeds of good and vertuous things.  
Leaue Hea'n, O Amitie ! doe not permit  
Foule Fraud thus openly thy Robes ti'neest ;  
With which, sincere Intents destroy do's it :  
For if thy likenesse from't thou dost not wrest,  
The World will turne to the first conflict soone,  
Of discord, Chaos and confusion.

The Song was concluded with a profound sigh ; and both the others lent attentiuē care to heare if hee would sing any more ; but perceyuing that the Musike was conuerted into throbs and dolefull playnts, they resoluēd to goe and learne who was the wretch, as excellent for his voyce, as dolorous in his sighs : and after they had gone a little at the doubling of the poynt of a cragge, they perceyued one of the very same forme and fashion that *Sancho* had painted vnto them, when hee told them the Historie of *Cardenio* : which man espying them likewise, shewed no semblance of feare, but stood still with his head hanging on his brest like a male-content, not once lifting vp his eyes to behold them from the first time, when they vnexpectedly arriued.

The Curate, who was a man very well spoken (as one that had already intelligence of his misfortune, for hee knew him by his signes) drew neerer to him, and prayed and perswaded him with short, but very forcible reasons, to forsake that miserable life, lest he should there eternally lose it, which of all miseries would proue the most miserable. *Cardenio* at this season was in his right sense, free from the furious accident, that distracted him so often ; and therefore viewing them both attyred in so strange

and vnsuall a fashion from that which was vsed among those Desarts, he rested somewhat admired; but chiefly hearing them speake in his affaire, as in a matter knowne (for so much hee gathered out of the Curates speeches) and therefore answered in this manner: I perceyue well, good Sirs, (whosoeuer you be) that heauen which hath alwayes care to succour good men, yea euen and the wicked many times, hath without any desert addrest vnto me by these Desarts and places so remote from vulgar haunt, persons, which laying before mine eyes with quicke and pregnant reasons the little I haue to lead this kinde of life, doe labour to remoue me from this place to a better: and by reason they know not as much as I doe, and that after escaping this harme, I shall fall into a farre greater, they account mee perhaps for a man of weake discourse: and what is worse, for one wholly deuoyd of iudgement? And were it so, yet is it no maruell; for it seemes to mee that the force of the imagination of my disasters is so bent and powerfull in my destruction, that I, without being able to make it any resistance, doe become like a stone, voyd of all good feeling and knowledge: and I come to know the certaintie of this truth, when some men doe recount and shew vnto mee tokens of the things I haue done, whilst this terrible accident over-rules mee: and after I can doe no more, then be griened, though in vayne, and curse, without benefit, my too froward fortune; and render as an excuse of my madnesse, the relation of the cause thereof, to as many as please to heare it: for wisemen perceyuing the cause, will not wonder at the effects. And though they giue mee no remedie, yet at least will not condemne me, for it will conuert the anger they conceyue at my mis-rules, into compassion of my disgraces. And, Sirs, if by chance it be so, that you come with the same intention that others did, I request you, ere you enlarge farther your discreet perswasions, that you will giue care a while to the relation of my mis-haps: for perhaps when you  
haue

haue vnderstood it , you may saue the labour that you would take , conforing an euill wholly incapable of consolation.

Both of them, which desired nothing so much then to vnderstand from his owne mouth , the occasion of his harmes , did intreat him to relate it, promising to do nothing else in his remedie or comfort , but what himselfe pleased. And with this the sorrowfull Gentleman began his dolefull Historie, with the very same words almost that he had rehearsed it to *Don-Quixote* and the Goatheard a few dayes past, when by occasion of Master *Elisabat* and *Don-Quixotes* curiositie in observing the *Decorum* of Chivalry, the tale remained imperfect, as our History left it about. But now good fortune so disposed things, that his foolish fit came not vpon him, but gaue him leisure to continue his Storie to the end ; and so arriuing to the passage that spoke of the Letter *Don Ferdinando* found in the book of *Amadis du Gaule*, *Cardenio* said that he had it very well in memorie ; and the sence was this.

LYSCINDA TO CARDENIO.

I Discouer daily in thee worths , that oblige and inforce mee to hold thee deare : and therefore if thou desirest to haue me discharge this debt, without seruing a writ on my honour , thou mayst easily doe it. I haue a father that knowes thee, and loues me likewise well ; who without forcing my will, wil accomplish that which iustly thou oughtest to haue : if it be so, that thou esteamest mee as much as thou sayest, and I doe beleene.

This Letter moued mee to demand *Luscinda* of her father for my wife, as I haue already recounted ; and by it also *Luscinda* remayned in *Don Ferdinando's* opinion crowned , for one of the most discreet women of her

time. And this billet Letter was that which first put him in mind to destroy mee, ere I could effect my desires. I told to *Don Fernando* wherein consisted all the difficultie of her fathers protracting of the marriage, to wit, in that my father should first demand her; the which I dared not to mention vnto him, fearing lest he would not willingly consent thereunto; not for that the qualitie, bountie, vertue, and beautie of *Luscinda* were to him vnknowne, or that she had not parts in her able to ennoblifh and adorne any other linage of Spayne whatsoever: but because I vnderstood by him, that he desired not to marrie me, vntill he had seene what Duke *Ricardo* would doe for me.

Finally, I told him that I dared not reueale it to my father, as well for that inconuenience, as for many others that made mee so afraid, without knowing what they were, as mee thought my desires would neuer take effect.

To all this *Don Fernando* made mee answer, that he would take vpon him to speake to my father, and perswade him to treat of that affaire also with *Luscinda's*. O ambitious *Marinus*. O cruell *Cataline*. O facinorous *Quila*. O trecherous *Galafon*. O trayterous *Velido*. O reuengefull *Iulian*. O couetous *Iudas*. Traytor, cruell, reuengefull, & coozening, what indeferts did this wench commit, who with such plaines discovered to thee the secrets and delights of his heart? What offence committed I against thee? What words did I speake, or counsel did I giue, that were not all addrest to the increasing of thine honour and profit? But on what doe I of all wretches the worst complaine, seeing that when the current of the Stars doth bring with it mishaps, by reason they come downe precipitately from aboue, there is no earthly force can withhold, or humane industry preuent or euacuate them? Who would haue imagined that *Don Fernando*, a noble Gentleman, discrete, obliged by my deserts, & powerful to obtaine whatsoever the amorous desire would exact of him, where and whensoever

\* One, who for the rape of his daughter, committed by Rodericke King of Spaine, brought in the Moores, and destroyed all the Countrey.

whensoever it seized on his heart, would (as they say) become so corrupt, as to deprive me of one only Sheep, which yet I did not possesse? But let these considerations be laid apart as vnprofitable, that we may knit vp againe the broken threed of my vnfortunate History. And therefore I say, that *Don Ferdinando* belceuing, that my presence was a hinderance to put his treacherous and wicked designe in execution, he resolved to send mee to his eldest brother, vnder pretext to get some money of him, for to buy sixe great horses, that he had of purpose, and onely to the end I might absent my selfe, bought the very same day that he offered to speake himselfe to my father, and would haue mee goe for the money (because hee might bring his treacherous intent the better to passe) could I preuent this Treason? Or could I perhaps but once imagine it? No truely; but rather glad for the good merchandize hee had made, did make proffer of my selfe to depart for the money verie willingly. I spoke that night to *Luscinda*, and acquainted her with the agreement past betweene me and *Don Ferdinando*, bidding her to hope firmly, that our good iust desires would sort a wished and happie end. She answered me againe (as little suspecting *Don Ferdinando's* treason as my selfe) bidding me to returne with all speed, because shee belceued that the conclusion of our affections should be no longer deferred, then my father deferred to speake vnto hers. And what was the cause I know not, but as soone as she had said this vnto me, her eyes were filled with teares, and somewhat thwarting her throat, hindred her from saying many other things, which mee thought shee strived to speake.

I rested admired at this new accident, vntill that time neuer seene in her; for alwaies as many times as my good fortune and diligence graunted it, wee conuersed with all sport and delight, without euer intermeddling in our discourses, any teares, sighes, complaints, suspitions, or feares. All my speech was to aduance my fortune; for hauing recyued



ceyued her from heauen as my Ladie and Mistresse, then would I amplifie her beautie, admire her worth, and prayse her discretion. She on the other side would returne mee the exchange, extolling in mee, what shee as one enamoured accounted worthie of laud and commendation. After this we would recount a hundred thousand toyes and chances befallne our neighbours and acquaintance, and that to which my presumption dared farthest to extend it selfe, was sometimes to take her beautiful and Iuorie hands perforce, and kisse them as wel as I might, thorow the rigorous strictnesse of a niggardly yron-grate which deuided vs. But the precedent night to the day of my sad departure, she wept, sobd, and sighed, and departed, leauing me full of confusion and inward assaults, amazed to behold such new and dolefull tokens of sorrow and feeling in *Luscinda*. But because I would not murder my hopes, I did attribute all these things to the force of her affection towards me, and to the grieffe which absence is wont to stirre in those that loue one another dearly. To be brieffe, I departed from thence sorrowfull and pensiue, my soule being full of imaginations and suspitions, and yet know not what I suspected or imagined: Cleare tokens, foretelling the sad successe and misfortune which attended me. I arriued to the place where I was sent, and deliuered my Letters to *Don Ferdinando's* brother, and was well intertayned, but not well dispatched; for hee commanded mee to expect (a thing to me most displeasing) eight dayes, and that out of the Duke his fathers presence; because his brother had written vnto him to send him certaine moneys vnkowne to his father. And all this was but false *Don Ferdinando's* inuention, for his brother wanted not money wherewithall to haue dispatched me presently, had not hee written the contrary.

This was so displeasing a commandement and order, as almost it brought me to termes of disobeying it, because it seemed to mee a thing most impossible to sustayne my life

life so many dayes in the absence of my *Luscinda*; and specially hauing left her so sorrowfull as I haue recounted; yet notwithstanding I did obey like a good seruant, although I knew it would be with the cost of my health. But on the fourth day after I had arriued, there came a man in my search with a Letter, which he deliuered vnto me, and by the indorsement I knew it to be *Luscinda's*; for the hand was like hers. I opened it not without feare and assaylement of my senses, knowing that it must haue beene some serious occasion, which could moue her to write vnto me, being absent, seeing shee did it so rarely, euen when I was present. I demaunded of the Bearer before I read, who had deliuered it to him? and what time he had spent in the way? He answered me, That passing by chance at mid-day thorow a Streete of the Citie, a very beautifull Ladie did call him from a certaine Window: Her eyes were all be-blubbered with teares; and said vnto him very hastily, Brother, if thou beest a Christian, as thou appearest to be one, I pray thee for Gods sake, that thou doe forthwith addresse this Letter to the place and person that the superscription assigneth, (for they be well knowne) and therein thou shalt doe our Lord great seruice.

And because thou maist not want meanes to doe it, take what thou shalt find wrapped in that Hand-kerchiefe: and saying so, she threw out of the Window a Hand-kerchiefe, wherein were lapped vp a hundred Rials, this Ring of Gold which I carrie here, and that Letter which I deliuered vnto you; and presently without expecting mine answer, shee departed, but first saw me take vp the Hand-kerchiefe and Letter; and then I made her signes that I would accomplish herein her command: and after perceyuing the paines I might take in bringing you it, so wel considered, and seeing by the indorsement, that you were the man to whom it was addrest: for, Sir, I know you very wel; and also obliged to doe it by the teares of that beautifull Ladie, I determined not to trust any other with it, but to  
come

come and bring it you my selfe in person : and in sixteene houres since it was given vnto me. I haue trauelled the iourney you know, which is at least eighteene leagues long. Whilst the thankfull new messenger spake thus vnto me, I remayned in a manner hanging on his words, & my thighs did tremble in such manner, as I could very hardly sustayne my selfe on foot : yet taking courage, at last I opened the Letter, whereof these were the Contents,

*The word that Don Ferdinando hath past vnto you to speake to your father, that he might speake to mine, he hath accomplished more to his owne pleasure then to your profit. For, Sir, you shall vnderstand, that he hath demanded me for his wife; and my father borne away by the aduantage of worths which he supposes to bee in Don Ferdinando more then in you, hath agreed to his demaund in so good earnest, as the espousals shall be celebrated within these two daies, and that so secretly and alone, as onely the heauens and some folke of the house shall be witnesses. How I remaine, imagine, and whether it be conuenient you should retorne, you may consider : and the successe of this affaire shall let you to perceine, whether I loue you well or no. I beseech Almighty God that this may arriue vnto your hands, before mine shall see it selfe in danger to ioine it selfe with his, which keepeth his promised faith so ill.*

These were, in summe, the Contents of the Letter, and the motiues that perswaded me presently to depart, without attending any other answer, or other monyes : for then I conceiued clearly, that it was not the buyall of the horses, but that of his delights, which had moued *Don Ferdinando* to send mee to his brother. The rage which I conceyued against him, ioyned with the feare to lose the Iewell which I had gayned by so many yeeres seruice, and

and desires, did set wings on mee, for I arrived as if I had  
flieen the next day at mine owne Citie, in the houre and  
moment fit to goe speake to *Luscinda*. I entred secretly,  
and left my Mule whereon I rode in the honest mans house,  
that had brought me the Letter, and my fortune purposing  
then to be fauourable to me, disposed to mine affaires, that  
I found *Luscinda* sitting at that yron grate, which was the  
sole witnesse of our loues. *Luscinda* knew me straight and  
I her, but not as we ought to know one another. But who  
is he in the world which may truly vaunt, that he hath pe-  
netrated, and thorowly exhausted the confused thoughts,  
and mutable nature of women? Truly none. I say then, to  
proceede with my tale, that as soone as *Luscinda* percei-  
ued me, shee said, *Cardenio*, I am attired with my wedding  
garments, and in the Hall doe waite for me, the traitor  
*Don Ferdinando*, and my couetous father with other wit-  
nesses, which shall rather be such of my death, then of  
mine espousals; be not troubled deare friend, but procure  
to be present at this sacrifice, the which if I cannot hin-  
der by my perswasions and reasons, I carry hidden about  
me a Ponyard secretly, which may hinder more resolute  
forces, by giuing end to my life, and a beginning to thee,  
to know certaine the affection which I haue euer borne,  
and doe beare vnto thee. I answered her troubled and ha-  
stily, fearing I should not haue the leisure to reply vnto her,  
saying, Sweete Ladie, let thy workes verifie thy words for  
if thou carriest a ponyard to defend thy credit, I doe heere  
likewise beare a sword wherewithall, I will defend thee, or  
kill my selfe, if fortune prooue aduerse and contrary. I be-  
leeue that shee could not heare all my words, by reason she  
was called hastily away as I perceiued, for that the Bride-  
groomme expected her comming. By this the night of my  
sorrowes did thoroughly fall, and the Sunne of my gladnesse  
was set: and I remained without light in mine eyes, or dis-  
course in my vnderstanding. I could not finde the way into  
her house, nor could I mooue my selfe to any part: yet  
confide-

considering at last how important my presence was, for that which might befall in that adventure, I animated my selfe the best I could, and entred into the house; and as one that knew very well all the entries and passages thereof, and specially by reason of the trouble and businesse that was then in hand, I went in vnperceiued of any. And thus without being seene, I had the opportunity to place my selfe in the hollow roome of a window of the same Hall, which was couered by the ends of two incountring pieces of Tapestry, from whence I could see all that was done in the Hall, remaining my selfe vniuewed of any. Who could now describe the assaults and surprisals of my heart whilst I there abode? the thoughts which incountred my mind, the considerations which I had, which were so many and such, as they can neither be said, nor is it reason they should? Let it suffice you to know, that the Bridegroom entered into the Hall without any ornament, wearing the ordinary array he was wont, and was accompanied by a Cousin Germane of *Luscinda's*, and in all the Hall there was no stranger present, nor any other then the household seruants: within a while after, *Luscinda* came out of the Parlour, accompanied by her mother and two Waiting-maides of her owne, as richly attired and deckt, as her calling and beauty deserued, and the perfection of courtly pompe and brauery could afford: my distraction and trouble of minde lent me no time to note particularly the apparell shee wore, and therefore did onely marke the colours, which were Carnation, & White; and the splendour which the precious Stones and Jewels of her Tires, and all the rest of her garments yeilded: yet did the singular beauty of her faire and golden tresses surpasse them so much, as being in competencie with the precious stones, and flame of foure Linkes that lighted in the Hall, yet did the splendour thereof seeme farre more bright and glorious to mine eyes. O memory, the mortall enemy of mine ease, to what end serues it now to represent vnto me the vncomparable

parable beaurie of that my adored enemy? Were it not better, cruell memory, to remember and represent that which shee did then, that being mooued by so manifest a wrong, I may at least indeuour to lose my life, since I cannot procure a reuenge? Tire not, good sirs, to heare the digressions I make, for my griefe is not of that kinde that may be rehearsed succinctly and speedily; seeing that in mine opinion euery passage of it is worthy of a large discourse.

To this the Curate answered, that not onely they were not tyred or wearied, hearing of him, but rather they receiued maruellous delight to heare him recount each minuitie and circumstance, because they were such, as deserued not to be past ouer in silence, but rather merited as much attention as the principall parts of the Historie. You shal then wit (qd. *Cardenio*) that as they thus stood in the Hall, the Curate of the Parish entred, & taking them both by the hand, to do that which in such an act is required at the saying of, *Will you Ladie Luscinde take the Lord Don Ferdinando, who is heere present for your lawfull Spouse, according as our holy mother the Church commands?* I thrust out all my head and neck out of the Tapistry, and with most attentiu eares and a troubled mind, settled my self to heare what *Luscinde* answered; expecting by it the sentence of my death, or the confirmation of my life. O, if one had dared to sally out at that time, and cried with a loud voice: O *Luscinde*, *Luscinde*, see well what thou doest, consider withall what thou owest me! Behold how thou art mine, and that thou canst not be any others; note that thy saying of yea, & the end of my life shall be both in one instant. O traytor *Don Ferdinando*, robber of my glory, death of my life, what is this thou pretendest? what wilt thou doe? Consider that thou canst not Christian-like atchieue thine intention, seeing *Luscinde* is my Spouse, and I am her husband. O foolish man now that I am absent, and farre from the danger, I say what I should haue done, and not what I did. Now after



after that I haue permitted my deare Jewel to be robbed, I exclaime on the theefe, on whom I might haue reuenged my selfe, had I had as much heart to doe it as I haue to complaine. In fine, since I was then a coward and a foole, it is no matter though I now die ashamed, sorry, and frantike. The Curate stood expecting *Luscinda's* answer a good while ere she gaue it: and in the end, when I hoped that she would take out the Ponyard to stab her selfe, or would vnloose her tongue to say some truth, or vse some reason or perswasion that might redound to my benefit, I heard heere in stead thereof, answer with a dismaied and languishing voice the word, *I will*: and then *Don Fernando* said the same, and giuing her the Ring, they remained tyed with an indissoluble knot. Then the Bridgroom comming to kisse his Spouse, shee set her hand vpon her heart, and fell in a trance betweene her mothers armes.

Now onely remaines vtold the case wherein I was, seeing in that, yea, which I had heard my hopes deluded, *Luscinda's* words and promises falsified; and my selfe wholly disabled to recouer in any time the good which I lost in that instant, I rested void of counsell, abandoned (in mine opinion) by heauen, proclaimed an enemy to the earth which vpheld me, the ayre denying breath enough for my sighes, and the water, humour sufficient to mine eyes: onely the fire increased in such manner, as I burned thorowly with rage and ielousie. All the house was in a tumult for this sodaine amazement of *Luscinda*: and as her mother vnclasp'd her bosome, to giue her the ayre, there appeared in it a paper folded vp, which *Don Fernando* presently seized on, and went aside to reade it by the light of a torch; and after he had read it, he sate downe in a chayre, laying his hands on his cheeke; with manifest signes of Melancholy discontent, without bethinking himselfe of the remedies that were applied to his Spouse, to bring her againe to her selfe. I seeing all the folke of the house thus in an vprore, did aduenture my selfe to issue, not waighing much whether

whether I were seene or no; bearing withall a resolution (if I were perceiued) to play such a rash part, as all the world should vnderstand the iust indignation of my brest, by the reuenge I would take on false *Don Fernando*, and the mutable and dismaied Traytresse: But my destinie, which hath reserued me for greater euils, if possibly there may be any greater then mine owne, ordained that instant my wit should abound, whereof euer since I haue so great want; and therefore without will to take reuenge of my greatest enemies (of whom I might haue taken it with all facilitie, by reason they suspected so little my being there) I determined to take it on my selfe, and execute in my selfe the paine which they deserued; and that perhaps with more rigour then I would haue vsed towards them, if I had slaine them at that time, seeing that the sudden death finisheth presently the paine, but that which doth lingringly torment, kills alwaies without ending the life.

To be short, I went out of the house, and came to the other where I had left my Mule, which I caused to be saddled, and without bidding mine Oast adieu, I mounted on her, and rode out of the Citie, without daring like another *Lor* to turne backe and behold it: and then seeing my selfe alone in the fields, and that the darkenesse of the night did couer me, and the silence thereof inuite me to complaine, without respect or feare to be heard or knowne, I did let slip my voice, and vntyed my tongue with so many curses of *Luscinda* and *Don Ferdinando*, as if thereby I might satisfie the wrong they had done me. I gaue her the title of cruell, vngratefull, false, and scornefull, but specially of couetous, seeing the riches of mine enemy had shut vp the eyes of her affection, to deprive me thereof, and render it to him, with whom fortune had dealt more frankly and liberally: and in the midtt of this tune of maledictions and scornes, I did excuse her, saying: That it was no maruell that a Mayden kept close in her parents house, made and accustomed alwaies to obey them, should at last condescend

to their will specially, seeing they bestowed vpon her for husband, so noble, so rich and proper a Gentleman, as to refuse him, would be reputed in her, to proceed either from want of iudgement, or from hauing bestowed her affections else-where, which things must of force greatly preiudice her good opinion and renowne. Presently would I turne againe to say, that though she had told them that I was her spouse, they might easily perceiue that in chusing me, she had not made so ill an election, that she might not be excused, seeing that before *Don Fernando* offered himselfe, they themselues could not happen to desire, if their wishes were guided by reason, so fit a match for their daughter as my selfe: and she might easily haue said, before she put herselfe in that last and forcible passe of giuing her hand, that I had already giuen her mine, which I would come out to confesse, and confirme all that shee could any way faine in this case: and concluded in the end, that little loue, lesse iudgement, much ambition, and desire of greatnesse caused her to forget the words, wherewithall she had deceiued, intertained, and sustained me in my firme hopes and honest desires.

Vsing these words, and feeling this vnquietnesse in my brest, I trauelled all the rest of the night, and strucke about dawning into one of the entries of these mountaines, thorow which I trauelled three dayes at random, without following or finding any path or way, vntill I arriued at last to certaine meddowes and fields, that lie, I know not in which part of these mountaines: and finding there certaine Heards, I demanded of them which way lay the most craggy and inaccessible places of these rocks, and they directed me hither; and presently I trauelled towards it, with purpose here to end my life: and entring in among those Desarts, my Mule, through wearines and hunger, fell dead vnder me, or rather as I may better suppose, to disburden him selfe of so vile and vnprofitable a burden as he carried of me. I remained afoot, ouercome by nature, and  
pierced

pierced thorow and thorow by hunger, without hauing any helpe, or knowing who might succour me; and remained after that manner, I know not how long, prostrate on the ground; and then I arose againe without any hunger, and I found neere vnto me certaine Goat-heards, who were those doubtlesly that fed me in my hunger. For they told me in what manner they found me, and how I spake so many foolish and madde words, as gaue certaine argument that I was deuoide of iudgement. And I haue felt in my selfe since that time, that I enioy not my wits perfittly, but rather perceiue them to be so weakened and impaired, as I commit a hundred follies, tearing mine apparell, crying lowdly thorow these Defarts, cursing my fates, and idly repeating the beloued name of mine enemie, without hauing any other intent or discourse at that time, then to endeauour to finish my life ere long: and when I turne to my selfe, I am so broken and tyred, as I am scarce able to stirre mee. My most ordinary Mansion-Place is in the hollownesse of a Corke tree, sufficiently able to couer this wretched Carcasse. The Cow-heards, and the Goat-heards that feede their cattell here in these mountaines, moued by charity, gaue me sustenance, leauing meate for me by the waies, and on the rockes which they suppose I frequent, and where they thinke I may finde it: and so, although I doe then want the vse of reason, yet doth naturall necessity induce me to know my meate, and stirreth my appetite to couet, and my will to take it. They tell me when they meete me in my wits; that I doe other times come out to the high-waies, and take it from them violently, euen when they themselues doe offer it vnto mee willingly. After this manner doe I passe my miserable life, vntill heauen shall be pleased to conduct it to the last period, or so change my memorie, as I may no more remember on the beauty and treacherie of *Luscinda*, or the iniurie done by *Don Ferdinando*; for if it doe me this fauour, without depriuing my life, then will I conuert my

T 2

thoughts

thoughts to better discourses: if not, there is no other remedie but to pray God to receiue my soule into his mercie; for I neither finde valor nor strength in my selfe to rid my bodie out of the straites, wherein for my pleasure I did at first willingly intrude it.

This is, Sirs, the bitter relation of my disasters: wherefore iudge if it be such as may be celebrated with lesse feeling and compassion then that, which you may by this time haue perceiued in my selfe: And doe not in vaine labour to perswade or counsell mee that, which reason should afford you may be good for my remedie: for it will worke no other effect in me then a medicine prescribed by a skillfull Physician, to a Patient that will in no sort receiue it. I will haue no health without *Luscinda*: and since she pleaseth to alienate her selfe, being or seeing shee ought to be mine: so doe I also take delight to be of the retinue of mis-hap, although I might be a retainer to good fortune. She hath ordained that her changing shall establish my perdition. And I will labour by procuring mine owne losse, to please and satisfie her will: and it shall be an example to ensuing ages, that I alone wanted that, wherewith all other wretches abounded, to whom the impossibility of receiuing comfort, prooued sometimes a cure; but in me it is an occasion of greater feeling and harme, because I am perswaded that my harmes cannot end euen with very death it selfe. Here *Cardenio* finished his large discourse, and vnfortunate and amorous Historie; and iust about the time that the Curate was bethinking himselfe of some comfortable reasons to answer and perswade him, he was suspended by a voyce which arriued to his hearing, which with pittifull accents said what shall be recounted in the fourth part of this Narration. For in this very point the wise and most absolute Historiographer *Cid Hamete Benengeli* finished the third Part of this Historie.



THE DELIGHTFVLL  
 Historie of the most VVittie  
 Knight Don-Quixote of  
 the MANCHA.

*The fourth Booke.*

CHAP. I.

*Wherein is discoursed the new and pleasant ad-  
 uenture, that hapned to the Curate and Bar-  
 ber, in Sierra Morena.*



OST happy and fortune-  
 ate were those times,  
 wherein the thrice-auda-  
 cious and bold Knight  
*Don Quixote* of the *Man-  
 cha* was bestowed on the  
 world; by whose most  
 Honorable resolution, to  
 reuiue and renue in it the  
 already worne out, and  
 welnigh diseased exercise  
 of armes, we ioy in this our  
 so niggard and scant an age of all pastimes, not onely the  
 T 3 sweet-



sweetnesse of his true Historie, but also of the other tales, and digressions contained therein, which are in some respects lesse pleasing, artificiall and true, then the very Historie it selfe. The which prosecuting the carded, spun, and selfe-twined threed of the relation, sayes, that as the Curate began to bethinke himselfe vpon some answer that might both comfort and animate *Cardenio*, he was hindered by a voyce which came to his hearing, said very dolefully the words ensuing:

O God! is it possible that I haue yet found out the place which may serue for a hidden Sepulchre, to the load of this lothsome body that I vnwillingly beare so long? Yes, it may be, if the solitarinesse of these rockes doe not illude me, ah vnfortunate that I am! How much more gratefull companions will these craggies and thickets proue to my designs, by affoording me leisure to communicate my mis-haps to heauen with plaints; then that if any mortall man liuing, since there is none vpon earth from whom may be expected counsell in doubts, ease in complaints, or in harmes remedie? The Curate and his companions heard and vnderstood all the words cleerely, and for as much as they coniectured (as indeede it was) that those plaints were deliuered very neere vnto them, they did all arise to search out the plaintiffe; and hauing gone some twenty steppes thence, they beheld a yong Youth behinde a rocke, sitting vnder an Ash tree, and attired like a countrey Swaine, whom by reason his face was inclined, as he sate washing of his feet in the cleere streame that glided that way, they could not perfectly discern; and therefore approached towards him with so great silence, as they were not descryed by him who only attended to the washing of his feet, which were so white, as they properly resembled two pieces of cleere Crystall, that grew among the other stones of the streame. The whitenesse and beauty of the feet amazed them, being not made as they well coniectured, to tread cloddes, or measure the steps of lazie Oxen, and holding

holding the Plow, as the Youths apparell would perswade them; and therefore the Curate, who went before the rest, seeing they were not yet espied, made signes to the other two, that they should diuert a little out of the way, or hide themselves behinde some broken cliffes that were neere the place: which they did all of them, noting what the Youth did with very great attention. He wore a little browne Capouch, gyrt very neere to his body with a white Towell; also a paire of Breeches and Gamashoes of the same coloured cloth, and on his head a clay-coloured Cap. His Gamashoes were lifted vp halfe the legge, which verily seemed to be white *Alabaster*. Finally, hauing washed his feet, taking out a linnen Kerchiefe from vnder his Cap, he dried them therewithall, and at the taking out of the Kerchiefe, he held vp his face, and then those which stood gazing on him, had leisure to discerne an vnmatchable beautie, so surpassing great, as *Cardenio* rounding the Curate in the eare, said, This bodie, since it is not *Luscinda*, can be no humane creature, but a diuine. The Youth tooke off his Cap at last, and shaking his head to the one and other part, did disheuell and discover such beautifull haire, as those of *Phæbus* might iustly emulate them: and thereby they knew the supposed Swaine to be a delicate woman, yea, and the fairest that euer the first two had seene in their liues, or *Cardenio* himselfe, the louely *Luscinda* excepted; for as he after affirmed, no feature saue *Luscinda's* could contend with hers. The long and golden haire did not onely couer her shoulders, but did also hide her round about, in such sort, as (her feet excepted) no other part of her body appeared, they were so neere and long. At this time her hands serued her for a Combe, which as her feet seemed pieces of Crystall in the water, so did they appeare among her haire like pieces of driuen Snow. All which circumstances did possesse the three which stood gazing at her with great admiration, and desire to know what she was; and therefore resolved to shew

themselves; and with the noyse which they made when they arose, the beautifull mayden held vp her head, and remoouing her haire from before her eyes with both hands, she espied those that had made it, and presently arising full of feare and trouble, shee laid hand on a packet that was by her, which seemed to be of apparell, and thought to flie away, without staying to pull on her shooes, or to gather vp her haire: But scarce had shee gone sixe paces, when her delicate and tender feet, vnable to abide the rough encounter of the stones, made her to fall to the earth. Which the three perceiuing, they came out to her, and the Curate arriuing first of all, said to her, Lady, whatsoeuer you be, stay and feare nothing; for we which you behold here, come only with intention to doe you seruice, and therefore you need not pretend so impertinent a flight, which neither your feete can endure, nor would we permit.

The poore Gyrle remained so amazed and confounded, as shee answered not a word: wherefore the Curate & the rest drawing neerer, he tooke her by the hand, and then he prosecuted his speech, saying, What your habit concealed from vs, Ladie, your haire haue bewrayed, being manifest arguments that the causes were of no small moment, which haue thus bemasked your singular beauty, vnder so vnworthy array, and conducted you to this all-abandoned Desart; wherein it was a wonderfull chance to haue met you, if not to remedie your harmes, yet at least to giue you some comfort, seeing no euill can afflict and vexe one so much, and plunge him in so deepe extremes, (whilest it deprives not the life) that will wholly abhorre from listening to the aduice that is offered, with a good and sincere intention; so that, faire Ladie, or Lord, or what else you shall please to be termed, shake off your affrightment, and rehearse vnto vs your good or ill fortune, for you shall finde in vs ioyntly, or in euery one apart, companions to helpe you to deplore your disasters.

Whilest

Whilest the Curate made this speech, the disguised woman stood as one halfe asleepe, now beholding the one, now the other, without once mouing her lippe or saying a word; much like vnto a rusticke Clowne, when rare and vnseene things to him before, are vnexpectedly presented to his view.

But the Curate insisting and vsing other perswasue reasons addrest to that effect, won her at last to make a breach on her tedious silence, and with a profound sigh, blow open her Corall gates, saying somewhat to this effect: Since the solitarinesse of these rockes hath not beene potent to conceale me, nor the disheueling of my disordered haire, licensed my tongue to belie my sexe, it were in vaine for me to faine that anew, which, if you beleueed it, would be more for courtesies sake then any other respect. Which presupposed, I say, good Sirs, that I doe gratifie you highly for the liberall offers you haue made me; which are such, as haue bound me to satisfie your demand as neere as I may; although I feare the relation which I must make to you of my mis-haps, wil breed sorrow at once with compassion in you, by reason you shall not be able to find any salue that may cure, comfort, or beguile them: yet notwithstanding, to the end my reputation may not houer longer suspended in your opinions, seeing you know me to be a woman, and view me, young, alone, and thus attired, being things all of them able either ioyned or parted, to ouerthrow the best credit, I must bee enforced to vnfold, what I could otherwise most willingly conceale. All this, she that appeared so comely, spoke without stoppe or staggering, with so ready deliuerie and so sweete a voice, as her discretion admired them no lesse then her beautie. And renewing againe their complements and intreaties to her, to accomplish speedily her promise, she setting all coynesse apart, drawing on her shooes very modestly, and winding vp her haire, late her downe on a stone, and the other three about her, where she vsed no little violence to smother

ther certaine rebellious teares that stroue to breake forth without her permission : and then with a reposed and cleere voyce shee beganne the Historie of her life in this manner:

In this Prouince of *Andaluzia* there is a certaine Towne, from whence a Duke deriues his denomination, which makes him one of those in Spain are call'd *Grandes*: He hath two sonnes, the elder is heire of his States, and likewise, as may be presumed, of his vertues: the younger is heire I know not of what, if it bee not of \* *Vellido* his treacheries, or *Galatons* frauds. My parents are this Noble mans vassals, of humble and low calling; but so rich, as if the goods of nature had equalled those of their fortunes, then should they haue had nothing else to desire, nor I feared to see my selfe in the misfortunes, wherein I now am plunged. For perhaps my mis-haps proceed from that of theirs, in not being Nobly descended. True it is that they are not so base, as they should therefore shame their calling, nor so high, as may check my conceit, which perswades mee, that my disasters proceed from their lownesse. In conclusion, they are but Farmours, and plaine people, but without any touch or spot of bad bloud, and as we vsually say, Olde rustie Christians. yet so rustie and ancient, as yet, their riches, and magnificent port, gaine them by little and little the title of Gentilitie; yea, and of worship also; although the treasure and Nobility, whereof they made most price and account, was to haue had mee for their daughter: and therefore as well by reason that they had none other heire then my selfe, as also because as affectionate parents, they held mee most deare: I was one of the most made of and cherished daughters that euer father brought vp: I was the mirrour wherein they beheld themselues, the staffe of their olde age, and the subiect to which they addrest all their desires. From which, because they were most vertuous, mine did not stray an inch: and euen in the same manner that I was

Ladie

\* One that murdered Sancho King of Castile, as he was easing himselfe at the siege of Camora.

Ladie of their mindes, so was I also of their goods. By me were seruants admitted or dismissed: the notice and account of what was sowed or reaped, past thorow my hands, of the Oyle-mills, the Wine-presses, the number of great and little Cattell, the Bee-hiues; in fine, of all that which so rich a Farmour as my Father was, had or could haue; I kept the account, and was the Steward thereof and Mistressse, with such care of my sids, and pleasure of theirs, as I cannot possibly endeere it enough. The times of leisure that I had in the day, after I had giuen what was necessary to the head seruants, and other labourers, I did entertaine in those exercises, which were both commendable and requisite for Maydens, to wit, in Sowing, making of Bone-lace, and many times handling the Distaffe: and if sometimes I left those exercises to recreate my minde a little, I would then take some godly Booke in hand, or play on the Harpe; for experience had taught mee, that musike ordereth disordered mindes, and doth lighten the passions that afflict the Spirit. This was the life which I led in my Fathers house: the recounting whereof so particularly, hath not beene done for ostentation, nor to giue you to vnderstand that I am rich, but to the end you may note how much, without mine owne fault, haue I falne from that happy state I haue said, vnto the vnhappy plight into which I am now reduced. The Historie therefore is this, that passing my life in so many occupations, and that with such recollection as might bee compared to a religious life, vnscene as I thought by any other person then those of our house: for when I went to Masse, it was commonly so early, and so accompanied by my Mother and other Mayd-servants; and I my selfe so couerd and watchfull, as mine eyes did scarce see the earth whereon I trod: and yet notwithstanding those of loue, or as I may better terme them, of Idlenessse, to which *Linces* Eyes may not bee compared, did represent mee to *Don Ferdinando's* affection and care; for this is the name of the  
Dukes



Dukes younger sonne, of whom I spake before. Scarce had she named *Don Ferdinando*, when *Cardenio* changed colour, and began to sweate with such alteration of bodie and countenance, as the Curate and Barber which beheld it, feared that the accident of frenzie did assault him, which was wont (as they had heard) to possesse him at times. But *Cardenio* did nothing else then sweat, and stood still beholding now and then the country gyrl, imagining straight what shee was, who without taking notice of his alteration, followed on her discourse in this manner: And scarce had hee seene mee, when (as hee himselfe after confest) hee abode greatly surprized by my loue, as his actions did after giue euident demonstration.

But to conclude soone the relation of those misfortunes which haue no conclusion, I will ouer-slip in silence the diligences and practices of *Don Ferdinando*, vied to declare vnto me his affection: hee suborned all the folke of the house. He bestowed gifts and fauours on my parents: euery day was a holy-day, and a day of sports in the streets where I dwelled: at night no man could sleepe for Musike; the letters were innumerable that came to my hands, without knowing who brought them; faried too full of amorous conceits and offers; and contayning more promises and protestations then they had characters. All which, not onely could not mollifie my mind, but rather hardened it as much as if hee were my mortall enemy, and therefore did construe all the indeuours hee vsed to gaine my good will, to be practised to a contrary end: which I did not, as accounting *Don Ferdinando* vngentle, or that I esteemed him too importunate, for I took a kind of delight to see my selfe so highly esteemed and beloued of so Noble a Gentleman: nor was I any thing offended to see his papers written in my praise; for if I bee not deceiued in this point, be wee women euer so foule, wee loue to heare men call vs beautifull. But mine honesty was that which  
opposed

opposed it selfe vnto all these things, and the continuall admonitions of my parents, which had by this plainly perceiued *Don Fernandes* pretence, as one that cared not all the world should know it. They would often say vnto me, that they had deposited their honours and reputation in my vertue alone and discretion, and bade me consider the inequalitye that was betweene *Don Fernando* and me, and that I might collect by it, how his thoughts (did he euer so much affirme the contrary) were more addrest to compasse his pleasures then my profit: And that if I feared any inconuenience might befall, to the end they might crosse it, and cause him to abandon his so vniust a pursuit, they would march me where I most liked, either to the best of that towne, or any other towne adioyning, saying, they might easily compasse it, both by reason of their great wealth and my good report. I fortified my resolution and integritie with these certaine promises, and the knowne truth which they told me, and therefore would neuer answer to *Don Fernando* any word, that might euer so farre off argue the least hope of condescending to his desires. All which cautions of mine which I thinke he deemed to be disdaines, did inflame more his lasciuious appetite (for this is the name wherewithall I intitle his affection towards me) which had it beene such as it ought, you had not knowne it now, for then the cause of reuealing it had not befallne me. Finally *Don Fernando* vnderstanding how my parents meant to marrie me, to the end they might make voide his hope of euer possessing me: or at least let more gards to preserue mine honour, and this newes or surmise was an occasion that he did, what you shall presently heare.

For one night as I sate in my chamber, only attended by a yong Mayden that serued me, I hauing shut the doores very safe, for feare lest through any negligence my honestie might incurre any danger, without knowing or imagining how it might happen: notwithstanding all my diligences

gences vsed and preuentions, and amidst the solitude of this silence and recollection, he stood before me in my chamber. At his presence I was so troubled, as I lost both sight and speech, and by reason thereof could not crie, nor I thinke he would not, though I had attempted it, permit me. For he presently ranne ouer to me, and taking me betweene his armes (for as I haue said, I was so amazed, as I had no power to defend my selfe) he spake such things to me, as I knew not how it is possible that so many lies should haue ability to faine things resembling in shew so much the truth: and the traytor caused teares, to giue credit to his words, and sighes, to giue countenance to his intention.

I poore soule being alone amidst my friends, and weakly practised in such affaires, began, I know not how, to account his leasings for verities, but not in such sort, as his teares or sighes might any wise mooue me to any compassion that were not commendable. And so the first trouble and amazement of minde being past, I began againe to recouer my defectiue spirits, and then said to him with more courage then I thought I should haue had, If as I am, my Lord, betweene your armes, I were betweene the pawes of a fierce *Lyon*, and that I were made certaine of my liberty, on condition to doe or say any thing preiudiciall to mine honour, it would prooue as impossible for me to accept it, as for that which once hath beene, to leaue off his essence and being. Wherefore euen as you haue in-gyrt my middle with your armes, so likewise haue I tied fast my minde with vertuous and forcible desires, that are wholly different from yours, as you shall perceiue, if seeking to force me, you presume to passe further with your inordinate designe. I am your vassall, but not your slaue, nor hath the nobilitie of your blood power, nor ought it to harden, to dishonour, staine or hold in little account the humilitie of mine; and I doe esteeme my selfe, though a countrey Wench and Farmers daughter, as much as you can your selfe, though a Nobleman and a

Lord :

Lord : With mee your violence shall not preuaile , your riches gaine any grace , your words haue power to deceiue , or your sighes and teares be able to moue : yet if I shall finde any of these properties mentioned in him , whom my parents shall please to bestow on mee for my Spouse , I will presently subiect my will to his , nor shall it euer varie from his minde a jot : So that if I might remaine with honour , although I rested void of delights , yet would I willingly bestow on you , that which you presently labour so much to obtaine : all which I doe say , to diuert your straying thought from euer thinking that any one may obtaine of me ought , who is not my lawfull Spouse. If the let onely consists therein , most beautifull *Dorotea* ( for so I am called ) answered the disloyall Lord : behold , I giue thee here my hand to be thine alone : and let the heauens , from which nothing is concealed ; and this Image of our Lady which thou hast beere present , bee witnesses of this truth.

When *Cardenio* heard her say that she was called *Dorotea* , hee fell againe into his former suspicion , and in the end confirmed his first opinion to bee true : but would not interrupt her speech , being desirous to know the successe , which he knew wholly almost before , & therefore said onely , Lady , is it possible that you are named *Dorotea* ? I haue heard report of another of that name , which perhaps hath runne the like course of your misfortunes : but I request you to continue your relation ; for a time may come , wherein I may recount vnto you things of the same kinde , which will breed no small admiration. *Dorotea* noted *Cardenios* words , and his vncouth and disastrous attire , and then intreated him very instantly , if hee knew any thing of her affaires , he would acquaint her therewithall. For if fortune had left her any good , it was onely the courage which shee had to beare patiently any disaster that might befall her , being certaine in her opinion , that no new one could arriue , which might increase a whit those shee had already.

Ladie,

Ladie, I would not let slip the occasion (quoth *Cardenio*) to tell you what I thinke, if that which I imagine were true: and yet there is no commoditie left to doe it: nor can it auaille you much to know it. Let it be what it list, said *Dorotea*: but that which after befell of my relation, was this: That *Don Fernando* tooke an Image that was in my Chamber for witnesse of our contract, and added withall most forcible words and vnusuall oathes, promising vnto me to become my husband: Although I warned him, before he had ended his speech, to see well what hee did, and to weigh the wrath of his father, when he should see him married to one so base, and his Vassall, and that therefore hee should take heed that my beautie (such as it was) should not blinde him, seeing hee should not finde therein a sufficient excuse for his Errour: and that if hee meant to doe mee any good, I coniured him by the loue that he bore vnto mee, to license my fortunes to roule in their owne Spheare, according as my quality reached: For such vnequall matches doe neuer please long, nor perseuer with that delight wherewithall they begunne.

All the reasons heere rehearsed, I said vnto him, and many moe; which now are false out of minde, but yet proued of no efficacy to weane him from his obstinate purpose, euen like vnto one that goeth to buy, with intention neuer to pay for what he takes: and therefore neuer considers the price, worth, or defect of the stuffe hee takes to credit. I at this season made a brieue discourse, and said thus to my selfe, I may doe this: for I am not the first which by matrimonie hath ascended from a low degree to a high estate: nor shall *Don Fernando* be the first whom beautie or blind affection (for that is the most certaine) hath induced to make choyce of a consort vnequall to his Greatnesse. Then since herein I create no new world, nor custome, what error can be committed by embracing the honour wherewithall fortune crownes me? Although it so befell, that his affection to mee endured no longer then till  
he

he accomplisht his will : for before God, I certes shall still remaine his wife. And if I should disdainfully giue him the repulse, I see him now in such termes, as perhaps forgetting the dutie of a Noble-man, he may vse violence, and then shall I remaine for euer dishonoured, and also without excuse of the imputations of the ignorant, which knew not how much without any fault I haue falne into this ineuitable danger. For, what reasons may be sufficiently forcible to perswade my father & other, that this Noble-man did enter into my Chamber without my consent? All these demands and answers did I in an instant reuolue in mine imagination, and found my selfe chiefly forced (how I cannot tell) to assent to his petition, by the witnesses hee inuoked, the teares he shed, and finally by his sweete disposition and comely feature, which accompanied with so many arguments of vnfeined affection, were able to conquer and enthrall any other heart, though it were as free and wary as mine owne. Then called I for my Waiting-maide, that she might on earth accompany the celestiall witnesses.

And then *Don Fernando* turned againe to reiterate and confirme his oathes, and added to his former, other new Saints as witnesses, and wished a thousand succeeding maledictions to light on him, if hee did not accomplish his promise to mee. His eyes againe waxed moyst, his sighes increased, and himselfe inwreathed mee more straightly betweene his armes, from which hee had neuer once loosed mee : and with this, and my Maydens departure, I left to be a Mayden, and hee beganne to be a Traytor, and disloyall man. The day that succeeded to the night of my mis-haps, came not (I thinke) so soone as *Don Fernando* desired it : for after a man hath satisfied that which the appetite couets, the greatest delight it can take after, is to apart it selfe from the place where the desire was accomplished. I say this, because *Don Fernando* did hasten his departure from me, by my Maides industrie,



who was the very same that had brought him into my Chamber, he was got in the streete before dawning. And at his departure from mee, he said ( although not with so great shew of affection and vehemencie, as hee had vsed at his comming ) that I might bee secure of his faith, and that his oathes were firme most true : and for a more confirmation of his word, hee tooke a rich ring off his finger, and put it on mine. In fine hee departed, and I remained behind, I cannot well say, whether ioyfull or sad ; but this much I know that I rested confused and pensiue, and almost beside my selfe for the late mischance ; yet either I had not the heart, or else I forgot to chide my Maide for her treacherie committed by shutting vp *Don Fernando* in my Chamber : for as yet I could not determine, whether that which had befallne mee, was a good or an euill.

I said to *Don Fernando* at his departure, that he might see me other nights when hee pleased, by the same meanes hee had come that night, seeing I was his owne, and would rest so, vntill it pleased him to let the world know that I was his wife. But hee neuer returned againe, but the next night following could I see him after, for the space of a moneth either in the streete or Church, so as I did but spend time in vaine to expect him : although I vnderstood that hee was still in towne, and rode euerie other day a hunting : an exercise to which hee was much addicted.

Those dayes were, I know, vnfortunate and accursed to me, and those houres sorrowfull ; for in them I began to doubt, nay rather, wholly to discredit *Don Fernando* his faith : and my maide did then heare loudly the checkes I gaue vnto her for her presumption, euer vntill then dissembled. And I was morcouer constrained to watch and keepe guard on my teares and countenance, lest I should giue occasion to my parents to demand of mee the cause of my discontents, and thereby ingage me to vse ambages

or

or vnttruthes to couer them. But all this ended in an instant, one moment arriuing whereon all these respects stumbled, all honourable discourses ended, patience was lost, and my most hidden secrets issued in publike: which was, when there was spread a certaine rumour thorow-out the towne within a few dayes after, that *Don Fernando* had married in a Citie neere adioyning, a Damzell of surpassing beautie, & of very Noble birth, although not so rich, as could deserue by her preferment or dowrie so worthy a husband. It was also said, that shee was named *Luscinda*, with many other things that happened at their Spousals, worthy of admiration. *Cardenio* hearing *Luscinda* named, did nothing else but lift vp his shoulders, bite his lippe, bend his browes, and after a little while shedde from his eyes two floods of teares. But yet for all that, *Dorotea* did not interrupt the file of her Historie, saying, This dolefull newes came to my hearing, and my heart, instead of freezing thereat, was so inflamed with choler and rage, as I had wel-nigh runne out to the streets, and with out-cries published the deceit and treason that was done to me: but my furie was presently asswaged by the resolution which I made, to doe what I put in execution the very same night, and then I put on this habit which you see, being giuen vnto mee by one of those that among vs Countrey-folke are called Swaines who was my fathers seruant; to whom I disclosed all my misfortunes, and requested him to accompany mee to the Citie, where I vnderstood mine enimie sojourned. He, after hee had reprehended my boldnesse, perceiuing me to haue an inflexible resolution, made offer to attend on mee, as hee said, vnto the end of the world: and presently after I trussed vp in a pillow-beare, a womans attire, some Mony and Jewels, to preuent necessities that might befall; and in the silence of night, without acquainting my treacherous maide with my purpose, I issued out of my house, accompanied by my seruant, and many imaginations: and in

that manner set on towards the Citie, and though I went on foote, was yet borne away flying, by my desires, to come, if not time enough to hinder that which was past, yet at least to demand of *Don Fernando* that he would tell me with what conscience or soule hee had done it. I arrived where I wished within two dayes and a halfe; and at the entry of the Citie I demanded where *Luscinda* her father dwelled? and he of whom I first demanded the question, answered me more then I desired to heare: he shewed me the house, and recounted to me all that befell at the daughters marriage, being a thing so publique and knowne in the Citie, as men made meetings of purpose to discourse thereof.

He said to mee, that the very night wherein *Don Fernando* was espoused to *Luscinda*, after that shee had giuen her consent to be his wife, shee was instantly assailed by a terrible accident, that stricke her into a trance: and her Spouse approaching to vnclasp her bosome, that she might take the ayre, found a paper folded in it, written with *Luscinda's* owne hand, wherein she said & declared, that she could not be *Don Fernando's* wife, because she was already *Cardenio's*, who was, as the man told me, a very principall Gentleman of the same Citie; and that if she had giuen her consent to *Don Fernando*, it was onely done, because shee would not disobey her parents: in conclusion he told me, that the Paper made also mention, how shee had a resolution to kill her selfe presently after the marriage, and did also lay downe therein the motiues she had to doe it. All which, as they say, was confirmed by a Ponyard that was found hidden about her in her apparrell. Which *Don Fernando* perceiuing, presuming that *Luscinda* did flout him, and hold him in little account, he set vpon her ere shee was come to her selfe, and attempted to kill her with the very same Ponyard; & had done it, if her father and other friends which were present, had not opposed themselves, and hindered his determination. Moreouer, they reported  
that

that presently after *Don Fernando* absented himselfe from the Citie, and that *Luscinda* turned not out of her agony vntill the next day, and then recounted to her parents how she was verily Spouse to that *Cardenio* of whom wee spake euen now. I learned besides, that *Cardenio*, as it is rumour'd, was present at the marriage, and that as soone as he saw her married, being a thing he would neuer haue credited, departed out of the Citie in a desperate moode, but first left behinde him a letter, wherein hee shewed at large the wrong *Luscinda* had done to him, and that hee himselfe meant to goe to some place where people should neuer after heare of him. All this was notorious, and publicly bruited thorowout the Citie, and euery one spoke thereof, but most of all, hauing very soone after vnderstood that *Luscinda* was missing from her Parents house and the Citie; for shee could not be found in neyther of both: for which her parents were almost beside themselves, not knowing what meanes to vse to finde her.

These newes reduced my hopes againe to their ranks, and I esteemed it better to find *Don Fernando* vnmarried then married, presuming that yet the gates of my remedy were not wholly shut, I giuing my selfe to vnderstand that heauen had peraduenture set that impediment on the second marriage, to make him vnderstand what hee ought to the first; and to remember, how hee was a Christian, and that hee was more obliged to his soule then to humane respects. I reuolued all these things in my minde, and comfortlesse did yet comfort my selfe, by sayning large, yet languishing hopes, to sustaine that life which I now doe so much abhor. And whilest I staid thus in the Citie, ignorant what I might doe, seeing I found not *Don Fernando*, I heard a cryer goe about publicly, promising great rewards to any one that could finde me out, giuing signes of the very age and apparrell I wore. And I likewise heard it was bruited abroad, that the Youth which came

with me had carried mee away from my fathers house. A thing that touched my soule very neerely, to view my credit so greatly wrackt, seeing that it was not sufficient to haue lost it by my comming away, without the addition him with whom I departed, being a subiect so base and vnworthy of my loftier thoughts. Hauing heard this crye, I departed out of the Citie with my seruant : who euen then began to giue tokens, that hee faultred in the fidelitie hee had promised to mee : and both of vs together entred the very same night into the most hidden parts of this mountaine, fearing lest wee might bee found. But as it is commonly said, That one euill calls on another, and that the end of one disaster is the beginning of a greater, so proued it with me ; for my good seruant, vntill then faithfull and trustie, rather incited by his owne villany then my beautie, thought to haue taken the benefitt of the opportunity which these inhabitable places offered ; and sollicitated mee of loue, with little shame and lesse feare of God, or respect of my selfe : and now seeing that I answered his impudencies with seuerer and reprehensiuer words, leauing the intreaties aside, wherewithall hee thought first to haue compass his will, hee beganne to vse his force. But iust heauen, which seldome or neuer neglects the iust mans assistance, did so fauour my proceedings, as with my weake forces, and very little labour, I threw him downe a steepe Rocke, and there I left him, I know not whether aliuie or dead. And presently I entred in among these mountaines, with more swiftnesse then my feare and wearinesse required ; hauing therein no other proiect or designe, then to hide my selfe in them, and shunne my father and others, which by his intreaty and meanes sought for me euerywhere.

Some moneths are past since my first comming here, where I found a Heardman, who carried mee to a village seated in the midst of these Rockes, wherein hee dwelled, and entertained me, whom I haue serued as a Sheepeheard  
cuer

euert since, procuring as much as lay in me, to abide still in the field, to couer these haire, which haue now so vnexpectedly betraide mee. Yet all my care and industry was not very beneficiall, seeing my Master came at last to the notice that I was no man, but a woman, which was an occasion that the like euill thought sprung in him, as before in my seruant. And as fortune giues not alwayes remedie for the difficulties which occur, I found neither Rocke nor downefall to coole and cure my Masters infirmitie, as I had done for my man: and therefore I accounted it a lesse incommenience to depart thence, and hide my selfe againe among these Desarts, then to aduenture the triall of my strength or reason with him. Therefore, as I say, I turned to imboske my selfe, and search out some place, where, without any encumbrance I might intreat heauen with my sighes and teares, to haue compassion on my mis-hap, and lend me industry and fauour, either to issue fortunately out of it, or else to die amidst these solitudes, not leauing any memory of a wretch, who hath ministered matter, although not through her own default, that men may speake and murmur of her, both in her owne and in other Countries.

## C H A P. II.

*Which treates of the discretion of the beautifull Doxotea, and the artificiall manner vsed to dissuade the amorous Knight from continuing his penance: and how hee was gotten away; with many other delightfull and pleasant occurrences.*

**T**His is, Sirs, the true relation of my Tragedie: see therefore now and iudge, whether the sighes you heard, the words to which you listened, and the teares that gushed out at mine eyes, haue not had sufficient occasion to appeare in greater abundance: and hauing considered the quality of my

V 4

disgrace;



disgrace; you shall perceiue all comfort to bee vaine, seeing the remedie thereof is impossible. Only I will request at your hands one fauour which you ought and may easily grant, and is, that you will addresse mee vnto some place, where I may liue secure from the feare and suspicion I haue to be found by those, which I know do daily trauel in my pursuite: for although I am sure that my parents great affection towards me, doth warrant me to be kindly receiued and entertained by them: yet the shame is so great that possesseth mee, onely to thinke that I shall not returne to their presence in that state which they expect, as I account it farre better to banish my selfe from their sight for euer, then once to behold their face, with the least suspicion that they againe would behold mine diuorced from that honestie, which whilome my modest behaiour promised. Here she ended, and her face suddenly ouer-run by a louely scarlet, perspicuously denoted the feeling and bashfulness of her soule.

The audients of her sad storie, felt great motions both of pitie and admiration for her misfortunes: and although the Curate thought to comfort and counsell her forthwith, yet was hee preuented by *Cardenio*, who taking her first by the hand, said at last; Ladie, thou art the beautifull *Dorotea*, daughter vnto rich *Cleonardo*. *Dorotea* rested admired when shee heard her fathers name, and saw of how little value he seemed, who had named him. For we haue already recounted how raggedly *Cardenio* was clothed; and therefore she said vnto him, And who art thou, friend, that knowest so well my fathers name; for vntill this houre (if I haue not forgotten my selfe) I did not once name him thorowout the whole Discourse of my vnfortunate tale? I am (answered *Cardenio*) the vnluckie Knight, whom *Luscinda* (as thou saidst) affirmed to be her husband. I am the disastrous *Cardenio*, whom the wicked proceeding of him that hath also brought thee to those termes wherein thou art, hath conducted mee to the  
state

state in which I am, and thou mayest behold ragged, naked, abandoned by al humane comfort: and what is worse, voyde of sense; seeing I onely enioy it but at some few short times, and that, when heauen pleaseth to lend it me. I am he, *Dorotea*, that was present at *Don Fernando's* vnreasonable wedding, and that heard the consent which *Luscinda* gaue him to be his wife. I was he, that had not the courage to stay and see the end of her trance, or what became of the paper found in her bosome. For my soule had not power or sufferance, to behold so many mis-fortunes at once, and therefore abandoned the place and my patience together, and onely left a Letter with mine Oast, whom I intreated to deliuer it into *Luscinda* her owne hands, and then came into these Desarts, with resolution to end in them my miserable life, which since that houre I haue hated as my most mortall enemie. But fortune hath not pleased to depriue me of it, thinking it sufficient to haue impaired my wit, pethaps reseruing me for the good successe befallne me now in finding of your selfe; for that being true (as I beleuee it is) which you haue here discoursed, peraduenture it may haue reserued yet better hap for vs both in our disasters then we doe expect.

For presupposing that *Luscinda* cannot marry with *Don Fernando*, because shee is mine, nor *Don Fernando* with her, because yours: and that shee hath declared so manifestly the same: we may well hope that heauen hath meanes to restore to euery one that which is his owne, seeing it yet consists in being not made away, or annihilated. And seeing this comfort remaines, not sprung from any very remote hope, nor founded on idle surmises, I request thee, faire Ladie, to take another resolution in thine honourable thought, seeing I meane to doe it in mine, and let vs accommodate our selues to expect better successe: For I doe vow vnto thee by the faith of a Gentleman and *Christian*, not to forsake thee, vntill I see thee in *Don Fernando's* possession, and when I shall not by reasons be able

able to induce him to acknowledge how farre he rests indebted to thee, then will I vse the liberty granted to mee as a Gentleman, and with iust title challenge him to the field, in respect of the wrong he hath done vnto thee; forgetting wholly mine owne iniuries, whose reuenge I will leaue to heauen, that I may be able to right yours on earth.

*Dorotea* rested wonderfully admired, hauing knowne and heard *Cardenio*, and ignoring what competent thanks she might retorne him in satisfaction of his large offers, she cast her selfe downe at his feet to haue kist them, which *Cardenio* would not permit: and the Licenciat answered for both, praising greatly *Cardenio's* discourse: and chiefly intreated, prayed, and counselled them, that they would goe with him to his village, where they might fit themselues with such things as they wanted, and also take order how to search out *Don Fernando*, or carrie *Dorotea* to her fathers house, or doe else what they deemed most conuenient. *Cardenio* and *Dorotea* gratified his courtesies, and accepted the fauour he proffered. The Barber also, who had stood all the while silent and suspended, made them a prettie Discourse, with as friendly an offer of himselfe, and his seruice as Master Curate; and likewise did briefly relate the occasion of their comming thither, with the extrauagant kinde of madnesse which *Don-Quixote* had, and how they expected now his Squires retorne, whom they had sent to search for him. *Cardenio* hauing heard him named, remembered presently, as in a dreame, the conflict past betweene them both, and recounted it vnto them, but could not in any wise call to minde the occasion thereof.

By this time they heard one call for them, and knew by the voyce, that it was *Sancho Pança*, who because hee found them not in the place where he had left them, cryed out for them as lowdly as hee might. They went to meete him, and demanding for *Don-Quixote*, he answered, that he found him all naked to his shirt, leane, yellow,  
almost.

almost dead for hunger, and fighting for his Lady *Dulcinea*: and although he had told him, how she commaunded him to repaire presently to *Toboso*, where she expected him: yet notwithstanding he answered, That he was determined neuer to appeare before her Beautie, vntill he had done Feats that should make him worthy of her gracious fauor. And then the Squire affirmed, If that humor passed on any further, he feared, his Lord would be in danger neuer to become an Emperour, as he was bound in honour, no, nor a Cardinall, which was the least that could be expected of him. The Licenciat bid him be of good cheere, for they would bring him from thence whether he would, or no; and recounted to *Cardenio* and *Dorotea*, what they had be-thought for *Don Quixotes* remedie, or at least for the carrying of him home to his house. To that *Dorotea* answered, that she would counterfeit the distressed Ladie better then the Barber; and chiefly seeing shee had apparell wherewithall to act it most naturally: And therefore desired them to leaue to her charge the representing of all that which should be needfull for the atchieuing of their designe; for she had read many bookes of Knighthood, and knew well the stile that distressed damzels vsed, when they requested any fauour of Knights aduenturous. And then need we nothing else, quoth the Curate, but onely to put our purpose presently in execution. For questionlesse good successe turnes on our side, seeing it hath so vnexpectedly begun already to open the gates of your remedie, and hath also facilitated for vs that whereof we had most necessity in this exigent. *Dorotea* tooke forthwith out of her Pillow-bearer a whole Gowne of very rich stuffe, and a short Mantle of another greene stuffe, and a Collar and many other rich Jewels out of a boxe, wherewithall she adorned her selfe in a trice so gorgeously, as shee seemed a very rich and goodly Ladie. All which and much more she had brought with her, as she said, from her House, to preuent what might happen, but neuer had any vse of them, vntill then.

Her

Her grace, gesture and beautie liked them all extremely; and made them account *Don Fernando* to be a man of little vnderstanding, seeing he contemned such feature. But he which was most of all admired, was *Sancho Pança*, because, as he thought (and it was so indeed) that he had not in all the dayes of his life before seene so faire a creature: and he requested the Curate very seriously to tell him who that beautifull Ladie was? and what she sought among those thorow-fares? This faire Lady, friend *Sancho*, answered the Curate, is (as if a man said nothing, she is so great) his heire apparent by direct line of the mighty Kingdome of *Micomicon*, and comes in the search of your Lord, to demand a boone of him, which is, that he will destroy and vndoe a great wrong done vnto her by a wicked Gyant; and through the great fame which is spred ouer all *Guinea* of your Lords prowesse, this Princeesse is come to finde him out. A happy searcher, and a fortunate finding, quoth *Sancho*, and chiefly, if my Master be so happie as to right that iniurie, and redresse that wrong by killing that, O! the mighty Lubber of a Gyant whom you say: yes, he will kill him, I am very certaine, if he can once but meete him, and if he be not a spirit; For my Master hath no kinde of power ouer spirits. But I must request one fauour of you among others most earnestly, good Mr. Licenciat, & tis, that to the end my Lord may not take an humour of becoming a Cardinall (which is the thing I feare most in this world) that you will giue him counsell to marry this Princeesse presently, and by that meanes he shall remaine incapable of the dignitie of a Cardinall, and will come very easily by his Empire, and I to the end of my desires: for I haue thought well of the matter, and haue found, that it is in no wise expedient that my Lord should become a Cardinall; for I am wholly vnfit for any Ecclesiasticall dignitie, seeing I am a married man: and therefore to trouble my selfe now with seeking of dispensations to inioy Churchliuings, hauing, as I haue, both wife and children, were neuer

neuer to end: so that all my good consists, in that my Lord doe marry this Princeesse instantly, whose name yet I know not, and therefore I haue not said it. Shee is high (quoth the Curate) the Princeesse *Micomicona*: for her Kingdome being called *Micomicon*, it is euident she must be termed so.

That is questionlesse, quoth *Sancho*, for I haue knowne many to take their denomination and surname from the place of their birth, calling themselues *Peter of Alcala*, *John of Vbeda*, and *Iames of Valedolid*: and perhaps in *Guinea* Princes and Queenes vse the same custome, and call themselues by the names of their Prouinces.

So I thinke, quoth the Curate: and as touching your Masters Marriage with her, I will labour therein as much as lies in my power. Wherewithall *Sancho* remained as well satisfied, as the Curate admired at his simplicitie, and to see how firmly he had fixed in his fantasie the very rauiings of his Master, seeing he did beleue without doubt that his Lord should become an Emperour. *Dorotea* in this space had gotten vpon the Curates Mule, and the Barber had somewhat better fitted the beard which he made of the Oxes tayle on his face, and did after intreat *Sancho* to guide them to the place where *Don-Quixote* was, and aduertised him withall, that he should in no wise take any notice of the Curate or Barber, or confesse in any sort that he knew them, for therein consisted all the meanes of bringing *Don-Quixote* to the minde to become an Emperour. Yet *Cardenio* would not goe with them, fearing lest thereby *Don-Quixote* might call to minde their contention: and the Curate thinking also that his presence was not expedient, remained with him, letting the others goe before, and these followed a farre off faire and softly on foot, and ere they departed, the Curate instructed *Dorotea* anew, what she should say, who bid him to feare nothing, for she would discharge her part to his satisfaction, and as bookes of Chiuallrie required and laid downe.

They



They travelled about three quarters of a league, as they espied the Knight, and at last they discovered him among a number of intricate rocks, all apparelled, but not armed: and as soone as *Dorotea* beheld him, she stricke her Palfray, her wel-bearded Barber following her: and as they approached *Don-Quixote*, the Barber leaped lightly down from his Mule, and ran towards *Dorotea* to take her downe betweene his armes, who allighting, went with a very good grace towards *Don-Quixote*, and kneeled before him. And although he strived to make her arise, yet she remaining still on her knees, spake to him in this manner: I will not arise from hence, thrice valourous and approoued Knight, vntill your bountie and courtscie shall grant vnto me one boone, which shall much redound vnto your honour and prize of your person, and to the profit of the most disconsolate and wronged Damzell that the Sunne hath euer scene. And if it be so, that the valour of your inuincible arme be correspondent to the brute of your immortall fame, you are obliged to succour this comfortlesse Wight, that comes from lands so remote, to the sound of your famous name, searching you for to remedie her mis-haps.

I will not answer you a word, faire Ladie, quoth *Don-Quixote*, nor heare a iot of your affaire, vntill you arise from the ground. I will not get vp from hence, my Lord, quoth the afflicted Ladie, if first of your wonted bountie you doe not grant to my request. I doe giue and grant it, said *Don-Quixote*, so that it be not a thing that may turne to the dammage or hindrance of my King, my countrey, or of her that keepes the key of my heart and liberty. It shall not turne to the dammage or hinderance of those you haue said, good Sir, replied the dolorous Damzell; and as she was saying this, *Sancho Pança* rounded his Lord in the eare, saying softly to him, Sir, you may very well grant the request she asketh, for it is a matter of nothing, it is onely to kill a monstrous Gyant, and shee that demands it is the mightie Princeesse *Micomicona* Queene of the great Kingdome of

*Micomi-*

*Micomicon* in *Ethiopia*. Let her be what she will, quoth *Don-Quixote*, for I will accomplish what I am bound, and my conscience shall informe me conformable to the state I haue professed: and then turning to the Damzell, he said, Let your great beautie arise, for I grant to you any boone which you shall please to aske of me. Why then, quoth the Damzell, that which I demand is, that your magnanimous person come presently away with me, to the place where I shall carry you, and doe likewise make me a promise, not to vndertake any other aduenture or demand, vntil you reuenge me vpon a traytour who hath, against all lawes both diuine and humane, vsurped my kingdome. I say, that I grant you all that quoth *Don-Quixote*, and therefore, Lady, you may cast away from this day forward all the melancholy that troubles you, and labour that your languishing and dismaied hopes may recouer againe new strength and courage, for by the helpe of God, and that of mine arme you shall see your selfe shortly restored to your Kingdome, and enthronized in the Chayre of your ancient and great estate, in despite and maugre the traytors that shall dare gaine say it: and therefore Hands to the worke, for they say, that danger alwayes followes delay. The distressed Damzell stroue with much ado to kisse his hand: but *Don-Quixote*, who was a most accomplished Knight for courtesie, would neuer condescend thereunto, but making her arise, hee imbraced her with grear kindenesse and respect; and commanded *Sancho* to saddle *Rozinante*, and helpe him to arme himselfe. *Sancho* tooke dowre the Armes forthwith, which hung on a tree like trophies, and searching the girts, armed his Lord in a moment, who seeing himselfe armed, said, Let vs in Gods Name depart from hence to assist this great Lady. The Barber kneeled all this while, and could with much adoe dissemble his laughter, or keepe on his Beard that threatned still to fall off; with whose fall perhaps, they should all haue remained without bringing their good purpose to passe: and seeing that

that the boone was granted, and noted the diligence wherewithall *Don-Quixote* made himselfe ready to depart and accomplish the same: he arose and tooke his Ladie by the hand, and both of them together holpe her vpon her Mule: and presently after, *Don-Quixote* leaped on *Rosinante*, and the Barber got vp on his beast, *Sancho* onely remaining afoot: where he afresh renued the memory of the losse of his gray Ass, with the want procured to him thereby. But all this he bore with very great patience, because he supposed that his Lord was now in the way, and next degree to be an Emperour: for he made an infallible account that he would marry that Princeesse, and at least be King of *Micomicon*: but yet it grieved him to thinke how that Kingdome was in the countrey of blacke Moores, and that therefore the Nation which should be giuen to him for his vassals, should be all blacke: for which difficultie his imagination coyned presently a good remedie: and he discoursed with himselfe in this manner: Why should I care, though my subiects be all blacke Moores? is there any more to be done, then to loade them in a ship, and bring them into *Spaine*, where I may sell them, and receiue the price of them in readie money? And with that money may I buy some title or Office, wherein I may after liue at mine ease all the daies of my life? No! but sleepe, and haue no wit, nor abilitie to dispose of things: and to sell thirtie or ten thousand vassals in the space that one would say, Giue me those straws. I will dispatch them all, they shall flie the litle with the great, or as I can best contriue the matter. And be they cuer so blacke, I will transforme them into White or Yellow ones; come neere and see whether I cannot sucke well my fingers ends. And thus he trauailed so sollicitous and glad, as he quite forgot his paine of trauailing afoote. *Cardenio* and the Curate stood in the meane time beholding all that passed from behind some brambles, where they lay lurking, and where in doubt what meanes to vse to issue and ioine in company with them.

But

But the Curate, who was an ingenious and prompt plotter, deuised instantly what was to be done, that they might attaine their desire, thus he tooke out of his case a payre of sheares, and cut off *Cardenio's* beard therewithall in a trice, and then gaue vnto him to weare a riding Capouch which he himselfe had on, and a blacke cloake; and himselfe walked in a doublet & hose. *Cardenio* thus attired, looked so vnlike that he was before, as he would not haue knowne himselfe in a Looking-glasse. This being finished, and the others gone on before whilst they disguised themselves, they sallied out with facilitie to the high way before *Don-Quixote* or his company: for the rockes and many other bad passages did not permit those that were a horsebacke, to make so speedie an end of their journey as they: and when they had thorowly past the mountaine, they expected at the foot thereof for the Knight and his companie: and when the Knight appeared, the Curate looked on him very earnestly for a great space, with inkling that he began to know him: and after he had a good while beheld him, he ran towards him with his armes spread abroad, saying, In a good houre be the mirrour of all Knighthood found, and my noble country-man *Don-Quixote* of the *Mancha*, the flower and the creame of Gentilitie, the shaddow and remedie of the afflicted, and the Quintessence of Knights Errant: and saying this, he held *Don-Quixote* his left thigh embraced. Who, admiring at that which he heard that man to say and doe, did also reuiew him with attention, and finally knew him, and all amazed to see him, made much adoe to alight, but the Curate would not permit him: wherefore *Don-Quixote* said, Good Master *Licenciat*, permit me to alight, for it is in no sort decent that I be a horsebacke, and so reuerend a person as you goe on foot. I will neuer consent thereunto, quoth the Curate, your highnesse must needs stay on horsebacke, seeing that thereon you are accustomed to atchieue the greatest feats of Chiuallrie and aduentures, which were euer seene in our age.

\* A strange beast  
of Affricke that  
trauels very  
swiftly.

For it shall suffice me, who am an vnworthy Priest, to get vp behind some one of these other Gentlemen that ride in your company, if they will not take it in bad part, yea, and I will make account that I ride on *Pegasus*, or the \* *Zebra* of the famous Moore *Muzaraque*, who lies yet enchanted in the steepe rocke of *Culema*, neere vnto *Alcala* of *Henares*.

Truely, I did not thinke vpon it, good Master Licenciat, answered *Don-Quixote*, yet I presume that my Lady the Princeesse will be well appaide for my sake to command her Squire to lend you the vse of his saddle, and to get vp himselfe on the Crupper, if so it be that the beast will beare double. Yes that it will, said the Princeesse, for ought I know, and likewise I am sure it will not be necessarie to command my Squire to alight, for he is of himselfe so courteous and courtly, as he will in no wise condescend that an Ecclesiasticall man should goe afoot, when he may helpe him to a horse.

That is most certaine, quoth the Barber; and saying so, he alighted, and intreated the Curate to take the saddle; to which courtesie he did easily condescend. But by euill fortune, as the Barber thought to leape vp behind him, the Mule which was in effect a hired one (and that is sufficient to say it was vnhappy) did lift a little her hinder quarters, and bestowed two or three flings on the ayre, which, had they hit on Master *Nicholas* his brest or pate, he would haue bequeathed the quest of *Don-Quixote* vpon the Deuill: but notwithstanding the Barber was so affrighted, as he fell on the ground with so little heed of his beard, as it fell quite off, and lay spred vpon the ground: and perceiuing himselfe without it, he had no other shift, but to couer his face with both his hands, and complaine that all his cheeke-teeth were stricken out. *Don-Quixote* beholding such a great sheafe of a beard falne away, without iaw or bloud from the face, he said, I vow, this is one of the greatest miracles that euer I saw in my life; it hath taken  
and

and pluckt away his beard, as smoothly as if it were done of purpose. The Curate beholding the danger wherein their inuention was like to incurre, if it were detected, went forthwith, and taking vp the beard, came to Master *Nicholas* that lay still a playing, and with one push bringing his head towards his owne brest, he set it on againe, murmuring the while ouer him certaine words, which he said were a certaine prayer, appropriated to the setting on of false beards, as they should soone perceiue: And so hauing set it on handsomly, the Squire remained as well bearded and whole as euer he was in his life: whereat *Don-Quixote* rested maruellously admired, and requested the Curate to teach him that prayer when they were at leasure. For he supposed that the vertue thereof extended it selfe farther then to the fastning on of beards; since it was manifest that the place whence the beard was torne, must haue remained without flesh, wounded and ill-dight; and seeing it cured all, it must of force serue for more then the beard. It is true, replied Master Curate; and then promised to instruct him with the secret, with the first opportunity that was presented.

Then they agreed that the Curate should ride first on the Mule, and after him the other two, each one by turnes vntill they arriued to the Inne, which was about some two leagues thence. Three being thus mounted, to wit, *Don-Quixote*, the Princeesse and Curate, and the other three on foot, *Cardenio*, the Barber, and *Sancho Pança*. *Don-Quixote* said to the damzell, Madam, let me intreat your Highnesse to leade me the way that most pleaseth you. And before she could answer, the Licenciat said, Towards what Kingdome would you trauell? Is it by fortune towards that of *Micomicon*? I suppose, it should be thitherwards, or else I know but little of Kingdomes. She, who knew very well the Curates meaning, and was her selfe no babe, answered, saying, Yes Sir, my way lies towards that Kingdome. If it be so, quoth the Curate,



you must passe thorow the village where I dwell, and from thence direct your course towards *Cartagena*, where you may luckily imbarke your selues. And if you haue a prosperous winde, and a quiet and calme Sea, you may come within the space of nine yeeres to the sight of the Lake *Meona*, I meane *Meolidas*, which stands on this side of your Highnesse Kingdome some hundred dayes iourney or more. I take you to be deceiued, good Sir, quoth shee; for it is not yet fully two yeeres since I departed from thence; and truly I neuer almost had any faire weather, and yet notwithstanding I haue arriued, and come to see that which I so much longed for, to wit, the presence of the worthy *Don-Quixote* of the *Mancha*, whose renowne came to my notice as soone as I touched the earth of Spaine with my foot, and mooued me to search for him, to commend my selfe to his courtesie, and commit the iustice of my cause to the valour of his inuincible arme.

No more, quoth *Don-Quixote*, I cannot abide to heare my selfe praised. For I am a sworne enemy of all adulation. And although this be not such, yet notwithstanding the like discourtesies do offend my chaste eares. What I can say to you, faire Princeesse, is, that whether I haue valour or not; that which I haue or haue not, shalbe imploied in your seruice, euen to the very losse of my life. And so omitting that till this time, let me intreat good Master Licenciat, to tel me the occasion which hath brought him heere to these quarters so alone, without attendants, and so slightly attired, as it strikes me in no little admiration? To this I will answer with breuity, quoth the Curate: You shall vnderstand that Master *Nicolas* the Barber, our very good friend, and my selfe, trauelled towards *Sinill*, to recouer certaine summes of money, which a kinsman of mine, who dwels this many yeeres in the *Indies* hath sent vnto me. The summe is not a little one, for it surmounted seuenthy thousand Rials of eight, all of good waight: see if it was not a rich gift. And passing yesterday thorow this way, wee were set vpon  
by

by foure robbers, which dispoiled vs of all, euen to our very beards, and that in such sort, as the Barber was forced to set on a counterfeite one: and this yong man that goeth here with vs (meaning *Cardenio*) was transformed by them anew. And the best of it is, that it is publickly bruited about all this Commarke, that those which surprized vs, were Galley-slaues, who were set at liberty, as it is reported, much about this same place, by so valiant a Knight, as in despite of the Commissarie and the guard he freed them all. And questionlesse he either was wood, or else as great a knaue as themselves, or some one that wanted both soule and conscience, seeing he let slip the Wolues amidst the Sheepe, the Foxe among the Hens, and Flies hard by Honie, and did frustrate iustice, rebell against his naturall Lord and King: for he did so by oppugning his iust commandements, and hath depriued the Gallies of their feet, and set all the *Holy brotherhood* in an uprore, which hath repoused these many yeeres past. And finally, would doe an act, by which he should lose his soule, and yet not gaine his bodie. *Sancho* had rehearsed to the Curate and Barber the aduenture of the slaues, which his Lord had accomplished with such glorie; and therefore the Curate did vse this vehemencie as he repeated it, to see what *Don-Quixote* would say or doe, whose colour changed at euery word, and durst not confesse that he was himselfe, and the deliuerer of that good people: and these, quoth the Curate, were they that haue robbed vs: and God of his infinite mercy pardon him who hindred their going to receiue the punishment they had so well deserued.

## CHAP. III.

*Of many pleasant discourses passed betweene Don-Quixote, and those of his companie, after he had abandoned the rigorous place of his penance.*

**S**Carce had the Curate finished his speech thoroughly, when *Sancho* said, By my faith, Master Licenciat, he that did that feate, was my Lord, and that not for want of warning, for I told him before-hand, and aduised him, that he should see well what he did, and that it was a sinne to deliuer them, because they were all sent to the Gallies for very great villanies they had played.

You bottlehead, replied *Don-Quixote*, hearing him speake, it concerneth not Knights Errant to examine whether the afflicted, and inchained, and oppressed, which they encounter by the way, be carried in that fashion, or are plunged in that distresse, through their owne default or disgrace; but onely are obliged to assist them as needie and oppressed, setting their eyes vpon their paines, and not on their crimes. I met with a Rosarie or beades of inserted people, sorrowfull and vnfortunate, and I did for them that which my religion exacts: as for the rest, let them verifie it elsewhere, and to whosoeuer else, the holy dignitie and honourable person of Master Licenciat excepted, it shall seeme euill: I say, he knowes but slightly what belongs to Chivalric; and he lies like a whoreson and a villaine borne: and this will I make him know with the broad side of my sword. These words he said, settling himselfe in his stirrups, and addressing his Morion (for the Barbers Bason, which he accounted to be *Mambrino* his Helmet, he carried hanging at the pummell of his saddle, vntill he might haue it repaired of the crazings the Galley-slave had wrought in it.) *Dorotea*, who was very discrete and pleasant, and that was by this well acquainted with *Don-Quixotes*

*Quixotes* faultie humour, and saw all the rest make a iest of him, *Sancho Pança* excepted, would also shew her conceit to be as good as some others, and therefore said vnto him, Sir Knight, remember your selfe of the boone you haue promised vnto me, whereunto conforming your selfe, you cannot intermeddle in any other aduenture, be it euer so vrgent. Therefore asswage your stomacke, for if Master Licenciat had knowne, that the Gally-slaues were deliuered by your inuincible arme, he would rather haue giuen vnto himselfe three blowes on the mouth, and also bit his tongue, thrice then haue spoken any word, whence might result your indignation. That I dare sweare, quoth the Curate, yea and besides tome away one of my Mustachoes.

Madame, said *Don-Quixote*, I will hold my peace, and suppress the iust Choler already inkindled in my brest, and will ride quietly and peaceably, vntill I haue accomplished the thing I haue promised: and I request you, in recompence of this my good desire, if it be not displeasing to you, to tel me your griuance, and how many, which, and what the persons be, of whom I must take due, sufficient, and entyre reuenge. I will promptly performe your will herein, answered *Dorotea*, if it will not be irkesome to you to listen to disasters. In no sort, good Madam, said *Don-Quixote*. To which *Dorotea* answered thus, Be then attentive to my relation. Scarce had shee said so, when *Cardenio* and the Barber came by her side, desirous to heare how the discreet *Dorotea* would saine her tale: and the same did *Sancho*, which was as much deceiued in her person as his Lord *Don-Quixote*: and she, after dressing her selfe well in the saddle, bethought and prouided her selfe whilst she coughed and vsed other gestures, and then began to speake in this manner:

First of all, good Sirs, I would haue you note, that I am called: and here shee stood suspended a while, by reason shee had forgotten the name that the Curate had giuen

vnto her; but he presently occur'd to her succour, vnderstanding the cause, and said, It is no wonder, great Lady, that you be troubled and stagger, whilst you recount your misfortunes, seeing it is the ordinarie custome of Disasters, to deprive those whom they torment, and distract their memorie in such sort, as they cannot remember themselves, euen of their owne very Names; as now it proues done in your Highnesse, which forgets it selfe, that you are called the Princeesse *Micomicona*, lawfull Inheritrix of the great Kingdome of *Micomicon*: and with this Note, you may easily reduce into your dolefull memory, all that which you shall please to rehearse.

It is very true (quoth the Damzell) and from henceforth I thinke it will not be needfull to prompt me any more; for I will arrive into a safe Port, with the Narration of my authenticke Historie: which is, that my Father, who was called The wise *Imacrio*, was very expert in that which is called Art Magicke, and he knew by his Science, that my Mother, who was called Queene *Xaramilla*, should die before he deceased, and that he should also passe from this life within a while after, and leaue me an Orphan: but he was wont to say, how that did not afflict his mind so much, as that he was very certaine, that a huge Giant, Lord of a great Iland neere vnto my Kingdome, called *Pandasilando*, of the *dukie* fight: because, although his eyes stand in their right places, yet doe they still looke asquint, which he doth, to terrifie the beholders: I say, that my Father knew, that this Giant, when hee should heare of his death, would passe with a maine Power into my Land, and deprive me thereof, not leauing me the least Village, wherein I might hide my head. Yet might all this be excused, if I would marry with him: but as hee found out by his Science, hee knew I would neuer condescend thereunto, or incline mine affection to so vnequall a Marriage. And herein he said nothing but truth: for it neuer past once my thought, to espouse that Giant, nor with any other, were he euer so

vnreasonable, great and mightie. My father likewise added then, that after his death, I should see *Landaſilando* vsurpe my Kingdome, and that I should in no wise stand to my defence, for that would proue my destruction; but leauing to him the Kingdome freely without troubles, if I meant to excuse mine owne death, and the totall ruine of my good and loyall subiects: for it would bee impossible to defend my selfe from the deuillish force of the Giant; I should presently direct my course towards Spaine, where I should find a redresse of my harmes, by incountring with a Knight Errant, whose fame should extend it selfe much about that time thorowout that Kingdome, and his name should be if I forget not my selfe, *Don Acote* or *Don Gigote*.

Ladie, you would say, *Don-Quixote*, quoth *Sancho Pança*, or as hee is called by another name, *the Knight of the ll-fauored face*. You haue reason, replied *Doroſea*: hee said moreouer, that hee should bee high of stature, haue a withered face, and that on the right side, a little vnder the left shoulder, or thereabouts, he should haue a tawny spot with certaine haire like to bristles. *Don-Quixote* hearing this, said to his Squire, Hold my horse heere, sonne *Sancho*, and helpe mee to take off mine apparrell: for I will see whether I bee the Knight, of whom the wise King hath prophesied. Why would you now put off your cloaths, qd. *Doroſea*? To see whether I haue that spot which your father mentioned, answered *Don-Quixote*. You need not vndoe your apparrell for that purpose, said *Sancho*, for I know already that you haue a spot with the tokens shee named, on the very ridges of your backe, and argues you to be a very strong man. That is sufficient, quoth *Doroſea*: for we must not looke too neere, or bee ouer-curious in our friends affaires, and whether it bee on the shoulder, or ridge of the backe, it imports but little: for the substance consists onely in hauing such a marke, and not where-soeuer it shall be; seeing all is one, and the selfe-same flesh:  
and



and doubtlesly my good father did ayme well at all, and I likewise in commending my selfe to *Don-Quixote*: for surely he is the man of whom my father spoke, seeing the signes of his face agree with those of the great renowne that is spred abroad of this Knight, not onely in Spaine, but also in *Æthiopia*: for I had no sooner landed in *Osuna*, when I heard so many of his prowesses recounted, as my minde gaue mee presently, that hee was the man in whose search I trauailed. But how did you land in *Osuna*, good Madam, quoth *Don-Quixote*, seeing it is no Sea-towne? Marrie, Sir, quoth the Curate, anticipating *Dorotea's* answer; the Princeesse would say, that after she had landed in *Malaga*, but the first place wherein shee heard tidings of you, was at *Osuna*. So I would haue said, quoth *Dorotea*. And it may bee very well, quoth the Curate, and I desire your Maiestie to continue your discourse. There needs no farther continuation, quoth *Dorotea*, but that finally my Fortune hath beene so fauourable in finding of *Don-Quixote*, as I doe already hold and account my selfe for Queene and Ladie of all mine estate, seeing that he, of his wonted bountie and magnificence, hath promised mee the boone, to accompany mee wheresoeuer I shall guide him, which shall be to none other place, then to set him before *Pandasilando of the duskie sight*, to the end you may slay him, and restore mee to that which hee hath so wrongfully vsurped: for all will succeed in the twinkling of an eye, as the wise *Tinaccio* my good father hath already foretold: who said morcouer, and also left it written in *Chaldaicall* or Greeke characters, (for I cannot read them,) that if the Knight of the Prophecie, after hauing beheaded the Giant, would take me to wife, that I should in no sort refuse him, but instantly admitting him for my Spouse, make him at once possessor of my selfe and my Kingdome.

What thinkest thou of this, friend *Sanchs*, quoth *Don-Quixote* then, when hee heard her say so? How likest this point? Did not I tell thee thus much before? See now, whether

whether wee haue not a Kingdome to command, and a Queene whom wee may marry? I sweare as much, quoth *Sancho*, a poxe on the knaue that will not marry as soone as Master *Pandabillado* his winde-pipes are cut. Mount then, and see whether the Queene bee ill or no: I would to God all the fleas of my bed were turned to be such. And saying so, he gaue two or three friskles in the ayre, with very great signes of contentment, and presently went to *Dorotea*: and taking her Mule by the bridle, he withheld it, and laying himselfe downe on his knees before her, requested her very submissiue to giue him her hands to kisse them, in signe that hee receiued her for his Queene and Ladie. Which of the beholders could abstaine from laughter, perceiuing the Masters madnesse, and the seruants simplicity? To be brieft, *Dorotea* must needes giue them vnto him, and promised to make him a great Lord in her Kingdome, when heauen became so propitious to her, as to let her once recover and possesse it peaceably. And *Sancho* returned her thanks, with such words as made them all laugh a new.

This is my Historie, Noble Sirs, quoth *Dorotea*, whereof onely rests vtold, that none of all the traine which I brought out of my Kingdome to attend on me, is now extant, but this well-bearded Squire; for all of them were drowned in a great storme that ouer-tooke vs in the very sight of the Harborough, whence hee and I escaped, and came to land by the helpe of two planks, on which we laid hold, almost by miracle; as also the whole discourse and myserie of my life seemes none other then a miracle, as you might haue noted: And if in any part of the relation I haue exceeded, or not obserued a due *decorum*, you must impute it to that which Master Lecenciat said to the first of my History, that continuall paines and afflictions of mind deprives them that suffer the like of their memory. That shall not hinder mee (O high and valorous Ladie) quoth *Don-Quixote*, from enduring as many as I shall suffer

fer in your seruice, be they euer so great or difficult. And therefore I doe anew ratifie and confirme the promise I haue made, and doe sweare to goe with you to the end of the world, vntill I find out your fierce enemy, whose proud head I meane to slice off by the helpe of God, and my valorous arme, with the edge of this ( I will not say a good) sword : thanks bee to *Gines of Passamonte*, which tooke away mine owne : this he said murmuring to himselfe, and then prosecuted saying, And after I haue cut it off, and left you peaceably in the possession of your state , it shall rest in your owne will to dispose of your person as you like best. For as long as I shall haue my memory possessed, and my will captiued , and my vnderstanding yeelded to her, I will say no more , it is not possible that euer I may induce my selfe to marry any other , although shee were a *Phenix*.

That which *Don-Quixote* had said last of all , of not marrying , disliked *Sancho* so much, as lifting his voyce with great anger, hee said , I vow and sweare by my selfe, that you are not in your right wits, Sir *Don-Quixote* : for how is it possible, that you can call the matter of contracting so high a Princessse as this is in doubt ? do you think that Fortune will offer you at euery corners end the like happe of this which is now proffered ? Is my Ladie *Dulcinea* perhaps more beautifull ? No certainly, nor halfe so faire : nay I am rather about to say, that she comes not to her shoo that is here present.

In an ill houre shall I arriue to possesse that vnfortunate Earldome which I expect, if you goe thus seeking for Mushrubs in the bottome of the Sea : Marry, marry your selfe presently ; the deuill take you for mee, and take that Kingdome comes into your hands, and being a King, make me presently a Marquesse, or Admirall, and instantly after let the Deuill take all if he pleaseth. *Don-Quixote*, who heard such blasphemies spoken against his Ladie *Dulcinea*, could not beare them any longer ; and therefore lifting vp  
his

his Iaueline without speaking any word to *Sancho*, gaue him therewithall two such blowes, as he ouer-threw him to the earth : and had not *Dorotea* cried to him, to hold his hand, he had doubtlesly slaine him in the place.

Thinkest thou (quoth he after a while) base Peasant, that I shall haue alwaies leasure and disposition to thrust my hand into my pouch, and that there bee nothing else but thou still erring, and I pardoning? and dost not thou think of it (excommunicated Rascall) for certainly thou art excommunicated, seeing thou hast talked so broadly of the Peerelesse *Dulcinea*? and dost not thou know, base Slaue, Vagabond, that if it were not for the valour shee infuseth into mine arme, that I should not haue sufficient forces to kill a flea? Say, scoffer with the Vipers tongue, who dost thou thinke hath gained this Kingdome, and cut the head of this Giant, and made thee a Marquesse? (For I giue all this for done alreadie, and for a matter ended and iudged) but the worths and valour of *Dulcinea*, vsing mine arme as the instrument of her act. She fights vnder my person, and ouer-comes in me : And I liue and breathe in her, and from her I hold my life and being. O whoreson Villaine, how vngratefull art thou, that seest thy selfe exalted out from the dust of the earth, to be a Nobleman, and yet dost repay so great a benefite, with detracting the person that bestowed it on thee?

*Sancho* was not so sore hurt, but that he could heare all his Masters reasons very well : wherefore arising somewhat hastily, hee ranne behinde *Dorotea* her Palfray, and from thence said to his Lord, Tell me, Sir, if you bee not determined to marry with this Princeesse, it is most cleere that the Kingdome shall not be yours : and if it bee not, what fauours can you bee able to doe to me? It is of this that I complaine mee : marrie your selfe one for one with this Princeesse, now that we haue her here, as it were rained to vs downe from heauen, and you may after turne to my Ladie *Dulcinea*, for I thinke there be Kings in the world, that

that keepe Lemmons. As for beauty, I will not intermeddle; for if I must say the truth, each of both is very faire, although I haue neuer seene the Ladie *Dulcinea*. How, hast not thou seene her, blasphemous Traytor, quoth *Don-Quixote*, as if thou didst but euen now bring mee a message from her? I say, quoth *Sancho*, I haue not seene her so leisurely, as I might particularly note her beautie and good parts one by one, but yet in a clap as I saw them, they liked me very well. I doe excuse thee now, said *Don-Quixote*, and pardon me the displeasure which I haue giuen vnto thee, for the first motions are not in our hands. I see that well, quoth *Sancho*, and that is the reason why talke is in me of one of those first motions. And I cannot omit to speake once at least, that which comes to my tongue. For all that, *Sancho*, replied *Don-Quixote*, see well what thou speakest, for the earthen pitcher goes so oft to the water. I will say no more.

Well then, answered *Sancho*, God is in heauen, who seeth all these guiles, and shall be one day iudge of him that sinnes most, of mee in not speaking well, or of you by not doing well. Let there bee no more, quoth *Dorotea*; but run, *Sancho*, and kisse your Lords hand, and aske him forgiuenesse, and from henceforth take more heed how you praise or dispraise any body, and speake no ill of that Ladie *Toboso*, whom I doe not know otherwise then to doe her seruice: and haue confidence in God, for thou shalt not want a Lordship wherein thou mayest liue like a King. *Sancho* went with his head hanging downward, and demanded his Lords hand, which hee gaue vnto him with a graue countenance, and after hee had kissed it, he gaue him his blessing, and said to him, that hee had somewhat to say vnto him, and therefore bade him to come somewhat forward that he might speake vnto him. *Sancho* obeyed, and both of them going a little aside, *Don-Quixote* said vnto him, I haue not had leisure after thy coming, to demand of thee in particular, concerning the Ambassage

Ambassage that thou carriedst, and the answer that thou broughtest backe; and therefore now Fortune lends vs some oportunitie and leisure, doe not denie mee the happinesse which thou mayest giue me by thy good newes.

Demand what you please, quoth *Sancho*, and I will answer you, and I request you, good my Lord, that you bee not from henceforth so wrathfull. Why doest thou say so, *Sancho*, quoth *Don-Quixote*? I say it, replied *Sancho*, because that these blowes which you bestowed now, were rather giuen in reuenge of the dissention which the Deuill stirred betweene vs two the other night, then for any thing I said against my Lady *Dulcinea*, whom I doe honour and reuerence as a relike, although shee be none, onely because she is yours. I pray thee, good *Sancho*, said *Don-Quixote*, fall not againe into those discourteses, for they offend me. I did pardon thee then, and thou knowest that a new offence must haue a new penance.

As they talked thus, they espied a Gallant, comming towards them, riding on an Asse: and when hee drew neere, hee seemed to bee an Egyptian: but *Sancho Pança*, who whensoever hee met any Asses, followed them with his eyes and his heart, as one that thought still on his owne, had scarce eyed him, when hee knew that it was *Gines* of *Passamonte*, and by the looke of the Egyptian, found out the fleece of his Asse, as in truth it was; for *Gines* came riding on his gray Asse; who to the end that hee might not bee knowne, and also haue commodity to sell his beast, attired himselfe like an Egyptian, whose language and many others he could speake as well as if they were his mother tongue. *Sancho* saw him and knew him: and scarce had hee scene and taken notice of him; when he cryed out aloud, Ah thiefe, *Ginesillo*, leaue my goods behinde thee, set my life loose, and doe not intermeddle with my ease. Leaue mine Asse, leaue my comfort; flie, Villaine, absent thy selfe, thiefe, and abandon that which is none of thine. Hee needed not to haue vsed so  
many



many words and frumps, for *Gines* leaped downe at the very first, and beginning a trot that seemed rather to bee a gallop, hee absented himselfe and fled farre enough from them in a moment. *Sancho* went then to his Asse, and embracing him, said, How hast thou done hitherto, my darling and treasure, gray Asse of mine eyes, and my dearest companion? and with that stroked and kissed him as if it were a reasonable creature. The Asse held his peace, and permitted *Sancho* to kisse and cherish him, without answering a word. All the rest arriued, and congratulated with *Sancho* for the finding of his Asse, but chiefly *Don-Quixote*, who said vnto him, that notwithstanding that he found his Asse, yet would not he therefore annull his warrant for the three Colts; for which *Sancho* returned him very great thanks.

Whilest they two travelled together discoursing thus, the Curate said to *Dorotea*, that shee had very discreetly discharged her selfe, as well in the Historie, as in her breuitie and imitation thereof, to the phrase and conceits of books of Knighthood: she answered that she did oft-times reade books of that subiect, but that she knew not where the Prouinces lay, nor Sea-ports; and therefore did onely say at randome, that shee had landed in *Osuna*. I knew it was so, quoth the Curate, and therefore I said what you heard, wherewithall the matter was souldered. But is it not a maruellous thing to see with what facility the vnfortunate Gentleman beleeueth all these inuentions and lies, onely because they beare the stile and manner of the follies laid downe in his bookes? It is, quoth *Cardenio*, and that so rare and beyond all conceir, as I beleeueth, if the like were to be inuented, scarce could the sharpest wits deuise such another.

There is yet, quoth the Curate, as maruellous a matter as that: for leauing apart the simplicities which this good Gentleman speakes concerning his frensie, if you will commune with him of any other subiect whatsoever hee will dis-

discourse on it with an excellent method, and shew himselfe to haue a cleere and pleasing vnderstanding. So that, if he be not touched by matters of Chiuallry, there is no man but will deeme him to bee of a sound and excellent iudgement.

*Don-Quixote* on the other side prosecuted his conuersing with his Squire, whilest the others talked together; and said to *Sancho*: Let vs two, friend *Pança*, forget old iniuries, and say vnto mee now, without any rancour or anger, Where, how, and when didst thou finde my Ladie *Dulcinea*? What did she when thou camest? What saidst thou to her? What answered shee? What countenance shewed she as shee read my Letter? And who writ it out fairely for thee? And euery other thing that thou shalt thinke worthy of notice in this affaire, to be demanded or answered, without either addition or lying, or soothing adulation: and on the other side doe not abbreuiate it, lest thou shouldest defraude mee thereby of expected delight. Sir, answered *Sancho*, if I must say the truth, none copied out the Letter for mee, for I carried no Letter at all.

Thou sayest true, quoth *Don-Quixote*: for I found the Tablets wherein it was written, with my selfe, two dayes after thy departure, which did grieue me exceedingly, because I knew not what thou wouldest do, when thou didst perceiue the want of the Letter, and I alwaies made full account, that thou wouldest returne againe from the place where thou shouldest first misse it. I had done so, quoth *Sancho*, if I had not borne it away in memory, when you read it to mee, in such sort, as I said it to a Clerke of a Vestrie, who did copie it out of my vnderstanding so point by point, as he said that he neuer in all the dayes of his life, although he had read many a Letter of excommunication, read or seene so fine a Letter as it was. And dost thou hold it yet in memory, *Sancho*, quoth *Don-Quixote*?

No, Sir, said *Sancho*, for after I gaue it, seeing it serued

for none other purpose, I did willingly forget it. And if I remember any thing, it is that of the *monday*, I would say *Soueraigne Ladie*, and the end, *Yours vntill death*, *The Knight of the Il-fauoured face*, and I put betweene these two things in the Letter three hundred *Soules*, and *Lines*, and *Sweet eyes*.

### CHAP. IIII.

*Of the pleasant discourses continued betweene Don-Quixote, and his Squire Sancho Pança, with other adventures.*

**A**ll this liketh me well, said *Don-Quixote*, therefore say on, thou arriuedst, and what was that Queene of Beauty doing then? I dare say that thou foundest her threeding of Pearles, or imbroidering some curious deuce, with Venice gold for mee her captiue Knight? No that I did not, quoth *Sancho*, but winnowing two bushels of Wheate in the yard of her house.

Why then, said *Don-Quixote*, thou mayest make account that each corne of that Wheate was a graine of Pearle, seeing they were touched by her delicate hand. And friend, didst thou note well what the Wheate was, whether of the best or ordinarie? It was not but redde, said *Sancho*. Well then I assure thee, answered *Don-Quixote*, that being sifted by her hands, it must needs make very faire bread and white. But passe forward, when thou didst deliuer my Letter, did shee kisse it? Did she set it on her head? Did she vse any ceremony worthy of such a Letter? Or what did shee? When I went to giue it vnto her, said *Sancho*, she was holding vp of her armes with a good quantity of Wheate that she had in her Siue, & therefore said vnto me, Friend, lay downe that Letter there on the sack, for I cannot read it vntill I haue winnowed all that is here.

O dis-

O discrete Ladie, quoth *Don-Quixote*, she surely did that, because she might read it at leasure, and recreate her selfe therewithall. Forward, *Sancho*: and as long as shee was thus busied, what discourses passed she with thee? What did she demand of thee concerning mee? And thou, what didst thou answer? Say all, good *Sancho*, say all, recount to me euery particularity, and let not the least immunity remaine in the Inke-home.

She demanded nothing of me, quoth *Sancho*: but I recounted vnto her the state I had left you in for her sake, doing of penance, all naked from the girdle vpward among these Rockes like a bruit beast, sleeping on the ground, and eating your bread without Table-clothes, and that you neuer combed your beard, but was weeping and cursing your fortune. There thou saidst ill (quoth *Don-Quixote*) for I doe not curse my fortune, but rather blesse it, and will blesse it as long as I shall liue, seeing it hath made me worthy to merite the loue of so high a Lady as *Dulcinea of Toboso*. She is in good faith so high, answered *Sancho*, as shee surpasseth mee almost by a whole cubite. Why how now, *Sancho*, said the Knight, hast thou measured thy selfe with her? I did measure my selfe with her in this manner, replied *Sancho*, that comming ouer to helpe her to lift vp a sacke of Wheat on an Asse, we ioyned so neere, as I well perceiued that she was more then a great spanne higher then my selfe. That is true, quoth *Don-Quixote*: but thinkest thou not that the talnesse of her extended stature is adorned with a thousand millions of graces and in-dowments of the soule? But *Sancho*, thou canst not denie me one thing, when thou didst thus approch her, didst thou not feele a most odoriferous smell, an aromaticall fragrancie, an, I cannot tell what, so pleasing, as I know not how to terme it? I say, such a sent, as if thou werst in some curious Perfumers shoppe? That which I know, quoth *Sancho*, is, that I felt a little vnfauorie sent, somewhat rammish and man-like, and I thinke the reason was,

Y 2

because

because shee had sweat a little, doing of that exercise. It was not so (quoth *Don-Quixote*) but either thou hadst the murre, or else didst smell thy selfe; for I know very well how that Rose among thornes doth sent, that Lillie of the field, and that chosen Amber. It may well be, said *Sancho*, as you haue said; for I haue had many times such a smell, as mee thought the Ladie *Dulcinea* had then: and though shee smeld to, it were no maruell: for one Deuill is like another.

And well (quoth *Don-Quixote*) see here, she hath sifted her corne, and sent it to the Mill. What did she after shee had read the Letter? The Letter, said *Sancho*, shee read it not, for shee said shee could neither read nor write, and therefore she tore it into small pieces, and would haue no man to read it, lest those of the village should know her secrets, and say, that what I had told her by word of mouth of your loue and extraordinarie penance, which you remainned doing for her sake, was sufficient. And finally she concluded, commanding me to say vnto you, that she had her commended vnto you, and that shee remained with greater desire to see you, then to write vnto you; and therefore she requested and willed you, as you tendred her affection, that presently vpon sight hereof you should abandon these shrubbie groues, leaue off your frensie, and take presently the way of *Toboso*, if some matter of greater importance did not occur: for she had very great desire to see and talke with you. She laughed heartily when I told her that you named your selfe *the Knight of the Il-fauoured face*. I demanded of her, whether the beaten *Biscaine* came there? And she answered that hee did, and affirmed withall, that he was a very honest man. I asked also for the Galley-slaues, but she told me, that she had seene none of them as yet.

All goes well till this, said *Don-Quixote*: but tell mee, I pray thee, what Iewell did shee bestow on thee at thy departure, for reward of the newes thou carriedst vnto her  
of

of mee ? For it is anysuall and auncient custome among Knights and Ladies errant, to bestow on Squires, Damsels, or Dwarfes, which bring them any good tidings of their Ladies, or Seruants, some rich Iewell, as a reward and thanks of their welcome newes.

It may well be, quoth *Sancho*, and I hold it for a very laudable custome, but I thinke it was only vsed in times past; for I thinke the manner of this our age is only to giue a piece of bread, and cheefe: for this was all that my Lady *Dulcinea* bestowed on me, and that ouer the Yard wals, when I tooke my leaue with her. And in signe thereof (well fare all good tokens). the Cheefe was made of Sheepes Milke. She is maruellous liberall, quoth *Don-Quixote*: and if shee gaue thee not a Iewell of gold, it was, without doubtr, because shee had none then about her. *But it is not lost that comes at last.* I will see her, and then all things shall bee amended. Knowest thou, *Sancho*, whereat I wonder ? It is at this sodaine returne: for it seemes to mee thou wast gone, and hast come backe againe in the Ayre, for thou hast beene away but a little more then three dayes, *Toboso* being more then thirtie Leagues from hence: And therefore I doe beleue that the wise Inchanter, who takes care of mine affaires, and is my friend (for there is such a one of force, and there must be, vnder paine that I else should not bee a good Knight Errant) I say, I verily thinke that wise man holpe thee to trample vnawares of thy selfe: for there are wise men of that condition, which will take a Knight Errant sleeping in his bed; and without knowing how or in what manner, hee will wake the next day a thousand Leagues from that place where hee fell asleepe. And were it not for this, Knights Errant could not succour one another in their most dangerous exigents, as they doe now at euery step. For it oft-times befalls, that a Knight is fighting in the Mountaines of *Armenia* with some diuellish *Fauno*, some dreadfull shaddow, or fierce Knight, where hee is like to haue the worst, and in this



point of death, when hee least expects it, there appears there on the top of a cloud, or riding in a chariot of fire, another Knight his friend, who was but euen then in England, and helps him, and deliuers him from death, and returns againe that night to his owne lodging, where hee suppes with a very good appetite, and yet for all that, is there wont to bee, two or three thousand leagues from the one to the other Countrey. All which is compassed by the industrie and wisdom of those skilfull Enchanters, that take care of the said valorous Knights.

So that, friend *Sancho*, I am not hard of beliefe in giuing thee credit, that thou hast gone and returned in so short a time from this place to *Toboso*, seeing as I haue said, some wise man my friend hath (belike) transported thee thither by stealth, and vnaware of thy selfe. I easily thinke it, replied *Sancho*, for *Roxinante* trauailed in good faith as lustily, as if he were an *Egyptians* Ass with quicksiluer in his eares. And thinkest thou not, quoth *Don-Quixote*, that he had not quicksiluer in his eares? yes and a legion of Devils also to helpe it, who are folke that doe trauaile and make others goe as much as they list without any wearinesse?

But leauing all this apart, what is thine opinion that I should doe now, concerning my Ladies commandement, to goe and see her? for although I know that I am bound to obey her behests: yet doe I finde my selfe disabled at this time to accomplish them, by reason of the grant I haue made to the Princesse that comes with vs, and the law of armes doth compell mee to accomplish my word, rather then my will: on the one side I am assaulted and vrged by a desire to goe and see my Ladie: on the other, my promised faith, and the glory that I shall winne in this enterprize, doe incite and call mee away. But that which I resolve to doe, is to trauaile with all speed, that I may quickly arriue to the place where that Giant is, and will cut off his head at my comming: and when I haue peaceably installed

called the Princeſſe in her Kingdome, will preſently re-  
turne to ſee the light that doth lighten my ſenſes; to  
whom I will yeeld ſuch forcible reaſons of my ſo long ab-  
ſence, as ſhe ſhall eaſily condeſcend to excuſe my ſtay, ſee-  
ing all doth redound to her glory and fame: For all that  
I haue gained, doe winne, or ſhall hereafter atchieue by  
force of armes in this life, proceedes wholly from the gra-  
cious fauour ſhe pleaſeth to beſtow vpon me, and my be-  
ing hers.

O God! quoth *Sancho*, I perceiue that you are greatly  
difeaſed in the pate. I pray you, Sir, tell mee whether you  
meane to go this long voyage for nought, and let ſlip and  
loſe ſo rich and ſo Noble a preferment as this; where the  
dowrie is a Kingdome, which is in good faith as I haue  
heard ſay, twentie thouſand leagues in compaſſe, and moſt  
plentifully ſtored with all things neceſſary for the ſuſtay-  
ning of humane life: and that it is greater then Portugall  
and Caſtile ioyned together? Peace, for Gods loue, and  
bluſh at your owne words, and take my counſaile, & mar-  
ry preſently in the firſt village that haſh a Pariſh-Prieſt:  
and if you will not doe it there, can you wiſh a better com-  
modity then to haue our owne Maſter Liceniat, who will  
doe it moſt excellently? And note that I am old enough to  
giue counſaile, and that this which I now deliuer, is as fit  
for you, as if it were expreſſly caſt for you in a mould. For  
a Sparrow in the fiſt, is worth more then a flying Bittor.

*For he that can haue good, and euill doth chooſe,*

*For ill that betides him, muſt not patience looſe.*

Why *Sancho*, quoth *Don-Quixote*, if thou giueſt me cour-  
ſaile to marry, to the end I may become a King after I  
haue ſlaine the Giant, and haue commoditie thereby to  
promote thee, and giue thee what I haue promiſed; I let  
thee to vnderſtand that I may doe all that moſt eaſily, with-  
out marrying my ſelfe. For before I enter into the battell,  
I will make this condition, that when I come away  
victor, although I marry not the Princeſſe, yet ſhall a part

of the Kingdome bee at my disposition, to bestow vpon whom I please; and when I receiue it, vpon whom wouldest thou haue me bestow it but on thy selfe? That is manifest, said *Sancho*: but I pray you, Sir, haue care to chuse that part you would reserue towards the Sea side, to the end that if the living doe not please mee, I may embarke my blacke vassalles, and make the benefit of them which I haue said. And likewise I pray you not to trouble your minde, thinking to goe and see my Ladie *Dulcinea* at this time; but trauaile towards the place where the Giant is, and kill him, and conclude that businesse first: for I sweare vnto you, that I am of opinion it will prooue an aduventure of very great honour and profit. I assure thee, *Sancho*, quoth *Don-Quixote*, thou art in the right, and I will follow thy counsaile in rather going first with the Princeesse, then to visite *Dulcinea*. And I warne thee not to speake a word to any body, no, not to those that ride with vs, of that which wee haue heere spoken and discoursed together: for since *Dulcinea* is so warie and secret, as shee would not haue her thoughts discouered, it is no reason, that I either by my selfe or any other should detect them.

If that bee so, quoth *Sancho*, why then doe you send all those which you vanquish by vertue of your arme, to present themselues to my Lady *Dulcinea*, seeing this is as good as subsignation of your hands-writing, that you wish her well, and are inamored on her? and seeing that those which goe to her, must forcibly lay them downe on their knees before her presence, and say that they come from you to doe her homage, how then can the thoughts of you both be hidden and concealed? O! how great a foole art thou, and how simple, quoth *Don-Quixote*? Dost not thou perceiue, *Sancho*, how all this results to her greater glory? For thou oughtest to wit, that in our Knightly proceedings, it is great honour, that one Lady alone haue many Knights Errant for her Seruitors, without extending their

their thoughts any further then to serue her, only for her high worths, without attending any other reward of their many and good desires, then that shee will deigne to accept them as her Seruants and Knights. I haue heard preach, said *Sancho*, that men should loue our Sauour with that kinde of loue, onely for his owne sake, without being mouued thereunto, eyther by the hope of glory, or the feare of paine; although for my part I would loue and serue him, for what hee is able to doe. The Deuill take thee for a Clowne, quoth *Don-Quixote*, how sharpe and pertinently dost thou speake now and then, able to make a man imagine that thou hast studied? Now by mine honesty, quoth *Sancho*, I can neither reade nor write.

Master *Nicholas* perceiuing them drowned thus in their discourses, cryed out to them to stay, and drinke of a little Fountaine that was by the way. *Don-Quixote* rested, to *Sancho's* very great contentment, who was already tyred with telling him so many lies, and was afraid his Master would intrappe him in his owne wordes. For although hee knew *Dulcinea* to bee of *Toboso*, yet had hee neu er seene her in his life. And *Cardenio* had by this time put on the Apparell *Dorothea* wore when they found her in the Mountaines, which though they were not very good, yet exceeded with great aduantage those which he had himselfe before. And alighting hard by the Fountaine, they satisfied with the prouision the Curate had brought with him from the Inne, although it were but little, the great hunger that pressed them. And whilest they tooke their ease there, a certaine young stripling that trauelled, passed by, who looking very earnestly on all those which sate about the Fountaine, hee ranne presently after to *Don-Quixote*, and imbracing his Legs, he said, weeping down-right: O my Lord, doe not you know mee? Looke well vpon mee, for I am the Youth *Andrew*, whom you vnloosed from the Oake whereunto I was tyed. *Don-Quixote* presently knew him, and taking him by the hands,  
he

he turned to those that were present, and said, Because you may see of how great importance it is, that there bee Knights Errant in the world, to vndoe wrongs and iniuries, that are committed in it by the insolent and bad men which liue therein, you shall wit that a few daies past, as I rode thorow a wood, I heard certaine lamentable scritchings and cries, as of some needfull and afflicted person: I forthwith occurr'd, borne away by my profession towards the place from whence the lamentable voyce sounded, and I found tied to an Oken tree, this boy whom you see here in our presence; for which I am maruellous glad, because if I shall not say the truth, he may checke me. I say that he was tied to the Oke starke naked from the middle vpward, and a certaine clowne was opening his flesh with cruell blowes that he gaue him with the reines of a bridle: which clown, as I after vnderstood, was his Master. And so, as soone as I saw him, I demanded the cause of those cruell stripes. The rude fellow answered, that he beat him, because hee was his seruant, and that certaine negligences of his proceeded rather from being a thiefe, then of simplicity. To which this childe answered, Sir, he whips me for no other cause, but by reason that I demand my wages of him. His Master replied, I know not now what speeches and excuses, the which although I heard, yet were they not by mee admitted. In resolution, I caused him to be loosed, and tooke the clownes Oath, that he would take him home, and pay him there his wages, one Riall vpon another; I, and those also persumed. Is it not true, sonne Andrew? Didst not thou note with what a domineering countenance I commanded it; and with what humilitie he promised to accomplish all that I imposed, commanded, and desired? Answer me, be not ashamed, nor stagger at all, but tell what passed to these Gentlemen, to the end it may be manifestly seene how necessary it is, as I haue said, to haue Knights Errant vp and downe the high waies.

All that which you haue said, quoth the boy, is very true; but the end of the matter succeeded altogether contrary to that which you imagined. How contrarie, quoth *Don-Quixote*? Why, hath not the peasant paid thee? He not only hath not payed me, answered the boy, but rather as soone as you were passed the wood, and that we remained both alone, he turned againe and tied mee to the same tree, and gaue me afresh so many blowes, as I remained another *S. Bartholomew*, all flayed: and at euery blow he said some iest or other in derision of you: so that if I had not felt the paine of the stripes so much as I did, I could haue found in my heart to haue laughed very heartily. In fine, he left me in such pitifull case, as I haue beene euer since curing my selfe in an Hospitall of the euill, which the wicked peasant did then vnto me. And you are in the fault of all this, for if you had ridden on your way, and not come to the place where you were not sought for, nor intermeddled your selfe in other mens affaires, perhaps my Master had contented himself with giuing me a doozen or two of strokes, and would presently after haue loosed me, & payed me my wages. But by reason you dishonoured him so much without cause, and said to him so many villanies, his choler was inflamed; and seeing he could not reuenge it on you, finding himselfe alone, he disburdened the showre on me so heauily, as I greatly feare that I shall neuer againe be mine own man. The hurt consisted in my departure (qd. *Don-Quixote*) for I should not haue gone from thence, vntill I had seene thee payed. For I might haue very wel known by many experiences, that there is no clowne that wil keep his word, "if he see the keeping of it can turne any way to his damage. But yet, *Andrew*, thou dost remember how I swore that if he paid thee not, I would returne and seeke him out, and likewise finde him, although he conueyed himselfe into a Whales belly. Thats true, quoth *Andrew*, but all auayles not: thou shalt see whether it auayles or no presently, quoth *Don-Quixote*: and saying so, got vp very hastily,

and



and commanded *Sancho* to bridle *Rozinante*; who was feeding whilest they did eate. *Dorotea* demanded of him what he meant to doe? He answered, that hee would goe and finde out the Villaine, and punish him for vsing such bad proceedings, and cause *Andrew* to bee paid the last *denier*, in despite of as many *Pesants* as liued in the world. To which shee answered, intreating him to remember that hee could not deale with any other aduenture, according to his promise, vntill hers were atchieued: and seeing that hee himselfe knew it to bee true better then any other, that hee should pacifie himselfe, vntill his returne from her Kingdome.

You haue reason, said *Don-Quixote*: and therefore *Andrew* must haue patience perforce, vntill my returne (as you haue said, Madame) and when I shall turne againe, I doe sweare vnto him, and likewise renew my promise, neuer to rest vntill he be satisfied and payed. I belecue not in such oathes, quoth *Andrew*, but would haue as much money as might carry mee to *Sinill*, rather then all the reuenges in the world. Giue mee some meate to eate, and carry away with me, and God bee with you and all other Knights Errant, and I pray God that they may prooue as erring to themselues as they haue beene to me.

*Sancho* tooke out of his Bagge a piece of bread and cheefe, and giuing it to the Yough, said, Hold, brother, *Andrew*, for euery one hath his part of your misfortune. I pray you what part thereof haue you, said *Andrew*? This piece of bread and cheefe that I bestow on thee, quoth *Sancho*, for God only knowes whether I shall haue neede of it againe or no: for thou must wit, friend, that we the Squires of Knights Errant, are very subiect to great hunger and euill lucke, yea, and to other things which are better felt then told. *Andrew* laid hold on his bread and cheefe; and seeing that no-body gaue him any other thing, hee bowed his head, and went on his way. True it is, that he said to *Don-Quixote* at his departure: For Gods loue,

loue, good Sir Knight Errant, if you shall euer meet me againe in the plight you haue done, although you should see me tome in pieces, yet doe not succour or helpe me, but leaue me in my disgrace; for it cannot be so great, but that a greater will result from your helpe, vpon whom and all the other Knights Errant that are borne in the world, I pray God his curse may alight. *Don-Quixote* thought to arise to chaffice him: but he ran away so swiftly, as no man durst follow him; and our Knight remained maruellously ashamed at *Andrews* tale: wherefore the rest with much adoë suppress their desire to laugh, lest they should throughly confound him.

## CHAP. V.

*Treating of that which befell all Don-Quixote his traine in the Inne.*

**T**H E dinner being ended, they saddled and went to horse presently, and trauelled all that day, and the next without incountring any aduventure of price, vntill they arriued at the only bugge and scar-crow of *Sancho Pança*: and though hee would full faine haue excused his entry into it, yet could he in no wise auoide it: the In-keeper, the Oastesse her daughter, and *Maritornes* seeing *Don-Quixote* and *Sancho* returne, went out to receiue them with tokens of great loue and ioy, and he intertained them with graue countenance and applause, and bade them to make him ready a better bed then the other which they had giuen vnto him the time before. Sir, quoth the Oastesse, if you would pay vs better then the last time, we would giue you one for a Prince. *Don-Quixote* answered that he would; they prepared a reasonable good bed for him in the same wide roome where he lay before: and he went presently to bed, by reason that he arriued much tyred, and voide of wit. And  
scarce

scarce was he gotten into his chamber, when the Oastesse leaping suddenly on the Barber, and taking him by the beard, said, Now by my selfe blessed, thou shalt vse my taile no more for a beard, and thou shalt turne me my taile; for my husbands combe goes throwne vp & down the floore, that it is a shame to see it: I meane the combe that I was wont to hang vp in my good taile. The Barber would not giue it vnto her for all her drawing, vntil the Licenciat bad him to restore it, that they had now no more vse thereof, but that he might now very well discouer himselfe, and appeare in his owne shape, and said to *Don-Quixote*, that after the Galley-slaues had robd him, he fled to that Inne: and if *Don-Quixote* demanded by chance for the Princesse her Squire, that they should tell him, how she had sent him before to her kingdome, to giue intelligence to her subiects, that she returned, bringing with her, him that should free and giue them all libertie. With this the Barber surrendered the taile willingly to the Oastesse, and likewise all the other borrowed wares which shee had lent for *Don-Quixotes* deliuerie. All those of the Inne rested wonderfull amazed at *Doroteas* beautie, and also at the comelineffe of the Shepheard *Cardenio*. Then the Curate gaue order to make readie for them such meat as the Inne could afford: and the In-keeper, in hope of better payment, did dresse very speedily for them a reasonable good dinner. *Don-Quixote* slept all this while, and they were of opinion to let him take his rest, seeing sleepe was more requisite for his disease then meate. At the Table they discoursed (the Inne-keeper, his wife, daughter and *Maritornes*, and all the other trauellers being present) of *Don-Quixotes* strange frensie, and of the maner wherein they found him. The Oastesse eftsoones recounted what had hapned there betweene him and the Carrier; and looking to see whether *Sancho* were present. perceiuing that he was away, shee told likewise all the story of his canuasing, whereat they conceiued no little content and pastime. And as the Curate said, that the  
originall

originall cause of *Don-Quixotes* madnesse proceeded from the reading of bookes of Knighthood; the In-keeper answered,

I cannot conceiue how that may be, for (as I beleeeue) there is no reading so delightfull in this world: and I my selfe haue two or three bookes of that kinde with other papers, which doe verily keepe me aliue, and not onely me, but many other. For in the reaping times, many of the reapers repaire to this place in the heates of mid-day, and there is euermore some one or other among them that can read, who takes one of these bookes in hand, and then some thirtie or more of vs doe compasse him about, and doe listen to him with such pleasure, as it hinders a thousand hoary haire: for I dare say at least of my selfe, that when I heare tell of those furious & terrible blowes that Knights Errant giue, it inflames me with a desire to become such a one my selfe, and could finde in my heart to be hearing of them day and night. I am iust of the same minde no more, nor no lesse, said the Oastesse, for I neuer haue any quiet houre in my house, but when thou art hearing those bookes whereon thou art so besotted, as then thou doest onely forget to chide, which is thy ordinarie exercise at other times. That is very true, said *Maritornes*. And I in good sooth doe take great delight to heare those things, for they are very fine, and especially when they tell how such a Laddie lies embraced by her Knight vnder an Orange tree, and that a certaine Damozell keepeth Watch all the while, readie to burst for enuie that shee hath not likewise her sweet heart; And very much afraid. I say the all those things are as sweete as hony to mee. And you, quoth the Curate to the In-keepers daughter, what do you thinke? I know not in good sooth, Sir, quoth she, but I do likewise giue care, and in truth although I vnderstand it not, yet doe I take some pleasure to heare them, but I mislike greatly those blowes, which please my father so much; and onely delight in the lamentations that  
Knights

Knights make, being absent from their Ladies: which in sooth doe now and then make mee weepe, through the compassion I take of them. Well then, quoth *Dorotea*, be-like, faire Maiden, you would remedie them, if such plaints were breathed for your owne sake? I know not what I would doe, answered the Gyrl, onely this I know, that there are some of those Ladies so cruell, as their Knights call them *Tigres & Lyons*, and a thousand other wild beasts. And good *Iesus*, I knew not what vnsouled folke they be, and to without conscience, that because they will not once behold an honorable man, they suffer him either to die or run mad. And I know not to what end serues all that coy-nesse. For if they doe it for honesties sake, let them marry with them, for the Knights desire nothing more. Peace, childe, quoth the Oastle, for it seemes that thou knowest too much of those matters, and it is not decent that Maidens should know or speake so much. I speake, quoth she, by reason that this good Sir made me the demand. And I could not in courtesie omit to answer him. Well, said the Curate, let me intreat you, good mine Oast, to bring vs here those bookes, for I would faine see them.

I am pleased, said the In-keeper: and then entring into his chamber, he brought forth a little old Mallet shut vp with a chaine: and opening thereof, he tooke out three great bookes and certaine papers written with a very faire letter. The first booke he opened, was that of *Don Cirongilio of Thracia*. The other *Felixmarte of Hircania*: And the third, *The Historie of the great Captaine, Goncalo Hernandez of Cordona*, with the life of *Diego Garcia of Paredes*, adioyned. As soone as the Curate had read the titles of the two bookes, he said to the Barber, We haue now great want of our friends, the old woman and Neece. Not so much as you thinke, quoth the Barber, for I know also the way to the yard, or the chimney, and in good sooth, there is a fire in it good enough for that purpose. Would you then, quoth the Oast burne my bookes? No more of them, quoth the Curate,

Curate, but these first two of *Don Cirongilio* and *Felixmarte*, are my bookes. Perhaps quoth the In-keeper, hereticall or flegmaticall, that you would thus roughly handle them? Schismaticall thou wouldest haue said, quoth the Barber, and not flegmaticall. It is so, said the In-keeper, but if you will needs burne any, I pray you rather let it be that of the great *Captaine*, and of that *Diego Garcia*, for I would rather suffer one of my sonnes to be burned, then any one of those other two. Good friend, these two bookes are lying and full of follies and vanities, but that of the great *Captaine* is true, and containeth the arts of *Goncalo Hernandez of Cordona*, who for his sundrie and noble acts, merited to be termed by all the world, *The great Captaine*, a name famous, illustrious, and onely deserued by himselfe, and this other *Diego Garcia of Paredes* was a noble Gentleman, borne in the Citie of *Truxillo in Estremadura*, and was a most valorous souldier, and of so surpassing force, as hee would detaine a mill-wheele with one hand from turning in the midst of the speediest motion: and standing once at the end of a bridge with a two-handed sword, defended the passage against a mightie armie that attempted to passe ouer it: and did so many other things, that if another, who were a stranger and vnpassionate, had written them, as he did himselfe who was the relater and Historiographer of his owne acts, and therefore recounted them with the modestie of a Gentleman, and proper Chronicker; they would haue drowned all the *Hectors*, *Achilles* and *Rollands* in obliuion.

There is a leste, qd. the In-keeper, deale with my father, I pray you, see at what you wonder. A wise tale, at the withholding of the wheele of a mill, I sweare, you ought to read that which is read in *Felixmarte of Hircania*, who with one thwart blow cut fise mightie Giants in halfes, as if they were of Beanes, like to the little Friers that children make of Bean-cods, And set another time vpon a great and most powerful army of more then a million & sixe hundred thou-



sand souldiers, and ouerthrew and scattered them all like a flocke of sheepe. What then can you say to me of the good *Don Cirongilio* of *Thracia*, who was so animous and valiant as may be seene in his booke: wherein is laid down, that as he sayled along a Riuer, there issued out of the middelt of the water, a serpent of fire, & he, as soone as he perceiued it, leaped vpon her, and hanging by her scalie shoulders, he wrung her throat so straitly betweene both his armes, that the Serpent perceiuing her selfe to be well-nigh strangled, had no other way to saue her selfe, but by diuing down into the deeps, carrying the Knight away with her, who would neuer let goe his gripe? and when they came to the bottome, he found himselfe by a Palace in such faire and pleasant gardens, as it was a wonder: and presently the Serpent turned into an old man, which said to him such things as there is no more to be desired. Two figs for the *Great Capitaine*, and that *Diego Garcia*, of whom you speake.

*Dorotea* hearing him speake thus, said to *Cardenio*, Mee thinks our Oast wants but litle to make vp a second part of *Don-Quixote*? So it seemes to me like wise, replied *Cardenio*, for as we may coiecture by his words, he certainly beleecues that euery thing written in those bookes, passed iust as it is laid down, & barefooted friers would be scarce able to perswade him the contrary. Know, friend (qd. the Curate to the Inkeeper) that there was neuer any such man as *Felixmarte* of *Hircania*, or *Don Cirongilio* of *Thracia*, nor other such Knights, as books of Chiuallry recount. For al is but a deuice and fiction of idle wits that composed them, to the end that thou sayest, to passe ouer the time, as your readers do in reading of the. For I sincerely sweare vnto thee, that there were neuer such Knights in the world, nor such aduentures & rauiings hapned in it. Cast that bone to another dog, quoth the Inkeeper, as thogh I knew not how many numbers are fise, and where the shoe wrests me now. I pray you, Sir, goe not about to giue me pap, for by the Lord, I am not so white. Is it not a good sport that you labour to perswade me, that all that

that which these good books say, are but ravings & fables, they being printed by grace and priuiledge of the Lords of the priuie Counsell; as if they were folke that would permit so many lies to be printed at once: and so many batteles and enchantments, as are able to make a man run out of his wits? I haue told thee already, friend (said the Curate) that this is done for the recreation of our idle thoughts: and so euen as in welgouerned cōmonwealths, the plaies at Chess, Tennis, & Trucks are tolerated for the pastime of some men, which haue none other occupation, & either ought not, or cannot worke: euen so such books are permitted to be printed: presuming (as in truth they ought) that no man would be found so simple and ignorant, as to hold any of these bookes for a true Historie. And if my leisure permitted, & that it were a thing requisite for this auditory, I could say many things concerning the subiect of books of Knighthood, to the end that they should be well contriued, and also be pleasant and profitable to the readers: but I hope sometime to haue the commodity to cōmunicate my conceit with those that may redresse it. And in the meane while you may beleue, good mine Oast, what I haue said, & take to you your books, and agree with their truthes or leasings as you please, and much good may it do you. And I pray God that you halt not in time on the foot that your gheist *Don-Quixote* halteth. Not so, qd. the In-keeper, for I will neuer be so wood as to become a Knight errant, for I see wel, that what was vsed in the times of these famous Knights is now in no vse nor request.

*Sancho* came in about the midst of this discourse, and rested much confounded & pensatiue of that which he heard them say, that Knights Errant were now in no request, and that the bookes of Chiuallry, onely contained follies & lies: and purposed with himselfe to see the end of that voyage of his Lords, and that if it sorted not the wished successe which he expected, he resolued to leaue him, and retorne home to his wife and children, & accustomed labour. The Inkeeper thought to take away his bookes & budget, but

the Curate withheld him, saying, Stay a while, for I would see what papers are those which are written in so faire a character. The Oast took them out and gaue them to him to read, being in number some eight sheets with a title written in text letters, which said, *The History of the curious impertinent.* The Curate read two or three lines softly to himselfe, & said after, Truly, the title of this History doth not mislike me, and therefore I am about to reade it thorow. The Inne-keeper hearing him, said, Your reuerence may very wel doe it, for I assure you, that some ghests which haue read it here as they trauelled, did comend it exceedingly. & haue begd it of me as earnestly, but I would neuer bestow it, hoping some day to restore it to the owner of this Mallet, who forgot it heere behind him with these bookes and papers, for it may be that he will sometime returne, and although I know that I shall haue great want of the bookes, yet will I make to him restitution, for although I am an In-keeper, yet God be thanked I am a Christian therewithall. You haue great reason, my friend, quoth the Curate, but yet notwithstanding if the tast like me, thou must giue me leaue to take a copie thereof. With all my heart, replied the Oast. And as they two talked, *Cardenio* taking the book, began to reade a little of it, and it pleasing him as much as it had done the Curate, he requested him to reade it in such sort as they might all heare him. That I would willingly do, said the Curate, if the time were not now more fit for sleeping then reading. It were sufficient repose for me, said *Dorotea*, to passe away the time listening to some tale or other, for my spirit is not yet so well quieted, as to afford me licence to sleepe, euen then when nature exacteth it. If that be so, quoth the Curate, I will read it, if it were but for curiositie, perhaps it containeth some delightfull matter. Master *Nicholas* and *Sancho* intreated the same. The Curate seeing & knowing that he should therein do them all a pleasure, and he himselfe like wise receiue as great, said, Seeing you will needs heare it, be all of you attentiu, for the Historie beginneth in this manner.

## CHAP. VI.

*Wherein is rehearsed the Historie of the en-  
rious impertinent.*

**I**N Florence, a rich and famous Citie of *Italie*, in the Prouince called *Tuscaue*, there dwelled two rich and principall Gentlemen called *Anselmo* and *Lothario*, which two were so great friends, as they were named for excellency and by *Antonomasia*, by all those that knew them, The two friends. They were both Batchelers, and much of one age and manners; all which was of force to make them answer one another with reciprocall amity. True it is, that *Anselmo* was somewhat more inclined to amorous dalliance then *Lothario*, who was altogether addicted to hunting. But when occasion exacted it, *Anselmo* would omit his owne pleasures, to satisfie his friends, and *Lothario* likewise his, to please *Anselmo*. And by this meanes both their wils were so correspondent, as no clocke could be better ordred then were their desires. *Anselmo* being at last deeply enamoured of a principall and beautifull yong Ladie of the same Citie, called *Camila*, being so worthily descended, and sheher selfe of such merit therewithall, as he resolued (by the consent of his friend *Lothario*, without whom he did nothing) to demand her of her parents for wife, and did put his purpose in execution: and *Lothario* himselfe was the messenger, and concluded the matter so to his friends satisfaction, as he was shortly after put in possession of his desires: and *Camila* so contented to haue gotten *Anselmo*, as she ceased not to render Heauen and *Lothario* thankses, by whose meanes she had obtained so good a match. The first dayes, as all marriage daies are wont to be merry, *Lothario* frequented, according to the custome, his friend *Anselmo's* house, endeavouring to honor, feast and recreate him all the waies he might possible: but after the Nuptials were finished, and the con-

course of strangers visitations and congratulations somewhat ceased, *Lothario* also began to be somewhat more slacke then he wonted in going to *Anselmo* his house, deeming it (as it is reason that all discrete men should) not so conuenient to visit or haunt so often the house of his friend after marriage, as he would, had he still remained a Batcheler. For although true amitie neither should, or ought to admit the least suspicion: yet notwithstanding a married mans honour is so delicate and tender a thing, as it seemes it may be sometimes impayred euen by very brethren, and how much more by friends? *Anselmo* noted the remissnesse of *Lothario*, and did grievously complaine thereof, saying, that if he had wist by marriage he should thus be depriued of his dearest conuersation, he would neuer haue married; and that since through the vniforme correspondence of them both being free, they had deserued the sweet title of *the two friends*, that he should not now permit (because he would be noted circumspect without any other occasion) that so famous and pleasing a name should be lost: and therefore he requested him (if it were lawfull to vse such a terme betweene them two) to returne and be Master of his house, and come and goe, as he had done before his marriage, assuring him that his Spouse *Camila* had no other pleasure and will, then that which himselfe pleased she should haue: and that she, after hauing knowne how great was both their friendships, was not a little amazed to see him become so strange.

To all these and many other reasons alleaged by *Anselmo*, to perswade *Lothario* to frequent his house, he answered with so great prudence, discretion and warinesse, as *Anselmo* remained satisfied of his friends good intention herein: and they made an agreement betweene them two, that *Lothario* should dine at his house twice a weeke, and the Holy-daies besides. And although this agreement had passed betweene them, yet *Lothario* purposed to doe that onely which he should finde most expedient for his friends honour,

honour, whose reputation he tendered much more dearly then he did his owne; and was wont to say very discretely, that the married man vnto whom heauen had giuen a beautifull wife, ought to haue as much heede of the friends which he brought to his house, as he should of the women friends that visited his wife, for that which is not done nor agreed vpon in the Church or Market, nor in publike feasts or stations (being places that a man cannot lawfully hinder his wife from frequenting somtimes at least) are oft-times facilitated, & contriued in a friends or kins-womans house, whom perhaps we neuer suspected. *Anselmo* on the other side affirmed, that therefore married men ought euery one of them to haue some friend, who might aduertise them of the faults escaped in their manner of proceeding; for it befalls many times, that through the great loue which the husband beares towards his wife, either he doth not take notice, or else he doth not aduertise her, because he would not offend her to doe, or omit to doe certaine things, the doing or omitting whereof, might turne to his honour or obloquie: to which things being aduertised by his friend, he might easily apply some remedie: but where might a man finde a friend so discreet, loyall and trustie as *Anselmo* demands? I know not truely, if not *Lothario*; for he it was, that with all sollicitude and care regarded the honour of his friend: and therefore endeuoured to clip and diminish the number of the daies promised, lest he should giue occasion to the idle vulgar, or to the eyes of vagabonds and malicious men to iudge any finister thing, viewing so rich, comely, noble, and qualified a Yong man as he was, to haue so free accessse into the house of a woman so beautifull as *Camila*. For though his vertues and modest carriage were sufficiently able to set a bridle to any malignant tongue, yet notwithstanding he would not haue his credit, nor that of his friends called into any question, and therefore would spend most of the dayes that he had agreed, to visit his friend, in other places and exercises; yet sayning  
excuses



excuses so plausible, as his friend admitted them for very reasonable. And thus the time passed on in challenges of unkindnes of the one side, and lawfull excuses of the other.

It so fell out, that as both the friends walked on a day together in a field without the Citie, *Anselmo* said to *Lothario* these words ensuing, I know very well, friend *Lothario*, that among all the fauours, which God of his bountie hath bestowed vpon me, by making me the sonne of such parents, and giuing to me with so liberall a hand, both the goods of Nature and Fortune: yet as I cannot answer him with sufficient gratitude for the benefits already receiued, so doe I finde my selfe most highly bound vnto him aboue all others, for hauing giuen me such a friend as thou art, and so beautifull a wife as *Camila*; being both of you such pawns, as if I esteeme you not in the degree which I ought, yet doe I hold you as deare as I may. And yet possessing all those things which are wont to be the all and some, that are wont, and may make a man happy, I liue notwithstanding the most sullen and discontented life of the world; being troubled, I know not since when, and inwardly wrested with so strange a desire, and extrauagant from the common vse of others, as I maruell at my selfe, and doe condemne and rebuke my selfe when I am alone, and do labour to conceale and couer mine owne desires: all which hath serued me to as little effect, as if I had proclaimed mine owne errors purposely to the world. And seeing that it must finally breake out, my will is, that it be onely communicated to the treasury of thy secret; hoping that by it and mine owne industry, which (as my true friend) thou wilt vse to helpe me, I shall be quickly freed from the anguish it causeth, and by thy meanes my ioy and contentment shall arriue to the passe, that my discontents haue brought mee through mine owne folly.

*Lothario* stood suspended at *Anselmo's* speech, as one that could not imagine, to what so prolix a preuention and preamble tended: And although he resolued and imagined

ned sundry things in his mind, which he deemed might afflict his friend, yet did he euer shoote wide from the marke which in truth it was : and that he might quickly escape that agonie, wherein the suspension held him, hee said, that his friend did notable iniurie to their amitie in searching out wreathings and ambages in the discouery of his most hidden thoughts to him, seeing he might assure himself certainly, either to receiue counsels of him how to entertain, or else remedy and meanes how to accomplish them.

It is very true, answered *Anselmo*, and with that confidence I let thee to vnderstand, friend *Lothario*, that the desire which vexeth me, is a longing to know, whether my wife *Camila* be as good and perfect, as I doe account her : and I cannot wholly rest satisfied of this truth, but by making triall of her, in such sort, as it may give manifest argument of the degree of her goodnesse, as the fire doth shew the value of gold. For I am of opinion (O friend) that a woman is of no more worth or Vertue, then that which is in her, after she hath \* beene solicited, and that she alone is strong, who cannot be bowed by the promises, gifts, tears, and continuall importunities of importunate Louers. For what thanks is it (quoth he) for a woman to be good, if no bodie say or teach her ill ? What wonder that she be retired and timorous, if no occasion be ministred to her of dissolution, and chiefly she that knowes she hath a husband readie to kill her, for the least argument of lightnesse ? So that she which is onely good for feare, or want of occasion, will I neuer hold in that estimation, that I would the other solicited and pursued, who notwithstanding comes away crowned with the victory. And therefore being moued as well by these reasons, as by many other, which I could tell you, which accredit & fortifie mine opinion, I desire that my wife *Camila* doe also passe thorow the pikes of those proofes and difficulties, and purifie and refine her selfe in the fire of being requested, solicited and pursued; and that by one, whose worths and valour may deserue acceptance

in

\* *Casti est  
quam nemo  
rogauit.*

in her opinion : and if she beare away the Palme of the victory, as I belecue shee will, I shall account my fortune matchlesse, and may brag that my desires are in their height : and will say that a strong woman hath falne to my lot, of whom the Wise man saith, *Who shall finde her?* and when it shall succeed contrary to mine expectation, I shall, with the pleasure that I will conceiue to see how rightly it iumps with mine opinion, beare very indifferent the griefe which in all reason, this so costly a triall must stir in me. And presupposing that nothing which thou shalt say to mee, shall be auailable to hinder my designe, or disswade me from putting my purpose in execution; I would haue thy selfe, deare friend *Lotbario*, to provide thee to be the instrument, that shall labour this worke of my liking, and I will giue thee oportunitie enough to performe the same, without omitting any thing that may further thee in the sollicitation of an Honest, Noble, Warie, Retired, and Passionlesse woman.

And I am chiefly moued to commit this so hard an enterprize to thy trust, because I know that if *Camila* be vanquished by thee, yet shall not the victory arriue to the last push and vpsshot, but onely to that of accounting a thing to be done, which shall not be done for many good respects. So shall I remaine nothing offended, and mine iniury concealed in the vertue of thy silence; for I know thy care to be such in matters concerning mee, as it shall be eternall, like that of death. And therefore if thou desirest that I may lead a life, deseruing that name, thou must forthwith provide thy selfe to enter into this amorous conflict, and that not languishing or slothfully, but with that courage and diligence which my desire expecteth, and the confidence I haue in our amitie assureth me.

These were the reasons vsed by *Anselmo* to *Lotbario*; to all which he was so attentiu as vntill he ended, he did not once vnfold his lips to speake a word saue those which we haue about related : & seeing that he spoke no more; after  
he

he had beheld him a good while, as a thing that hee had neuer before, and did therefore strike him into admiration and amazement, hee said, Friend *Anselmo*, I cannot perswade my selfe, that the words you haue spoken be other then iests, for had I thought that thou wert in earnest, I would not haue suffered thee to passe on so far, and by lending thee no eare, would haue excused this tedious Oration. I doe verily imagine, that either thou doest not know me, or I thee: but not so, for I know thee to be *Anselmo*, and thou, that I am *Lothario*: the dammage is, that I thinke thou art not the *Anselmo* thou wast wont to be, & perhaps thou deemest me not to be the accustomed *Lothario* that I ought to be: for the things which thou hast spoken, are not of that *Anselmo* my friend; nor those which thou seekest, ought to be demanded of that *Lothario*, of whom thou hast notice. For true friends ought to proue and vse their friends, as the *Poet* said, *Vsq̃ue ad Ayras*: that is, that they should in no sort imploy them or implore their assistance in things offensiue vnto God: & if a Gentile was of this opiniõ in matters of friendship, how much greater reason is it that a Christian should haue that feeling, specially knowing that the celestially amity is not to be lost for any humane friendship whatsoeuer? And when the friend should throw the bars so wide, as to set heavenly respects apart, for to compliment with his friend: it must not be don on light grounds, or for things of small moment, but rather for those wheron his friends life & honor wholly depends. Then tell me now, *Anselmo*, in which of these two things art thou in danger, that I may aduenture my person to do thee a pleasure, and attempt so detestable a thing as thou doest demand? None of them truly, but rather doest demand, as I may coniecture, that I doe industriously labour to deprive thee of thine honour and life together, and in doing so, I likewise deprive my selfe of them both. For if I must labour to take away thy credit, it is most euident, that I dispoile thee of life; for a man without reputation, is worse then a dead.

dead man : and I being the instrument (as thou desirest that I should be) of so great harme vnto thee, doe not I become like wise thereby dishonoured, and by the same consequence also without life ? Heare me, friend *Anselmo*, and haue patience not to answere me, vntill I haue said all that I thinke, concerning that which thy minde exacteth of thee. For wee shall haue after leisure enough, wherein thou mayest reply, and I haue patience to listen vnto thy reasons.

I am pleased, quoth *Anselmo*, say what thou likest. And *Lothario* prosecuted his speech in this manner, Me thinks, *Anselmo*, that thou art now of the *Moors* humors, which can by no meanes bee made to vnderstand the Error of their sect ; neither by Citations of the holy Scripture, nor by reasons which consist in speculations of the vnderstanding, or that are founded in the Articles of the faith ; but must bee won by palpable examples, and those, easie, intelligible, demonstratiue and doubtlesse, by Mathematicall demonstrations which cannot be denied. Euen as when we say, *If from two equall parts, wee take away two parts equall, the parts that remaine are also equall.* And when they cannot vnderstand this, as in truth they doe not, wee must demonstrate it to them with our hands, and lay it before their eyes, and yet for all this, nought can auaille to win them in the end to giue credit to the verities of our religion, which very termes and manner of proceeding I must vse with thee, by reason that the desire which is sprung in thee, doth so wander and stray from all that which beares the shadow onely of reason, as I doubt much, that I shall spend my time in vaine, which I shall bestow to make thee vnderstand thine owne simplicity, for I will giue it no other name at this present : & in good earnest I was almost perswaded to leaue thee in thine humour, in punishment of thine inordinate and vnreasonable desire, but that the loue which I beare towards thee doth not consent, I vse to thee such rigour, or leaue thee in so manifest a danger of thine

owne perdition. And that thou maist cleerely see it, tell me, *Anselmo*, hast not thou said vnto me, that I must sollicit one that stands vpon her reputation, perswade an honest woman, make proffers to one that is not passionate or engaged, and serue a discrete woman? yes, thou hast said all this. Well then, if thou knowest already that thou hast a retired, honest, vnpassionate, and prudent wife, what seekest thou more? And if thou thinkest that she will rest victorious after all mine assaults, as doubtlesly shee will, what better titles wouldest thou after bestow vpon her, then those she possesseth already? Either it proceeds because thou dost not thinke of her as thou sayest, or else because thou knowest not what thou demandest. If thou dost not account her such as thou prayest her, to what end wouldest thou proue her, but rather as an euill person, vse her as thou likest best? but if she be as good as thou beleeuest, it were an impertinent thing to make tryall of truth it selfe. For after it is made, yet it will still rest only with the same reputation it had before. Wherefore it is a concluding reason, that to attempt things whence rather harme may after result vnto vs then good, is the part of rash and discouiselesse braines, and principally when they deale with those things whereunto they are not compelled or driuen, and that they see euen a far off, how the attempting the like is manifest folly. Difficult things are vndertaken for God, or the world, or both. Those that are done for God, are the workes of the Saints, induoring to leade Angels liues in fraile and mortall bodies. Those of the world are the trauels and toiles of such as crosse such immense seas, trauell thorow so aduerse regions, and conuerse with so many Nations, to acquire that which we call the goods of Fortune. And the things acted for God and the world together, are the worthy exploits of resolute and valorous Martiall men, which scarce perceiue so great a breach in the aduersarie wall, as the common bulle is wont to make, when leauing all feare apart, without making any discourse,



course, or taking notice of the manifest danger that threatens them, borne away by the wings of desire and honour to serue God, their Nation and Prince, doe throw themselves boldly into the throate of a thousand menacing deaths which expect them.

These are things wont to be practised, and it is honour, glory and profit to attempt them, bee they neuer so full of inconueniences and danger: but that which thou sayest, thou wilt trie and put in practice, shall neuer gaine thee Gods glorie, the goods of Fortune, or renounce among men: for suppose that thou bringest it to passe according to thine owne fantasie, thou shalt remaine nothing more contented, rich or honorable then thou art already: and if thou doest not, then shalt thou see thy selfe in the greatest miserie of any wretch liuing: for it will little auaille thee then, to thinke that no man knowes the disgrace befallne thee, it being sufficient both to afflict and dissolue thee, that thou knowest it thy selfe, and for greater confirmation of this truth I will repeate vnto thee a stanza of the famous Poet *Ludonico Tansilo* in the end of his first part of *Saint Peters teares*, which is:

**T**He grieve increaseth, and withall the shame,  
*In Peter when the day it selfe did show.*  
 And though he no man sees, yet doth he blame  
 Himselfe, because he had offended so:  
 For breſts, magnanimous not onely tame,  
 When that of others, they are seene, they know.  
 But of themselves asham'd they often bee,  
 Though none but Heauen and Earth their error see.

So that thou canst not excuse thy grieve with secrecie, be it neuer so great, but rather shalt haue continuall occasion to weepe, if not watry teares from thine eyes, at least teares of bloud from thy heart, such as that simple Doctor wept, of whom our Poet makes mention, who made triall

of

of the vessell, which the prudent *Reynaldos* vpon maturer discourse refused to deale withall : and although it be but a Poeticall fiction, yet doth it containe many hidden moralls, worthy to bee noted, vnderstood and imitated : how much more seeing that by what I meane to say now, I hope thou shalt begin to conceiue the great error which thou wouldest wittingly commit.

Tell mee, *Anselmo*, if heauen or thy fortunes had made thee Lord and lawfull possessor of a most precious Diamond, of whose goodnesse and qualitie all the Lapidarists that had viewed the same would rest satisfied, and that all of them would ioyntly and vniformely affirme that it arriued in quality, goodnesse, & finenesse to all that, to which the Nature of such a stone might extend it selfe, and that thou thy selfe didst beleue the same, without witting any thing to the contrary : would it be iust that thou shouldst take an humour to set that Diamond betweene an Anuile and a hammer; and to trie there by very force of blowes whether it be so hard and so fine as they say ? And farther, when thou didst put thy designe in execution, put the case that the stone made resistance to thy foolish triall, yet wouldest thou adde thereby no new valour or esteeme to it ? and if it did breake as it might befall, were not then all lost ? Yes certainly, and that leauing the Owner in all mens opinion for a very poore ignorant person. Then friend *Anselmo*, make account that *Camila* is a most precious Diamond, as well in thine, as in other mens estimation, and it is no reason to put her in contingent danger of breaking, seeing that although she remaine in her integrity, she cannot mount to more worth then shee hath at the present ; and if she saltred, or did not resist, consider euen at this present, what state you would be in then, and how iustly thou mightest then complaine of thy selfe, for being cause of her perdition and thine owne ? See how there is no lewell in the world comparable to the modest and chaste woman : and that all womens honour consists in the good opinion

opinion thats had of them : and seeing that of thy Spouse is so great, as it arriues to that summe of perfection which thou knowest, why wouldest thou call this verity in question ? Know, friend, that a woman is an imperfect creature, and should therefore haue nothing cast in her way to make her stumble and fall, but rather to cleere, and do all incumbrances away out of it, to the end shee may without impeachment run with a swift course to obtaine the perfection she wants, which only consists in being vertuous.

The Naturalists recount, that the *Ermine* is a little beast that hath a most white skinne, and that when the Hunters would chase him, they vse this art to take him : as soone as they finde out his haunt, & places where he hath recourse, they thwart them with mire and dirt, and after when they descrie the little beast, they pursue him towards those places which are defiled : and the *Ermine* espying the mire, stands still, and permits himselfe to be taken and captiued in exchange of not passing thorow the mire, or staying of his whitenesse, which it esteemes more then either liberty or life. The honest and chaste woman is an *Ermine*, and the vertue of chastitie is whiter and purer then Snow : and he that would not lose it, but rather desires to keepe and preserue it, must proceed with a different stile from that of the *Ermine*. For they must not propose and lay before her the mire of the passions, flatteries and seruices of importunate Louers ; for perhaps shee shall not haue the naturall impulse and force which commonly through proper debility is wont to stumble, to passe ouer those incumbrances safely : and therefore it is requisite to free the passage and take them away, and lay before her the cleerenesse of Vertue, and the beauty comprized in good fame. The good woman is also like vnto a bright and cleere mirrour of *Crystall*, and therefore is subiect to be stained and dimmed by euery breath that toucheth it. The honest woman is to be vsed as reliques of Saints, to wit, she must be honoured, but not touched. The good woman is to be kept and prized,

prized, like a faire Garden full of sweet flowers and Roses, that is held in estimation; whose Owner permits no man to enter and trample, or touch his flowers, but holds it to be sufficient, that they standing a far off without the railles, may ioy at the delightfull sight, & fragrancie therof. Finally I will repeat certaine verses vnto thee that haue now come to my memorie, the which were repeated of late in a new play, and seeme to mee very fit for the purpose of which we treat. A prudent old man did giue a neighbour of his that had a daughter, counsaile to keepe and shut her vp: and among many other reasons he vsed these:

**T***Ruely woman is of glasse,  
Therefore no man ought to trie,  
If she broke or not might bee,  
Seeing all might come to passe.  
Yet to breake her tis more easie,  
And it is no wit to venter  
A thing of so brittle temper,  
That to soulder is so queasie.  
And I would haue all men dwell  
In this truth, and reasons ground,  
That if Danacs, may be found,  
Golden showres are found as well.*

All that which I haue said to thee, *Anselmo*, vntill this instant, hath beene for that which may touch thy selfe: and it is now high time that somewhat bee heard concerning me. And if by chance I shall be somewhat prolix, I pray thee to pardon me; for the Labyrinth wherein thou hast entred, and out of which thou wouldest haue mee to free thee, requires no lesse. Thou holdest me to be thy friend, and yet goest about to dispoyle me of mine honour, being a thing contrary to all amitie; and dost not onely pretend this, but dost likewise indeuour that I should robbe thee

of the same, that thou wouldst deprive me of mine is evident; for when *Camila* shall perceive that I sollicite her as thou demandest, it is certaine that she will esteeme of me, as of one quite deuoid of wit, and indiscreet, seeing I intend and doe a thing so repugnant to that, which she being that him I am, and thine amitie doe binde me vnto; that thou wouldst haue me rob thee thereof is as manifest: for *Camila* seeing mee thus to court her, must imagine that I haue noted some lightnesse in her, which lent me boldnesse thus to discouer vnto her my depraued desires, and shee holding her selfe to be thereby iniured and dishonoured, her disgrace must also concerne thee as a principall part of her. And hence springs that which is commonly said, that the husband of the adulterous wife, although hee know nothing of her lewdnesse, nor hath giuen any occasion to her to doe what shee ought not, nor was able any way to hinder by diligence, care, or other meanes his disgrace, yet is intituled with a vituperious and vile name, and is in a manner beheld by those that know his wiues malice, with the eyes of contempt; whereas they should indeed regard him rather with those of compassion, seeing that hee falls into that misfortune, not so much through his owne default, as through the light fantasie of his wicked consort. But I will shew thee the reason why a bad womans husband is iustly dishonoured and contemned, although he be ignorant and guiltlesse thereof, and cannot preuent nor hath giuen to it any occasion. And be not grieved to heare me, seeing the benefit of the discourse shall redound vnto thy selfe.

When God created our first parent in the terrestriall Paradise, the holy Scripture saith, *That God infused sleepe into Adam*, and that being asleepe, he tooke out a ribbe out of his left side, of which he formed our mother *Eue*, and as soone as *Adam* awaked & beheld her, he said, This is flesh of my flesh, and bone of my bones. And God said, For this cause shall a man leaue his father and his mother, and they shall be two in one flesh: & then was the diuine Ordinance  
of

of Matrimonie first instituted, with such indissoluble knots, as onely may be by death dissolued. And this marvellous Ordinance is of such efficacie and force, as it makes two different persons to be one very flesh, and yet operates farther in good married folke: For although they haue two soules, yet it makes them to haue but one will. And hence it proceeds, that by reason the wiues flesh is one and the very same with her husbands, the blemishes or defects that taint it, doe also redound into the husbands, although he (as we haue said) haue ministred no occasion to receiue that dammage. For as all the whole body feesles any paine of the foote, head or any other member, because it is all one flesh, and the head smarts at the grieve of the Ankle, although it hath not caused it: so is the husband participant of his wiues dishonour, because hee is one and the selfe-same with her. And by reason that al the honours and dishonours of the world are, and spring from flesh and blood; and those of the bad woman be of this kinde, it is forcible, that part of them fall to the husbands share, and that he be accounted dishonourable, although hee wholly be ignorant of it. See then, *Anselmo*, to what perill thou dost thrust thy selfe, by seeking to disturbe the quietnesse and repose wherein thy wife liues: and for how vaine & impertinent curiositie thou wouldest stirre vp the humors which are now quiet in thy chaste Spouses brest; note how the things thou dost aduenture to gaine, are of small moment, but that which thou shalt lose, so great, that I must leaue it in his point, hauing no words sufficiently able to indeere it. But if all that I haue said, be not able to moue thee from thy bad purpose; thou mayest well seeke out for some other instrument of thy dishonour and mis-haps: for I meane not to be one, although I should therefore lose thine amitie, which is the greatest losse that might any way befall mee.

Here the prudent *Lothario* held his peace, and *Anselmo* remayned so confounded and melancholy, as he could not answer a word to him, for a very great while. But in the



end hee said, I haue listned, friend *Lethario*, to all that which thou hast said vnto me, with the attention which thou hast noted, and haue perceiued in thy reasons, examples, and similitudes, the great discretion where withal thou art indowed, and the perfection of amitie that thou hast attained: and do also confesse and see, that if I follow not thine aduice, but should leane vnto mine owne, I doe but shun the good, and pursue the euill. Yet oughtest thou likewise to consider, how herein I suffer the disease which some women are wont to haue, that long to eate earth, lime, coales, and other far worse and lothsome things, euen to the very sight, and much more to the taste. So that it is be-houefull to vse some art by which I may be cured, and this might be easily done, by beginning only to sollicite *Camila*, although you did it but weake and fainedly: for I know shee will not bee so soft and pliable, as to dash her honestie about the ground at the first encounters, and I will rest satisfied with this commencement alone: and thou shalt herein accomplish the obligation thou owest to our friendship, by not onely restoring mee to life, but also by perswading mee not to dispoile my selfe of mine honour. And thou art bound to doe this for one reason that I shall alledge, to wit, that I being resolved, as indeed I am, to make this experience, thou oughtest not to permit being my friend, that I should bewray my defect herein to a stranger, whereby I might very much indanger my reputation, which thou labourest so much to preserue, & though thy credit may lose some degrees in *Camila's* opinion, whilst thou dost sollicite her, it matters not very much or rather nothing; for very shortly, when wee shall espie in her the integritie that we expect, thou maist open vnto her sincerely the drift of our practice, by which thou shalt againe recover thine impaired reputation. Therefore seeing the aduventure is little, and the pleasure thou shalt doe me by the enterprizing thereof so, too great, I pray thee doe it, though euer so many incumbrances represent themselves to thee, for (as I haue promised) with onely thy begin-

ning,

ning, I will rest satisfied and account the cause concluded.

*Lothario* perceiuing the firme resolution of *Anselmo*, and nothing else occurring forcibly dissuasive, nor knowing what other reasons to vse, that might hinder this his precipitate resolution: and noting withall, how he threatened to breake the matter of this his indiscreet desires to a stranger: he determined to auoid greater inconueniences, to giue him satisfaction, and performe his demaund, with purpose and resolution to guide the matter so discreetly, as without troubling *Camila's* thoughts, *Anselmo* should rest contented, and therefore intreated him not to open his mind to any other, for hee himselfe would vndertake that enterprise, and begin it whensoever he pleased. *Anselmo* imbraced him very tender and louingly, and gratified him as much for that promise, as if hee had done him some very great fauour: and there they accorded betweene them, that he should begin the worke the very next day insuing, for he would giue him place and leasure to speake alone with *Camila*, and would likewise prouide him of Money, Jewels, and other things to present vnto her. He did also admonish him to bring musicke vnder her windowes by night, and write verses in her praise, and if hee would not take the paine to make them, hee himselfe would compose them for him. *Lothario* promised to performe all himselfe, yet with an intention far wide from *Anselmo's*; and with this agreement they returned to *Anselmo's* house, where they found *Camila* somewhat sad & carefull, expecting her husbands returne, who had stayed longer abroad that day then his custome. *Lothario* leauing him at his house, returned to his owne, as pensive as he had left *Anselmo* contented, and knew not what plot to lay, to issue out of that impertinent affaire with prosperous successe. But that night he bethought himselfe of a manner how to decciue *Anselmo* without offending *Camila*: and so the next day insuing hee came to his friends house to dinner, where *Camila* knowing the great good will her husband bore towards him, did receiue and entertaine him very kindly with the

like dinner being ended, and the table taken vp, *Anselmo* requested *Lothario* to keepe *Camila* company vntill his returne, for he must needes goe about an affaire that concerned him greatly, but would returne againe within an houre and a halfe. *Camila* intreated her husband to stay, and *Lothario* profferd to goe and keepe him companie, but nothing could preuaile with *Anselmo*, but rather he importuned his friend *Lothario*, to remaine and abide there till his returne, because hee must goe to treat of a matter of much consequence. Hee also commanded *Camila* not to leaue *Lothario* alone vntill he came backe. And so he departed, leauing *Camila* and *Lothario* together at the table, by reason that all the attendants and seruants were gone to dinner.

Here *Lothario* saw that hee was entred into the lists, which his friend so much desired, with his aduersarie before him, who was with her beautie able to ouercome a whole Squadron of armed Knights; see then if *Lothario* had not reason to feare himselfe? but that which he did at the first onser, was to lay his elbow on the arme of his chaire, and his hand on his cheek, and desiring *Camila* to beare with his respectlesnesse therein, he said he would repose a little, whilest he attended *Anselmo's* comming. *Camila* answered that she thought he might take his ease better on the cushions of State, and therefore prayed him hee would enter into the Parlor and lie on them. But he excused himselfe, and so remained asleepe in the same place, vntill *Anselmo's* returne, who comming in, and finding his wife in her Chamber and *Lothario* asleepe, made full account, that by reason of his long stay, they had time enough both to talke, and repose, and therefore expected very greedily the houre wherein his friend should awake, to go out with him, and learne what successe he had: all succeeded as hee wished, for *Lothario* aroſe, and both of them went abroad, and then he demanded of him what he desired: and *Lothario* answered, that it seemed not to him so good to discouer all his meaning at the first, and therefore had

had done no other thing at that time, then speake a little of her beautie and discretion, for it seemed to him that this was the best preamble hee could vse, to gaine by little and little some interest and possession in her acceptance, to dispose her thereby the better to giue care againe to his words more willingly, imitating therein the Devils craft when he meanes to deceiue any one that is vigilant and carefull, for then he translates himselfe into an Angell of light, being one of darkenesse, and laying before him apparent goods, discouers what he is in the end, and brings his intention to passe, if his guiles be not at the beginning detected. Al this did greatly like *Anselmo*, who said that he would afford him euery day as much leisure, although he did not goe abroad, for he would spend the time so at home, as *Camila* should neuer be able to suspect his drift.

It therefore befell, that many daies passed, which *Lothario* did willingly ouerslip, and said nothing to *Camila*, yet did he euer soothe *Anselmo*, and told him, that he had spoken to her, but could neuer win her to giue the least argument of flexibilitie, or make way for the feeblest hope that might be: but rather affirmed that she threatned him, that if he did not repell his impertinent desires, she would detect his indirect proceedings to her husband. It is well, qd. *Anselmo*. Hitherto *Camila* hath resisted words, it is therefore requisite to trie what resistance she will make against works. I will giue thee to morrow foure thousand crownes in gold, to the end thou maist offer, and also bestow them on her: and thou shalt haue as many more to buy Jewels, wherewithall to baite her: for women are naturally inclined, and specially if they be faire (be they euer so chaste) to goe braue and gorgeously attired, and if she can ouercome this temptation, I will remaine pleased, and put thee to no more trouble. *Lothario* answered, that seeing he had begun, hee would beare his enterprize on to an end, although he made full account, that he should depart from the conflict, both tyred and vanquished. Hee receiued the foure thousand crownes the next day, and at once with

them foure thousand perplexities, for he knew not what to inuent, to lie anew; but concluded finally to tell to his friend, how *Camila* was as inflexible at gifts and promises as at words, and therefore it would be in vaine to trauaile any more in her pursuite, seeing he should doe nothing else but spend the time in vaine.

But Fortune, which guided these affaires in another manner, so disposed, that *Anselmo* hauing left *Lothario* and *Camila* alone, as he was wont, entred secretly into a chamber, and thorow the crannies and chinks did listen and see what they would doe: where he perceiued that *Lothario*, in the space of halfe an houre, spoke not a word to *Camila*, nor yet would he haue spoken, though hee had remained there a whole age, and thereupon surmised straight, that all that which his friend had told him of *Camila's* answeres and his owne speech, were but fictions and vntruthes: and that he might the more confirme himselfe, and see whether it were so, he came forth, and calling *Lothario* apart, he demanded of him what *Camila* had said, and in what humor she was at the present? *Lothario* answered, that he meant not euer any more to sound her in that matter: for shee replied to him so vntowardly and sharply, as he durst not attempt any more to speake vnto her of such things.

Oh, quoth *Anselmo*, *Lothario*, *Lothario*, how euill dost thou answer to the affection thou owest mee, or to the confidence I did repose in thee? I haue stood beholding thee all this while thorow the hole of that locke, and saw how thou neuer spokest one word to her. Whereby I doe also collect, that thou hast not yet once accosted her: and if it be so, as doubtlesly it is, say, why dost thou deceiue me? Or why goest thou about fraudulently to depriue mee of those meanes, whereby I may obtaine my desires? *Anselmo* said no more, yet what hee said, was sufficient to make *Lothario* confused and ashamed, who taking it to be a blemish to his reputation to bee found in a lie, swore to *Anselmo*, that hee would from thence-forward so indeuour to please his minde, and tell him no more leasings, as hee himselfe

selfe might perceiue the successe thereof if he did again curiously lye in watch for him: a thing which he might well excuse, because his most serious labour to satisfie his desire, should remooue all shadow of suspition. *Anselmo* beleued him, and that he might giue him the greater commoditie, and lesse occasion of feare, he resolved to absent himselfe from his house some eight daies, and goe to visit a friend of his, that dwelled in a Village, not farre from the Citie, and therefore dealt with his friend that he should send a messenger to call for him very earnestly, that vnder that pretext, he might finde an excuse to *Camila* for his departure.

O infortunate and inconsiderate *Anselmo*, what is that which thou doest? what doest thou contriue? or what is that thou goest about? behold, thou workest thine owne ruine, laying plots of thine owne dishonour, and giuing order to thy proper perdition. Thy wife *Camila* is good, thou dost possesse her in quiet and peaceable manner, no man surpriseth thy delights, her thoughts transgresse not the limits of her house: Thou art her heaven on earth, and the goale to which her desires aspire. Thou art the accomplishment and summe of her delectation: thou art the Squire by which shee measureth and directeth her will, adiustring wholly with thine and with that of heauen. Since then the mines of her honour, beautie, modestie, and recollection, bountifully afford thee without any toile, all the treasures contained in them, or thou canst desire, why wouldest thou digge the earth, and seeke out new vaines, and new scene treasures, exposing thy selfe to the danger, that thy labours may turne to wracke, seeing in fine, that they are only sustained by the weake supporters of her fraile nature? Remember how he that seekes the impossible, may iustly be refused of that which is possible, according vnto that which the Poet saith:



**I**N death for life I seeke,  
Health in infirmittie :  
For issue in a dungeon deepe :  
In layles for libertie,  
And in a treachour loyaltie.  
But enuious fate, which still  
Conspires to worke mine ill,  
With Heauen hath thus decreed ;  
That easie things should be to me denide,  
'Cause I craue th' impossible.

*Anselmo* departed the next day following to the Village, telling *Camila* at his departure, that whilst he were absent, his friend *Lothario* would come and see to the affaires of his house, and to eate with her, and desired her therefore, to make as much of him, as she would doe of his owne person. *Camila* like a discreet and modest woman, was grieved at the order her husband did giue to her, and requested him to render how indecent it was that any one should possesse the chaire of his table, he being absent, and if he did it, as doubting-her insufficiencie, to manage his household affaires, that at least he should make triall of her that one time, and should clearely perceiue how she was able to discharge matters of farre greater consequence. *Anselmo* replied, that what he commanded, was his pleasure, and therefore she had nothing else to doe, but hold downe the head, and obey it. *Camila* answered, that she would do so, although it was very much against her will. In fine her husband departed, and *Lothario* came the next day following to the house, where he was entertained by *Camila* very friendly, but would neuer treat with *Lothario* alone, but euermore was compassed by her seruant and waiting Maidens, but chiefly by one called *Leonela*, whom she loued dearly; as one that had bin brought vp with her in her Fathers house, & en from their infancie, & when she did marry  
*Anselmo.*

*Anselmo*, shee brought her from thence in her company.

The first three dayes *Lothario* spoke not a word, although he might, when the tables were taken vp, and that the folke of the house went hastily to dinner, for so *Camila* had commanded, and did giue *Leonela* order besides to dine before her selfe, and that she should still keepe by her side: but the gyrlie which had her fancie otherwise employed in things more pleasing her humour, and needed those houres and times for the accomplishing of them, did not alwaies accomplish so punctually her Ladies command, but now and then would leaue her alone, as if that were her Ladies behest. But the honest presence of *Camila*, the grauitie of her face, and the modellie of her carriage was such, as it serued as a bridle to restraine *Lothario's* tongue. But the benefit of *Camila's* many vertues, setting silence to *Lothario's* speech, resulted afterward to both their harmes. For though the tongue spoke not, yet did his thoughts discourse, & had leisure afforded them to contemplate, part by part, all the extremes of worth and beautie that were cumulated in *Camila*, potent to inflame a Statue of frozen Marble: how much more an heart of flesh. *Lothario* did only behold her in the time and space he should speake vnto her, and did then consider how worthy shee was to be loued. And this consideration did by little and little giue assaults to the respects which he ought to haue borne towards his friend *Anselmo*: a thousand times did he determine to absent himselfe from the Citie, and goe where *Anselmo* should neuer see him, nor he *Camila*, but the delight hee tooke in beholding her, did againe withhold and hinder his resolutions. When hee was alone, he would condemne himselfe of his madde designe, and tearme himselfe a badde friend and worse *Christian*, hee made discourses and comparisons betweene himselfe and *Anselmo*, all which did finish in this point that *Anselmo's* foole-harresse, and madnesse was greater, then his owne insidelitie, and that if hee might bee as easily excused before God, for that he meant to doe, as he would be before men,  
he

he needed not to feare any punishment should be inflicted on him for the crime. Finally, *Camila's* beautie and worths, assisted by the occasion. which the ignorant husband had thrust into his fits, did wholly ruine and ouerthrow *Losbario* his loyaltye, and therefore without regarding any other thing then that to which his pleasure conducted him, about a three daies after *Anselmo's* departure (which time he had spent in a continuall battell and resistance of his contending thoughts) he began to sollicite *Camila*, with such trouble of the spirits, and so amorous words, as she was stricken almost beside her selfe with wonder, and made him no other answer, but arising from the table, flung away in a furie into her chamber. But yet for all this drinesse, *Losbario* his hope (which is wont euermore to be borne at once with loue) was nothing dismayed, but rather accounted the more of *Camila*, who perceiuing that in *Losbario*, which she neuer durst before to imagine, knew not what she might doe; but it seeming vnto her to be a thing neither secure nor honest, to giue him occasion or leisure to speake vnto him againe, determined to send one vnto her husband *Anselmo* the same very night, as indeed she did, with a letter to recall him home to her house. The subiect of her Letter was this.

---

CHAP. VII.

Wherein is prosecuted the Historie of the curious impertinent.

**E**ven as it is commonly said, that an Armie seemes not well without a Generall, or a Castle without a Constable: so doe I affirme, that it is much more indecent to see a Yong married woman without her husband, when he is not iustly detained away by necessarie affaires. I finde my selfe so ill-disposed in your absence and so impatient and impotent to indure it longer, as if you doe not speedily returne, I shall be constrained to returne backe vnto  
my

my father, although I should leaue your house without any keeping. For the guard you appointed for me, if it be so that he may deserue that title, looks more, I beleene, to his owne pleasure, then to that which concernes you: therefore seeing you haue wit enough, I will say no more, nor ought I to say more in reason.

Anselmo receiued the Letter, and by it vnderstood that Lothario had begun the enterprize, and that Camila had answered to him according as he had hoped: and maruelous glad at the newes, he answered his wife by word of mouth, that she should not remooue in any wise from her house, for he would returne with all speed. Camila was greatly admired at his answer, which struck her into a greater perplexitie then she was at the first, being afraid to stay at home, and also to go to her father. For by staying, she indangers her honesty, by going, she should transgresse her husbands command: at last she resolued to do that which was worst, which was to remaine at home, and not to shun Lothario's presence, lest she should giue her seruants occasion of suspicion: and now she was grieued to haue written what she did to her husband, fearefull lest he should thinke that Lothario had noted in her some token of lightnesse, which might haue moued him to lose the respect which otherwise was due vnto her: but confident in her innocencie, she cast her hopes in God & her good thoughts, wherewithall she thought to resist all Lothario's words, and by holding her silent without making him any answer, without giuing any further account of the matter to her husband, lest thereby she might plunge him in new difficulties and contention with his friend, and did therefore bethinke her how shee might excuse Lothario to Anselmo, when he should demand the occasion that moued her to write vnto him that Letter. With these more honest then profitable or discreete resolutions, she gaue eare the second day to Lothario, who charged her with such resolution, as her constancie began to stagger, and her honesty had enough to doe, recurring to her eyes to containe them, lest they

they should giue any demonstration of the amorous compassion which *Lothario's* words and teares had stirred in her brest. *Lothario* noted all this, and it inflamed him the more. Finally, he thought that it was requisite the time and leisure which *Anselmo's* absence afforded him, to lay closer siege to that Fortresse: and so he assaulted her presumptuously with the praises of her beauty; for there is nothing which with such facility doth render and raze to the ground the proudly-crested Turrets of womens vanity, then the same vanity being dilated on by the tongue of adulation and flattery. To be briefe, he did with all diligence vndermine the rocke of her integrity with so warlike Engines, as although *Camila* were made of brasse, yet would she be overthrowne. For *Lothario* wept, intreated, promised, flattered, persisted and fained so feelingly, and with such tokens of truth, as trauesing *Camila's* care of her honour, he came in the end to triumph over that which was least suspected, and he most desired: for she rendred her selfe, euen *Camila* rendred her selfe. But what wonder if *Lothario's* amitie could not stand on foote? A cleere example, plainly demonstrating that the amorous passion is onely vanquished by shunning it; and that no body ought to aduenture to wrestle with so strong an aduersarie: for heauenly forces are necessarie for him that would confront the violence of that passion, although humane. None but *Leonela* knew the weaknesse of her Ladie, for from her the two bad friends and new louers could not conceale the matter: nor yet would *Lothario* discouer to *Camila* her husbands pretence, or that he had giuen him wittingly the opportunity whereby he arriued to that passe, because she should not imagine that he had gotten her lightly, and by chance, and did not purposely sollicite her.

A few daies after *Anselmo* arriued to his house, and did not perceiue what wanted therein, to wit, that which it had lost, and he most esteemed. From thence he went to see his friend *Lothario*, whom he found at home, and embracing one another, he demanded of him the newes of his life

or of his death. The newes which I can giue thee, friend *Anselmo*, quoth *Lothario*, are, that thou hast a wife, who may deseruedly be the example and garland of all good women. The words that I spoke vnto her, were spent on the ayre, my proffers contemned, and my gifts repulled, and besides, she hath mockt mee notably for certaine fained teares that I did shead. In resolution, euen as *Camila* is the patterne of all beauty, so is she a treasury wherein modesty resides, courtesie and warinesse dwell, and all the other vertues that may beautifie an honourable woman, or make her fortunate. Therefore friend, take backe thy money, for here it is ready, and I neuer had occasion to imploy it: for *Camila's* integritie cannot be subdued with so base things as are gifts and promises. And *Anselmo*, content thy selfe now with the proofes made already, without attempting to make any farther triall. And seeing thou hast past ouer the Sea of difficulties and suspitions with a drie foot, which may and are wont to be had of women: doe not efit-soones enter into the profound depths of new inconueniences, nor take thou any other Pilot to make experience of the goodnesse and strength of the vessell that heauen hath allotted to thee, to passe therein thorow the Seas of this world: but make account that thou art harboured in a safe hauen, and there hold thy selfe fast with the Anchors of good consideration, and so rest thee vntill death come to demand his debt, from the payment whereof no Nobility or priuiledge whatsoeuer can exempt vs. *Anselmo* rested singularly satisfied at *Lothario's* discourse, and did beleue it as firmly as if it were deliuered by an Oracle; but did intreat him notwithstanding to prosecute his attempt, although it were onely done for curiositie, and to passe away the time; yet not to vse so efficacious meanes, as he thitherto practised: and that he onely desired him to write some verses in her praise, vnder the name of *Clori*, for he would make *Camila* beleue, how that he was inamoured of a certaine Lady, to whom he did appropriate that name, that he might celebrate her praises with the respect due to her honour:

and



and that if he would not take the paines to inuent them, that he himselfe would willingly compose them. That is not needfull, quoth *Lothario*, for the *Muses* are not so alienated from me, but that they visite me sometimes in the yeere. Tell you vnto *Camila* what you haue deuised of my loues: and as for the verses, I will make them my selfe, if not so well as the subiect deserues, yet at the least as artificially as I may deuise them. The impertinent curious man and his treacherous friend hauing thus agreed, and *Anselmo* returned to his house, he demanded of *Camila* that which she maruelled he had not asked before, that shee should tell vnto him the occasion why shee sent vnto him the Letter? *Camila* made answer, Because it seemed vnto her, that *Lothario* beheld her somewhat more immodest then when he was at home; but that now she did againe dissuade her selfe, and beleueed that it was but a light surmise, without any ground, because that shee perceiued *Lothario* to loath her presence, or be by any meanes alone with her. *Anselmo* tolde her that she might very well liue secure for him, for that he knew *Lothario's* affections were bestowed else-where, and that vpon one of the noblest Damzels of the Citie, whose praises he solemnized vnder the name of *Clori*, and that although he were not, yet was there no cause to doubt of *Lothario's* vertue, or the amitie that was betweene them both. Here if *Camila* had not beene premonished by *Lothario*, that the loue of *Clori* was but fained, and that he himselfe had told it to *Anselmo* to blinde him, that he might with lesse difficultie celebrate her owne praises vnder the name of *Clori*; shee had without doubt fallne into the desperate toyles of iealousie; but being already aduertised, shee posted ouer that assault lightly. The day following they three sitting together at dinner, *Anselmo* requested *Lothario* to reapeate some one of the verses that he had made to his beloued *Clori*; for seeing that *Camila* knew her not, he might boldly say what he pleased. Although she knew her, quoth *Lothario*, yet would I not therefore suppress any part of her praises. For when

when any Louer praiseth his Ladie for her beauty, & doth withall taxe her of cruelty, her credit incurres no danger. But befall what it list, I composed yesterday a Sonnet of the ingratitude of *Clori*, and is this ensuing.

## A SONNET.

**A** *Midst the silence of the darkeſt night,  
When ſweeteſt ſleepe inuadeth mortall eyes:  
I poore account, to heau'n and Clori bright,  
Giue of the richeſt harmes, which euer riſe.  
And at the time, we Phœbus may deniſe,  
Shine through the Roſeall gates of th' Orient bright,  
With deepe accents, and ſighes in wonted guiſe.  
I doe my plaints renew, with maine and might.  
And when the Sunne, downe from his ſtarry ſeat  
Directeſt rayes, towards the earth doth ſend,  
My ſighes I double and my ſad regrete.  
And night ratures, but of my woes no end:  
For I finde alwaies in my mortall ſtriſe,  
Heau'n without cares, and Clori likewiſe deaſe.*

*Camila* liked the Sonnet very well, but *Anſelmo* beſt of all; for he praiſed it, and ſaid, that the Lady muſt be very cruell; that would not anſwer ſuch perſpicuous truths, with reciprocall affection. But then *Camila* answered, Why then (belike) all that which inamoured Poets ſay is true? In as much as Poets, quoth *Lothario*, they ſay not truth: but as they are inamoured, they remaine as ſhort as they are true. That is queſtionleſſe, quoth *Anſelmo*, all to vnderprop and giue *Lothario* more credit with *Camila*, who was as careleſſe of the cauſe her husband ſaid ſo, as ſhe was enamoured of *Lothario*, and therefore with the delight ſhe tooke in his compositions, but chiefly knowing that his deſires and labours were addreſſed to her ſelfe, who was the

true *Clori*, she intreated him to repeate some other Sonnet or Dittie, if he remembred any. Yes that I doe, quoth *Lothario*, but I beleue that it is not so good as the first, as you may well iudge, for it is this:

## A SONNET.

**I** Die, and if I cannot be beleen'd,  
*My death's more certaine, as it is most sure,*  
 To see me at thy feet, of life depriv'd:  
*Rather then grieue, this thraldome to endure,*  
 Well may I in obliuious shades obscure  
*Of glory, life, and fauour be denide:*  
*And yet euen there, shall in my bosome pure,*  
*The shape of thy faire face ingrau'd be cyde.*  
 For that's a relique, which I doe reserue  
*For the last traunces, my contentions threaten,*  
*Which midst thy rigour doth it selfe preserue.*  
*O woe's the wight, that is by tempests beaten*  
*By night, in vnknowne Seas, in danger rise,*  
*For want of North, or hauent to lose his life!*

*Anselmo* commended also this second Sonnet as hee had done the first, and added by that meanes one linke to another in the chaine, wherewith he intangled himselfe, and forged his owne dishonour: seeing when *Lothario* dishonoured him most of all, he said vnto him then that he honored him most. And herewithall *Camila* made all the linkes, that verily serued onely to abase her downe to the Center of contempt, seeme to mount her in her husbands opinion, vp to the height of vertue and good fame.

It befell soone after, that *Camila* finding her selfe alone with her Maiden, said to her, I am ashamed, friend *Leonela*, to see how little I knew to value my self, seeing that I made

not

not *Lothario* spend some time at least in the purchasing the whole possession of me, which I with a prompt will bestowed vpon him so speedily. I feare mee that he will impute my hastinesse to lightnesse, without considering the force he vsed towards me, which wholly hindred and disabled my resistance. Let not that afflict you, Madam, qd. *Leonela*, for it is no sufficient cause to diminish estimation, that, that be giuen quickly which is to be giuen, if that in effect be good that is giuen, and be in it selfe worthy of estimation; for it is an old prouerbe, *That hee that giues quickly, giues twice*. It is also said as well, quoth *Camila*, *That that which costeth little, is lesse esteemed*. That reason hath no place in you, quoth *Leonela*, for as much as loue, according as some haue said of it, doth sometimes flie, other times it goes, it runs with this man, and goes leisurely with the other; it makes some key-cold, and inflames others, some it wounds, & some it kills, it begins the Careere of his desires in an instant, and in the very same, concludes it likewise: It is wont to lay siege to the fortresse in the morning, and at night it makes it to yeeld; for ther's no force able to resist it: which being so, what doe you wonder, or what is it that you feare, if the same hath befallne *Lothario*, seeing that loue made of my Lords absence an instrument to vanquish vs? and it was forcible, that in it we should conclude on it which loue had before determined, without giuing time it selfe any time, to leade *Anselmo* that hee might returne, & with his presence leaue the worke imperfect. For loue hath none so officious or better a minister to execute his desires then is occasion: It serues it selfe of occasion in all his act, but most of all at the beginning. And all this that I haue said, I know rather by experience the hearsay, as I will some day let you to vnderstand: for Madam, I am likewise made of flesh, and lustie yong bloud. And as for you, Ladie, *Camila*, you did not giue vp and yeeld your selfe presently, but stayed vntil you had first scene in *Lothario's* eyes, his sighes in his discourses, in his promises & gifts all his soule, in which and in his perfections, you might read

how worthy he is to be loued. And seeing this is so, let not these scruples and nice thoughts assault or further disturbe your mind, but perswade your selfe that *Lothario* esteemes you as much as you do him, and liues with content and satisfaction, seeing that it was your Fortune to fall into the amorous snare, that it was his good luck to catch you with his valour and deserts: who not only hath the foure S. S. which they say euery good Louer ought to haue, but also the whole A. B. C. which if you will not credit, doe but listen to me a while, and I will repeate it to you by roate. He is, as it seemes, and as farre as I can iudge, amiable, bountifull, courteous, dutifull, enamored, firme, gallant, honorable, illustrious, loyall, milde, noble, honest, prudent, quiet, rich, and the S. S. which they say, and besides true, valorous. The X. doth not quader well with him, because it sounds harshly: Y. he is Yeng. And the Z. he is zealous of thine honour. *Camila* laughed at her Maydens A. B. C. and accounted her to be more practicke in loue-matters, then she her selfe had confessed, as indeed she was, for then she reuealed to her Mistris, how she and a certaine Yong man well borne of the Citie did treat of loue one with another: Hereat her Mistis was not a little troubled in minde, fearing that her honour might be greatly indangered by that meanes; shee demanded whether her affections had passed farther then words? And the Maide answered very shamelesly and freely, that they did: for it is most certaine, that this kinde of wretchlesse Mistresses doe also make their Maydens carelessle and impudent: who when they perceiue their Ladies to faulter, are commonly wont to halt likewise themselves, and care not that the world do know it. *Camila* seeing this error past remedie, could doe no more but intreate *Leonela*, not to reueale any thing of her affaires to him she said was her sweet-heart; and that she should handle her matters discretely & secretly, lest they might come to *Anselmo* or *Lothario's* notice. *Leonela* promised to performe her will; but did accomplish her promise in such sort, as she did confirme *Camila's* feares, that she should lose her credit by her  
meanes,

meanes. For the dishonest and bold Gyle, after that shee had perceiued that her Mistris her proceedings were not such as they were wont, grew so hardy, as shee gaue entrance, & brought her Louer into her Masters house, presuming that although her Ladie knew it, yet would she not dare to discover it. For this among other harmes follow the finnes of Mistresses, that it makes them slaues to their owne seruants, and doth oblige them to conceale their dishonest and base proceedings, as it fell out in *Camila*, who, although she espied *Leonela*, not once onely, but sundry times together with her Louer in a certaine chamber of the house, she not onely dared not to rebuke her for it, but rather gaue her opportunity to hide him, and would remooue all occasions out of her husbands way, whereby he might suspect any such thing.

But all could not hinder *Lothario* from espying him once, as he departed out of the house at the breake of the day: who not knowing him, thought at the first that it was a spirit, but when he saw him post away, and cast his cloke ouer his face, lest he should be knowne, he abandoning his simple surmise, fell into a new suspition which had ouerthrowne them all, were it not that *Camila* did remedie it. For *Lothario* thought, that he whom he had seene issue out of *Anselmo's* house at so vnreasonable an houre, had not entered into it for *Leonela's* sake, nor did he remember then that there was such a one as *Leonela* in the world, but onely thought, that as *Camila* was lightly gotten by him, so belike she was wonne by some other. For the wickednesse of a bad woman bringeth vsually all these additions, that she loseth her reputation euen with him, to whom prayed and perswaded shee yeeldeth her selfe: and he beleeueth that shee will as easily, or with more facility consent to others, and doth infallibly credit the least suspition which thereof may be offered.

And it seemes that *Lothario* in this instant was wholly deprived of all reasonable discourse, and quite dispoyled of his vnderstanding, for without pondering of the matter,



impatient and kindled by the iealous rage that inwardly gnawed his bowels, fretting with desire to be reuenged on *Camila*, who had neuer offended him, he came to *Anselmo* before he was vp, and said to him, Know, *Anselmo*, that I haue had these many daies a ciuill conflict within my selfe whether I should speak or no, and I haue vsed as much violence as I might, to my selfe, not to discover a thing vnto you, which now it is neither iust nor reasonable I should conceale. Know that *Camila's* fortresse is rendred, and subiect to all that I please to command, and if I haue beene somewhat slow to informe thee this of truth: it was because I would first see, whether it proceeded of some light appetite in her: or whether shee did it to trie me, and see whether that loue was still constantly continued, which I first began to make vnto her by thy order and licence. I did also belecue, that if she had beene such as she ought to be, and her that we both esteemed her, she would haue by this time acquainted you with my importunacy: but seeing that she lingers therein, I presume that her promises made vnto me are true, that when you did again absent yourselfe out of the towne, she would speake with me in the Wardrobe (and it was true: for there *Camila* was accustomed to talke with him) yet would not I haue thee runne rashly to take reuenge, seeing the sinne is not yet otherwise committed then in thought, and perhaps betweene this and the opportunity she might hope to put it in execution, her mind would be changed, and she repent her selfe of her folly. And therefore seeing that thou hast euer followed mine aduices partly or wholly, follow and keepe one counsell that I will giue vnto thee now, to the end that thou mayest after with carefull assurance, and without fraud, satisfie thine own will as thou likest best: saine thy selfe to be absent two or three daies as thou art wont, and then conuey thy selfe cunningly into the Wardrobe, where thou maist very well hide thy selfe behind the Tapestry, & then thou shalt see with thine owne eyes, and I with mine, what *Camila* will doe; and if it be that wickednes which rather ought to be feared then hoped for, thou maist with wise dome, silence, and discretion

tion, be the proper executioner of so iniurious a wrong.

*Anselmo* remained amazed, and almost besides himselfe, hearing his friend *Lothario* so vnexpectedly to acquaint him with those things, in a time wherein he least expected them, for now he esteemed *Camila* to haue escaped victresse from the forged assaults of *Lothario*, and did himselfe triumph for glorie of her victorie: suspended thus and troubled, he stood silent a great while looking on the earth, without once remoouing his eye from it; and finally, turning towards his friend, he said, *Lothario*, thou hast done all that which I could expect from so intire amitie, and I do therefore meane to follow thine aduice in all things precisely: doe therefore what thou pleasest, and keepe that secret which is requisite in so waighy & vnexpected an euent. Al that, I do promise, qd. *Lothario*: and so departed wholly repented for that he had told to *Anselmo*, seeing how foolishly he had proceeded, since he might haue reuenged himselfe on *Camila* very wel, without taking a way so cruel & dishonorable. There did he curse his litle wit; & abased his light resolution, & knew not what means to vse to destroy what he had done, or giue it some reasonable and contrary issue. In the end he resolved to acquaint *Camila* with the whole matter, and by reason that he neuer missed of opportunitie to speak vnto her, he found her alone the very same day; and she seeing likewise that shee had fit time to speake vnto him, said, Know, friend *Lothario*, that a certaine thing doth pinch my heart in such manner, as it seemes ready to burst in my brest, as doublesly I feare me that in time it will, if we cannot set a remedie to it. For such is the immodesty of *Leonela*, as shee shuts vp a Louer of hers euery night in this house, and remaines with him vntill day-light, which so much concernes my credit, as it leaues open a spacious field to him, that sees the other goe out of my house at so vnseasonable times, to iudge of me what he pleaseth; and that which most grieues me, is, that I dare not punish or rebuke her for it. For shee being priue to our proceedings, sets a bridle on me, and constraines me to conceale hers; and

hence, I feare me, will bad successe befall vs. *Lothario* at the first suspected that *Camila* did speake thus, to make him beleue that the man whom he had espied, was *Leonela's* friend, and none of hers: but seeing her to weepe indeede and be greatly afflicted in minde, he began at last to giue credit vnto the truth, and beleeuing it, was greatly confounded and grieued for that he had done. And yet notwithstanding hee answered *Camila*, that shee should not trouble or vex her selfe any more, for he would take such order, as *Leonela's* impudencies should be easily crost and suppressed: And then did recount vnto her all that he had said to *Anselmo*, spurd on by the furious rage of ielous indignation, and how her husband had agreed to hide himselfe behind the Tapestry of the Wardrobe, that he might from thence clearly perceiue the little loyalty she kept towards him, and demanded pardon of her for that folly and counsell to redresse it, and come safely out of the intricate Labyrinth, whereinto his weake-eyed discourse had conducted him.

*Camila* hauing heard *Lothario's* discourse, was afraid and amazed, and with great anger, and many and discreet reasons did rebuke him, reuiling the basenesse of his thoughts, and the simple and little consideration that he had. But as women haue naturally a sudden wit, for good or bad, much more prompt then men: although when indeed they would make discourses, it prooues defectiue. So *Camila* found in an instant a remedy for an affaire in apparence so irremediable and helplesse, and therefore bade *Lothario* to induce his friend *Anselmo* to hide himselfe the next day ensuing, for shee hoped to take commodity out of his being there, for them both to ioy one another with more security then euer they had before: and without wholly manifesting her prouerbe to him, shee only aduertised him to haue care, that after *Anselmo* were hidden, he should presently come when *Leonela* called for him, and that he should answer her as directly to euery question shee proposed, as if *Anselmo* were not in place. *Lothario* did vrge her  
impor.

importunately to declare her designe vnto him, to the end hee might with more security and aduice obserue all that was necessarie. I say, quoth *Camila*, there is no other obseruance to be had, then only to answere me directly to what I shal demand. For she would not giue him account beforehand of her determination, fearefull that hee would not conforme himselfe to her opinion which she tooke to bee so good; or else lest he would follow or seeke any other, that would not proue after so well. Thus departed *Lothario*, and *Anselmo*, vnder pretext that hee would visit his friend, out of Towne departed, and returned couertly back againe to hide himselfe, which he could do the more commodiously, because *Camila* and *Leonela* did purposely afford him opportunity, *Anselmo*, hauing hidden himselfe, with the griefe that may bee imagined one would conceiue, who did expect to see with his owne eyes an anatomye made of the bowels of his honour, and was in danger to lose the highest felicitie that he accounted himselfe to possesse in his beloued *Camila*. *Camila* and *Leonela* being certaine that hee was hidden within the wardrobe, entred into it, wherein scarce had *Camila* set her foote, when breathing forth of a deepe sigh, she spoke in this manner:

Ah friend *Leonela*, were it not better, that before I put in execution, that which I would not haue thee to know, lest thou shouldest indeuour to hinder it, that thou takest *Anselmo's* Ponyard that I haue sought of thee, and passe this infamous brest of mine thorow and thorow? but doe it not, for it is no reason that I should suffer for other mens faults. I will know first of ail, what the bold and dishonest eyes of *Lethario* noted in mee, that should stirre in him the presumption to discouer vnto mee so vnlawfull a desire, as that which hee hath reuealed, so much in contempt of his friend, and to my dishonour. Stand at that window, *Leonela*, and call him to me, for I doe infallibly belecue, that hee stands in the streete awayting to effect his wicked purpose. But first my cruell, yet honorable minde shall be first performed. Alas, deare Madame (quoth the wise and craftie

*Leonela*)

*Leonela*) what is it you meane to doe with that Ponyard? Meane you perhaps to depriue either your owne or *Lothario's* life there withall? for which focuer of these things you doe, shall redound to the losse of your credit and fame. It is much better that you dissemble your wrong, and giue no occasion to the bad man now to enter into this house, and find vs here in it alone: Consider, good Madame, how we are but weake women, and hee is a man, and one resolute, and by reason that hee comes blinded by his bad and passionate intent, he may peraduenture, before you be able to put yours in execution, doe somewhat that would bee worse for you, then to depriue you of your life. Euill befall my Master *Anselmo*, that ministers so great occasion to Impudencie, thus to discouer her visage in our house: and if you should kill him by chance, Madame, as I suspect you meane to doe, what shall we doe after with the dead car-kasse? What, said *Camila*? wee would leaue him here that *Anselmo* might burie him. For hee must in all equitie esteeme that labour for ease, which he shall passe, in the interring of his owne infamie. Make an end then, and call him, for mee thinks that all the time which I spend vntaking due reuenge of my iust disdain, turns into the preiudice of the loyaltie which I owe to my Spouse.

*Anselmo* listned very attentiuely all the while, and at euery word that *Camila* said, his thoughts changed. But when he vnderstood that she was resolu'd to kill *Lothario*, he was about to come out and discouer himselfe, to the end that such a thing should not be done: but the desire that he had to see wherein so braue and honest a resolution would end, with-held him, determining then to fallie out, when his presence should be needfull to hinder it. *Camila* about this time beganne to be very weake and dismayed, and casting her selfe, as if she had falne into a trance, vpon a bed that was in the roome, *Leonela* began to lament very bitterly and to say, Alas, wretch that I am, how vnfortunate should I be, if the flower of the worlds honestie, the crowne of good women, and the patterne of chastitie, should

should die here betweene my hands? Those and such other things she said so dolefully, as no one could heare her, that would not deeme her to bee one of the most esteemed and loyall Damzels of the world: and take her Ladie for an other new and persecuted *Penelope*. Soone after, *Camila* returned to her selfe, and said presently, Why goest thou not, *Leonela*, to call the most disloyall friend of a friend, that euer the Sunne beheld, or the night concealed? Make an end, runne, make haste, and let not the fire of my choller be through thy stay consumed and spent, nor the iust reuenge, which I hope to take, passe ouer in threats or maledictions. I goe to call him, Madame, quoth *Leonela*, but first of all you must giue me that Ponyard, lest you should doe with it in mine absence somewhat, that would minister occasions to vs your friends to deplore you all the dayes of our liues. Goe away boldly, friend *Leonela*, said *Camila*, for I shall doe nothing in thine absence; for although I bee in thine opinion both simple and bold enough to turne for mine honor, yet meane I not to be so much as the celebrated *Lucretia*, of whom it is recorded that shee slew her selfe, without hauing committed any error, or slaine him first who was the principal cause of her disgrace: I wil die if I must needs die, but I will be satisfied and reuenged on him that hath giuen me occasion to come into this place to lament his boldnesse, sprung without my default. *Leonela* could scarcely be intreated to go and call *Lothario*; but at last she went out, and in the meane time *Camila* remained, speaking to her selfe these words: Good God, had not it beene more discretion to haue dismissed *Lothario*, as I did many times before, then thus to possesse him as I haue done, with an opinion that I am an euill and dishonest woman, at least all the while that passeth, vntill mine actes shal vndeceiue him, and teach him the contrary? It had beene doubtlesly better: but then should not I bee reuenged, nor mine husbands honour satisfied, if hee were permitted to beare away so cleerely his malignitie, or escape out of the snare wherein his wicked thoughts inuolued him.

Let



Let the Traytor pay with his lifes defrayment, that which he attempted with so lasciuious a desire. Let the world know (if it by chance shal come to know it) that *Camila* did not only conuerue the loyaltie due to her Lord, but also tooke reuenge of the intended spoile thereof. But yet I beleue that it were best to giue *Anselmo* first notice thereof; but I did already touch it to him in the Letter which I wrote to him to the Village: and I beleue that his not concurring to take order in this so manifest an abuse, proceeds of his too sincere and good meaning, which would not, nor cannot beleue, that the like kind of thought could euer finde intertainment in the brest of so firme a friend, tending so much to his dishonour: and what maruell, if I my self could not credit it for a great many daies together? nor would I euer haue thought it, if his insolency had not arriued to that passe, which the manifest gifts, large promises, and continuall teares hee shed doe giue testimony. But why doe I make now these discourses? Hath a gallant resolution perhaps any neede of aduice? No verily; therefore auant, treacherous thoughts, here we must vse reuenge. Let the false man come in, arriue, die and end, and let after befall what can befall. I entred pure and vntouched to his possession, whom heauen bestowed on mee for mine, and I will depart from him purely: and if the worst befall, I shal onely be defiled by mine owne chaste blood, and the impure gore of the falsest friend that euer amitie saw in this world. And saying of this, shee pranced vp and downe the roome with the Ponyard naked in her hand, with such long and vnmeasurable strides, and making withall such gestures, as she rather seemed defectiue of wit, and a desperate ruffian, then a delicate woman.

All this *Anselmo* perceiued very well from behinde the Arras that couerd him; which did not a little admire him, and he thought that what hee had seene and heard, was a sufficient satisfaction of far greater suspitions then he had, and could haue wished with all his heart, that the triall of *Lothario's* comming might bee excused, fearing great'y  
some

some sudden bad successe : and as hee was ready to manifest himselfe, and to come out and embrace and dissuade his wife ; he withdrew himselfe, because hee saw *Leonela* returne, bringing *Lothario* in by the hand : and as soone as *Camila* beheld him, she drew a great stroke with the point of the Ponyard athwart the wardrop, saying, *Lothario*, note well what I meane to say vnto thee : for if by chance thou beest so hardy as to passe ouer this line which thou seest, ere I come as farre as it, I will in the very same instant stab my selfe into the heart with this Ponyard, which I hold in my hand : and before thou doest speake or answer me any word, I would first haue thee to listen to a few of mine, for after thou maiest say what thou pleasest. First of al I would haue thee, O *Lothario*, to say whether thou knowest my husband *Anselmo*, and what opinion thou hast of him? And next I would haue thee to tell me if thou knowest my selfe? Answer to this without delay, nor do not stand long thinking on what thou art to answer, seeing they are no deepe questions which I propose vnto thee. *Lothario* was not so ignorant, but that from the very beginning when *Camila* requested him to perswade her husband to hide himselfe behinde the tapisstry, he had not falne on the drift of her inuention, and therefore did answer her intention so aptly & discreetly, as they made that vntruth passe betweene them for a more then manifest verity : and so hee answered to *Camila* in this forme, I did neuer coniecture, beautifull *Camila*, that thou wouldest haue called me here to demand of me things so wide from the purpose for which I come : if thou doest it to defer yet the promised fauour, thou mightest haue intertaind it yet farther off, for the good desired afflicteth so much the more, by how much the hope to possesse it is neere. But because thou mayest not accuse me for not answering to thy demands, I say that I know thy husband *Anselmo*, and both of vs know one another euen from our tender infancie, and I will not omit to say that, which thou also knowest of our amity, to make me thereby a witnesse against my selfe of the wrong which Loue compels

pels me to doe vnto him, yet loue is a sufficient excuse and excuser of greater errors then are mine. Thee doe I likewise know and hold in the same possession that hee doth: for were it not so, I should neuer haue beene won by lesse perfections then thine, to transgresse so much that which I owe to my selfe, and to the holy Lawes of true amite, now broken and violated by the tyrannie of so powerfull an aduersary as Loue hath proued. If thou dost acknowledge that, replied *Camila*, O mortall enemy of all that which iustly deserueth loue, with what face darest thou then appeare before that which thou knowest to bee the mirror wherein he lookes, in whom thou also oughtest to behold thy selfe, to the end thou mightest perceiue vpon how little occasion thou dost wrong him? But vnfortunate that I am, I fall now in the reason which hath moued thee to make so little account of thine owne duety, which was perhaps some negligent or light behauiour of mine, which I will not call dishonestly, seeing that as I presume, it hath not proceeded from mee deliberately, but rather through the carelesnes that women which thinke they are not noted, do sometimes vnwittingly commit. If not, say, Traytor, when did I euer answer thy prayers with any word or token, that might awake in thee the least shadow of hope to accomplish thine infamous desires? When were not thine amorous intreaties reprehended and disperfed by the roughnesse and rigour of mine answers? When were thy many promises and larger gifts euer beleueed or admitted? But for as much as I am perswaded, that no man can perseuer long time in the amorous contention, who hath not beene sustayned by some hope, I will attribute the fault of thine impertinence to my selfe: for doubtlesly some carelesnesse of mine hath hitherto sustained thy care, and therefore I will chastise and giue to my selfe the punishment which thy fault deserueth. And because thou mightest see that I being so inhumane towards my selfe, could not possibly be other then cruell to thee, I thought fit to call thee to be a witnesse of the sacrifice which I meane to make to the

the offended honor of my most honorable husband, tainted by thee, with the blackest note that thy malice could deuise, and by me, through the negligence that I vsed, to shun the occasion, if I gaue thee any, thus to nourish and canonize thy wicked intentions. I say againe, that the suspicion I haue, that my little regard hath ingendred in thee these distracted thoughts, is that which afflicteth mee most, and that which I meane to chastise most with mine owne hands: for if another executioner punished me, then should my crime become more notorious; but before I doe this, I dying, will kill, and carie him away with mee, that shall end and satisfie the greedie desire of reuenge which I hope for, and I haue; seeing before mine eyes wheresocuer I shal goe, the punishment which disingaged iustice shall inflict, it still remayning vnbowd or suborned by him, which hath brought me to so desperate termes.

And hauing said these words, shee flew vpon *Lothario* with incredible force and lightnesse, and her Ponyard naked, giuing such arguments and tokens that shee meant to stab him, as hee himselfe was in doubt whether her demonstrations were false or true; wherefore he was driuen to helpe himselfe by his wit and strength, for to hinder *Camila* from striking of him, who did so liuely act her strange guile and fiction, as to giue it colour, shee would giue it a blush of her owne blood: for perceiuing, or else fayning that she could not hurt *Lothario*, she said, Seeing that aduerse fortune will not satisfie thorowly my iust desires, yet at least it shall not be potent wholly to crosse my designs: and then struiuing to free the dagger hand, which *Lothario* held fast, shee snatched it away, and directing the point to some place of her bodie, which might hurt her, but not very grievously, shee stabd her selfe, and hid it in her apparrell neere vnto the left shoulder, & fel forthwith to the ground, as if she were in a trance. *Lothario* and *Leonela* stood amazed at the v unexpected cuent, and still rested doubtfull of the truth of the matter, seeing *Camila* to lie on the ground bathed in her blood: *Lothario* ranne all wanne  
and

and pale, very hastily to her, to take out the Ponyard, and seeing how little blood followed, he lost the feare that he had conceiued of her greater hurt, and began anew to admire the cunning wit, and discretion of the beautifull *Camila*: but yet that he might play the part of a friend, he began a long and dolefull lamentation ouer *Camila's* body, euen as she were dead, & began to breathe forth many curses and execrations not onely against himselfe, but also against him that had imployed him in that vnfortunate affaire. And knowing that his friend *Anselmo* did listen vnto him, hee said such things as would moue a man to take more compassion of him then of *Camila* her selfe, although they accounted her dead. *Leonela* tooke her vp betweene her armes, and laid her on the bed, and intreated *Lothario* to goe out, & finde some one that would vndertake to cure her secretly. She also demanded of him his aduice, touching the excuse they might make to *Anselmo* concerning her Mistresse her wound, if hee came to towne before it were fully cured. He answered, that they might say what they pleased, for hee was not in an humour of giuing any counsell worth the following: And onely sayd this, that she should labour to stanch her Ladies blood: for he meant to goe there, whence they should heare no newes of him euer after: And so departed out of the house with verie great tokens of griefe and feeling; and when he was alone in place where no bodie perceiued him, he blest himselfe a thousand times, to thinke of *Camila's* Art, and the gestures so proper and accommodated to the purpose, vsed by her mayde *Leonela*. He considered how assured *Anselmo* would remayne, that hee had a second *Portia* to wife, and desired to meete him, that they might celebrate together the fiction, and the best dissembled truth that could be euer imagined. *Leonela*, as is said, stanchd her Ladies blood, which was iust as much as might serue to colour her inuention and no more, and washing the wound with some wine, shee tyed it vp the best that she could, saying such words whilest shee cured her, as were able, though  
nothing

nothing had beene done before, to make *Anselmo* beleue that he had an Image of honesty in *Camila* to the plants of *Leonela*: *Camila* added others, terming her selfe a Coward of base spirit, since she wanted time, (being a thing so necessary) to deprivue her life which shee hated so mortally, shee demanded counsell of her maiden whether shee would tell, or conceale all that successe to her beloued Spouse: and she answered that it was best to conceale it, lest she should ingage her husband to be reuenged on *Lothario*, which could not bee done without his very great perill, and that euery good wife was bound, not to giue occasion to her husband of quarrelling, but rather to remoue from him as many as was possible. *Camila* answered, that she allowed of her opinion, and would follow it: And that in any sort they must studie some deuiue to cloake the occasion of her hurt from *Anselmo*, who could not chuse but espie it. To this *Leonela* answered, that she her selfe knew not how to lie, no, not in very iest it selfe. Well, friend, quoth *Camila*, and I, what doe I know? for I dare not to forge, or report an vntruth, if my life lay on it. And if we knew not how to giue it a better issue, it will be better to report the naked truth, then to bee ouertaken in a leasing. Doe not trouble your selfe, Madame, quoth *Leonela*, for I will bethinke my selfe of somewhat betweene this and to morrow morning, and perhaps the wound may be concealed from him, by reason that it is in the place where it is, and heauen perhaps may bee pleased to fauour our so iust and honourable thoughts: Be quiet, good Madam, and labour to appease your alteration of mind, that my Lord at his returne may not finde you perplexed, and leaue all the rest to Gods and my charge, who doth alwaies assist the iust.

With highest attention stood *Anselmo* listening and beholding the Tragedie of his dying honours, which the personages thereof had acted with so strange and forceable effects, as it verily seemed that they were transformed into the opposite truth of their well contriued fiction: hee




longed greatly for the night, and leisure to get out of his house, that he might goe and congratulate with his good friend *Lothario*, for the precious Jewell that he had found in this last triall of his wife. The Mistresse and Mayden had as great care to give him the oportunitie to depart, and he fearing to lose it, issued out in a trice, & went presently to finde *Lothario*, who being found, it is not possible to recount the embracements hee gaue vnto him, the secrets of his contentment that hee reucaled, or the attributes and praises he gaue to *Camila*. All which *Lothario* heard, without giuing the least argument of loue; hauing represented to his minde at that very time, how greatly deceiued his friend liued, & how iniustly he himselfe had iniuried him. And although that *Anselmo* noted that *Lothario* tooke no delight at his relation, yet did he beleue that the cause of his sorrow proceeded from hauing left *Camila* wounded, & he himselfe giuen the occasion thereof. And therefore among many other words, said vnto him, that there was no occasion to grieue at *Camila's* hurt, it doubtlesly being but light; seeing shee and her mayde had agreed to hide it from him; and that according vnto this there was no great cause of feare, but that from thence-forward he should liue merrily and contentedly with him, seeing that by his industrie and meanes, hee found himselfe raised to the highest felicitie that might be desired: and therefore would from thenceforth spend his idle times in writing of verses in *Camila's* praise, that he might eternize her name, and make it famous in insuing ages. *Lothario* commended his resolution therein, and said that he for his part would also helpe to raise vp so Noble an edifice, and herewithall *Anselmo* rested the most soothingly and contentedly deceiued, that could be found in the world: and then himselfe tooke by the hand to his house (beleueing that hee bore the instrument of his glory) the vtter perdition of his fame. *Camila* entertained him with a frowning countenance, but a cheerefull minde, the fraude rested vnkowne a while, vntill at the end of certaine moneths, Fortune turned the wheele,

wheele, and the wickednesse that was so artificially cloaked, issued to the publike notice of the world, and *Anselmo* his impertinent curiositie cost him his life.

## C H A P. VIII.

*Wherein is ended the Historie of the curious impertinent : and likewise recounted the rough incounter and conflict passed betweene Don-Quixote and certaine bagges of red wine.*

 Little more of the nouell did rest vntread, when *Sancho Pança* all perplexed ranne out of the Chamber where his Lord reposed, crying as loud as hee could, Come, good Sirs, speedily, and assist my Lord, who is ingaged in one of the most terrible battels, that euer mine eyes haue scene. I sweare that hee hath giuen such a blow to the Giant, my Ladie the Princeesse *Micomicona* her enemye, as hee hath cut his head quite off as round as a Turnep.

What sayest thou, friend, quoth the Curate, (leauing off at that word to prosecute the reading of his nouell) art thou in thy wits, *Sancho*? What a Deuill, man, how can that be, seeing the Giant dwels at least two thousand leagues from hence? By this they heard a maruailous great noyse within the Chamber, and that *Don-Quixote* cried out aloud, Stay, false Thiefe; Robber, stay, for since thou art here, thy Simitar shall but little auaille thee: and therewithall it seemed that hee struck a number of mighty blowes on the wals. And *Sancho* said, There is no neede to stand this listening abroad, but rather that you goe in, and part the fray, or else assist my Lord; although I thinke it bee not very necessary: for the Giant is questionlesse dead by this, and giuing account for the ill life hee ledde: For I saw his blood runne all about the house, and his head cut off, which is as great as a great Wine-bagge. I am content to bee hewne in pieces, quoth the Inne-keeper,

hearing of this, it *Don-Quixote* or *Don-Dinell* haue not giuen some blow to one of the wine-bagges that stood filled at his beds-head, and the shed wine must needs bee that which seems bloud to this good man: and saying so, he entred into the roome, and all the rest followed him, where they found *Don-Quixote* in the strangest guise that may be imagined: hee was in his shirt, the which was not long enough before to couer his thighes, and it was sixe fingers shorter behinde: his legs were very long and leane, full of haire and horrible dirtie. Hee wore on his head a little red very greazy night-cap, which belonged to the In-keeper: hee had wreathed on his left arme the couerlet of his bedde, on which *Sancho* looked very often and angrily, as one that knew well the cause of his owne malice to it, and in his right hand he griped his naked sword, wherewithall hee laid round about him many a thwacke, and withall spake, as if hee were in battell with some Giant: and the best sport of all was, that he held not his eyes open, for he was indeed asleepe, and dreaming that hee was in fight with the Giant. For the imagination of the aduenture which he had vndertaken to finish, was so bent vpon it, as it made him to dreame that hee was already arriued at the Kingdome of Micomicon, and that he was then in combat with his enemy: and he had giuen so many blowes on the wine-bagges, supposing them to bee the Giant, as all the whole Chamber flowed with wine. Which being perceiued by the Oast, all inflamed with rage, he set vpon *Don-Quixote* with drie fists, & gaue vnto him so many blowes, that if *Cardenio* and the Curate had not taken him away, he would doubtlesly haue finished the warre of the Giant, & yet with all this did not the poore Knight awake, vntill the Barber brought in a great Kettle full of cold water from the Wel, & threw it all at a clap vpon him, and therewithall *Don-Quixote* awaked, but not in such sort as hee perceiued the manner wherein he was. *Dorotea* seeing how short and how thin her Champion was arrayed, would not goe into to see the conflict of her combatant and his aduersarie.

*Sancho*

*Sancho* went vp and downe the floore searching for the Giants head, and seeing that he could not finde it, he said, Now I doe see very well, that all the things of this house are enchantments, for the last time that I was here in this very same roome, I got many blowes and buffets, & knew not who did strike me, nor could I see any body: and now the head appeares not which I saw cut off with mine owne eyes, and yet the bloud ranne as swiftly from the body, as water would from a Fountaine. What bloud or what fountaine dost thou rattle of here, thou enemy of God and his Saints, quoth the In-keeper? thou thiefe, dost not thou see that the bloud and the fountaine is no other thing, then these wine-bags which are slashed here, and the wine red that swims vp and downe this Chamber? and I wish that I may see his soule swimming in Hell which did bore them. I know nothing, replied *Sancho*, but this, that if I cannot finde the Giants head, I shall become so vnfortunate, as mine Earledome will dissolue like salt cast into water. And certes, *Sancho* awake, was in worse case then his Matter sleeping, so much had his Lords promises distracted him. The In-keeper on the other side was at his wits end, to see the humour of the Squire, and unhappinesse of his Lord, and swore that it should not succeed with them now as it had done the other time, when they went away without payment: and that now the priuiledges of Chiuallrie should not auale him, but he should pay both the one and other, yea cuen for the very patches that were to be set on the bored wine-bagges.

The Curate held fast *Don-Quixote* by the hands, who beleeuing that he had atchieued the aduenture, and was after it come into the Princeesse *Micomicona* her presence, hee laid himselfe on his knees before the Curate, saying, " Well may your greatnesse, high, and famous Ladie, liue  
" from hence-forth secure from any danger, that this vn-  
" fortunate wretch may doe vnto you; and I am also freed  
" from this day forward from the promise that I made vn-  
" to you, seeing I haue by the assistance of the heauens,

“and through her fauour by whom I liue and breathe, so  
“happily accomplished it. Did not I say so, quoth *Sancho*,  
hearing of his Master? yea, I was not drunke: see, if my  
Master hath not powdred the Giant by this? the matter is  
questionlesse, and the Earle doine is mine owne. Who  
would not laugh at these rauiing fits of the Master and  
Man? all of them laughed saue the In-keeper, who gaue  
himselfe for anger to the Deuill more then a hundred  
times. And the Barber, *Cardenio* and the Curate got *Don-*  
*Quixote* to bed againe, not without much adoe, who pre-  
sently fell asleepe with tokens of maruailous wearinesse.  
They left him sleeping, and went out to comfort *Sancho*  
*Pança* for the grieffe he had, because he could not finde the  
Giants head: but yet had more adoe to pacifie the In-  
keeper, who was almost out of his wits for the vnexpected  
and sudden death of his wine-bagges.

The Oastesse on the other side went vp and downe whi-  
ning and saying, In an ill season and an vn lucky houre did  
this Knight Errant enter into my house, alas; and I would  
that mine eyes had neuer seene him, seeing hee costs mee so  
deare. The last time that hee was heere, hee went away  
scot-free for his supper, bedde, straw, and barley, both for  
himselfe and his man, his horse, and his Ass, saying, that he  
was a Knight aduenturous (and God giue to him ill ven-  
ture, and to all the other aduenturers of the world) and  
was not therefore bound to pay any thing, for so it was  
written in the Statutes of Chivalry. And now for his cause  
came the other Gentleman, and tooke away my good  
taile, and hath returned it me backe, with two quarters of  
damage. For all the haire is false off, and it cannot stand my  
husband any more in stead for the purpose he had it; and  
for an end and conclusion of all, to breake my wine-bags  
and shead my wine: I wish I may see as much of his bloud  
shed; And doe not thinke otherwise; for by my fathers  
old bones, and the life of my mother, they shall pay mee e-  
uery *doit*, one quart on another, or else I will neuer be cal-  
led as I am, nor be mine owne fathers daughter.

These

These and such like words spake the In-keepers wife with very great fury, and was seconded by her good servant *Maritornes*. The daughter held her peace, and would now and then smile a little: but Master Parson did quiet and pacifie all, by promising to satisfie them for the damages as well as hee might, as well for the wine as for the bagges, but chiefly for her taile, the which was so much accounted of, and valued so highly. *Dorotea* did comfort *Sancho*, saying to him, that whensoever it should be verified that his Lord had slaine the Giant, and established her quietly in her Kingdome, she would bestow vpon him the best Earledome thereof. With this he tooke courage, and assured the Princesse, that he himselfe had scene the Giants head cut off, and for a more certaine token thereof, he said, that he had a beard that reached him downe to his girdle; and that if the head could not now bee found, it was by reason that all the affaires of that house were guided by enchantment, as hee had made experience to his cost the last time that he was lodged therein. *Dorotea* replied, that she was of the same opinion, and bade him to be of good cheere, for all would bee well ended to his hearts desire. All parties being quieted, the Curate resolved to finish the end of his nouell, because hee perceiued that there rested but a little vnread thereof. *Cardenio*, *Dorotea*, and all the rest intreated him earnestly to finish it. And he desiring to delight them all herein, and recreate himselfe, did prosecute the tale in this manner:

It after befell, that *Anselmo* grew so satisfied of his wifes honestie, as hee led a most contented and secure life: and *Camila* did for the nonce looke sowerely vpon *Lothario*, to the end *Anselmo* might conser her mind amisse: and for a greater confirmation thereof, *Lothario* requested *Anselmo* to excuse his comming any more to his house, seeing that he cleere perceiued how *Camila* could neither brooke his company nor presence. But the hoodwink'd *Anselmo* answered him, that he would in no wise consent thereunto, and in this manner did weaue his owne dishonour a thou-



stand waies, thinking to worke his contentment. In this season such was the delight that *Leonela* tooke also in her affections, as she suffered her selfe to be borne away by them headlongly, without any care or regard confident, because her Ladie did cower it, yea, and sometimes instructed her how shee might put her desires in practice, without any feare or danger. But finally *Anselmo* heard on a night some body walke in *Leonela's* Chamber, and being desirous to know who it was, as he thought to enter, he felt the doore to be held fast against him, which gaue him a greater desire to open it, and therefore he struggled so long, and vsed such violence, as he threw open the dore, and entred iust at the time that another leaped out at the window; and therefore hee ranne out to ouertake him, or see wherein hee might know him, but could neither compasse the one or the other, by reason that *Leonela* embracing him hardly, with-held him and said, Pacific your self, good Sir, and be not troubled, nor follow him that was here, for hee is one that belongs to mee, and that so much as hee is my Spouse. *Anselmo* would not beleue her, but rather blinde with rage, he drew out his Ponyard, and would haue wounded her, saying, that she should presently tell him the truth, or else he would kill her. She distracted with feare, said, without noting her owne words, Kill mee not, Sir, and I will acquaint you with things which concerne you more then you can imagine. Say quickly then, quoth *Anselmo*, or else thou shalt die. It will bee impossible, replied *Leonela*, for me to speake any thing now I am so affrighted: but giue me respit till morning, and I will recount vnto you things that will maruellously astonish you, and in the meane time rest secure; that hee which leaped out of the window is a young man of this Citie, betwixt whom and me hath passed a promise of marriage. *Anselmo* was somewhat satisfied by these words, and therefore resolved to expect the terme which shee had demaunded to open her minde; for hee did not suspect that hee should heare any thing of *Camila*, by reason that hee was already so assured of  
her

her vertue : and so departing out of the chamber, and shutting vp *Leonela* therein, threatening her withall, that shee should neuer depart thence, vntill she had said all that shee promised to reueale vnto him. He went presently to *Camila*, to tell vnto her all that which his Mayden had said, and the promise she had passed, to disclose greater and more important things ; whether *Camila* hearing this, were perplexed or no, I leaue to the discrete readers iudgement : for such was the feare which she conceiued, beleeuing certainly (as it was to be doubted) that *Leonela* would tell to *Anselmo* all that she knew of her disloyalty, as she had not the courage to expect and see whether her surmise would become false or no : but the very same night, as soone as shee perceiued *Anselmo* to be asleepe, gathering together her best iewels and some money, she departed out of her house vnperceiued of any, and went to *Lothario's* lodging, to whom she recounted all that had past, and requested him either to leaue her in some safe place, or both of them to depart to some place, where they might liue secure out of *Anselmo's* reach. The confusion that *Camila* stricke into *Lothario*, was such, as he knew not what to say, and much lesse how to resolue himselfe what he might doe. But at last he determined to carrie *Camila* to a Monastery wherein his sister was Prioreffe; to which she easily condescended, and therefore *Lothario* departed, and left her there with all the speed that the case required, and did also absent himselfe presently from the Citie, without acquainting any body with his departure.

*Anselmo*, as soone as it was day, without heeding the absence of his wife, arose and went to the place where he had shut vp *Leonela*, with desire to know of her what she had promised to acquaint him withall : he opened the chamber dore and entred, but could finde no body therein, but some certaine sheetes knit together, and tied to the window as a certaine signe how *Leonela* had made an escape by that way. Wherefore he returned very sadde, to tell to *Camila* the aduenture; but when hee could neither finde  
her

her at bed, nor in the whole house, he remained astonied, and demanded for her of his seruants, but none of them could tell him any thing. And as he searched for her, he hapned to see her coffers lye open, and most of her Jewels wanting; and heere withall fell into the true account of his disgrace, and that *Unela* was not the cause of his misfortune, and so departed out of his house sad and pensue, euen as he was, halfe ready and vnapparelled to his friend *Lothario*, to recount vnto him his disaster: but when he found him to be likewise absented, and that the seruants told him how their Master was departed the very same night, and had borne away with him all his money, he was ready to runne out of his wits. And to conclude, he returned to his owne house againe, wherein he found no creature, man or woman, for all his folke were departed, and had left the house alone and desert: he knew not what he might thinke, say, or doe, and then his iudgement began to faile him. There he did contemplate and behold himselfe in an instant, without a wife, a friend, and seruants: abandoned (to his seeming) of heauen that couered him, and chiefly without honour; for he clearly noted his owne perdition in *Camila's* crime. In the end he resolued, after he had bethought himself a great while to go to his friends Village, wherein he had beene all the while, that he afforded the leisure to contriue that disaster; and so shutting vp his house, he mounted a horse-backe, and rode away in languishing and dolefull wise. And scarce had he ridden the halfe way, when he was so fiercely assaulted by his thoughts, as he was constrained to alight, and tying his horse to a tree, he leaned himselfe to the truake thereof, and breathed out a thousand pittifull and dolorous sighes: and there he abode vntill it was almost night; about which houre he espied a man to come from the Citie a horse-back by the same way, and hauing saluted him, he demanded of him what newes he brought from *Florence*? The Citizen repiied, The strangest that had hapned there many a day; for it is there reported publicly, that *Lothario* the great friend

friend of the rich man, hath carried away the said *Anselmo's* wife *Camila* this night; for shee is also missing: all which a Waiting-maid of *Camila's* hath confest, whom the gouernour apprehended yesternight, as she slipt downe at a window by a paire of sheets, out of the said *Anselmo's* house. I know not particularly the truth of the affaire, but well I wote, that all the Citie is amazed at the accident, for such a fact would not be as much as surmised, from the great & familiar amitie of them two, which was so much, as they were called, The two friends. Is it perhaps yet known, quoth *Anselmo*, which way *Lothario* and *Camila* haue taken? In no wise, replied the Citizen, although the Gouernour hath vsed all possible diligence to finde them out. Farewell then, good Sir, said *Anselmo*. And with you, Sir, said the traoueller: and so departed.

With these so vnfortunate newes poore *Anselmo* arrived, not only to termes of losing his wits, but also wel-nigh of losing his life: and therefore arising as well as he might, he came to his friends house, who had heard nothing yet of his disgrace; but perceiuing him to arrive, so wan, pyned and dried vp, he presently coniectured that some grieuous euill afflicted him. *Anselmo* requested him presently, that he might be carried to his chamber, and prouided of paper and inke to write withall: all was done, and he left in bed, and alone, for so he desired them; and also that the dore should be fast locked: and being alone, the imagination of his misfortune gaue him such a terrible charge, as he cleerely perceiued that his life would shortly faile him, and therefore resolu'd to leaue notice of the cause of his sudden and vnexpected death: and therefore he began to write it: but before he could set an end to his discourse, his breath fayled, and yeelded vp his life into the hands of sorrow, which his impertinent curiositie had stirred vp in him. The Gentleman of the house seeing that it grew late, and that *Anselmo* had not called, determined to enter, and know whether his indisposition passed forward: and he found him lying on his face, with half of his body in the bed,  
and

and the other halfe leaning on the table whereon he lay, with a written paper vnfolded, and held the pen also yet in his hand. His Oast drew neere vnto him, and first of all hauing called him, he tooke him by the hand: and seeing that he answered not, and that it was cold, he knew that he was dead: and greatly perplexed and griued thereat: he called in his people, that they might also be witnesses of the disastrous successe of *Anselmo*: and after all he tooke the paper and read it, which he knew to be written with his owne hand, the substance whereof was this:

*A foolish and impertinent desire hath spoiled me of life. If the newes of my death shall arrive to Camila, let her also know that I doe pardon her, for shee was not bound to worke miracles; nor had I any neede to desire that she should worke them. And seeing I was the builder and contriner of mine owne dishonour, there is no reason.*

Hitherunto did *Anselmo* write, by which it appeared, that his life ended in that point, ere he could set an end to the reason he was to giue. The next day insuing, the Gentleman his friend, acquainted *Anselmo's* kinsfolke with his death: the which had already knowledge of his misfortune, and also of the Monastery wherein *Camila* had retired her selfe, being almost in termes to accompany her husband in that forcible voyage; not for the newes of his death, but for griefe of others which shee had receiued of her absent friend. It is said, that although shee was a widow, yet would shee neither depart out of the Monasterie, nor become a religious woman, vntill shee had receiued within a few dayes after, newes how *Lothario* was slaine in a battell giuen by *Monsieur de Lautrec*, to the great Captaine *Gonzalo Fernandez*, of *Cordona*, in the Kingdome of *Naples*: and that was the end of the late repentant friend, the which being knowne to *Camila*, she made a profession, and shortly after deceased betweene the rigorous hands of sorrow and melancholie: and this was the end of them all, sprung from a rash and inconsiderate beginning.

This nouell, quoth the Curate, hauing read it, is a prettie  
ONE,

one; but yet I cannot perswade my selfe that it is true: and if it be a fiction, the Author erred therein: for it cannot be imagined, that any Husband would be so foolish, as to make so costly an experience, as did *Auselma*. But if this accident had bene deuised betwixt a Gentleman and his Loue, then were it possible; but being betweene Man and Wife, it containes somewhat that is impossible and vnlikely: but yet I can take no exception against the manner of recounting thereof.

---

C H A P. IX.

*Which treates of many rare Successes, befallne  
in the Inne.*

**W**Hilst they discoursed thus, the Inne-keeper, who stood all the while at the doore, said, Heere comes a faire troupe of Ghelts; and if they will here alight, wee may sing *Gaudeamus*. What folke is it, quoth *Cardenio*? Foure men on Horse-backe, quoth the Oast, and ride Gennet-wise, with Lances and Targets, and Maskes on their faces; and with them comes likewise a Woman, apparelled in white, in a side-Saddle, and her face also masked, and two Lackeys, that run with them afoot. Are they neere, quoth the Curate? So neere, replied the In-keeper, as they do now arriue. *Dorotea* hearing him say so, couered her face, and *Cardenio* entred into *Don-Quixotes* Chamber; and scarce had they leisure to doe it, when the others, of whom the Oast spake, entred into the Inne: and the foure Horsemen alighting, which were all of very comely and gallant disposition, they went to helpe downe the Lady that rode in the side-Saddle; and one of them taking her downe in his armes, did seat her in a Chaire that stood at the Chamber doore, into which *Cardenio* had entred: and all this while neyther shee, nor they, tooke off their Maskes, or spake a word, onely the Gentlewoman, at her sitting downe in the Chaire, breathed forth a very deepe sigh,



figh, and let fall her armes, like a sicke and dismayed person. The Lackeys carried away their Horses to the Stable. Master Curate seeing and noting all this, and curious to know what they were that came to the Inne in so vnwonted an attyre, and kept such profound silence therein, went to the Lackeys, and demanded of one of them that which he desired to know. Who answered him, In good faith, Sir, I cannot tell you what folke this is; only this I know, that they seeme to be very Noble, but chiefly he that went and tooke downe the Lady in his armes that you see there; and this I say, because all the others doe respect him very much, and nothing is done, but what hee ordaynes and commaunds. And the Lady, what is shee, quoth the Curate? I can as hardly informe you, quoth the Lackey, for I haue not once seene her face in all this Iourney; yet I haue heard her often grone, and breathe out so profound sighes, as it seemes shee would giue vp the ghost at euery one of them: And it is no maruell, that we should know no more then we haue said; for my companion and my selfe haue beene in their companie but two dayes: for they incountred vs on the way, and prayed and perswaded vs to goe with them vnto Andalusia, promising, that they would recompence our paines largely. And hast thou heard them name one another, said the Curate? No truly, answered the Lackey; for they all trauaile with such silence, as it is a wonder: for you shall not heare a word among them, but the sighs and throbs of the poore Lady, which doe moue in vs very great compassion. And we doe questionlesse perswade our selues, that she is forced wheresoeuer shee goes: and as it may be collected by her attyre, shee is a Nunne, or, as is most probable, goes to be one; and perhaps she goeth so sorrowfull as it seemes, because shee hath no desire to become religious. It may very well be so, quoth the Curate; and so leauing them, he returned to the place where he had left *Dorotea*: who hearing the disguised Lady to sigh so often, moued by the natieue compassion of that Sex, drew neere her, and said, What ayles you, good Madam? I pray you thinke if it be any

any of those inconueniencies to which women besubiect, and whereof they may haue vse and experience to cure them: I doe offer vnto you my seruice, assistance, and good will, to helpe you as much as lies in my power. To all these complements the dolefull Ladie answered nothing, and although *Dorotea* made her again larger offers of her seruice, yet stood shee euer silent, vntill the bemasked Gentleman (whom the Lackey said, the rest did obey) came ouer and said to *Dorotea*, Ladie, doe not trouble your selfe, to offer any thing to that woman, for she is of a most ingratefull nature, and is neuer wont to gratifie any curtesie, nor doe you seeke her to answer vnto your demands, if you would not heare some lie from her mouth. I neuer said any (quoth the silent Ladie) but rather because I am so true and sincere without guiles, I am now drowned here in those misfortunes, and of this I would haue thy selfe beare witnesse, seeing my pure truth makes thee to be so false and disloyal.

*Cardenio* ouerheard these words very cleere and distinctly, as one that stood so neere vnto her that said them, as onely *Don-Quixotes* chamber doore stood between them, and instantly when he heard them, he said with a very loud voyce, Good God, what is this that I heare? what voyce is this that hath touched mine eare? The Ladie moued with a sodaine passion, turned her head at those outcries, and seeing shee could not perceiue him that gaue them, she got vp, and would haue entred into the roome, which the Gentleman espying, withheld her, and would not let her stirre out of the place: and with the alteration and sodaine motion the Maske fell off her face, and shee discouered an incomparable beaurie, and an Angelicall countenance, although it was somewhat wanne and pale, and turned heere and there with her eyes to euery place so earnestly as shee seemed to be distracted: which motions without knowing the reason why they were made, stricke *Dorotea* and the rest that beheld her into very great compassion. The Gent. holding her very strongly fast by the shoulders, the Maske he wore on his owne face was falling; and he being  
to

so busied, could not hold it vp; but in the end fell wholly: *Dorotea*, who had likewise embraced the Ladie, lifting vp her eyes by chance, saw that he, which did also embrace the Ladie, was her Spouse *Don Fernando*: and scarce had she known him, when breathing out a long and most pittifull *Alas* from the bottome of her heart, she fell backward in a trance. And if the Barber had not bene by good hap at hand, she would haue falne on the ground with all the waight of her body. The Curate presently repaired to take off the waile of her face, and cast water thereon: and as soone as he did discouer it, *Don Fernando*, who was hee indeede that held fast the other, knew her, and looked like a dead man as soone as he viewed her, but did not all this while let goe *Luscinda*, who was the other whom he held so fast, and that laboured so much to escape out of his hands. *Cardenio* likewise heard the *Alas* that *Dorotea* said, when she fell into a trance, and beleeuing that it was his *Luscinda*, issued out of the chamber greatly altered, and the first he espied was *Don Fernando*, which held *Luscinda* fast; who forthwith knew him: and all the three, *Luscinda*, *Cardenio*, and *Dorotea*, stood dumbe and amazed, as folke that knew not what had befallne vnto them. All of them held their peace, and beheld one another. *Dorotea* looked on *Don Fernando*, *Don Fernando* on *Cardenio*, *Cardenio* on *Luscinda*, and *Luscinda* againe on *Cardenio*: but *Luscinda* was the first that broke silence, speaking to *Don Fernando* in this manner, Leau me off, Lord *Fernando*, I coniure thee, by that thou shouldest be, for that which thou art; if thou wilt not doe it for any other respect: let me cleaue to the wall, whose Iuie I am, to the supporter, from whom, neither thy importunitie nor threats, promises or gifts could once deslect me. Note how heauen, by vnusuall, vnfrequented, and from vs concealed waies, hath set my true Spouse before mine eyes; and thou dost know well by a thousand costly experiences, that onely death is potent to blot forth his remembrance out of my memory: let then so manifest truths be of power (if thou must doe none other) to con-

uert thine affliction into rage, and thy good will into des-  
pight, and therewithall end my life: for if I may render vp  
the ghost in the presence of my deare Spouse, I shall account  
it fortunately lost. Perhaps by my death he will remaine  
satisfied of the faith, which I euer kept sincere towards  
him, vntill the last period of my life. By this time *Dorotea*  
was come to her selfe, and listned to most of *Luscinda's*  
reasons, and by them came to the knowledge of her selfe:  
but seeing that *Don Fernando* did not yet let her depart  
from betweene his armes, nor answer any thing to her  
words, encouraging her selfe the best that she might, shee  
arose, and kneeling at his seete, and shedding a number of  
Cristall and penetrating teares, she spoke to him thus:

If it be not so, my Lord, that the beames of that Sunne  
which thou holdest eclipsed betweene thine armes, doe  
darken and deprive those of thine eyes, thou mightest haue  
by this perceiued, how she that is prostrated at thy feet, is  
the vnfortunate (vntill thou shalt please) and the disas-  
trous *Dorotea*. I am that poore humble countie-woman,  
whom thou either through thy bountie, or for thy pleasure  
didst deigne to raise to that height, that she might call thee  
her owne. I am she, which sometime immured within the  
limits of honestie, did lead a most contented life, vntill it  
opened the gates of her recollection and wearines, to thine  
importunitie, and seeming iust, and amorous requests, and  
rendred vp to thee the keyes of her libertie, a griefe by  
thee so ill recompenced, as the finding my selfe in so re-  
mote a place as this, wherein you haue met with mee, and  
I seene you, may cleerely testifie, but yet for all this, I  
would not haue you to imagine that I come heere, guided  
by dishonourable steps, being onely hither conducted by  
the tracts of dolour and feeling, to see my selfe thus  
forgotten by thee. It was thy will, that I should be thine  
owne, and thou didst desire it in such a manner, as although  
now thou wouldst not haue it so, yet canst not thou possi-  
bly leaue off to be mine. Know, my deare Lord, that the  
matchlesse affections that I do beare towards thee, may re-

compence and be equiualent to her beautie and nobilitie, for whom thou doest abandon mee. Thou canst not be the beautifull *Luscinda's*, because thou art mine : nor she thine, for as much as shee belongs to *Cardenio*, and it will bee more easie, if you will note it well, to reduce thy will to loue her that adores thee, then to addresse hers that hates thee, to beare thee affection : Thou diddest sollicite my wretchlesnesse ; thou prayedst to mine integritie, and wast not ignorant of my qualitie : thou knowest also very well vpon what termes I subiected my selfe to thy will, so as there remains no place, nor colour to terme it a fraud or deceit. And all this being so, as in veritie it is, and that thou beest as Christian, as thou art noble, why doest thou with these so many vntoward wreathings dilate the making of mine end happy, whose commencement thou diddest illustrate so much ? and if thou wilt not haue mee for what I am, who am thy true and lawfull Spouse ; yet at least take and admit me for thy slave, for so that I may be in thy possession, I will account my selfe happy and fortunate. Doe not permit that by leauing and abandoning me: meetings may be made to discourse of my dishonour. Doe not vex thus the declining yeeres of my parents, seeing that the loyall seruices which they euer haue done as vassalles to thine, deserue not so honest a recompence. And if thou esteemest that thy bloud by meddling with mine shall be stayned or embased : consider how few Noble houses, or rather none at al are there in the world, which haue not runne the same way : and that the womans side is not essentially requisite for the illustrating of Noble descents: how much more, seeing that true Nobilitie consists in vertue, which if it shall want in thee, by refusing that which thou owest me so iustly, I shall remaine with many more degrees of nobilitie then thou shalt. And in conclusion, that which I will lastly say, is, that whether thou wilt or no, I am thy wife, the witnesses are thine owne words, which neither should nor ought to lie, if thou doest prize thy selfe of that for whose want thou despisest me. Witness  
shall

shall also be thine owne hand-writing. Witnesse heauen, which thou didst inuoke to beare-witnesse of that which thou didst promise vnto me: and when all this shal faile, thy very conscience shall neuer faile from vsing clamours, being silent in thy mirth and turning, for this truth which I haue said to thee now, shall trouble thy greatest pleasure and delight.

These and many other like reasons did the sweetly grieved *Dorotea* vse with such feeling & abundance of teares, as all those that were present, as well such as accompanied *Don Fernando*, as all the others that did accompany her. *Don Fernando* listned to her without replying a word, vntill she had ended her speech, and giuen beginning to so many sighes and sobs, as the heart that could indure to behold them without moouing, were harder then brasse. *Luscinda* did also regard her, no lesse compassionate of her sorrow, then admired at her discretion and beautie: and although she would haue approched to her, & vsed some consolatorie words, yet was shee hindred by *Don Fernando's* armes, which held her still embraced; who full of confusion and maruell, after he had stood very attentiuely beholding *Dorotea* a good while, opening his armes, and leauing *Luscinda* free, said, Thou hast vanquished. O beautifull *Dorotea*, thou hast vanquished me. For it is not possible to resist or deny so many vaited truths. *Luscinda*, through her former trance and weakenesse, as *Don Fernando* left her, was like to fall, if *Cardenio*, who stood behind *Don Fernando* all the while, lest he should be knowne, shaking off all feare and indangering his person, had not started forward to stay her from falling: and clasping her sweetly between his armes, he said, If pittifull heauen be pleased, and would haue thee now at last take some ease, my loyall, constant and beautifull Ladie, I presume that thou canst not possesse it more securely, then betweene these armes which do now receiue thee, as whilome they did when fortune was pleased, that I might call thee mine owne. And then *Luscinda* first seuering her eyelids, beheld *Cardenio*, & hauing first taken notice of him by



his voyce, and confirmed it againe by her fight, like one quite distracted, without farther regarding modest respects, she cast both her armes about his necke, and joyning her face to his, said; Yea, thou indeed art my Lord: thou, the true owner of this poore captiue, howsoeuer aduerse fortune shall thwart it, or this life, which is only sustained and liues by thine, be euer so much threatned. This was a maruellous spectacle to *Don Fernando*, and all the rest of the beholders, which did vniuersally admire at this so vnexpected an euent: and *Dorotea* perceiuing *Don Fernando* to change colour, as one resolving to take reuenge on *Cardenio*, for he had set hand to his sword; which she conjecturing, did with marvellous expedition kneele, and catching hold on his legs, kissing them, she strained them with so louing embracements, as he could not stirre out of the place, and then with her eyes ouerflowne with teares, said vnto him, What meanest thou to do, my onely refuge in this vnexpected trance? Thou hast heere thine owne Spouse at thy feet, and her whom thou wouldst faine possesse, is betwene her owne husbands armes: iudge then whether it become thee, or is a thing possible to dissolue that which heauen hath knit, or whether it be any wise laudable to endeavour to raise and equall to thy selfe her, who contemning all dangers and inconueniences, and confirmed in faith and constancie, doth in thy presence bathe her eyes with amorous liquor of her true-Loues face & bosome. I desire thee for Gods sake, and by thine owne worths, I request thee, that this so notorious a verity may not onely assuage thy choler, but also diminish it in such sort, as thou mayest quietly and peaceably permit those two Louers to enioy their desires without any encumbrance, all the time that heauen shall grant it to them: and herein thou shalt shew the generositie of thy magnanimous and noble brest, and giue the world to vnderstand how reason preuaileth in thee, and domineereth ouer passion. All the time that *Dorotea* spoke thus to *Don Fernando*, although *Cardenio* held *Luscinda* betwene his armes, yet did he neuer take his eye off

*Don Fernando*, with resolution, that if he did see him once stir in his prejudice, he would labour both to defend himself, & offend his aduersary & al those that shuld ioyn with him to do him any harme as much as he could, although it were with the rest of his life : but *Don Fernando's* friends, the Curate and Barber who were present, and saw all that was past, repayred in the meane season, without omitting the good *Sancho Pança*, & all of them together compassed *Don Fernando*, intreating him to haue regard of the beautiful *Dorotea's* teares, & it being true (as they beleeued it was) which she had said, he should not permit her to remain defrauded of her so iust & lawful hopes: And that he shuld ponder how it was not by chance, but rather by the particular prouidence and disposition of the heauens, that they had all met together so vncexpectedly: And that he should remember, as Mr. Curat said very wel, that only death could seuer *Luscinda* from her *Cardenio*: And that although the edge of a sword might deuide & part them asunder, yet in that case they would account their death most happy, and that in irremediable euents, it was highest prudence, by straining & ouercomming himselfe, to shew a generous minde, permitting that he might conquer his owne will, they two should ioy that good, which heauen had already granted to them, and that he should conuert his eyes to behold the beautie of *Dorotea*, & he should see that few or none could for feature paragon with her; and much lesse excell her, and that he should confer her humility and extreme loue which she bore to him, with her other indowments; and principally, that if he gloried in the titles of Nobility or Christiannie, hee could not doe any other then accomplish the promise that he had past to her: and that by fulfilling it, hee should please God, and satisfie discret persons, which know very well, how it is a speciall prerogatiue of beautie, though it be in an humble and meane subiect, if it be consoorted with Modestie and Vertue, to exalt and equall it selfe to any dignitie, without disparagement of him which doth helpe to raise, or vniue it to himselfe. And when

the strong lawes of delight are accomplished (so that there intercurre no sinne in the acting thereof) he is not to bee condemned which doth follow them. Finally, they added to these reasons, others so many and forcible, that the valorous brest of *Don Fernando* (as commonly all those that are warmed and nourished by Noble blood are wont) was mollified, and permitted it selfe to bee vanquished by that truth which he could not denie though hee would: and the token that hee gaue of his being overcome, was to stoupe downe and imbrace *Dorotea*, saying vnto her, Arise, Ladie, for it is not iust that shee be prostrated at my feete, whose Image I haue crested in my minde, and if I haue not hitherto giuen demonstrations of what I now auerre, it hath perhaps befallne through the disposition of heauen, to the end that I might, by noting the constancie and faith wherewithall thou dost affect me, know after how to value and esteeme thee according vnto thy merits: and that which in recompence thereof I doe intreat of thee, is, that thou wilt excuse in me mine ill manner of proceeding, and exceeding carelesnesse in repaying thy good will. For the very occasion and violent passions that made mee to accept thee as mine, the very same did also impell mee againe not to be thine: and for the more verifying of mine assertion, doe but once behold the eyes of the now contented *Luscinda*, and thou mayest read in them a thousand excuses for mine errour: and seeing shee hath found and obtained her hearts desire; and I haue in thee also gotten what is most conuenient: for I wish she may liue securely and ioyfully, many and happy yeeres with her *Cardenio*, for I will pray (the same, that it will license mee to enioy my beloued *Dorotea*; and saying so, he embraced her againe, and ioyned his face to hers with so louely motion, as it constrained him to hold watch ouer his teares, lest violently bursting forth, they should giue doubtlesse arguments of his seruent loue, and remorse.

*Cardenio*, *Luscinda*, and almost all the rest could not doe so,

so, for the greater number of them shed so many teares, some for their priuate contentment, and others for their friends, as it seemed, that some gricuous and heauy misfortune had betided them all: euen very *Sancho Pança* wept, although hee excused it afterward, saying, That he wept only because that he saw that *Dorotea* was not the Queene *Micomicona*, as he had imagined, of whom hee hoped to haue receiued so great gifts and fauours. The admiration and teares ioyned, indured in them all for a pretty space, & presently after *Cardenio* and *Luscinda* went and knoeled to *Don Fernando*, yeelding him thanks for the fauour that he had done to them, with so courteous complements, as hee knew not what to answere; and therefore lifted them vp, and embraced them with very great affection and kinde-nesse; and presently after, hee demanded of *Dorotea* how she came to that place, so farre from her owne dwelling? And she recounted vnto him all that she had told to *Cardenio*: whereat *Don Fernando* and those which came with him tooke so great delight, as they could haue wished that her story had continued a longer time in the telling then it did: so great was *Dorotea's* grace in setting out of her misfortunes. And as soone as she had ended, *Don Fernando* told all that had befallne him in the Citie, after that he had found the scroule in *Luscinda's* bosome, wherein shee declared *Cardenio* to be her husband; and that he therefore could not marry her, and also how hee attempted to kill her, and would haue done it, were it not that her parents hindred him, and that hee therefore departed out of the house full of shame and despire, with resolution to reuenge himselfe more commodiously; and how hee vnderstood the next day following, how *Luscinda* was secretly departed from her fathers house, & gone no body knew where; but that he finally learned within a few moneths after, that she had entred into a certaine Monastery, with intention to remaine there all the daies of her life, if shee could not passe them with *Cardenio*: and that as soone as hee had learned that, choosing those three Gentlemen for his asso-

ciates, he came to the place where she was, but would not speake to her, fearing lest that as soone as they knew of his being there, they would increase the guards of the Monastery, and therefore expected vntill he found on a day the gates of the Monastery open; and leauing two of his fellows to keepe the doore, he with the other entred into the Abbey in *Luscinda's* search, whom they found talking with a Nunne in the Cloyster; and snatching her away ere she could retire her selfe, they brought her to a certaine Village, where they disguised themselues in that sort they were; for so it was requisite for to bring her away. All which they did with the more facility, that the Monastery was seated abroad in the fields, a good way from any Village. He likewise told, that as soone as *Luscinda* saw her selfe in his power, she fell into a swoone and that after shee had returned to her selfe, she neuer did any other thing but weepe and sigh, without speaking a word; and that in that manner, accompanied with silence and teares, they had arriued to that Inne, which was to him as gratefull as an arriuall to heauen, wherein all earthly mis-haps are concluded and finished.

## C H A P. X.

*Wherein is prosecuted the Historie of the famous Princeesse Micomicona, with other delightfull adventures.*

**S** Ancho gaue care to all this with no small griefe of minde, seeing that all the hopes of his Lordship vanished away like smoake, and that the faire Princeesse *Micomicona* was turned into *Dorotea*, and the Gyant into *Don Fernando*, and that his Master slept so soundly and carelesse of all that had hapned. *Dorotea* could not yet assure her selfe whether the happinesse that she posselt was a dreame, or no. *Cardenio* was in the very same taking, and also *Luscinda's* thought run the same race.

Don

Don Fernando yeelded many thanks vnto heauen for hauing dealt with him so propitiously, and vntwinded him out of the intricate *Labyrinth*, wherein straying, hee was at the point to haue lost at once his soule and credit, and finally, as many as were in the Inne, were very glad and ioyfull of the successe of so thwart, intricate, and desperate affaires. The Curate compounded and ordered all things through his discretion, and congratulated every one of the good hee obtayned: but shee that kept greatest *Iubilee* and ioy, was the Castesse for the promise that *Cardenio* and the Curate had made to pay her the damages and harmes committed by *Don-Quixote*; only *Sancho*, as we haue said, was afflicted, vnfortunate and sorrowfull. And thus hee entred with melancholy semblance to his Lord, who did but then awake, and said to him,

Well and securely may you sleepe, *Sir Knight of the beaues countenance*, as long as it shall please your selfe, without troubling your selfe with any care of killing any Gyant, or of restoring the Queene to her Kingdome: for all is concluded and done already. I belecue thee very easily, replied *Don-Quixote*, for I haue had the monstrouslest and most terrible battell with that Gyant, that euer I thinke to haue all the dayes of my life with any; and yet with one thwart blow-thwacke, I ouerthrew his head to the ground: and there issued so much blood, as the streames thereof ranne along the earth, as if they were of water. As if they were of red Wine, you might better haue said, replied *Sancho Pança*: for I would let you to vnderstand, if you know it not already, that the dead Gyant is a bored wine-bagge: and the blood, six and thirty gallons of red Wine, which it contayned in his belly: the head that was slasht off so neatly, is the Whoore my Mother and let the Deuill take all away for mee. And what is this thou sayest, mad man (quoth *Don-Quixote*?) Art thou in thy right wits? Get vp, *Sir* (quoth *Sancho*) and you your selfe shall see the faire stuffe you haue made, and what we haue to pay, and you shall behold the Queene trans-



transformed into a particular Lady, called *Dorotea*, with other successes, which if you may once conceiue them aright, will strike you into admiration. I would maruell at nothing, quoth *Don-Quixote*, for if thou bee'st well remembred, I told thee the other time that wee were here, how all that succeeded in this place, was done by enchantment, and what wonder then if now the like should e'stoones befall? I could easily be induced to beleue all, replied *Sancho*, if my canuassing in the Couerlet were of that nature. But indeed it was not, but most reall and certaine. And I saw well how the Inkeeper that is here yet this very day aliue, held one end of the Couerlet, and did toss me vp towards heauen with very good grace and strength, no lesse merrily then lightly: and where the notice of parties intercur's, I doe beleue, although I am a simple man, and a sinner, that there is no kind of enchantment, but rather much trouble, brusing and misfortune. Well, God will remedie all, said *Don-Quixote*, and giue me mine apparrell, for I will get vp and goe forth, and see those successes and transformations which thou speakest of. *Sancho* gaue him his cloathes, and whilst he was a making of him ready, the Curate recounted to *Don-Fernando* and to the rest, *Don-Quixotes* mad pranks, and the guile hee had vsed to bring him away out of the poore Rocke, wherein he imagined that hee liued exiled through the disdain of his Lady. Hee told them moreouer all the other aduentures, which *Sancho* had discovered, whereat they did not laugh a little and wonder withall, because it seemed to them all to be one of the extrauagantest kinds of madnesse, that euer befell a distracted braine. The Curate also added, that seeing the good successe of the Lady *Dorotea* did impeach the farther prosecuting of their designe, that it was requisite to inuent and finde some other way, how to carry him home to his owne Village. *Cardenio* offered himselfe to prosecute the aduenture, and *Luscinda* should represent *Doroteas* person. No, quoth *Don-Fernando*, it shall not be so, for I will haue *Dorotea* to prosecute her owne inuention. For so that the Village of this good Gentleman

tleman be not very farre off from hence, I will be very glad to procure his remedy. It is no more then two dayes iourney from hence, said the Curat. Well, though it were more, replied *Don Fernando*, I would be pleased to trauell them, in exchange of doing so good a worke. *Don-Quixote* salyled out at this time completely armed with *Adambrinos* Helmet, (although with a great hole in it) on his head, his Target on his arme, and leaned on his Trunke or Iaueline: his strange countenance and gate amazed *Don Fernando* & his companions very much, seeing his illfaoured visage so withered and yellow, the inequality and insutability of his armes, and his graue manner of proceeding; and stood all silent to see what he would: who casting his eyes on the beautiful *Dorotea*, with very great grauitie & staydnes said:

I am informed (beautiful Lady) by this my Squire, that your greatnesse is annihilated, and your being destroyed: for of a Queene and mightie Princeesse which you were wont to be, you are now become a particular Damzell: which if it hath bene done by particular order of the Magicall King your Father, dreading that I would not bee able to giue you the necessarie and requisite helpe for your restitution; I say, that he neither knew nor doth know the one halfe of the enterprife, and that hee was very little acquainted with Histories of Chiuallrie: for if he had read them, or passed them ouer with so great attention and leasure, as I haue done and read them, hee should haue found at euery other step, how other Knights of a great deale lesse fame then my selfe, haue ended more desperate aduentures, seeing it is not so great a matter to kill a Gyant, be he euer so arrogant: for it is not many houres since I my selfe fought with one, and what ensued I will not say, lest they should tell me that I doe lie: but time the detector of all things will discloie it, when wee doe least thinke thereof. Thou soughtest with two wine-bags, and not with a Gyant, quoth the Oast at this season. But *Don Fernando* commanded him to be silent, and not interrupt *Don-Quixote* in any wise, who prosecuted his speech, saying, In fine I say, high

high and disinherited Lady, that if your Father hath made this *Metamorphosis* in your person for the causes related, giue him no credit: for there is no perill so great on earth, but my sword shall open a way thorow it, wherewithall I ouerthrowing your enemies head to the ground, will set your Crowne on your owne head within a few dayes. Here *Don-Quixote* held his peace, and awaited the Princess her aniwere, who knowing *Don Fernando's* determination and will, that shee should continue the commenced guile vntill *Don-Quixote* were carried home againe, answered with a vere good grace and countenance in this manner: Whosoeuer informed you, valourous Knight of the ill-fauored Face, that I haue altered and changed my being, hath not told you the truth: for I am the very same to day, that I was yesterday: true it is, that some vnexpected, yet fortunate successes haue wrought some alteration in mee, by bestowing on me better hap, then I hoped for, or could wish my selfe: but yet for all that, I haue not left off to bee that which before, or to haue the very same thoughts, which I euer had, to helpe my selfe by the valour of your most valorous and inuincible arme. And therefore I request you, good my Lord, of your accustomed bounty, to returne my Father his honour againe, and account of him as of a very discrete and prudent man; seeing that he found by this skill, so easie and so infallible a way to redresse my disgraces. For I doe certainly belecue, that if it had not beene by your meanes, I should neuer haue hapned to attaine to the good fortune, which now I possesse, as all those Noblemen present may witnesse: what therefore rests, is, that to morrow morning wee doe set forward, for to day is now already so ouergone, as wee should not be able to trauaile very farre from hence, as for the conclusion of the good successse that I doe hourelly expect, I referre that to God, and the valour of your inuincible arme.

Thus much the discreet *Dorotea* said, and *Don-Quixote* hauing heard her, hee turned him to *Sancho* with very manifest

manifest tokens of indignation, and said, Now I say vnto thee little, *Sancho*, that thou art the veryest rascall that is in all Spaine: tell me, thiefe and vagabond, didst not thou but euen very now say vnto mee, that this Princeesse was turned into a Damzell, and that, called *Dorotea*? and that the head which I thought I had flased from a Giants shoulders, was the whore which bore thee? with a thousand other follies, which did plunge mee into the greatest confusion that euer I was in, in my life? I vow (and then he looked vpon heauen, and did crash his teeth together) that I am about to make such a wracke on thee, as shall beate wit into the pates of all the lying Squires that shall euer hereafter serue Knights Errant in this world. I pray you haue patience, good my Lord, answered *Sancho*, for it may very well befall me, to bee deceiued in that which toucheth the transmutation of the Ladie and Princeesse *Micomicona*: but in that which concerneth the Giants head, or at least the boring of the wine-baggies, and that the bloud was but red wine, I am not deceiued, I sweare. For the baggies lie yet wounded there within at your owne bed-head: and the red wine hath made a Lake in the Chamber: and if it bee not so, it shall be perceiued at the frying of the Egges, I meane, that you shall see it, when Master In-keepers worship, who is heere present, shall demand the losse and dammage. I say then, *Sancho*, quoth *Don-Quixote*, that thou art a mad-cap: pardon me, and so it is enough. It is enough indeed, quoth *Don Fernando*: and therefore let me intreate you to say no more of this: and seeing my Ladie the Princeesse saies she will goe away to morrow, seeing it is now too late to depart to day, let it be so agreed on, and we will spend this night in pleasant discourses, vntill he approach of the insuing day, wherein wee will all accompany and attend on the worthy Knight Sir *Don-Quixote*, because we would be eye-witneses of the valorus and vmatchable feates of armes, which he shall doe in the pursuit of this weightie enterprize, which hee hath taken vpon him. I am hee that will serue and accompany you,

you, good my Lord, replied *Don-Quixote*, and I doe highly gratifie the honour that is done me, and the good opinion that is held of me, the which I will indeuour to verifie and approue, or it shall cost me my life, or more, if more it might cost me.

Many other words of complement and gratification past betweene *Don-Quixote* and *Dou Fernando*: but a certaine passenger imposed silence to them all, by his arriual to the Inne, in that very season, who by his attire shewed that he was a Christian newly returned from among the Moores, for hee was apparelled with a short skirted cas-socke of blue cloth, sleeues reaching downe halfe the arme, and without a coller; his breeches were likewise of blue linnen, & he wore a bonnet of the same colour, a payre of Date-colour buskins, and a Turkish Simitar hanging at his necke in a scarfe: which went athwart his brest: there entred after him riding on an Asse a woman clad like a Moore, and her face couered with a piece of the Vaile of her head, she wore on her head a little cap of cloth of gold, and was couered with a little Turkish mantle, from the shoulders downe to the feete. The man was of strong and comely making, of the age of fortie yeeres or thereabouts, his face was somewhat tanned, he had long *Mosstacheos*, and a very handsome beard. To conclude his making was such, as if he were well attired, men would take him to be a person of quality, and good birth: hee demanded a Chamber as soone as he had entred: and being answered that there was no one vacant in the Inne, he seemed to bee grieued; and comming to her which in her attire deuoted her selfe to be a Moore, he tooke her downe from her Asse. *Luscinda*, *Dorotea*, the Oastesse, her daughter, and *Mari-tornes*, allured to behold the new and strange attire of the Moore, compassed her about; and *Dorotea*, who was alwaies most gracious, courteous, and discrete, deeming that both shee and he that had brought her, were discontented for the want of a lodging, she said, Ladie, be not grieued for the trouble you are heere like to endure or  
vnt

want of meanes to refresh your selfe, seeing it is an vniuersall and vsuall vice of all Ianes to be defectiue herein : yet notwithstanding if it shall please you to passe away the time among vs ( pointing to *Luscinda* ) perhaps you haue met in the discourse of your trauels, other worse places of intertainment then this shall proue. The disguised Lady made none answer, nor other thing then arising from the place wherein shee sate, and setting both her hands acrossse on her bosome, shee inclined her head, and bowed her bodie, in signe that she rendred them thanks : by her silence they doubtlesly coniectured her to bee a Moore, and that she could not speake the Castilian tongue. In this the captiue arriued, who was otherwise imployed vntill then, and seeing that they all had inuironed her that came with him, and that shee made no answer to their speech, he said, Ladies, this Maiden scarce vnderstands my tongue yet, nor doth shee know any other then that of her owne Countrey; and therefore shee hath not, nor can make any answer to your demands. Wee demand nothing of her, quoth *Luscinda*, but onely doe make her an offer of our companies for this night, & part of her room where we our selues are, shall be accommodated, where she shall be cherished vp as much as the commodity of this place, and the Obligation wherein wee bee tied to shew courtesies to strangers that may want it, doe binde vs, especially shee being a woman, to whom we may doe this seruice. Sweet Lady, I kisse your hands both for her and my selfe, replied the captiue, and I do highly prize, as it deserueth, the fauor you haue proffered, which in such an occasion, and offred by such persons as you seeme to be, doth very plainly shew how great it is. Tell me, good Sir, quoth *Dorotea*, whether is this Lady a Christian or a Moore? for by her attire & silence she makes vs suspect that shee is, that we would not wish she were. A Moore she is in attire & body, answered the captiue : but in mind shee is a very seruient Christian, for she hath very expressely desired to become one. Then she is not yet baptized, said *Luscinda*? there hath beene no opportunity



oportunitie offered to vs, quoth the captiue, to christen her, since she departed from *Argell*, which is her Towne and Country: and since that time shee was not in any so eminent a danger of death, as might oblige her to bee baptized, before shee were first instructed in all the ceremonies which our holy Mother the Church commandeth: but I hope shortly (if it shall please God) to see her baptized with that decency, which her quality and calling deserves, which is greater then her attire or mine makes shew of.

These words inflamed all the hearers with a great desire to know, who the Moore and her captiue were; yet none of them would at that time intreate him to satisfie their longing, because the season rather invited them to take some order how they might rest after their trauailes, then to demand of them the discourse of their liues. *Dorotea* then taking her by the hand, caused her to sit downe by her selfe, and prayed her to take off the veile from her face. She instantly beheld the Captiue, as if she demanded of him, what they said; and he in the Arabicall language told her, how they desired her to discover her face, & bade her to doe it: which presently shee did, and discovered so beautifull a visage, as *Dorotea* esteemed her to bee fairer then *Luscinda*, and *Luscinda* prized her to excell *Dorotea*: and all the beholders perceiued, that if any one could surpassse them both in Beautie, it was the Moore, & there were some that thought shee excelled them both in some respects. And as beautie hath euermore the prerogatiue and grace to reconcile mens minds, and attra&t their wils to it; so all of them forthwith dedicated their desires to serue and make much of the louely Moore. *Don Fernando* demanded of the Captiue, how shee was called: and hee answered, that her name was *Lela Zoraida*: and as soone as she heard him, and vnderstood what they had demanded, she suddenly answered with anguish, but yet with a very good grace, No, not *Zoraida*, but *Maria, Maria*: giuing them to vnderstand that shee was called *Maria*, and not *Zoraida*.

These

These words and the great affect and vehemencie wherewithall the Moore deliuered them, extorted more then one teare from the hearers, especially from the women, who are naturally tender-hearted and compassive. *Luscinda* embraced her then with great loue, and said, *I, I, Maria, Maria*. To which shee answered, *I, I, Maria; Zoraida mancuengo*: that is, and not *Zoraida*, By this it was growne some foure of the clocke in the afternoone, and by order of those which were *Don Ferdinando's* companions, the In-keeper had provided for them as good a beauer as the Inne could in any wise afford vnto them. Therefore it being the houre, they sate downe all together at a long table, for there was neuer a square or round one in all the house, and they gaue the first and principall end (although he refused it as much as hee could) to *Don-Quixote*, who commanded that the Ladie *Micomicona* should sit at his elbow, seeing he was her Champion: presently were placed *Luscinda*, and *Zoraida*, and *Don Fernando*, and *Cardenio* right ouer against them, and after, the Captiue and other Gentlemen, and on the other side the Curate and Barber: and thus they made their drinking with very great recreation, which was the more augmented to see *Don-Quixote*, leauing of his meate, and moued by the like spirit of that which had made him once before talke so much to the Goate-heards, beginne to offer them an occasion of speech in this manner:

Truely, good Sirs, if it be well considered, those which professe the order of Knight-hood, doe see many great, and v unexpected things. If it bee not so, say, what mortall man aloue is there, that entring in at this Castle gate, and seeing of vs all in the manner wee be now present here, can iudge and beleue that we are those which we be? who is it that can say, that this Ladie which sits here at my sleeue, is the great Queene that wee all know her to bee, and that I am that *Knight of the Heauie Countenance*, that am so much blab'd of abroad by the mouth of fame? therefore it cannot be now doubted, but that this art and

exercise excelleth all the others which euer humane wit, the vnderminer of Nature inuented, and it is the more to be prized, by how much it exposeth it selfe, more then other trades, to dangers and inconueniences. Away with those that shall affirme learning to surpasse armes, for I will say vnto them, be they what they list, that they know not what they say. For the reason which such men doe most vrge, and to which they most rely, is, that the trauailes of the spirit doe farre exceed those of the body : and that the vse of armes are onely exercised by the body, as if it were an office fit for Porters, for which nothing were requisite but bodily forces, or as if in that which we that profess it doe call armes, were not included the acts of Fortitude, which require deepe vnderstanding to execute them, or as if the Warriours minde did not labour as well as his body, who had a great armie to leade and command, or the defence of a besieged Citie. If not, see if he can arriue by his corporall strength, to know or sound the intent of his enemy, the designs, stratagems, and difficulties, how to prevent imminent dangers, all these being operations of the vnderstanding, wherein the body hath no meddling at all; it being therfore so, that the exercise of armes require spirit as well as those of learning; let vs now examine which of the two spirits, that of the Scholler, or Souldier, doe take most paine? And this may be best vnderstood by the end, to which both of them are addressed, for that intention is most to be esteemed, which hath for obiekt the most Noble end. The end and conclusion of learning is, I speake not now of Diuinitie, whose scope is to leade and addresse soules to heauen, for to an end so much without end as this, no other may be compared, I meane of humane sciences and arts, to maintaine *distributive iustice* in his perfection, and giue to euery one that which is his owne: to indeuour and cause good Lawes to be religiously obserued; an end most certainly, generous, high, and worthy of great praise: but not of so much as that, to which the exercise of armes is annex, which hath for his obiekt and  
end,

end, peace : which is the greatest good men can desire in this life : and therefore the first good newes that euer the world had, or men receiued, were those which the Angels brought on that night which was our day when they sung in the skies : *Glorie be in the heights, and peace on earth, to men of good mindes.* And the salutation which the best Master that euer was on earth or in heauen, taught to his Disciples and fauourites, was that, when they entred into any house, they should say, *Peace be to this house*: and many other times hee said, *I giue vnto you my peace; I leane my peace vnto you: peace bee amongst you*: It is a good, as precious as a Iewell, and a gift giuen, and left by such a hand: a Iewell, without which neither on earth or in heauen can there be any perfect good. This peace is the true end of warre, for armes, and warre are one and the selfe same things. This truth being therefore presupposed, that the end of warre is peace, and that herein it doth excell the end of learning: let vs descend to the corporall labours of the Scholler, and to those of him which professeth armes, and consider which of them are more toilsome.

*Don-Quixote* did prosecute his discourse in such sort, & with so pleasing termes, as hee had almost induced his audients to esteeme him, to bee at that time at least, exempt from his frenzie: and therefore by reason that the greater number of them were Gentlemen, to whom the vse of armes is in a manner essentiall & proper, they did willingly listen to him, and therefore he continued on with his discourse in this manner: I say then that the paines of the Student are commonly these: principally pouerty (not that I would maintaine that all Students are poore, but that I may put the case in the greatest extremity it can haue) and by saying that he may be poore, mee thinks there may bee no greater aggrauation of his misery. For hee that is poore, hath no perfection: and this pouerty is suffered by him sundry waies, sometimes by hunger, other times by cold or nakednesse, and many times by all of them together.

Yet it is neuer so extreme, but that he doth eate, although it bee somewhat later then the custome; or of the scraps and reuersion of the rich man: and the greatest misery of the Student is that which they terme, to liue by sops and portage: and though they want fire of their owne, yet may they haue recourse to their Neighbours chimney, which if it doe not warme, yet will it weaken the cold; and finally, they sleepe at night vnder a roose. I will not descend to other trifles, to wit, the want of shirts and shoo's, the barenesse of their clothes, or the ouerloading of their stomacks with meate, when good fortune lends them as good a meale: for by this way which I haue decyphered so rough and difficult, stumbling here, falling there, getting vp againe on the other side, and refalling on this, they attaine the degree which they haue desired so much, which many hauing compassed as wee haue seene, which hauing passed thorow these difficulties, and sailed by Scylla and Charibdis (borne away flying in a manner by fauourable fortune) they command and gouerne all the world from a chaire, turning their hunger into facietie, their nakednesse into pompe, and their sleeping on a Matte, into a sweet repose among Hollands and Damaske: a reward iustly merited by their Vertue; but their labours confronted and compared to those of the militant Souldier, remaine very far behinde, as I will presently declare.

---

#### C H A P. XI.

*Treating of the curious discourse made by Don-Quixote  
vpon the exercises of Armes and Letters.*

**D***On-Quixote* continuing his discourse, said, Seeing wee beginne in the Student with pouerty and her parts, let vs examine whether the Souldier bee richer? Certainly wee shall finde, that no man can exceede the Souldier in pouerty it selfe. For hee is tyed to his wretched  
pay

pay which comes either late or neuer : or else to his owne shifts with notable danger of his life & conscience, & his nakednesse is oft-times so much, as many times a leather-lerken gashed, serues him at once for a shirt and an ornament : and in the midst of Winter he hath sundry times no other defence or helpe to resist the inclemencies of the ayre in the midst of the open fields, then the breath of his mouth ; which I verily beleue doth against Nature come out cold, by reason it sallies from an emptie place : expect there till the night fall, that hee may repaire all these discommodities, by the easinesse of his bed, the which if it be not through his owne default, shall neuer offend in narrownesse, for he may measure out for it on the earth as many foot as he pleaseth, and tumble himselfe vp and downe in it, without indangering the wrinkling of his sheetes. Let after all this the day and houre arriue, wherein hee is to receiue the degree of his profession. Let, I say, a day of battaile arriue, for there they will set on his head the Cappe of his dignitie, made of lints to cure the wound of some bullet that hath past thorow and thorow his Temples, or hath maimed an arme or a legge, and when this doth not befall, but that heauen doth piously keepe and preserue him whole and sound, hee shall perhaps abide still in the same pouerty wherein he was at the first ; and that it be requisite that one and another battell doe succed, and hee come of euer a victour, to the end that he may prosper, and be at the last aduanced. But such miracles are but few times wrought, and say, good Sirs, if you haue noted it, how few are those which the wars reward, in respect of the others that it hath destroyed ? You must answer, without question, that there can bee no comparisn made betweene them, nor can the dead be reduced to any number, but al the liuing and such as are aduanced, may be counted easily with three Arithmetical figures ; all which falls out contrary in Learned men, for all of them haue wherewithall to entertaine and maintain themselves by skirts, I will say nothing of sleeues : So that although the Souldiers la-



bour is greater, yet is his reward much lesse. But to this may be answered, that it is easier to reward two hundred thousand Learned men, then thirty thousand Souldiers; for they may bee aduanced by giuing vnto them offices which must of necessity be bestowed on men of their profession: but Souldiers cannot bee recompensed otherwise then by the Lords substance and wealth whom they serue; and yet this obiection and impossibility doth fortifie much more my assertion.

But leauing this apart which is a Labyrinth of very difficult issue, let vs returne to the preeminency of armes ouer learning, which is a matter hitherto depending, so many are the reasons that euery one alleageth for himselfe: and among those which I my selfe haue repeated, then learning doth argue thus for it selfe, that armes without it cannot be long maintained, for as much as the warre hath also Lawes, and is subiect to them, and that the Lawes are contained vnder the Title of Learning, and belong to Learned men. To this obiection, Armes doe make answere, that the Lawes cannot bee sustained without them, for Common-wealths are defended by armes, and Kingdomes preserved, Cities fenced, High-waies made safe, the Seas freed from Pirates: and to bee brieue, if it were not for them, Commonwealths, Kingdomes, Monarchies, Cities, and wayes by Sea and Land, would be subiect to the rigour and confusion which attendeth on the warre all the time that it indureth, and is licensed to practise his prerogatiues and violence: And it is a knowne truth, that it which cost most, is or ought to bee most accounted of, that one may become eminent in learning, it costs him time, watchings, hunger, nakednesse, head-aches, rawnesse of stomake, and other such inconueniences, as I haue partly mentioned already. But that one may arriue by true termes to be a good Souldier, it costs him al that it costs the Student, in so exceeding a degree, as admits no comparison, for he is at euery steppe in ioperdie to lose his life. And what feare of necessity, or pouerty, may befall or molest a  
Student

Student so fiercely as it doth a souldier, who seeing himself at the siege of some impregnable place, & standing Centinel in some Raueline or halfe Moone, sees the enemies vndermining neere to the place where he is, and yet dares not to depart or abandon his stand, vpon any occasion whatsoever, or shun the danger which so neerly threatens him? but that which he onely may doe, is to aduise his Captaine of that which passeth, to the end hee may remedy it by some countermine, whilest he must stand stil fearing & expecting when he shall suddenly fly vp to the clouds without wings, and after descend to the depths against his will. And if this appeare to be but a small danger, let vs waigh whether the grappling of two Gallies, the one with the other in the midst of the spacious Maine, may be compared, or doe surpasse it, the which nailed and graped fast the one to the other, the Souldier hath no more room in them, then two foot broad of a planke on the battellings, and notwithstanding, although he clearly see laid before him so many ministers of death, for al the Peeces of Artillery that are planted on the aduerse side, doe threaten him, and are not distant from his body the length of a Lance; and seeing that if he slipt euer so little aside, he should fall into the deepes; doth yet neuertheless with vndanted heart, borne away on the wings of honour, which spurreth him onward, oppose himselfe as a worke to all their shot, and striues to passe by that so narrow a way into the enemies vessell: And what is most to bee admired, is to behold how scarce is one false into that place; from whence hee shall neuer after arise vntill the worlds end, when another takes possession of the same place: and if hee doe likewise tumble into the Sea, which gapes like an enemy for him also, another and another will succeed vnto him, without giuing any respite to the times of their death, valour, and boldnesse, which is the greatest that may bee found among all the traunces of war-fare. Those blessed ages were fortunate, which wanted the dreadfull furie of the deuilish and murdering Peeces of Ordnance, to whose inuentor I am verily

perswaded that they render in hell an eternall guerdon for his Diabollicall inuention; by which he hath giuen power to an infamous, base, vile and dastardly arme, to bereaue the most valorous Knight of life; and that without knowing how or from whence in the midst of the stomacke and courage, that inflames and animates valorous mindes, there arriues a wandring bullet (shot off perhaps by him that was afraid, and fled at the very blaze of the powder, as he discharged the accursed engine) and cuts off and finisheth in a moment the thoughts and life of him who merited to enioy it many ages.

And whilst I consider this, I am about to say, That it grieues mee to haue euer vndertaken the exercise of a Knight Errant in this our detestable age; for although no danger can affright me, yet notwithstanding I live in jealousy, to thinke how Powder and Lead might deprive me of the power to make my selfe famous and renowned by the strength of mine arme, and edge of my sword thorough the face of the earth. But let heauen dispose as it pleaseth: for so much the more shall I bee esteemed, if I can compassse my pretentions, by how much the dangers were greater, to which I opposed my selfe, then those achieued in foregoing times by Knights aduenturous.

*Don-Quixote* made all this prolix speech, whilst the rest of his company did eate, wholly forgetting to taste one bit, although *Sancho Pança* did now and then put him in remembrance of his victuals, saying, That he should haue leisure enough after, to speake as much as he could desire. In those that had heard, was againe renewd a kinde of compassion, to see a man of so good a wit as hee seemed to be, and of so good discourse in all the other matters which he tooke in hand, to remaine so cleerely deuoyd of it, when any occasion of speech were offered, treating of his accursed Chiuallrie. The Curate applauded his discourse, affirming that he produced very good reasons for all that hee had spoken in the fauour of armes, and that hee himselfe (although hee was learned and Graduated) was likewise  
of

of his opinion. The Beauer being ended, and the table-clothes taken away, whilst *Maritornes* did helpe her Mistress and her daughter to make ready the roome where *Don-Quixote* had slept, for the Gentlewomen, wherein they alone might retire themselves that night. *Don Fernando* intreated the captiue to recount vnto them the Historie of his life, for as much as he suspected that it must haue beene rare and delightfull, as he gathered by the tokens he gaue, by comming in the louely *Zoraydas* company. To which the captiue replied, that he would accomplish his desire with a very good will, and that onely he feared that the discourse would not prooue so fauourable as they expected. But yet for all that he would tell it, because hee would not disobey him. The Curate and all the rest thanked him for his promise, and turned to request him againe to begin his discourse; and he perceiving so many to sollicite him, said, that prayers were not requisite, when commandments were of such force: and therefore I desire you, quoth he, to be attentive, and you shall heare a true discourse, to which perhaps no fained inuention may be compared for variety or delight. The rest animated by these his words, did accommodate themselves with very great silence, and he beholding their silence and expectation of his Historie, with a modest and pleasing voyce, began in this manner.

## C H A P. XII.

*Wherein the Captiue recounteth his life, and other accidents.*

**I**N a certain Village of the Mountaines of *Lion*, my lineage had beginning, wherewithall nature dealt much more liberally then fortune, although my father had the opinion amidst the penury and pouertie of that people, to be a rich man, as indeed he might haue beene, had he but vsed as much care

to hoord vp his wealth, as prodigalitie to spend it. And this his liberall disposition proceeded from his being a souldier in his youthfull yeeres: for warre is the Schoole wherein the Miser is made franke, and the franke man prodigall: and if among souldiers we finde some wretches and niggards, they are accounted Monsters which are seldom seene. My father passed the bounds of liberalitie, and touched very neerely the confines of prodigalitie; a thing nothing profitable for a married man, who had children that should succeed him in his name and being. My father had three sonnes, all men, and of yeeres sufficient to make an election of the state of life they meened to lead. Wherefore he perceiuing as he himselfe was wont to say, that he could not bridle his nature in that condition of spending, he resolu'd to depriue himselfe of the instrument and cause, which made him such a spender and so liberall, to wit, of his goods; without which *Alexander the great* himselfe would be accounted a miser; and therefore calling vs all three together on a day into his chamber, he vied these or such like reasons to vs:

Sonnes, to affirme that I loue you well, may be presumed, seeing I terme you my sonnes: and yet it may be suspected that I hate you, seeing I doe not gouerne my selfe so well as I might, in the husbanding and increasing of your stocke. But, to the end that you may from henceforth perceiue that I doe affect you with a fatherly loue, and that I meane not to ouerthrow you like a step-father, I will doe one thing to you which I haue pondered, and with mature deliberation purposed these many daies: You are all of age to accept an estate, or at least to make choice of some such exercise, as may turne to your honour and profit at riper yeeres: and therefore that which I haue thought vpon, is to deuide my goods into foure parts; the three I will bestow vpon you, to euery one that which appertaines to him, without exceeding a iot, and I my selfe will reserue the fourth, to liue and maintaine me with as long as it shall please heauen to lend me breath. Yet I doe greatly desire that

that after every one of you is posselt of his portion, hee would take one of the courses which I meane to propose. There is an old prouerbe in this our *Spain*, in mine opinion very true, (as ordinarily all prouerbs are, being certaine briefe sentences collected out of long and discreet experiences) and it is this; *The Church, the Sea, or the Court*: The meaning whereof is, That whosoeuer would become wealthy, or worthy, must either follow the Church, hant the Seas by exercising the trade of Merchandizes, or get him a place of seruice, and entertainment in the Kings house, for men say, that *A Kings crumme is more worth then a Lords losse*. This I say, because I desire, and it is my will, that one of you do follow his booke, another merchandize, and the third the warre; seeing that the seruice of his owne house is a difficult thing to compasse. And although the warre is not wont to iurich a man, yet it addes vnto him great worth and renowne. Within these eight dayes I doe meane to glue you all your portions in money, without defrauding you of a mite, as you shall see in effect. Therefore tell me now whether you meane to follow mine opinion and deuice in this which I haue proposed. And then he commanded me by reason that I was the eldest, to make him an answer.

I, after I had intreated him not to make away his goods, but to spend and dispose of them as hee listed, seeing that we were both young and able enough to gaine more; at last I concluded that I would accomplish his will, and that mine was to follow the wars, therein seruing God and my King together. The second brother made the same offer, and imploying his portion in commodities, would venter it to the *Indias*. The youngest, and as I deeme, the discreetest, said, that either he would follow the Church, or goe at the least to *Salamanca* to finish his already commenced studies. And as soone as we had ended the agreement and election of our vocations, my father embraced vs all, and afterwards performed vnto vs, in as short a time as hee had mentioned, all that hee promised; giuing vnto each of



vs a portion, amounting, if I doe well remember, to three thousand Ducets apiece in money: for an vncke of ours bought all the goods, and paide ready money, because he would not haue them made away from our owne familie and lineage. We all tooke our leaues of our good father in one day, and in that instant it seeming to me a great inhumanity to leaue my father so old, and with so little meanes; I dealt so with him, as I constrained him to take backe againe two thousand Ducets of the three hee had giuen me, for as much as the rest was sufficient to furnish me in very good sort with all things requisite for a souldier. My brothers, moued by mine example, did each of them giue him a thousand crownes: so that my father remained with foure thousand crownes in money, and three in goods, as they were valued; which goods hee would not sell, but keepe them still in stocke. Finally, we bade him (and our said Vncke) farewell, not without much feeling and many teares on both sides: and they charged vs that we would from time to time acquaint them with our successes, whether prosperous or aduers. We promised to performe it: and then embracing vs, and giuing vs his blessing, one departed towards *Salamanca*, another to *Sinill*, and my selfe to *Alicante*. I arriued prosperously at *Genoma*, and from thence went to *Milaine*, where I did accomodate my selfe with armes, and other braueries vsed by souldiers, and departed from thence to settle my selfe in *Piemonte*, and being in my way towards the Citie of *Alexandria de la Paglia*, I heard newes that the great Duke of *Alua* did passe towards *Flanders*. Wherefore changing my purpose, I went with him, and serued him in all the expeditions hee made: I was present at the beheading of the Earles of *Egmont* and *Hornes*, and obtained at last to be Ensigne to a famous Captaine of *Guada-lasara*, called *Diego de Urbina*. Within a while after mine arriuall to *Flanders*, the newes were diuulged of the league that *Pius Quintus* the Pope, of famous memorie, had made with the *Venetians*, and the King of *Spaine*, against our common enemy the *Turke*, who had

had gayned by force the famous Island of *Cypres*, much about the same time, which Island belonged to the State of *Venice*, and was an vnfortunate and lamentable losse. It was also certainly knowne, that the most noble *Don Iohn of Austria*, our good King *Don Philips* naturall Brother, did come downe for generall of this League, and the great prouision that was made for the warre was published euery where.

Al this did incite and stirre on my mindé and desire to be present at that expedition so much expected: and therefore although I had coniectures, and halfe promises to bee made a Captaine in the first occasion that should bee offered, yet I resolued to leaue all those hopes, and goe into *Italy*, as in effect I did. And my good fortune so disposed, as the Lord *Don Iohn of Austria* arriued iust at the same time at *Genoua*, and went towards *Naples*, to ioyne himselfe with the *Venetian* Nauie, as he did after at *Messina*. In this most fortunate iourney I was present, being by this made a Captaine of Foote: to which honourable charge, I was mounted rather by my good fortune, then by my deserts. And that very day which was so fortunate to all *Christendome*; for therein the whole world was vndeceiued, & all the Nations thereof freed of all the error they held, and beliefe they had, that the *Turke* was invincible at Sea: in that very day I say, wherein the swelling Stomake, and *Ottomanicall* pride was broken among so many happy men as were there (for the *Christians* that were slaine were much more happy then those which they left victorious aliue) I alone was vnfortunate, seeing that in exchange of some *Nauall Crowne*, which I might expect, had I liued in the times of the ancient *Romans*, I found my selfe the night ensuing, that so famous a day with my legges chained, and my hands manacled, which befell in this manner: that *Vchali* King of *Argiers*, a bold and venturous Pirate, hauing inuested and distressed the Admirall of *Malta* (for onely three Knights remained aliue, and those very sore wounded) *Iohn Andrea's* chiefe Gallie came to her succour, wherein

wherein I went with my company : and doing what was requisit in such an occasion, I leapt into the enemies vessell, the which falling off from that which had assaulted her, hindred my souldiers from following me; by which means I saw my selfe alone amidst mine enemies, against whom I could make no long resistance, they were so many. In fine, I was taken, full of wounds. Now as you may haue heard, *Vchali* saved himselfe and all his Squadron, whereby I became captiue in his power, and onely remained sorrowfull among so many ioyfull, and captiue among so many freed : for that day fiftene thousand *Christians*, which came slaues and in chained in the *Turkish Gallies*, recovered their desired liberty. I was carried to *Constantinople*, where the great *Turke Selim*, made my Lord Generall of the Sea, by reason that he had so well performed his duty in the battell, hauing brought away, for a witnessse of his valour, the Standard of the Order of *Malta*. I was the yeere insuing of 1572. in *Nanarino*, rowing in the Admirall of the three *Lanthornes*, and saw and noted there the opportunitie that was lost, of taking all the *Turkish* Nauie within the hauen: for all the *Genisaries* and other souldiers that were in it, made full account, that they should be set vpon, euen within the very Port, and therefore trusted vp all their baggage, and made ready their shoo's, to flie away presently to the land, being in no wise minded to expect the assault, our Nauie did strike such terrour into them. But God disposed otherwise of the matter, not through the fault or negligence of the Generall that gouerned our men, but for the finnes of *Christendome*, and because God permits and wils, that we haue alwaies some executioners to chastice vs. In summe, *Vchali* got into *Modou*, which is an Island neere to *Nanarino*, and landing his men there, he fortified the mouth of the hauen, and there remained vntill *Don Iohn* departed. In this voyage was taken the Gally called *Presa*, whereof the famous Pirate *Barbarossa* his sonne was Captaine: it was surprisid by the head Galley of *Naples* called the *Shee Wolfe*, that was commanded by the thunderbolt of warre, the

the father of souldiers, that fortunate and neuer overthrowne *Don Alvaro de Bacan*, the *Marquess of Santa Cruz*. And here I will not forget to recount what befell at the taking of the *Prisa*: this sonne of *Barbarossa* was so cruell, and vsed his slaues so ill, that as soone as they that were rowing, perceiued the shee-Wolfe to approach them, and that she had ouertaken them, they cast away their Oares all at one time, and laying hands on their Captaine that stood on the \* Poope, crying to them to row with more speede, and passing him from one banke to another, from the Poope to the Prow, they tooke so many bits out of him, as he had scarce passed beyond the Mast, when his soule was already wasted to hell: such was the cruelty wherewithall he intreated them, and so great the hate they also bore towards him. We returned the next yeere after to *Constantinople*, being that of seuentie and three, and there we learned how *Don Iohn* had gained *Tunex*, and taking that Kingdome away from the *Turkes*, had by installing *Muley Hamet* therein, cut away all *Muley Hamedas* hopes to raigne againe there, who was the most cruell and valiant *Moor* that euer liued.

\* *Eslande.*  
*vil. p. 442.*

The great *Turke* was very much grieued for this losse: and therefore vsing the sagacity wherewithall all his race were indued, he made peace with the *Venetians*, which wished for it, much more then he did himselfe: and the yeere after of seuentie and foure he assaulted the Fortresse of *Goleta*, and the other fortresse that *Don Iohn* had raised neere vnto *Tunex*: and in all these occasions I was present, tyed to the Oare, without any hope of liberty; at leastwise by ransome, being resolved neuer to signifie by letter my misfortunes to my father. The *Goleta* was lost in fine, and also the Fortresse, before which two places lay in siege seuentie fife thousand *Turkes*, and more then foure hundred thousand *Moors*, and other *Saracins* of all the other parts of *Affrica*, being furnished with such abundance of wunition and warlike Engines, and so many Pioners as were able to couer *Goleta* and the Fortresse, if euery one did

did cast but his handfull of earth vpon them. Thus was *Goleta* accounted, vntill then impregnable, first lost, the which did not happen through default of valour in the defendants, who in defence thereof did all they could, or oughte to haue done; but because experience shewed the facility wherewithall trenches might be raised in that desert sand; for though water had beene found in it within two spans depth, the *Turkes* could not finde it in the depth of two yards; and therefore filling many Sacks full of Sand, they raised their trenches so high, as they did surmount the walls of the Seonce, and did so gall the defendants from them with their shot, as no one could stand to make any defence: it was a common report, that our men would not immure themselves within *Goleta*, but expect the enemy in the champaigne, at their disembarquing: but those that gaue this out, spake widely, as men very little acquainted with the like affaires: for if in *Goleta* and the Fortresse, there were scarce seuen thousand Souldiers, how could so few a number, were they euer so resolute, make a sallie, and remaine in the Forts, against so gear a number of enemies? or how is it possible, that the forces which are not seconded and supplied, should not be overcome, specially being besieged by many, and obstinate enemies, and those in their owne Countrey? But many others esteemed, and so did I likewise among the rest, that almightie God did a particular grace and fauour vnto *Spaine*, in that manner permitting to be destroyed the stop & cloke of all wickednesse; and the Spunge and Moth of innumerable summes of money spent there vnpfitably, without seruing to any other end, then to preserue the memorie of being gayned by the Emperour *Charles* the fift, as if it had beene requisite for the keeping of it eternall (as it is, and shall be euer) that those stones should sustaine it. The Fortresse was also wonne: but the *Turkes* were constrained to gaine it, spanne by spanne: for the Souldiers which defended it, fought so manfully and resolutely, as the number of the enemies slaine in two and twenty generall assaults which they

they gaue vnto it, did passe fīue and twenty thousand. Neuer a one was taken Prisoner, but three hundred, which suruiued their Fellowes: a certaine and manifest token of their valour and strength, and how well they had defended themselves & kept their Fortresses with great Magnanimity. A little Fort or Turret that stood in the midit of the place, vnder the command of *Don Iohn Zanoguera*, a *Valentian* Gentleman, and famous Souldier, was yeilded vpon composition, and *Don Pedro de Puerto carrero*, Generall of *Goleta*, was taken Prisoner, who omitted no diligence possible to defend the place: but yet was so grieued to haue lost it, as he dyed for very griefe on the way towards *Constantinople*, whither they carried him captiue. The Generall likewise of the Fort, called *Gabriel Cerbellon*, being a Gentleman of *Milan*, and a great Enginer, and most resolute Souldier, was taken: and there dyed in both the places many persons of worth, among which, *Pagan de Oria* was one, a Knight of the order of Saint *Iohn*, of a most noble disposition, as the exceeding liberalitie which he vsed towards his brother the famous *Iohn Andrea de Oria* cleerely demonstrates, and that which rendred his death more deplorable, was, that he was slaine by certaine *Saracins* (which he trusted, perceiuing how the Fort was lost) who had offered to conuey him thence in the habit of a *Moore*, to *Tabarca*, which is a little haven or creeke posselt by the *Genueses*, that fish for *Corral* in that coast. These *Saracins* cut off his head, and brought it to the Generall of the *Turkish* armie, who did accomplish in them the Spanish prouerbe; *That although the treason pleaseth, yet is the Traitor hated*: and so it is reported, that he commanded those to be hanged that had brought him the present, because they had not brought it aliue.

Among the *Christians* that were lost in the Fort, there was one called *Don Pedro de Aguilar*, borne in *Andaluzia*, in some Towne whose name I haue forgotten, he had bene Ancient in the Fortresse, and was a Souldier of great account, and of a rare vnderstanding, and specially had a particular



ticular grace in *Poetrie* : this I say , because his fortune brought him to be slaue to my Patron , euen into the very same Galley and bench whereon I fate. This Gentleman made two Sonnets in forme of Epitaphs : the one for the *Goleta*, the other for the Fort : and I will repeate them, because I remember them very well , and doe belecue that they will be rather gratefull , then any thing disgustfull to the audients. As soone as euer the Captiue named *Don Pedro de Aguilar*, *Don Fernando* beheld his *Camarada's*, and they all three did smile : and when he began to talke of the Sonnets, one of them said, Before you passe further , I beseech you, good Sir, let me intreat you to tell me, what became of that *Don Pedro de Aguilar*, whom you haue named ? That which I know of that affaire, answered the Captiue, is, that after he had been two yeeres in *Constantinople*, he fled away in the attire of an *Armenian* , with a *Greeke* Spie, and I cannot tell whether he recouered his liberty, or no ; although I suppose he did : for within a yeere after I saw the *Greeke* in *Constantinople*, but I had not the opportunity to demand of him, the successe of that voyage. He came then into *Spaine*, quoth the Gentleman : for that same *Don Pedro* is my brother , and dwels now at home in our owne Towne, very well, rich married, and a Father of three Sonnes. God be thanked, quoth the Captiue, for the infinite fauour he hath shewed vnto him : for in mine opinion there is not on earth any contentment able to be compared to that of recouering a mans lost liberty. I doe moreover, said the Gentleman, know the Sonnets which my brother composed. I pray you then, good Sir, quoth the Captiue, repeate them : for perhaps you can say them better then I. With a very good will, answered the Gentleman ; and that of the *Goleta* is thus :

## CHAP. XIII.

*Wherein is prosecuted the Historie of the Captive.*

## A SONNET.

O Happy Soules, which from this mortall Vaile  
Freed & exempted, through the good you wrought,  
Safe from the harmes, that here did you assaile;  
By your deserts, to highest Heauen were brought.  
Which here inflam'd by Wrath, and noble Thought,  
Shewed how much your Forces did anaile:  
When both your owne and forrain Blouds you taught,  
From sandie Shores, into the Deepes to traile.  
Your liues before your valours end deceased,  
In your tyr'd armes; which though they were a dying  
And vanquisht; yet on Victorie haue seized.  
And this your life from seruile thraldome flying,  
Ending, acquires, betweene the Sword and Wall,  
Heauens glory there, Fame here on Earth, for all.

I haue it euen in the very same manner, quoth the Captive, Well then, said the Gentleman, that of the Fort is thus, if I doe not forget it:

## A SONNET.

From midst the barren Earth, here ouerthrowne,  
In these sad Clods, which on the ground doe lie,  
Three thousand Souldiers holy Soules are flowne,  
And to a happier Mansion gone on hie:  
Here, when they did in vaine the vigour trie  
Of their strong Armes, to cost of many a one,  
After the most, through extreme toile did die:  
The cruell Sword a few did light vpon:

And this same plot eternally hath beene,  
 With thousand dolesfull memories replete,  
 As well this age, as in foregoing time.  
 But from his cruell bosome Heav'n ne're yet  
 Recey'd sinneres soules, then were the last,  
 Nor earth so valiant bodies, aye possesse.

The Sonnets were not misliked: and the Captiue was greatly recreated with the newes which he receiued of his companion, and prosecuting his Historie, he said, The *Goleta*, and the Fort being rendred, the *Turkes* gaue order to dismantell *Goleta*: for the Fort was left in such sort, as there remained nothing vp that might be ouerthrowne: and to doe it with more breuity and lesse labour, they vndermined it in three places, but that which seemed least strong, could not be blowne vp by any of them, which was the old walls: but all that which had remained a-foot of the new fortifications and workes of *Fratin*, fell downe to the ground with great facility: and this being ended, the Nauie returned triumphant and victorious to *Constantinople*: where within a few moneths afterward my Lord *Vchali* died, whom they called *Vchali Fertax*, which signifies in the *Turkish* language, the scald or scurvy runnagate, for he was such; and it is a custome among the *Turkes*, to giue one another nicke-names either of the defects, or perfections and vertues which they haue: and the reason hereof is, that among them all they haue but foure linages that haue surnames, and these doe contend with that of *Ottoman's*, for Nobility of blood: and all the rest, as I haue said, doe take denomination, sometime from the blemishes of the body, and sometime from the vertues of the minde: and this scurvie fellow did row foureteene yeeres, being the great *Turkes* slaue, and did renounce his faith, being foure and thirtie yeeres old, for despight, and because he might be reuenged on a *Turke*, that gaue him a cusse on the face as he rowed; and his valour was so great,

as without ascending by the dishonourable meanes and waies vsually taken, the greatest minions about the great *Turke*, he came first to be King of *Argiers*, & after to be Generall of the Sea, which is the third most Noble charge and dignitie of all the *Turkish* Empire. He was borne in *Calabria*, and was a good morall man, and vsed with great humanity his Slaues, whercof he had about three thousand, which were after his death deuided, as he had left in his Testament, betweene the great *Turke* (who is euer an inheritor to euery dead man, and hath a portion among the deceased his children) and his runnagates. I fell to the lot of a *Venetian* runnagate, who being a ship-boy in a certaine vessell, was taken by *Uchali*, who loued him so tenderly, as he was one of the dearest Youths hee had, and hee became after the most cruell runnagate that euer liued. Hee was called *Azanaga*, and came to be very rich, and King of *Argiers*: with him I came from *Constantinople*, somewhat contented in minde, because I should be neerer vnto *Spaine*; not for that I meant to write vnto any one of my vnfortunate successe, but only to see whether fortune would prooue more fauourable to me in *Argiers*, then at *Constantinople*; where I had attempted a thousand waies to escape, but none of them sorted vnto any good effect: and I thought to search out in *Argiers* some other meanes to compasse that which I so greedily desired; for the hope of attaining libertie sometime had neuer abandoned me; and when in the contriuing, I thought, or put my designs in practice, and that the successe did not answer mine expectation, presently without forsaking me, it forged and sought out for another hope, that might sustaine me, although it were debile, and weake.

With this did I passe away my life, shut vp in a prison or house, which the *Turkes* call Bathes, wherein they doe inclose the Captiue Christians, as well those that belong to the King, as other particular mens, and those which they call of the *Almaxen*, which is as much to say, as Slaues of the Counsell, who are deputed to serue the Citie in the publike

publike workes and other affaires thereof, and these of all other Captiues doe with most difficultie attaine to libertie; free by reason they belong to the Comminalty, and haue no particular Master, there is none with whom a man may treat of their Redemption, although they should haue the price of their Ransome. To these Bathes, as I haue said, some particular men carry their Captiues to bee kept, chiefly if they be to be ransomed; for there they haue them at their ease and secure, vntill they be redeemed. The Kings Captiues of Ransome also, doe not goe forth to labour with the other poore crue, if it bee not when the paying of their Ransome is deferred; for then, to the end they may make them write for money more earnestly, they make them labour, and goe to fetch Wood with the rest, which is no small toyle and trouble. I then was one of those of Ransome; for as soone as it was knowne how I was a Captaine, notwithstanding that I told them of my little possibilitie, and want of meanes, all could not preuaile to disswade them from comforting me with the multitude of Gentlemen, and those of ransome: they put on mee then a Chaine, rather to be a token that I was there for my Ransome, then to keepe me the better with it, and so I passed away my time there with many other Gentlemen, and men of marke, held and kept in there for their Ransome. And although both hunger and nakednesse did vexe vs now and then, or rather euermore, yet nothing did afflikt vs so much, as to heare and see every moment the Cruelties that my Master vsed towards *Christians*. Euery day he hanged vp one, he set this man on a stake, and would cut off the others Eares, and that, for so little occasion, or wholly without it, as the very *Turkes* themselves perceiued, that he did it not for any other cause, but because he had a will to doe it, and that it was his natural inclination to be a homicide of all humane kind. Once ly one *Spanish* Souldier called such a one of *Saavedra*, was in his good grace, who although he did sundrie things that will remaine in the memorie of that Nation for many yeeres, and all to the end to get his libertie; yet hee neuer  
strucke

strucke him, nor commanded him to be stricken, nor said as much as an euill word vnto him: and yet we all feared that he should be broached on a stake for the least of many things which he did, and himselfe did also dread it more then once; and if it were not that time denieth me leisure to doe it, I would recout vnto you things done by this souldier, which might both entertaine and astonish you much more then the relation of my life.

There were ouer the square court of our prison certaine windowes that looked into it, and belonged to a certaine rich and principall *Moore*; the which windowes (as ordinarily are all the *Moore*s windowes) rather seemed to be holes then windowes: and euen these were also very closely couered and shut fast with linnen couerings. It therefore befell that standing one day vpon the battlements of our prison with other three companions, trying which of vs could leape best in his shackles to passe away the time, and being alone (for all the other Christians were gone abroad to labour) I lifted vp by chance mine eyes, and I saw thrust out at one of those so close-shut windowes a Cane, and a linnen tied at the end thereof, and the Cane was mooued and wagged vp and downe, as if it had made signes, that we should come and take it: we looked vpon it, and one of my companions went vnder the Cane, to see whether they would let it fall, or what they would doe else; but as soone as he approached it, the Cane was lifted vp, and did stirre it to either side, as if they had said (with wagging of the head) No, the Christian returned to vs; and the Cane being eftsloones let fall, and beginning to moue as it had done before, another of my fellows went, and the same succeeded vnto him; that did to the first. Finally, the third approached it, with no better successe then the former two, which I perceiuing, would not omit to trie my fortitude: and as soone as I came neere to stand vnder the Cane, it was let slip and fell within the Bathes iust at my feet: I forthwith went to vntie the linnen which was knotted, wherein I found tenne *Zianys*,



which are certaine pieces of base gold, vsed among the *Moors*, and worth each of them ten Rials of our money. I leaue to your discretion to thinke if I was not glad of my bootie : certes my ioy and admiration was much, to thinke whence that good might come vnto vs, but specially to my selfe, since the signes of refusall to let it fall to the other, did confirme cleerely that the fauour was only addrest to my selfe. I tooke my welcome money, broke the Cane, and returned to the Battlements, and viewed the window earnestly, and perceiued a very beautifull hand issue out there-at, which did open and shut it againe very speedily. By which imagining and thinking that some woman that dwelled in that house, had done vs the charitie and benefit, in token of our thankfull minds, we made our courtesies after the *Moorish* fashion, by inclining of our heads, bending of the bodie, and pressing our hands to our breasts. Within a while after, there appeared out of the same window a little crosse made of Canes, which presently was taken in againe: this signe did confirme vs in the opinion, that there was some *Christian* woman captiue in that place, and that it was shee which did to vs the courtesie : but the whitenesse of her hand, and her rich bracelets destroyed this presumption : although we did notwithstanding conjecture that it was some runnagate *Christian*, whom their Masters there doe very ordinarily take to wiues, yea and account very good hap to light on one of them; for they are much more accounted of, then the women of the Nation it selfe.

Yet in all these Discourses we strayed very farre from the truth of the accident; and so from thence-forward, all our passing of the time was imployed in beholding that Window as our North, wherein had appeared the Starre of the Cane : but fifteene daies past ouer, or we could deserie either it, or the hand again, or any other signe. And although in the meane time we endeouored all that we might to know who dwelled in that house, or whether there were any runnagate *Christian* therein, yet neuer a one could tel vs  
any

any other things, but that it belonged to a very rich and Noble Moore, called *Aguimorato*, who had beene Constable of the Pata, a dignitie among them of very great qualitye. But when we thought least that it would raine any more *Zianys*, by that way we saw the Cane suddenly to appeare, and another linnen hanging on it, whose bulke was much greater: and this befell when the bath was freed of concourse, and void, as the other time before. We made the accustomed triall, euery one approaching it before me, but without effect, vntill I came, for presently as I approached it, it was permitted to fall. I vntied the knot, and found inwreathed in it fortie Ducats of Spanish gold, with a letter written in the Arabian tongue, and at the end thereof was drawne a very great crosse. I kissed the crosse, tooke vp the money, and returned againe to the battlements, and we altogether made our receiuers. The hand also appeared: I made signes that I would read the paper, and the window was shut incontinently. All of vs were maruellously astonished, yet ioyfull at that which had befallne vs, and by reason that none of vs vnderstood the Arabian tongue, the desire that we had to vnderstand the contents of the Letter, was surpassing great, but greater the difficultie, to finde out some trustie person that might read it. In the end I resolued to trust in this affaire a runnagate of *Murcia*, who did professe himselfe to be my very great friend, and hauing by my liberality and other good turnes done secretly, obliged him to be secret in the affaire wherein I would vse him: for some runnagates are accustomed, when they haue an intention to turne into the Christian Countries, to bring with them the testimonies of the most principall captiues, wherein they informe, and in the amplest manner they may, how the bearer is an honest man, and that he hath euer done many good turnes to the Christians, and that hee hath himselfe a desire to escape by the first commoditie. Some runnagates there are, which procure those testimonies sincerely, and with a good intention: others take the benefit of them, either by chance or industrie; who

who intending to goe and rob into the Countries of Christians, if by chance they be aſſay or taken, bring forth their teſtimonies and ſay, that by thoſe papers may be collected the purpoſe wherewithall they came, that is, to remaine in Chriſtian Countries, and that therefore they came abroad a pyrating with the other Turks : and by this meanes they eſcape that firſt brunt, and are reconciled againe to the Church, without receiuing any harme at all : & when they eſpie their time, doe returne againe into Barbarie, to be ſuch as they were before. Others there are, which procure thoſe writings with a pure intention, and doe after ſtay in Chriſtian Countries. Well, this my friend was a runagate of his laſt kinde : who had the teſtimonies of all my companions, wherein wee did commend him, as amply as we could deviſe : and certainly if the Moores had found thoſe papers about him, they would haue burnt him for it. I vnderſtand how hee could ſpeake the Arabian tongue very perfectly, and not onely that alone, but alſo write it withall : yet before I would wholly breake my minde to him, I requested him to read me that ſcrowle, which I had found by chance in a hole of my Cabin: hee opened it, and ſtood a good while beholding and conſtruing thereof, murmuring ſomewhat betweene his teeth. I demanded therefore of him whether he vnderſtood it ? And he answered that he did, very well : and that if I deſired to haue it tranſlated *verbatim*, I ſhould bring vnto him Pen and Inke, to the end he might doe it more completely : wee preſently gaue vnto him that which he asked, and hee did tranſlate it by little and little; and hauing finiſht it, he ſaid, All that is here in Spaniſh, is punctually, without omitting a letter, the contents of the Moorish paper : and here you muſt note, that where it ſayes *Lela Marien*, it meanes our *Ladie the bleſſed Virgine Marie*. Wee read the paper, whercof the contents were theſe which enſue.

**W**Hen I was a Child, my Father had a certaine Chriſtian Woman Captiue, that taught mee in mine owne tongue.

tongue all the Christian Religion, and told mee many things of Lela Marien. The Christian dyed, and I know she went not to the fire, but, to Ala, for she appeared to mee twice after her death, and bade me goe to the Christian Countrey, to see Lela Marien, who loued mee much: I know not how I may goe: I haue scene many Christians thorow this Window, and none of them hath seemed to mee a Gentleman but thy selfe: I am very beautifull and young, and I haue a great deale of riches to carry away with me. See thou whether thou canst contriue the way how we may depart, and thou shalt there be my Husband, if thou pleasest; and if thou wilt not, I doe not greatly care, for Lela Marien will provide me of a Husband. I wrote my selfe this billet: bee therefore wary, whom thou trustest to reade it: doe not trust any Moore, for they are all of them deceitfull Traytors. It is this that grieues me most of all, for I would not haue thee, if it were possible, to disclose the matter to any liuing bodie; for if my Father did know it, hee would throw mee downe into a Well, and oppresse mee in it with Stones. I will hang a Threede to the end of the Cane, and therein thou mayest see thine answer. And if thou canst not write the Arabian, tell mee thy minde by signes, for Lela Marien will make me to understand it. Who with Ala preferue thee, and this Crosse which I doe many times kisse: for so the Captiue commanded me to doe.

See, good Sir, if it was not great reason, that the reasons comprehended in this Letter should recreate and astonish vs. And certainly the one and the other was so great, as the Runnagate perceiued well that the paper was not found by chance, but was really addressed vnto some one of vs: and therefore desired vs earnestly, that if that were true which he suspected, that we would trust and tell it vnto him, and he would aduenture his life to procure our liberties; and saying this, he tooke out of his bosome a Crucifixe of mettle, and protested with very many teares by the God which that Image represented, in whom hee, although

though a sinner and wicked man, did most firmly beleue, that hee would bee most loyall and secret to vs in all that which we would discouer vnto him ; for it seemed to him, and hee almost diuined, that both himselfe and wee all should recouer our liberties by her meanes that did write the Letter : and hee should then also see himselfe in the state which hee most desired, to wit, in the bosome of his mother the holy Catholike Church ; from which, through his ignorance and sinne, he was departed and deuided as an vnprofitable and corrupt member. The Runnagate said this with so many teares, and such euident tokens of repentance, as all of vs consented to open our mindes vnto him, and declare the truth of the matter ; and so wee recounted vnto him the whole discourse, without concealing any circumstance, and shewed vnto him the window by which the Cane was wont to appeare : and he marked the house from thence, and rested with speciall charge to informe himselfe well of those that dwelled therein. We thought also that it was requisite to answer the Moorish Ladies Letter : and therefore hauing him present, that could so wel performe that taske, we caused the runnagate to draw out an answer presently as I did dilate it to him, which was punctually such as I will recount : for of all the most substantiall points that befell me in that affaire, no one is false out of my memorie, nor shall euer as long as I haue breath. In effect that which I answered to the Moore, was this:

**T**HE true Ala preserve you, deare Lady, and that blessed Marian, who is the true Mother of God, and is shee that hath put in your minds the desire to goe into the Christian Countries, because she doth loue you well : pray vnto her that she will vouchsafe to instruct you, how you may bring the matter to passe, which she commandeth you to doe: for shee is so good, as shee will easily condescend to doe it. As for my part, I doe promise, as well for my selfe, as for these other Christians that are with me, to doe for you all that we are able to doe untill death, Doe not omit to write vnto me, and acquaint me  
with

with your purposes, and I will answer you every time : for great Ala hath given us a Captive Christian, that can write and reade your Language well, as you may perceiue by this Paper: So that you may securely, and without any dread, aduise us of all that you shall thinke good. And as concerning that which you say, that you will become my Wife, after we arrive to the Christian Countries, I doe promise you the same, as I am a good Christian : and you shall understand that the Christians doe accomplish their words far better then doe the Moores. Ala and Marien his Mother preferne you my dearest Lady.

This Letter being written and inclosed, I expected two dayes, that the Bathes might be free of concourse, as it was wont, which as soone as it befell, I went vp to my accustomed place of the battlements, to see whether the Cane appeared ; which was presently after thrust out at the window. And as soone as I perceiued it, although I could not note who it was that set it, I shewed my paper, to giue them warning to set on the threed : but it was already hanging thereon. To the which I tied the Letter, and within a while after beganne to appeare our Starre, with the white flagge of peace, and the knotted linnen ; which they let fall, and I tooke vp, and I found therein in diuers sorts of money and gold more then fiftie Ducats, which redoubled our ioyes more then fifty times, and confirmed the hope we conceiued of attayning libertie. The very same night our Runnagate returned to vs, and told, how he had learned that the very same Moore which wee were informed of before, called *Aguimorata*, dwelt there, and was excessive rich, and had one onely daughter, the heire of all his goods ; of whom the common opinion thorowout the Citie was, that she was the fairest woman of all Barbarie : and that many of the Viceroyes that came there, had demanded her to wife, but she would neuer condescend to any motion of marriage : & that he likewise had vnderstood that shee had sometimes a Christian captiue, which now  
was



was deceased : all which agreed with the contents of the Letter. We presently entred in Councell with the Runnagate, about the meanes wee were to vse, to fetch away the *Moore*, and come all of vs to *Christian Lands*, and in the end we concluded to attend for that time, the second aduice of *Zoraida* (for so was shee then called, who now meanes to name her selfe *Maria*) for as much as wee cleerly perceiued that it was shee, and none other, that could minister to vs the meanes to remoue all these difficulties. After wee had rested on this resolution, the Runnagate bid vs be of good courage, for hee would ingage his life, or set vs at liberty. Foure dayes after the Bathes were troubled with people : which was an occasion that, the Cane appeared not all that while. But that impediment being remooued, and the accustomed solitude returned, the Cane did gaine appeare with a Linnen hanging thereat so grossely impregned, as it promised to bee deliuered of a most happy burthen. Both Cane and Linnen bent themselues to mee, and in them I found another Payer and a hundred Ducats in Gold, besides other small money. The Runnagate was present, and we gaue him the Letter to reade, the effect whereof was this:

I Know not, good Sir, what order to gine for our going into Spaine, nor hath *Lela Marien* told mee any thing concerning it, although I haue demanded her counsaile. That which may be done is, that I will throw this window gine vnto you great store of money, wherewith you may redeeme your selfe, and your friends : and let one of you goe into the *Christians Countrey*, and buy a Barke, and after returne for his fellowes, and he shall finde mee in my fathers garden, which is at the gate of *Babazon*, neere to the Sea-coast, where I meane to stay all this Summer, with my father and my seruants : from whence you may take me out boldly by night, and carry mee to the Barke. And see well that thou wilt bee my husband : for if thou wilt not, I will demand of *Marien* to chastise thee : and if thou dar'est trust no body to goe for the vessell, redeeme thy selfe  
and

*and goe, for I know thou wilt rather returne then another, seeing thou art a Gentleman and a Christian; learne out the garden: and when I see thee walke there where thou now art, I will make account that the Bath is emptie, and will giue thee great store of money. Ala preserve thee, my deare friend.*

These were the contents of the second Letter, which being heard by vs all, euery one offered to be himselfe the ransomed person, and promised to goe and returne with all punctuality, and I also made a proffer of my selfe: to all which resolutions the Runnagate opposed himselfe, saying, That hee would consent in no wise that any one of vs should be freed, vntill we were all together deliuered: for experience had taught him, how euill ransomed men were wont to keepe those promises which they passed in the times of their thraldome: for many times certaine principall captiues had made that kinde of triall, redeeming of some one or other that should goe to Valentia or Mallorca, with money to freight a Barke or Fregat, and returne for him that had ransomed them, and did neuer returne again: for the recovered liberty, and the feare of aduenturing to lose it againe, concurring, did blot out of their memory all the other obligations of the world. And to confirme the truth which hee auerred, hee briefly recounted vnto vs an accident which befell much about the same time to certaine Christian Gentlemen, the strangest, as I suppose, that euer happened in those quarters, wherein do succeed euery other day euents full of wonder and admiration, and therefore concluded, that what ought and might be done, was, that they would giue vnto him to buy a Barke, such mony as they meant to imploy in the ranfome of a captiue, & he would buy it there in Argiers, vnder pretext of becoming a Merchant & Sayler in Tetuan and that coast: and being once Owner of a Barke, hee would easily deuise how to haue them out of the Baths & imbarke them all: how much more, if the Moorish Ladie did, as she promised, giue them money enough to ranfome them all, was it a most easie thing,

thing, they being free, to embarke themselves at midday : but the greatest difficultie in this affaire was, that the Moores w<sup>o</sup>uld not to permit any runnagate to buy any Barke or other small vessell, but onely great vessels of warre : for they suspect that he that buyes a Barke, specially if he be a Spaniard, does it for no other end but to runne away to Christian Countreies. And yet hee knew how to facilitate that inconuenience, by inducing a Tangerine Moore to become his partner of the Barke, and the gaines that should be gotten by the commodities thereof, and with this shadow he would become Lord of it himself, and therewithall accounted the matter ended. And although that both my selfe and my *Camarada's* held it the better course to send vnto *Malorca* for one, as the Moorish Lady said, yet durst we not contradict him, fearefull that if wee did not what he would haue vs to doe, he would discouer vs, and indanger our liues, if hee did once detect *Zoraida's* practises, for the safegard of whose life we would all of vs most willingly aduenture our owne : and therefore we determined to put our selues into Gods and the Runnagates hands. And so we answered at the same instant to *Zoraida*, telling her that we would accomplish all that she had admonished vs, because she had aduertised vs as well as if *Lela Marien* had told her what she should say, and that the dilating or shortning of the affaire did consist onely in her selfe. I did offer my selfe anew to become her husband : and with this the day ensuing, wherein the Bath was also free, she sent me downe at diuers times by the Cane two thousand Ducats, and a Letter, wherein she said that shee would goe to her fathers garden the next *Iumia*, that is, the Friday following, and that before she went away, she would giue vs more money: And that, if it were not enough, wee should aduise her, and she would giue vnto vs as much as we would demand ; for her father had so much treasure, as hee would neuer perceiue it, how much more seeing she had, and kept the Keyes of all. We gaue five hundred crownes presently to the Runnagate to buy a Barke, & with eight hundred I redee-

redeemed my selfe, giuing the money to a Valentian Merchant, which was at that season in Argiers, who did ransom me of the King, taking mee forth on his word, which he passed to pay my ransom, at the arriual of the first Ship that should come from Valentia. For if hee had deliuered the money instantly, it would haue giuen occasion to the King to suspect, that my ransom was many dayes before in Argiers, and that the Merchant had kept it silently, to make his benefit thereof. Finally, my Master was so cauilous, as I durst not in any wise pay him presently.

The Thursday before the Friday of the beautifull *Zoraida's* departure towards the garden, she gaue vnto vs othertwo thousand Ducats, and did likewise aduise vs of her going away, intreating me, that as soone as I had ransomed my selfe, I should learne the way to the garden, and take occasion howsoeuer to goe to it, and see her. I answered her briefly, that I would doe so, and prayed her that she would carefully commend our proceedings to *Lela Marian*, with those prayers which the captiue had taught her. This being done, order was also giuen for the ransoming of my three companions, to facilitate our issue out of the Bathes, and also that they seeing me free, and themselves vndeliuered, might not bee troubled or perswaded by the Deuill, to doe any thing in preiudice of *Zoraida*. For although that they, being the men of that quality they were, might assure mee from this feare, I would not, for all that, aduenture the matter, and therefore I caused them to bee ransomed by the same meanes that I was redeemed my selfe, giuing all the money to the Merchant, that hee might with the more security passe his word for vs: to whom yet we neuer did discouer our practice and secret, by reason of the eminent danger of the discouery thereof.

## CHAP. XIII.

*Wherein the captive prosecuteth the pleasant narration of his life.*

**F**ifteen dayes were not fully expired, when the Runnagate had bought him a very good Barke, able to hold thirty persons or more; and for the better colour and assurance of his businesse, he made a voyage to a place called Sargel, which is thirty leagues distant from Argiers towards the side of Oran, and is a great place of traffique for drie Figges. He made this voyage twice or thrice in company with the *Tagarine*, of whom we made mention: and the name of *Tagarino* is in Barbary giuen to the Moores of Arragon, Granada, and Mudefares. And in the Kingdome of Fez those Mudefares are called Elehes, and are the Nation which that King doth most imploy in warlike affaires. You shall therefore vnderstand, that euery time hee passed by with his Barke, he did cast Ancre in a little Creeke, twice the shot of a Crosbow from the Garden wherein *Zoraida* attended; and there the Runnagate would in very good earnest exercise himselfe with the Moores that rowed, either to flie, or else to assault one another in iest, as he meant to doe after in good earnest: and would now and then goe to *Zoraida's* Garden, and demand fruits, which her father would bestow vpon him, without knowing what hee was: and although hee desired to haue spoken with *Zoraida*, as hee told mee afterward himselfe, and haue informed her, how it was hee that was to carrie her away by my direction into the Land of Christians, and that shee should therefore liue cheerefull and secure, yet was it neuer possible, forasmuch as the women of that Nation doe not suffer themselues to bee viewed by any Moore or Turke if he be not their husband, or that their parents command them, yet doe they haunt and communicate themselues to Christian captiues freely, and that sometimes more then

then is conuenient : and truely, it would haue grieved mee, that he should haue spoken vnto her, for, perhaps it would haue perplexed her extraordinarily, to see her affaire committed to the trust of a Runnagate : but God, who did otherwise dispose it, did not concurre with this good desire of our Runnagate : who seeing how safely he went and returned from *Sargel*, and that he sounded when and where he pleased ; and that the *Tagarino*, his Partner, did onely vvhat he liked, and that I vv as ransomed, and nothing else wanting, but to finde out some Christians that would row ; he bade mee bethinke my selfe, what men I would bring away with mee besides those that I had ransomed, and that I should warne them to be ready against the next Friday, wherein hee was resolu'd that wee should depart.

Seeing this, I spake to twelue Spaniards very lusty rowers, and those that could with most liberty get out of the City : and it was not a little matter to finde so many there at that time, for there were twenty Gallies abroad a robbing, which had carried all the other rowers with them, and these were left behinde, because their Master did keepe at home that Summer to finish a Galley that was on the Stockes a making. To these I sayd nothing else, but only warned them that the Friday insuing in the euening, they should closely steale out by one and one, and goe towards *Aguimorates* Garden, and there expect mee vntill I came vnto them. I gaue this aduice to euery one of them apart, with order also, that although they saw any other Christians there, they should tell them nothing else, but that I had commanded them to expect mee in that place.

This diligence being vsed, yet wanted there another, which was the most expedient of all, to wit, to aduise *Zoraida* of the termes wherein our affaires did stand, to the end she might be likewise ready & prepared, and not afrighted, though we did assault her before the time that she could imagine the Barke of the Christians to bee come to fetch



her away ; and therefore I resolved to goe my selfe vnto the Garden, and see whether I might speake with her : and taking the occasion to goe and gather some hearbs, I went vnto it the day before our departure : and the first person with whom I encountred, was her father, who demanded of me in a language, which in all Barbarie and Constantinople is vsually spoken by the Moores to their captiues, and is neither Arabian, Spanish, nor of any other Nation, but rather a mixture of all languages, wherewith all of vs vnderstand one another : he, I say, in that kinde of speech demanded of me, what I sought for in that his garden, and to whom I did belong ? I answered, that I was one *Arnanste Mami* his slave (and this, because I was very certainly informed that he was his intire friend ) and that I came thither to gather of all sorts of hearbs to make a sallad : he consequently asked of mee whether I was a man of ransom or no, and how much my Master demanded for me ? and being in those questions and demands, the beautifull *Zoraida* descended from the house into the garden, who had espied mee a good while before : and as the Moorish women doe not greatly estrange themselves from the sight of Christians, wee are in their behauiour or conuersation with them any thing squeamish, as wee haue said already, she did not greatly feare to approach the place where her father talked with me : but rather, her father perceiuing that she came on somewhat slowly, did call, and commanded her to draw neere.

It were a thing impossible for mee to recount the great beauty and gallant disposition, or the brauery and riches of attyre, wherein my beloued *Zoraida* then shewed her selfe to mine eyes. I will onely say this, that there hanged more Pearles at her eares, superlatiue faire necke, and haire, then shee hath haire on her head, about the wrests of her legges, which were naked after the manner of her Countrey, shee wore two *Carcaves* ( for so the manicles or bracelets of the feete are called in the Morisco tongue ) of the finest Gold, wherein were inched so many Diamonds,

Diamonds, that as she told me after, her father valued them at twenty thousand crownes; and those about the wrests of her hands, were of equall esteeme. Her pearles were many, and those most Orient; for all the chiefe brauery and ornament of the Moorish Ladies consists in the adorning of themselves with Pearles and Pearle-seed; by reason whereof there is more Pearles and Pearle-seed to be found among the Moores, then among all the other Nations of the world: and *Zoraida's* father had the same to haue many, and those the very best that were in Argiers; and also about two hundred thousand Ducats of Spanish gold: of all which was she the Lady, who now is mine. And if with all this ornament she could then seeme faire, by the reliques that haue remained vnto her among so many labours, may be easily ghesse, what she would haue beene in the time of prosperity. For all of vs doe know, that the beauty of some women hath limited dayes and seasons, and requieth certaine accidents either to diminish or increase it, and it is a thing naturall to the passions of the minde, either to raise, or abase it, but most commonly they wholly destroy it. To be brieft, I say, that she arriued to the place where we discoursed at that time most richly attired, and beautifull beyond measure, or I at last deemed her the fairest that I had euer beheld vntill then: and herewithall remembering the obligation wherein shee had tyed mee, thought that some Deitie had presented it selfe to my view, being come from heauen to the earth, for my recreation and reliefe.

As soone as shee was arriued, her father told her in her owne language, how I was his friend *Arnaute Mami* his captiue, and that I came there to gather a sallad: then she taking the speech, demanded in that medly of tongues of which I haue spoken, whether I was a Gentleman, & what the reason was why I redeemed not my selfe? I made answer, that I was already ransomed, and by the ransom might be coniectured, in how much my Master valued me, seeing he had for my liberty a thousand and five hundred

*Celtamis*. To this she answered, In good sooth, if thou werst my father, I would cause him not to giue thee for twice as much more : for you Christians are great liars, & doe make euery one of your selues poore men, to defraude the Moores of their due ranfome. It may well be so, Madame, quoth I: but I haue for my part vsed all truth in this affaire with my Master, and doe, and will vse truth with as many persons as I shall euer haue occasion to treat with in this world. And when dost thou go away, quoth *Zoraida*? To morrow, as I beleue, quoth I. For there is a French vessell here, which sets forth to morrow, and I meane to depart in her. Were it not better, replied *Zoraida*, to expect vntill vessels come out of Spaine, and goe away with them, then with those of France, which are not your friends? No, quoth I, although if it were true as the newes runne, that there comes a vessell from Spaine, I would attend it; but yet it is more certaine that I shall depart to morrow: for the desire I haue to see my selfe at home in my Countrey, and with those persons whom I loue, is so great, as it will not permit me to expect any other commodity, that fore-floues it selfe, bee it neuer so good. Thou art doubtlesly married in thy Countrey, said *Zoraida*, and therefore desirest to goe see thy wife? I am not married, quoth I, but I haue passed my word to marry, as soone as I am there safely arriued. And is she beautiful, to whom thou hast past it, quoth *Zoraida*? So beautifull, said I, as to indeere it and tell you the truth, shee is very like vnto your selfe. Hereat her father laughed very heartily, and said, In good earnest, Christian, shee must be very faire, that may compare with my daughter, who is the most beautifull of all this Kingdome: and if thou wilt not beleue me, looke on her well, and thou shalt see that I tell thee but the truth. He himselfe, as most perfect in the tongue, did serue for the interpreter of most of our speeches; for although shee could speake that illegitimate language which is there in vse, yet did she manifest her mind more by signes then by words.

Whilst thus we reasoned of many matters, there came running towards vs a certaine Moore, and told his Master how foure Turkes had leaped ouer the Garden walls, and were gathering the fruits, although they were not yet ripe. The old man and his daughter *Zoraida* started hereat; for it is an vniuersall & Naturall defect in the Moores to feare the Turkes, but specially the Souldiers of that Nation, who are commonly so insolent, and haue such command ouer the Moores that are their subiects, as they doe vse them worse then if they were their slaues. Therefore *Zoraida's* father said vnto her; Daughter, retire thy selfe into the house, and keepe thy selfe in whilest I goe speake to those dogges; and thou, Christian, goe and seeke out thine hearbs, and depart in good houre, and I pray *Ala* to conduct thee safely to thy Country. I inclined my selfe to him, and he departed to search out the Turkes, leauing me alone with *Zoraida*, who began to make adoe as if she went whither her father had commanded her. But scarce was he conquered among the trees of the Garden, when she returned to mee, with her eyes full of teares, said, *Amexi Christiano, Amexi*, that is, Goeft thou away, Christian, goest thou away? I answered, yes, Ladie, that I doe: but I will neuer depart away without thee: expect me the next Friday, & be not affrighted when thou shalt see vs, for we will goe to the Christian Country then, without all doubt. This I said to her in such sort, as shee vnderstood all my words very wel, & casting her arme ouer my neck, she began to trauell with languishing steps towards the house, and fortune would (which might haue beene very ill, if heauen had not rectified it) that as we walked together in that manner and forme, her father, who did by this returne, after he had caused the Turkes to depart, espyed vs, and wee saw also very well how he had perceiued vs: wherefore *Zoraida*, who is very discrete, would not take away her arme from my neck, but rather drew neerer vnto me, and laid her head on my brest, and bowed her knees a little, with euident token that she swooned; and I likewise made as though I did su-

staine her vp by force. Her Father came running ouer towards vs, and seeing his Daughter in that state, demanded the cause of her: but seeing shee made no answer, he himselfe said, Shee doubtlesly is dismayed by the suddaine affright shee tooke at the entrance of those Dogges: and taking her away from me, he bowed her to his owne brest: and shee breathing out a sigh, with her eyes yet full of teares, said againe, *Amexi Christiano, Amexi*, Goe away, *Christian*, goe away. To which her Father replied, There is no cause, Daughter, why the *Christian* should goe away, for hee hath done thee no harme, and the *Turkes* are already departed. Sir, they haue affrighted her (quoth I) as you haue said: but yet since she hath commanded me to goe away, I will not offend her; therefore rest in peace, for I will returne, if it please you to giue me leaue, for hearbs to this garden, when it is needfull; for my Master saies there are none better to bee found for sallads in any other garden, then you haue here in this. Come as oft as thou wilt, said *Aguimorato*, for my daughter saies not this, in respect that thou or any other *Christian* hath offended her, but that, meaning to say, that the *Turkes* should goe away, she bade thee to depart, or else she spake it, because it is time for thee to gather thine hearbs.

With this I tooke leaue of both: and she seemed at the instant of my departure to haue had her heart torne away from her, as she departed with her father; and I vnder colour of seeking hearbs, went about all the garden at my leasure, and viewed all the fallies, and the entrances thereof, the strength of the house, and the commodities that might bee offered to facilitate our enterprise. This being done, I came home & made a relation to the runnagate, & my other fellowes, of all that had passed, and did long infinitely to see the houre wherein I might, without any affright or danger, possesse that happinesse which fortune in the faire and louely *Zoraida* offered vnto mee. In fine, the time passed ouer, & the so much desired day and terme arrived: & euery one of vs following the order, which with  
mature

mature consideration and long discourse we had agreed on, we found the good successe wee desired. For the very Friday following the day wherein I had spoken with *Zoraida* in the Garden, *Morrenago* (for so was the Runnagate called) neere night cast Anchor almost right before the place wherein the beautifull *Zoraida* remaind. The *Christians* also that were to tow, were ready, and hidden in sundry places thereabouts. All were suspended, and resolutely expected my comming, desirous to set vpon the Barke that was before their face: for they knew not of the agreement that was betweene mee and the Runnagate; but rather made full account that they were to gaine their liberty by force of Armes, and killing the *Moors* that came in that Vessell.

It therefore befell, that as soone as I and my Fellowes appeared, all the rest that were hidden, and espied vs, made forthwith ouer towards vs. This was at an houre when the Citie gates were shut, and neuer a body abroad among all those fields: and when wee were all together, we were in doubt whether it would bee best, first to goe and fetch *Zoraida*, or to imprison and stone the *Tagarine Moors*, that rowed in the Frigat. And being in this doubt, the Runnagate came to vs, asking vpon what wee stayed, for it was now high time to bee going away, and all his *Moors* were wretchlesse, and the greater number of them asleepe. We told him then the cause of our stay: and hee answered that it was of most importance, first to subiect the Vessell, which might bee done with very great facilitie, and without any perill, and that wee might goe after for *Zoraida*. His opinion liked vs all very well, and therefore without lingring any longer, he leading the way, we came to the Vessell, and he himselfe leaping in first of all, set hand to his Faulchion, and said in *Morisco*, Let none of you that is heere stirre himselfe, if hee loue his life. And saying so, all the rest of the *Christians* entred. The *Moors* which were of little spirit, hearing their Master say so, were maruellously amazed, and without daring any one of them to set band



hand to their Armes, which were but a few at all, they suffered themselves very quietly to bee taken and bound by the *Christians*, which did it very dexteriously, threatening them, that if they did let slip the least out-cry, they should presently be all put to the Sword. This being finished, and the halfe of our people remayning in their guard, wee that were left, conducted also by the Runnagate, went towards *Aquimoratus* Garden: the doore thereof did, by very good hap, open with as little noyse, as if it had had no lock at all. Whereupon we went with great quietnesse and silence towards the house vnscene or espied of any.

The beautifull *Zoraida* was the while expecting vs at a Window, and as soone as she sawe people approach, demanded with a low voyce whether wee were *Nizarans*, as if shee would say or aske, whether wee were *Christians*? I answered that wee were, and willed her to come downe. As soone as shee knew mee, shee stayed not a Minute, but without answering any word, came downe in an instant; and opening the Doore, shewed her selfe to vs all, more beautifull, and richly attired, then I am able in any sort to expresse. As soone as I saw her, I tooke her by the hand, and kissed it: the same did the Runnagate, and my two *Camarada's*; and all the rest which knew not the matter, did as they had scene vs doe before them; for it seemed that wee did no more but giue her thanks, and acknowledge her the auctresse of all our liberties. The Runnagate demanded of her in her owne language, whether her father were in the Garden or no? She answered that he was, and that he slept. Then will it bee requisite, quoth the Runnagate, to rouse him, & beare him, & al the other things of worth in this garden away with vs. That shall not be so, (quoth she) for I wil haue no man to touch my father, and in this house there is nothing of value but that which I meane to carry away with my selfe, which is so much as will be sufficient to cheere and enrich you all: as if you will stay but a while, you shall perceiue. And saying so, shee entred againe into the house, promising to returne to vs speedily, and

and bade vs stand still, without making any noise. I demanded of the Runnagate what speech had passed betweene them? And he told me all she had said. And I answered him againe, that I would not haue *Zoraida's* will transgrett in any sort. By this time she returned loden with a little Casket full of gold, so that shee was scarce able to beare it. And her father in the meane season, by bad fortune awaked, and heard the noise that was beneath in his garden, and looking out at a window, he perceiued that they were all *Christians* that were in it, and therefore cried out in a loud and vnmeasurable manner in the *Arabian* tongue, *Christians, Christians, Theeues, Theeues*; by which cries we were all of vs stricken into very great feare and confusion: but the Runnagate seeing the perill wherein we were, and how neerely it concerned him to come off from that enterprize, before he were discouered, ranne vp very speedily to the place where *Aquimorato* stood, and some of our fellowes accompanied him (for I durst not abandon *Zoraida*, who had falne betweene mine armes all amazed:) and in conclusion, those which had mounted, behaued themselves so well, as they brought *Aquimorato* downe in a trice, hauing tied his hand, and set a gagge in his mouth, which hindred his speech, threatening him that if he did speake but a word, it should cost him his life.

When his daughter saw him, shee couered her eyes, because she would not behold him. And he maruelled, wholly ignoring with how good a will shee came away with vs: but then considering that nothing was so requisite as our legges, we did with all velocity and diligence get into the Frigate, for our companions did perplexedly expect our returne, halfe afraid that some disgrace had befallne vs. Scarce were two houres of the night ouerrunne, when we were all imbarked: and then wee vnmanacled *Zoraida's* fathers hands, & tooke the cloth out of his mouth. But the Runnagate did againe admonish him, that as he tendred his life, he should not speake one word. He beholding his daughter likewise there, began to sigh very feelingly, but chiefly  
per.

perceiuing me to hold her so straightly embraced, and that she made no resistance, nor did complaine or seeme coy, but stood quiet. But yet for all that he kept silence, fearing lest they should put the Runnagates menaces in execution. *Zoraida* seeing her selfe now safe within the Barke, and that we were ready to row away, looking on her father, and the other *Moores* that were tied therein, shee intreated the Runnagate to tell me how shee desired me to doe her the fauour to set those *Moores* and her father at libertie: for she would rather cast her selfe into the Sea, then see a father, who had loued her so dearly, cartied away captiue before her eyes, and that also by her occasion. The Runnagate told me her minde, and I answered how I was very well pleased it should be so: but he replied, that it was in no sort expedient, by reason that if they were landed there, they would presently raise the Countrey, and put the whole Citie into a tumult, & cause certaine light Frigats to be manned, and sent out in our pursuite; and lay both Sea and Land for vs in such sort, as it would be impossible for vs to escape: but that as might bee done, was to giue them liberty at the first *Christian* Countrey whereat wee arriued. All of vs agreed to this opinion, and *Zoraida* also (to whom reason was giuen of the motiues wee had not to free them forthwith and accomplish her will therein) remayned satisfied: and therefore presently with ioyfull silence, and cheerefull diligence, euery one of our lusty Rowers, seizing vpon his Oare, we began, after wee had commended our selues vnto Almighty God, to lanch forth, and addresse our course towards the Iles of *Mallorca*, which is the nearest *Christian* Countrey: but by reason that the winde blew somewhat from the Mountaines, and that the Sea began to be rough, it was not possible to continue that course; and so we were forced to approach the shore, and goe by little and little towards *Oran*, not without great griefe and anguish, for feare to be espied by the towne of *Sargel*, which is on that coast, and falls some seuentie leagues beyond *Argiers*: and we did likewise feare to meete in that passage

passage some Galliot of those which come ordinarily with Merchandize from *Tetnan*, although euery one of vs for himselfe, and for all together, did presume, that if we encountred a Galliot of Merchandize, so it were not a Pirate, that not only we would not be lost, but rather would take the vessell, that therein we might with more security finish our voyage. *Zoraida*, whilst thus we sailed, went with her head betwene my hands, because she would not looke on her father: and I felt her, how shee was still inuoking of *Lela Marien* to assist vs: and hauing sailed about some thirtie leagues, the morning ouertooke vs about some three Muskets shot from land, in a place that seemed to be desart, and free from all accessse of those that might discouer vs; and yet for all that, wee got by might and mayne, somewhat further into the Seas, that now were become a little calmer: and hauing entred some two Leagues into the Maine, order was giuen, that they should row by turnes, whilst they did refresh themselues and take a little sustenance, for the Barke was very well furnished with Victuals, although those which did row, refused the offer, saying, that then it was no time to repose, and that they should set those that did not row, to dinner, for they would not yet in any sort let go their Oares. It being done as they had said, the winde did rise so much, as it made vs abandoning our Oares, to set saile, and direct our Boat towards *Oran*, being vnable to take any other course: all was done with very great speed; and so we made by the saile more then eight miles an houre, free from all other feare, then that of encountering some vessell of warre. We gaue the *Moores* our prisoners their dinner, and the runnagate comforted them, saying, that they went not as prisoners, for they should receiue their liberty, vpon the first commodity that were profferd. The same was likewise said to *Zoraida's* father, who returned them this answer, I would easily expect and belecue any other thing, O *Christians*, of your liberality and honourable manner of proceeding: but doe not thinke that I am so simple, as once to imagine that you will

will giue me my liberty, for you did neuer expose your selfe to the danger of dispoiling me thereof, with intention to returne it me so prodigally againe, especially knowing as you doe, who I am, and the profit which you may reape by giuing me it againe, to which profit if you will put a name, and tell me how much would you demand, I doe euen from hence offer vnto you all that which you will seeke for me, and for that vnfortunate daughter of mine: or if you will not deliuer me, I will giue you it for her alone, who is the greatest, and the best part of my soule. And saying so, he began to weepe so bitterly, as he mooued vs all to compassion, and forced *Zoraida* to looke vpon him; who seeing him weepe, was so strangely mooued, as arising from my feet, she went and embraced her father, and laying her face vpon his, they began together so tender a lamentation, as many of vs that were in th *Barke*, were forced to keep them company: but when her father noted her to be so richly adorned, and with so many Iewels on, he asked her in his owne language, How haps this, daughter, that yesternight late before this terrible disaister befell vs, wherein we are plunged, I saw thee attired in thine ordinary household array, and that now, without hauing had any leifure to apparel thy selfe, or hauing giuen thee any glad tidings, for whose solemnizing, thou oughtest to adorne and publish thy selfe, I do view thee thus clad in the richest attire which I could bestow vpon thee, when our fortune was most fauorable? Answer me to this, for thou hast suspended & astonished me more then the very disgrace it selfe wherein I am.

All that the *Moore* said to his daughter, the *Runnagate* declared vnto vs; and she did not answer a word to him: but when he saw the little coffers lie at one side of the *Barke*, wherein she was wont to keepe her Iewels, and that hee knew very well she had left at *Argiers*, and not brought to the garden, he was much more amazed, and demanded of her, how that coffer was come into our possession, and what things she had there within it? To which the *Runnagate*, without attending that *Zoraida* should answer him, said,  
Sir,

Sir, doe not trouble your selfe by demanding so many things of your daughter *Zoraida*; for with one that I will say, I shall satisfie them all: and therefore you shall vnderstand that shee is a *Christian*, and hath beene the file that cut off our chaines, and is the libertie it selfe of our captiuitie; and she goeth along with vs of her owne free will, as content (if mine imagination doth not wrong me) to see her selfe in this state, as he is that commeth out of darkenesse to the light, from death vnto life, and out of paine into glory. Is it true, daughter, which this man saies, quoth the Moore? It is, answered *Zoraida*: That thou in effect art a *Christian*, replied the old man, and she that hath put her father into his enemies hands? To which *Zoraida* answered, I am she that is a *Christian*, but not shee that hath brought thee to this passe: for my desire did neuer so estrange it selfe from thee, as to abandon or harme thee, but only endeouored to doe my selfe good. And what good hast thou done thy selfe, daughter? Demand that, said she, of *Lela Marien*, for she can therein informe thee better then I can.

Scarce had the Moore heard her say so, when with incredible haste he threw himself headlong into the Sea, wherein he had beene questionlesly drowned, if the long appa-  
rell he wore on, had not kept him vp a while aboute the water. *Zoraida* cried out to vs to saue him: and so we all presently ran, and laying hold on a part of his Turkish Robe, drew him vp halfe drowned, and wholly deuoid of feeling. Whereat *Zoraida* was so grieved, that she lamented him as dolefully as if he had beene dead. There we laid him with his mouth downward, and he auoyded a great quantity of Water, and after the space of two houres returned to himselfe againe: and in the meane time the wind also turning, it did driue vs towards the Coast; so that we vvere constrained to keepe our selues by very force of Armes from striking vpon it, and our good fortune directing vs, vve arriued to a little Creeke at the side of a certayne Cape or Promontorie, called by the Moores, The Cape of the *Cana Rumia*, which in our Language signifies, *The ill Christian Woman*:  
and



and the *Moores* hold it for a tradition, that in the very same place was the *Cana* buried, for whom Spaine was lost, and conquered by the *Moores*: for *Cana* in their language signifies an ill woman, and *Rumia* a *Christian*: yea, and they hold it for a signe of misfortune, to arrive or cast Ancre there, when meere necessity drives them thither: without which they neuer approach it: yet did it not procue to vs the shelter of an ill woman, but the secure haven of our safety. We sent our Centinels a-shore, and neuer let the Oares slip out of our hands: We did likewise eate of the Runnagates prouision, and heartily besought Almighty God and our Ladie to assist and fauour vs with a happy end, to so luckie a beginning. And we agreed vpon *Zoraida's* intreatie, to set her father and the other *Moores* that we had tyed, a-land in that place: for she was of so tender and compassionate a minde, as she could in no wise brooke to see her father tied in her presence, or her countrey men borne away captiues: wherefore we made her a promise, that we would at our departure let them all goe away, seeing we incurd no danger by leauing them in that inhabitable desert: our prayers were not so vaine, but that they found gentle acceptance in heauen, which presently changed the Winde, and appeased the Sea, inuiting vs cheerefully to returne to it againe, and prosecute our commenced voyage.

Seeing that the Weather was fauourable, we loosed the *Moores*, and set them all a-land one by one; and comming to disembarken *Zoraida's* Father, who was by that time wholly come to himselfe, he said, For what doe you coniecture, *Christians*, that this bad woman is glad that you giue me liberty? Doe you thinke that she doth it for pity that shee takes of me? No truely: but shee doth it only to remoue the hinderance my presence gaue her when shee would execute her vnlawfull desires. Nor ought you to belecue that shee is moued to change religion, by reason that she vnderstands yours to be better then her owne: but onely because she knowes licentiousnesse to be more pub-  
likely

likely and freely practised in your countrey then among vs: and then turning to *Zoraida*, whom I and another Christian held fast by both the armes, lest she should doe some desperate act, he said, O infamous gyrl, and ill-aduised Mayden, where dost thou run thus blinded and distracted, in the power of those dogges our naturall enemies? Cursed bee the houre wherein I engendred thee, and cursed the delights and pleasures wherein thou wast noursed. I perceiuing that he was not like to make an end of his execrations so soone as I could wish, had him set on shore, and thence he prosecuted his maledictions and plaints, praying vnto *Mahomet* that hee would intercede with *Ala*, that wee might be all destroyed, confounded, and cast away. And when we could heare his words no longer, by reason that we set saile, we perceiued his workes, that were, to plucke his beard, teare his haire, and cast himselfe on the grounds: but once he did lift vp his voyce so high, as that we heard him say, Returne, beloued daughter, returne to the land, for I doe pardon thee all that thou hast done, and deliuer that money to those men, for it is now their owne, and returne thou to comfort thy sadde and desolate father, who will forsake his life on these desolate sands, if thou dost abandon him.

*Zoraida* heard him say all this, and lamented thereat, but knew not how to speake, or answere him any other thing but this: Father mine, I pray *Ala*, that *Lela Marien*, who hath beene the cause of my becomming a Christian, may likewise comfort thee in thy sorrow. *Ala* knowes well, that I could doe none other then I did, and that these Christians doe owe me nothing for my good will, seeing that though I had not come away with them, but remained at my house, yet had it beene impossible (such was the haste wherewithall my soule pressed me) not to haue executed this my purpose; which seemes to me to be as good, as thou, O beloued Father, doest account it wicked. She said this in a time that neither her Father could heare her, nor wee behold him: and therefore, after I had comforted *Zoraida*, wee did

thenceforth onely attend our Voyage, which was so much holpen by the fauorable winde, as we made full account to bee the next day on the Coast of Spaine : but, as good very seldome, or rather neuer betides a man thorowly and wholly, without being accompanied or followed by some euill which troubles and assaults it, our fortune would, or rather the male dictions of the Moore, powred on his Daughter : (for the Curses of any Father whatsoeuer are to be feared) that being ingulfed three houres within night, and going before the winde with a full Sayle, and our Oares set vp, because the prosperous winde had rid vs of the labour of rowing, vve savv neere vnto vs, by the light of the Moone that shined very cleerely, a round vessell which with all her Sailes spred, did crosse before vs into the Sea, and that so neerely, as wee were faine to strike downe her Saile, that vve might auoids the shog, she vvas like to giue vs; and those that vvere in her, had on the other side laboured also vwhat they might, to turne her out of our way, standing all of them on the hatches to demand of vs what we were, from whence we came, and whither wee did saile? But by reason that they spake French, the Runnagate bade vs not to speak a word, saying, Let none answer, for these are French Pirates which make their bootie of euery bodie. For this cause none of vs answered : and being passed a little forward, and that the Ship remained in the Lee of vs, they suddenly shot off two Peeces of Artillery, and as I thinke, both of them had chaine bullets, for with the one they cut our Mast alunder, and ouerthrew it and the saile into the sea, and instantly after they discharged another, and the bullet alighting in our Barke, did pierce it thorow and thorow, without doing any other hurt: but we, seeing that our vessell began to sinke, began all to crie out, and request them to succour vs, & prayed them that they would take vs into their vessell, for we were a drowning. Then they came amaine, and casting out their Cock-boate, there entred into it as good as a dozen Frenchmen, well appointed with their Harcabuzes  
and

and Matches lighted, and so approached vnto vs; and perceiving how few we were, and that the Barke did sinke, they receiued vs into their boate, saying, that because we had vsed the discourtesie of not making them answer, that misfortune had befallne vs. Our Runnagate about this time tooke the coffer wherein *Zoraida's* treasures were kept, and threw it into the sea vnperceiued of any.

In conclusion, we went all of vs into the great vessel with the Frenchmen, who after they had informed themselves of all that which they desired to know, as if they were our Capitall enemies, they afterward dispoyled vs of all that euer we had about vs, and of *Zoraida* they tooke all, euen vnto her very bracelets, that she wore on the wrests of her seete. But the wrong they did to *Zoraida* did not afflict me so much as the feare I conceiued, that after they had taken away from her, her most rich and precious Jewels, they would also deprive her of the Jewell of most prize, and which shee valued most. But the desires of that nation extend themselves no farther, then to the gaine of money: and their auarice in this is neuer thorowly satisfied; and at that time was so great, as they would haue taken from vs the very habits of slaues, that wee brought from Barbarie, if they had found them to haue beene worth any thing: and some there were of opinion among them, that we should be all inwreathed in a saile, and throwne into the Sea, because they had intention to traffique into some hauens of Spaine, vnder the name of *Britaines*, and that if they carried vs aliue, they should be punished, their robbery being detected: but the Captaine, who was he that had pilld my beloued *Zoraida*, said, that he was so contented with his bootie, as he meant not to touch any part of Spaine, but would passe the streights of *Gibraltar* by night, or as he might, and so retorne againe to *Rochel*, from whence he was come: and thereupon they all agreed to giue vs their Cock-boate, and all that was necessary for our short voyage, as indeede they performed the day ensuing when we were in the view of Spaine, with the sight whercof

all our griefes & pouerties were as quite forgotten, as if we neuer had felt any; so great is the delight a man takes to recouer his liberty. It was about midday when they put vs into the Cocke, giuing vnto vs two Barrels of water and some Bisket; and the Captaine mooued with some compassion, as the beautifull *Zoraida* embarked her selfe, bestowed on her about fortie crownes in gold; nor would he permit his Souldiers to despoyle her of these very garments, which then and now she weares.

We entred into the Cock-boat, and giuing them thanks for the good they did, and shewing at our departure more tokens of thankfulnessse, then of discontent, they sayled presently away from vs towards the Straights, and we without looking on any other North or Starre, then the land it selfe which appeared before vs, did row towards it so lustily, that at the Sun-set we were so neere, as we made full account to arriue before the night were farre spent. But by reason that the Moone did not shine, and the night was very darke, and that we knew not where we were, we did not hold it the best course to approach the shore too neere; yet others there were that thought it conuenient and good, desiring that we should make to it, although we ranne the boate on the rockes, and farre from any dwelling; for by doing so, we should free our selues from the feare which we ought of reason to haue, lest there should be vp & down on that coast any Frigats of the Pyrates of *Titan*, which are wont to leaue *Barbarie* ouer-night, and be on the coast of *Spaine* ere morning, and ordinarily make their bootie, and turne to their supper againe to *Barbarie* the night following: but of the contrarie opinions, that which was followed was, that we should draw neere the land by little & little, and that if the quietnesse of the Sea would permit it, we should take land where we might best and most commodiously doe it. This was done, and a little before midnight we arriued to the foot of a high & monstrous mountain, which was not altogether so neere to the Sea, but that it did grant a little patch of ground, whereon we might commodiously disembarked.

disembarke. Wherefore we ranne our selues on the sands, and came all a-land and kissed the earth, and with teares of most ioyfull content and delight, gaue thanks vnto our Lord God, for the incomparable fauours which he had done vs in our voyage: then tooke wee out our vitailles from the boate, and drew it selfe vp on the shore, & ascended a great part of the mountaine: for although we were in that place, yet durst wee not assure our selues, nor did throughly belecue that it was a Christian Countrey whereon we did tread.

The day breaking somewhat slower then I could haue wished it; we ascended the mountaine wholly, to see whether we might discouer any dwelling, or sheepolds from thence; but although we extended our sight vnto euery quarter, yet could we neither descry dwelling, person, path, nor high-way: yet did we resolute notwithstanding to enter into the land, seeing that we could not choose but discouer ere long some body who might giue vs notice of the place where we were: and that which afflicted mee most of all, was, to see *Zoraida* goe afoote thorow those rugged places; for although I did sometimes carry her on my shoulders, yet did the toile I tooke more weary her, then the repose she got could ease her; and therefore would neuer after the first time suffer me to take that paines againe, and so shee went euer after afoote with great patience, and tokens of ioy, I holding her still by the hand; and hauing trauelled little lesse then a quarter of a league, we heard the noise of a little bell, an infallible argument that neere at hand there was some cattel; whereupon all of vs looking very wistly to see whether any body appeared, we might perceiue vnder a Corke-tree a yong sheepheard, who very quietly and carelesly was caruing of a sticke with a knife: we called to him, and he leaped vp lightly on foote, and (as we afterwards learned) the first that he got sight of, were the Runnagate and *Zoraida*; whom he seeing apparelled in the *Morisco* habit, thought that all the people of *Barbarie* had beene at his heeles: and therefore running very swiftly into the

H h 3

wood,



wood, he cryed all along with maruellous lowdnesse, Moores, Moores are in the land; Moores, Moores, arme, arme. These outcries struck vs anew into a great perplexity, and scarce did we know what we should doe: but considering how the sheep-heards alarme would cause all the Countrey to rise vp, and that the horsemen that kept the coast would presently come to see what it was; we all agreed that the Runnagate should put off his *Turkish* attire, and put on a captiues cassocke, which one of the company gaue vnto him forthwith, although the giuer remained after in his shirt: & thus committing the affaire vnto almighty God, we followed on by the same way, which we saw the sheepheard had taken, alwaies expecting when the horsemen of the coast would fall vpon vs: and we were not deceiued in our expectation, for within two houres after, hauing issued out of those woods into a plaine, we discovered about some fifty horsemen which came running towards vs as swiftly as their horses could driue, and hauing perceiued them, we stood still, & stayed vntill they came to vs, and saw, in stead of the Moores they sought for, so many poore Christians, and remained somewhat ashamed thereat: and one of them demanded whether wee were the occasion that a sheepheard had giuen the alarme? Yes, qd. I: and as I was about to informe what I was, and of all our aduenture, and from whence we came, one of the Christians that came with vs, did take notice of the horseman who had spoken vnto vs, and so interrupting my speech, he said, Sirs, let God be praised which hath brought vs to so good a place as this is, for if I be not deceiued, the earth which we tread, is of *Veley Malana*; and if the yeeres of my captiuitie haue not confounded my memory, you like wife, Sir, that demands what we be, are *Peter of Bustamonte*, mine Vncle. As soone as euer the Christian captiue had spoken those words, the horseman leaping off his horse, ranne and embraced him, saying, O nephew, as deare to me as my soule and life, now I doe know thee very well, and many a day since haue I wept for thee, thinking thou wast dead, and so hath my sister thy Mother,

Mother, and all the rest of thy Friends which doe liue yet, and God hath bin pleased to preferue their liues, that they may enioy the pleasure to behold thee. Wee knew very well, that thou wast in Argiers, and by the signes and tokens of thy clothes, and that of all the rest here of thy companions, I surmise that your escape hath bin miraculous. It was so, replied the Captiue, and we shall haue time, I hope, to recount vnto you the manner.

As soone as the Horsemen had vnderstood, that we were Christian Captiues, they allighted off their Horses, and euery one of them inuited vs to mount vpon his own, to carrie vs to the Citie of *Uley Malaga*, which was yet a league and a halfe from that place: and some of them went to the place where we had left the Boate, to bring it to the Citie; whom wee informed first of the place where it lay; others did mount vs vp a horse-backe behind themselves, and *Zoraida* rode behind the Captiues Vncle: all the people issued to receiue vs, being premonished of our arriual by some one that had ridden before. They did not wonder to see Captiues freed, nor Moores captiued there, being an ordinary thing in those parts: but that whereat they wondred, was the surpassing beauty of *Zoraida*, which at that season and instant was in her prime, as well through the warmth shee had gotten by her trauell, as also through the ioy shee conceiued to see her selfe in Christian lands, secure from all feare of being surprized or lost: and these things called out to her face such colours, as if it be not that affection might then haue deceiued me, I durst auerre, that a more beautifull then she was, the world could not affoord, at least among those which I had euer beheld.

We went directly to the Church to giue thanks vnto Almighty God, for the benefit receiued: and as soone as *Zoraida* entred into it, shee said there were faces in it, that resembled very much that of *Lela Marien*. We told her that they were her images: and the Rummagate, as well as the breuitie of the time permitted, instructed her what they signified, to the end shee should doe them reuerence, as if

euery one of them were truly that same *Lela Marien* which had spoken vnto her. Shee who hath a very good vnderstanding, and an easie and cleare conceit, comprehended presently al that was told vnto her concerning Images. From thence they carryed vs, and deuided vs among different houses of the City: but the Christian that came with vs, carried the Runnagate, *Zoriads* and me to the house of his parents, which were indifferently accommodated, and stored with the goods of Fortune, and did entertaine me with as great loue and kindnes, as if I were their own sonne. We remained fixe daies in *Ueley*, in which time the Runnagate hauing made an information of all that which might concerne him, he went to the City of *Granado* to be reconciled, by the holy *Inquisitions* meanes, to the bosome of our holy Mother the Church. The rest of the freed captiues tooke euery one the way that he pleased, and *Zoraida* and I remained behinde, with those Ducats only which the Frenchmans curtesie was pleased to bestow on *Zoraida*: and with part of that summe I bought her this beast whereon she rides: I my selfe seruing her hitherto as her Father and her Squire, and not as her Spouse, we trauaile with intention to see whether my father be yet liuing, or any of my brothers haue had more prosperous hap then my selfe, although seeing that Heauen hath made mee *Zoraida's* Consort, me thinks no other good Fortune could arriue, were it neuer so great, that I would hold in so high estimation. The patience wherewithall she beares the incommodities vsually annexed vnto pouertie, and the desires shee shewes to become a Christian, is such and so great, as it strikes me into an admiration, and doth moue me to serue her all the dayes of my life: although that the delight which I take to see my selfe hers, and shee mine, is oft times interrupted, and almost dissolued by the feare which I haue, that I shall not finde in mine owne Countrey some little Corner, wherein I may entertaine her; and that Time and Death haue wrought such alteration in the goods and liues of my Fathers and Brothers, as I shall scarce finde any one at home that

that knowes me. I haue no more, good Sirs, to tell you of my liues Historie, then which, whether it be pleasing, and rare, or no, your cleere conceits are to iudge: as for my selfe I dare say, that if it had beene possible, I would haue told it with more breuitie; fearing it might bee tedious vnto you, I purposely omitted many delightfull circumstances thereof.

## C H A P. XV.

*Which speaks of that which after befell in the Inne; and of sundry other things worthy to be knowne.*

**T**He Captiue hauing said this, held his peace, and *Don Fernando* replyed to him thus: Truly, Captaine, the manner wherewithall you haue recounted this maruailous successe, hath beene such, as it may be parragon'd to the nouelty and strangenesse of the euent it selfe: and so great is the delight wee haue taken in the hearing thereof, as I doe belecue, that although we had spent the time from hence till to morrow, in listning to it, yet should we be glad to heare it told ouer once againe. And saying so, *Cardenio*, and all the rest did offer themselues and their meanes to his seruice, as much as lay in them, with so cordiall and friendly words, as the Captiue remained throughly satisfied with their good wits: but specially *Don Fernando* offered, that if he would returne with him, he would cause the Marquesse his brother to be *Zoraida* her Godfather in Baptisme, and that he for his part, would so accommodate him with all things necessary, as he might enter into the towne, with the decency and authority due to his person. The Captiue did gratifie his large offers very courteously, but would not accept any of them at that time. By this the night drew on, and about the fall thereof, there arriued at the Inne a Coach with some men a horse-backe, and asked for lodging: to whom the Oastesse answered, that in all the Inne

Inne there was not a span free : The number of her ghosts was already so many. Well, although that be so, quoth one of the horsemen that had entred, yet must there be a place found for Master *Iustice*, who comes in this Coach. At this name, the Oastesse was afraid, and said, Sir, the misfortune is, that I haue no bed: but if Master *Iustice* brings one with him, as it is probable he doth, let him enter in boldly, and I and my husband will leaue our owne Chamber to accommodate his Worship. So be it, quoth the Squire, and by this time allighted out of the Coach, a man whose attire did presently denote his dignity & office; for his long gowne, and his great & large slecues did shew that he was a Iudge, as the Seruingman affirmed. He led a young Maiden by the hand, of about some sixtene yeeres old, apparelled in riding attire, but she was therewithall of so disposed, beautifull, and chearefull a countenance, as her presence did strike them all into admiration: so as if they had not seene *Dorotea*, *Luscinda*, and *Zoraida*, which were then in the Inne, they would hardly haue beleeued that this Damzels beauty might any where haue beene matched.

*Don-Quixote* was present at the Iudges, and the Gentle-womans entry: and so, as soone as hee had seene him, hee said, Sir, you may boldly enter, and take your ease in this Castle, which although it be but little, and ill accommodated, yet there is no narrowness nor discommodity in the world, but makes place for armes, and learning, & specially if the armes and letters bring beauty for their guide and leader, as your learning doth, conducted by this lovely Damzell, to whom ought not onely Castles to open & manifest themselves, but also Rocks to part and deuide their Cliffes, and Mountaines to bow their ambitious crests, to giue and make her a lodging. Enter therefore, I say, Worshipfull Sir, into this Paradise, wherein you shall find Stars and Suns, to accompany this skie which you bring in your company. Here shall you finde armes in their height, and beauty in her prime. The Iudge maruailed great'y at *Don-Quixotes* speech, whom he began to behold very earnestly, and

and wondred no lesse at his shape, then at his words, and knowing not what answere he might return him, he was diverted on the other side, by the sudden approach of the 3. Ladies, *Luscinda, Dorotea, & Zoraida*, which stood before him: for hauing heard of the arriual of new Ghests, & also being informed by the Oastesse of the yong Ladies beautie, they were come forth to see, and entertaine her. But *Don Fernando, Cardenio*, and the Curate, did giue him more complete and courtly entertainment then the rustie Knight. In effect, the Iudge was maruailously amazed at that which he saw and heard in that Inne: and the faire Ghests thereof bade the beautiful Maiden welcome. The Iudge perceiued very well, that the Ghests of the Inne were all men of account: but *Don-Quixotes* feature, visage, and behavior, did set him out of all by as, being not able to coniecture what he might be: and after some courtlike intercourses passed, and the commodities of the Inne examined, they all agreed againe, as they had done before, that all the women should enter into *Don-Quixotes* roome, and the men remaine without in their Guard. And so the Iudge was content that the Damzell, who was his Daughter, should also go with those Ladies, which shee did with a very good will: and with a part of the Inkeepers narrow bed, and halfe of that which the Iudge had brought with him, they made shift to passe ouer that night the best they could.

The Captiue, who from the instant that he had first seen the Iudge, did greatly suspect that he was his Brother, and demanded of one of his Seruants, how he was called, and where he was borne? The other answered, how he was called the *Licenciat John Perez of Viedma*, and as hee had heard, hee was borne in a Village of the Mountaines of Leon. With this relation, and the rest that hee had noted, hee finally confirmed his opinion that it was the Brother, who following his Fathers aduice, had dedicated himselfe to his studies: and full of ioy and contentment, calling aside *Don Fernando, Cardenio*, and the Curate, hee certified them of all that passed, and that the Iudge was his Brother.

The



The Scruing-man told him likewise how he went towards the Indies, where he had his place and office in the Courts of Mexico : and also that the young Gentlewoman, was his Daughter, of whose birth her mother had died, and he euer after remained a Widower, and very rich, by her dowry and-portion that she had left to her daughter : hee demanded of them aduice how he might discouer himselfe to his brother, or first know, whether after he had detected himselfe, he would receiue him with a good countenance and affection, and not be ashamed to acknowledge him for his brother, seeing him in so poore an estate. Leauē the triall of that experience to mee, quoth the Curate, and the rather, because there is no occasion why you, Sir Captaine, should not be kindly entertained by him: for the prudence, worths, and good countenance of your brother, giue manifest tokens that he is nothing arrogant. For all that, said the Captaine, I would not make my selfe knowne on the suddaine, but would vse some pretty ambages to bring him acquainted with mee. I say vnto you, quoth the Curate, that I will trace the matter in such sort, as we all will rest satisfied.

Supper was by this made readie, and all of them fate downe to the table, the Captiue excepted & Ladies, which supped together within the roome : and about the midst of supper, the Curate said, Master Iustice, I haue had in times past a Comrade of your very surname in Constantinople, where I was sometime Captiue, who was one of the most valiant Souldiers and Captaines that might be found among all the Spanish foot : but he was as vnfortunate as he was valorous and resolute. And how was that Captain called, good Sir, quoth the Iudge ? His name was, replied Master Curate, *Ruy Perez of Viedma*, and he was borne in a Village of the mountaines of Leon ; and hee recounted vnto me an occurrence hapned betweene his father, him, and his other brethren, which, if I had not beenetold by a man of such credit and reputation as he was, I would haue esteemed for one of these fables which old Wiues

are wont to rehearse by the fire side in Winter : for hee said to mee , that his Father had deuided his goods among his three Sonnes , and gaue them withall , certaine Precepts, better then those of *Cato*; and I know well, that the choise which he made to follow the Warre , had such happy successe, as within a few yeeres, through his forwardnesse and valour, without the helpe of any other arme, hee was aduanced to a company of Foote, and made a Captaine, and was in the way and course of becomming one day a Col- lonell : but fortune was contrary to him , for euen there, where he was most to expect her fauour, hee lost it , with the losse of his liberty, in that most happy iourney wherein so many recouered it , to wit , in the battell of Lepanto. I lost mine in Goleta , and after by different successe wee became companions in Constantinople : from whence we went to Argiers , where did befall him one of the most notable aduentures that euer hapned in the world ; and there the Curate with succinct breuitie recounted all that had hapned betweene the Captaine and *Zoraida*: to all which the Iudge was so attentue, as in all his life he neuer listned to any cause so attentuely , as then. And the Curate onely arriued to the Point wherein the Frenchmen spoyled the Christians that came in the Barke , and the necessitie wherein his companion and the beautifull *Zoraida* remayned : of whom hee had not learned anything after, nor knew not what became of them, or whether thy came into Spaine , or were carryed away by the Frenchmen to France.

The Captaine stood listning somewhat aloofe off to all the Curates words & noted the while the motions and gestures of his brother; who seeing that the Curate had now made an ende of his speech , breathing forth a great sigh, and his eyes being filled with teares, he said, O Sir, if you had knowne the newes which you haue told me, and how neerely they touch me in some points , whereby I am constrained to manifest these teares, which violently breake forth in despight of my discretion, and calling, you would hold

hold me excused for this excesse. That Captaine of whom you spoke, is my eldest brother, who, as one stronger, and of more noble thoughts then I or my younger brother, made election of the honourable military calling; one of the three estates which our father proposed to vs, euen as your *Comrade* informed you, when as you thought hee related a fable. I followed my booke, by which God and my diligence raised me to the state you see: my younger brother is in Peru, and with that which he hath sent to my father and my self, hath bountifully recompensed the portion he caried, and giuen to him sufficient to satisfie his liberall disposition, and to mee, wherewithall to continue my studies, with the decensie and authority needfull to aduance me to the ranke which now I possesse. My father liues, yet but dying through desire to learne somewhat of his eldest sonne, and doth daily importune God with incessant prayers, that death may not shut his eyes vnill hee may once againe see him aliue. I only maruell not a little, considering his discretion, that among all his labours, afflictions, or prosperous successes, hee hath beene so carelesse in giuing his father notice of his proceedings: for if either he, or any one of vs had knowne of his captiuitie, he should not haue needed to expect the miracle of the Cane for his ransom. But that which troubles me most of all, is, to thinke whether these Frenchmen haue restored him againe to libertie, or else slaine him, that they might conceale their robberie the better: all which will be an occasion to mee to prosecute my voyage, not with the ioy wherewithall I began it, but rather with melancholy and sorrow. O deare brother, I would I might know now where thou art, that I my selfe might goe and fetch thee out, and free thee from thy paines, although it were with the hazard of mine own. O who is he that could carrie newes to our old father, that thou wert but aliue, although thou wert hidden in the most abstruse dungeons of Barbarie; for his riches, my brothers and mine would fetch thee from thence. O beautifull and bountifull *Zoraida*, who might be able to recompence thee

thee for the good thou hast done to my brother? How happy were hee that might bee present at thy Spirituall Birth and Baptisme, and at thy nuptials, which would be so gratefull to vs all? These and many other such words did the Iudge deliuer, so full of compassion for the newes that hee had receiued of his brother, as all that heard him kept him company, in shewing signes of compassion for his sorrow.

The Curate therefore perceiuing the happy successe whereto his designe and the Captaines desire had sorted, would hold the company sad no longer, & therfore arising from the table, & entring into the roome wherein *Zoraida* was, he tooke her by the hand, and after her followed *Luscinda*, *Dorotea*, and the Iudge his daughter. The Captaine stood still to see what the Curate would doe; who taking him fast by the other hand, marched ouer with them both towards the Iudge & the other Gentlemen, and said, Suppress your teares, Master Iustice, and glut your desire with all that good which it may desire, seeing you haue here before you your good brother, and your louing sister in law: this man whom you view here, is the Captaine *Viedma*, and this the beautifull Moore, which hath done so much for him. The Frenchmen which I told you of, haue reduced them to the pouerty you see, to the end that you may shew the liberality of your Noble brest. Then did the Captaine draw neere to embrace his brother: but he held him off a while with his arms, to note whether it was he or no; but when he once knew him, he embraced him so louingly, and with such abundance of teares, as did attract the like frō all the beholders. The words that the brothers spoke one to another, or the feeling affection which they shewed, can hardly be conceiued, & therfore much lesse written by any one whatsoeuer. There they did briefly recount the one to the other their successes: there did they shew the true loue and affection of brothers in his prime: there did the Iudge embrace *Zoraida*: there he made her an offer of all that was his: there did hee also cause his Daughter to embrace  
her:

her: there the beautifull Christian, and the most beautifull Moore renewed the teares of them all: there *Don-Quixote* was attentiuē, without speaking a word, pondering of these rare occurrences, and attributing them to the *Chimera's*, which he imagined to be incident to Chiualrie: and there they agreed that the Capitaine and *Zoraida* should returne with their brother to Siuill, & thence aduise their father of his finding and liberty, that he, as wel as he might, should come to Siuill to the Baptisme and Marriage of *Zoraida*, because the Iudge could not possibly returne, or discontinue his journey, in respect that the Indian Fleete was to depart within a moneth from Siuill towards New Spaine.

Euery one in conclusion was ioyfull and glad at the captiues good successe; and two parts of the night being wel-nigh spent, they all agreed to repose themselues awhile. *Don-Quixote* offered himselte to watch and guard the Castle whilst they slept, lest they should be assaulted by some Giant or other miscreant, desirous to rob the great Treasure of beautie that was therein immured and kept. Those that knew him rendred vnto him infinite thanks: and withall informed the Iudge of his extravagant humor, whereat he was not a little recreated: onely *Sancho Pança* did fret, because they went so slowly to sleepe, and hee alone was best accommodated of them all, by lying downe on his beasts furniture, which cost him dearly, as shall be after recounted. The Ladies being withdrawne into their Chamber, and euery one laying himselte downe where best he might, *Don-Quixote* sallied out of the Inne, to bee Centinell of the Castle as he had promised. And a little before day it happened, that so sweet and tuneable a voyce touched the Ladies eares, as it obliged them all to listen vnto it very attentiuely, but chiefly *Dorozea*, who first awaked, and by whose side the young Gentlewoman *Donna Clara of Viedma* (for so the Iudges Daughter was called) slept. None of them could imagine who it was that sung so well without the helpe of any instrument: sometimes it seemed

seemed that he sung in the yard, others that it was in the Stable: and being thus in suspence, *Cardenio* came to the Chamber-dore, and said, Whosoever is not asleepe, let them giue care, and they shall heare the voice of a Lackey that so chants, as it likewise inchantes. Sir, quoth *Dorotea*, we heare him very well. With this *Cardenio* departed, and *Dorotea* vsing all the attention possible, heard that his song was this following.

## CHAP. XVI.

*Wherein is recounted the History of the Lackey, with other strange adventures befallne in the Inne.*

I Am a Mariner to loue,  
Which in his depths profound  
Still sailes, and yet no hope can proue,  
Of comming aye to th' ground.  
If following goe, a glistring starre,  
Which I aloofe descry,  
Much more resplendent, then those are  
That *Palinure* did spie:  
I know not where my course to bend,  
And so confusedly,  
To see it onely I pretend  
Carefull and carelessly.  
Her too impertinent regard,  
And too much modestie,  
The clouds are which mine eyes haue bard  
From their deserved fee.  
O cleere and soule reuining star,  
Whose sight doth trie my trust,  
If thou thy light from me debar,  
Instantly die I must.



The Singer arriving to this point of his song, *Dorotea* imagined that it would not be amisse to let *Donna Clara* heare so excellent a voyce, and therefore shee iogged her a little on the one and other side, vntill she had awaked her, and then said, Pardon me, child, for thus interrupting your sweet repose, seeing I doe it to the end you may ioy, by hearing one of the best voyces that perhaps you euer heard in your life. *Clara* awaked at the first drowzily, and did not well vnderstand what *Dorotea* said, and therefore demanding of her what she said, she told it her againe; whereupon *Donna Clara* was also attentiu: but scarce had she heard two verses repeated by the early Musician, when a maruellous trembling inuaded her, euen as if she had then suffered the grieuous fit of a quartane Ague. Wherefore imbracing *Dorotea* very straightly, she said, Alas, deare Ladie, why did you awake me, seeing the greatest happe that fortune could in this instant haue giuen mee, was, to haue mine eyes and eares so shut, as I might neither see, nor heare that vnfortunate Musician? What is that you say, child, quoth *Dorotea*? did you not heare one say that the Musician is but a horse-boy? Hee is no horse-boy, quoth *Clara*, but a Lord of many townes; and he that hath such firme possession of my soule, as if hee himselfe will not reiect it, he shall neuer be depriued of the dominion thereof. *Dorotea* greatly wondred at the passionate words of the young girl, whereby it seemed to her that she far surpassed the discretion which so tender yeeres did promise: and therefore she replied to her, saying, You speake so obscurely, Lady *Clara*, as I cannot vnderstand you: expound your selfe more cleerely, and tell mee what is that you say of soules, and townes, and of this Musician, whose voyce hath altdred you so much: but doe not say any thing to me now; for I would not lose, by listening to your disgusts, the pleasure I take to heare him sing; for me thinkes he resumes his musicke with new verses, and in another tune. In a good houre, quoth *Donna Clara*; and then, because she her selfe would not heare him, she stopt her eares with her fingers; whereat

whereat *Dorotea* did also maruell: but being attentive to the Musicke, shee heard the Lackey prosecute his song in this manner:

O Sweet and constant hope,  
That break'st impossibilities and briers,  
And firmly run'st the scope  
Which thou thy selfe dost forge to thy desires:  
Be not dismaide to see  
At eury step thy selfe nigh death to be.  
Sluggards doe not deserue  
The glorie of triumphs or victorie,  
Good hap doth neuer serue  
Those, which resist not Fortune manfully,  
But weakely fall to ground:  
And in soft sloth their senses all confound.  
That Loue his glories hold  
At a high rate, it reason is and iust:  
No precious stones nor gold  
May be at all compared with Loues gust.  
And tis a thing most cleare:  
Nothing is worth esteeme that cost not deare.  
An amorous persistance  
Obtaineth oft-times things impossible  
And so though I resistance  
Finde of my soules desires, in her sterne will;  
I hope, time shall be giuen,  
When I from earth may reach her glorious heau'n.

Heere the voyce ended, and *Donna Clara's* sighes began; all which inflamed *Dorotea's* desire, to know the cause of so sweete a song, and so sad a plaint. And therefore she estoones required her, to tell her now what shee was

about to haue said before. Then *C'ara* timorous, lest *Luscinda* should ouer-heare her, imbracing *Dorotea* very neerly, laid her mouth so close to *Dorotea's* care, as she might speake securely without being vnderstood by any other, and said; Hee that sings, is, deare Ladie, a Gentlemans son of the Kingdome of *Aragon*, whose father is Lord of two townes, and dwelled right before my fathers house at the Court, and although the windowes of our house were in Winter couered with seare-cloth, and in Summer with lattice, I know not how it happened, but this Gentleman, who went to the schole, espied mee, and whether it was at the Church, or else-where, I am not certain. Finally, he fel in loue with me, & did acquite me with his affection from his owne windowes that were opposite to mine, with so many tokens and such abundance of teares, as I most forcibly beleueed, & also affected him, without knowing how much he loued me: among the signes that he would make me, one was, to ioyne the one hand to the other, giuing me thereby to vnderstand that he would marry me: & although I would be very glad that it might be so; yet as one alone, and without a mother, I knew not to whom I might communicate the affaire, & did therefore let it rest without affording him any other fauour, vnlesse it were when my father and his were gone abroad, by lifting vp the lattice or Searecloth only a little, & permitting him to behold me; for which fauour hee would shew such signes of ioy, as a man would deeme him to be rest of his wits. The time of my fathers departure arriuing, & he hearing of it, but not frō me (for I could neuer tell it to him) he fel sicke, as far as I could vnderstand, for grieffe, & therefore I could neuer see him all the day of our departure, to bid him fare well at least with mine eyes: but after we had trauelled two daies, iust as we entred into an Inne in a village, a daies iourney from hence, I saw him at the lodging doore, apparrelled so properly like a Lackey, as if I had not borne about me his purtrature in my soule, it had beene impossible to know him. I knew him, & wondred, and was glad withall; and he beheld me vnwitting

vnwitting my father, from whose presence he still hides himselfe when he crosses the waies before me as we trauel, or after we arriue at any Inne. And because that I know what he is, and doe consider the paine hee takes by coming thus a-foote for my sake, and that with so great toile, I die for sorrow, and where hee puts his feete, I also put mine eyes. I know not with what intention hee comes nor how hee could possibly thus escape from his father, who loues him beyond measure, both because hee hath none other heire, and because the young Gentleman also deserues it, as you will perceiue when you see him: and I dare affirme besides, that all that which he saies, he composes *extempore*, and without any studie; for I haue heard that hee is a fine Student, and a great Poet. And euery time that I see him, or doe heare him sing, I start and tremble like an Aspen leafe, for feare that my father should know him, and thereby come to haue notice of our mutuall affections. I haue neuer spoken one word to him in my life, and yet I doe neuerthelesse loue him so much, as without him I shall not be able to liue. And this is all, deare Ladie, that I am able to say vnto you of the Musician whose voyce hath pleased you so well, as by it alone you might coniecture, that he is not a horse-boy as you said, but rather a Lord of soules, and townes, as I affirmed.

Speake no more, Ladie *Clara* (quoth *Dorotea*, at that season, kissing her a thousand times:) speake no more, I say, but haue patience vntill it be day-light; for I hope in God so to direct your affaires, as that they shall haue the fortunate successe, that so honest beginning deserues. Alas, Madam, quoth *Donna Clara*, what end may be expected, seeing his father is so noble and rich, as hee would scarce deeme mee worthy to be his sonnes seruant, how much lesse his spouse? and for mee to marry my selfe vnknowne to my father, I would not doe it for all the world. I desire no other thing, but that the yong Gentleman would returne home againe, and leaue me alone; perhaps, by not seeing him, and the great distance of the way which we are to trauel, my paine

which now so much presseth mee, will be somewhat attained, although I dare say, that this remedie which now I haue imagined, would auaille me but little: for I know not whence with the vengeance, or by what way this affection which I beare him got into me, seeing both I and he are so yong as we be, for I belecue we are much of an age, and I am not yet full sixteene; nor shall be as my father saies, vntill Michaelmas next. *Dorotea* could not contain her laughter, hearing how childishly *Donna Clara* spoke: to whom she said, Lady, let vs repose againe, and sleepe that little part of the night which remaines, & when God sends daylight, we will prosper, or my hands shall faile me. With this they held their peace, and all the Inne was drowned in profound silence; only the In-keepers Daughter, and *Mari-tornes* were not asleepe, but knowing very well *Don-Quixotes* peccant humour, and that hee was armed and on horse-backe without the Inne, keeping gard, both of them comforted together, and agreed to bee some-way merry with him, or at least to passe ouer some time, in hearing him speake rauingly.

It is therefore to be vnderstood, that there was not in all the Inne any window, which looked out into the field, but one hole in a barne, out of which they were wont to cast their straw: to this hole came the two Demy-Damzels, & saw *Don-Quixote* mounted and leaning on his lauelin, and breathing forth, cuer and anon, so dolefull & deepe sighes, as it seemed his soule was plucked away by euery one of them: and they noted besides, how he said with a soft and amorous voice, *O my Ladie Dulcinea of Toboso*, the Sunne of all beauty, the end & quintessence of discretion, the treasury of sweet countenance and carriage, the store-house of honesty: and finally, the *Idea* of all that which is profitable, modest, or delightfull in the world! and what might thy Ladiship be doing at this present? Hast thou perhaps thy mind now vpon thy captiue Knight, that most wittingly exposeth himselfe to so many dangers for thy sake? Giue vnto me tidings of her, O thou Luminary of the three faces:  
peraduen-

peradventure thou dost now with enuy enough behold her, either walking thorow some Gallery of her sumptuous Palaces, or leaning on some Bay-wiadow, & thinking how (sauing her honour and greatnes) she shall mitigate, and assuage the torture which this mine oppressed heart indures for her loue, what glory she shall giue for my paines, what quiet to my cares, what life to my death, and what guerdon to my seruices. And thou Sun, which art, as I beleue, by this time saddling of thy horses to get away earely, and goe out to see my Mistresse, I request thee as soone as thou shalt see her, to salute her in my behalfe, but beware that when thou lookest on her, and dost greet her, that thou doe not kisse her on the face, for if thou dost, I will become more iealous of thee, then euer thou wast of the swift Ingrate, which made thee to run and sweat so much thorow the plaines of Thessalia, or the brinks of Peneo, for I haue forgotten through which of them thou rannest so iealous and inamored. To this point arriued *Don-Quixote*, when the In-keepers Daughter began to call him softly vnto her and say, Sir Knight, approach a little hitherward, if you please. At which voice *Don-Quixote* turned his head, and saw by the light of the Moone which shined then very clearly, that he was called too from the hole, which he accounted to be a faire window ful of yron barres, and those costly gilded with gold, wel befitting so rich a Castle as he imagined that Inne to be, & presently in a moment he ferred to his own fancie, that once againe as he had done before, the beautifull Danzell, daughter to the Ladie of that Castle, overcome by his loue, did returne to sollicite him: and with this thought, because hee would not shew himselfe discourteous and vngratefull, hee turned *Rozinante* about, and came ouer to the hole, and then hauing beheld the two wenches, hee said, I take pitie on you, beautifull Lady, that you haue placed your amorous thoughts in a place whence it is not possible to haue any correspondence answerable to the desert of your high worth and beauty, whereof you are in no sort to condemne



this miserable Knight Errant, whom Loue hath wholly disabled to surrender his will to be any other then to her, whom at the first sight he made absolute mistresse of his soule. Pardon mee therefore, good Ladie, and retire your selfe to your Chamber, and make mee not, by any further insinuation of you desires, more vnthankfull and discourteous then I would be: and if through the loue that you beare me, you finde in me any other thing wherewithall I may serue and pleasure you, so that it bee not loue it selfe, demand it boldly, for I do swear vnto you by mine absence yet, sweetest enemy, to bestow it vpon you incontinently, yea though it be a lock of *Medusas* haire, which are all of Snakes, or the very Sun-beames inclosed in a viall of glasse.

My Ladie needs none of those things, Sir Knight, answered *Maritornes*. What doth she then want, discreet Matron, quoth *Don-Quixote*? Only one of your faire hands, said *Maritornes*, that therewithall she may disburden her selfe of some part of those violent desires, which compelled her to come to this window, with so great danger of her honour: for if her Lord and Father knew of her comming, the least sliche he would take off her, should bee at the least an eare. I would faine once see that, quoth *Don-Quixote*: but I am sure he will beware how hee doe it, if he haue no list to make the most disastrous end that euer father made in this world, for hauing laied violent hands on the delicate lims of his amorous daughter. *Maritornes* verily perswaded her selfe, that *Don-Quixote* would giue vp his hand as he was requested; and hauing already contriued in her mind what she would do, descended with all haste from the hole, and going into the Stable, fetched out *Saxcho Pança's* his Asses halter, and returned againe with very great speed, iust as *Don-Quixote* (standing vp on *Rozinantes* saddle, that he might the better reach the barred windowes, whereat hee imagined the wounded *Daruzel* remained) did, stretching vp his hand, say vnto her, Hold, Lady, the hand, or as I may better say, the executioner of earthly miscreants: hold, I say, that hand, which no other woman euer touched

touched before, not euen shee her selfe that hath intyre possession of my whole body, nor doe I giue it to you, to the end you should kisse it; but that you may behold the contexture of the sinnewes, the knitting of the muscles, and the spaciositie and breadth of the Veines, whereby you may collect, how great ought the force of that arme to be whereunto such a hand is knit. We shall see that presently, qd. *Maritornes*: and then making a running knot on the halter, she cast it on the wrist of his hand, and then descending from the hole, she tyed the other end of the halter very fast to the locke of the Barne dore. *Don-Quixote* feeling the roughnesse of the halter about his wrist, said, It rather seemes that you grate my hand, then that you cherish it: but yet I pray you, not to handle it so roughly, seeing it is in no fault of the euill which my will doth vnto you: nor is it comly that you should reuenge or disburden the whole bulke of your indignation on so small a part: remember that those which loue well, doe not take so cruel reuenge. But no body gaue eare to these words of *Don-Quixote*: for as soone as *Maritornes* had tyed him, she and the other almost burst for laughter, ran away, and left him tyed in such manner, as it was impossible for him to loose himselfe.

He stood, as we haue recounted, on *Rozinante* his saddle, hauing all his arme thrust in at the hole, and fastned by the wrist to the locke, and was in very great doubt and feare, that if *Rozinante* budged neuer so little on any side, hee should fall and hang by the arme; and therefore hee durst not once vse the least motion of the world, although hee might well haue expected from *Rozinantes* patience, and milde spirit, that if hee were suffered, hee would stand still a whole age without stirring himselfe. In fine, *Don-Quixote* seeing himselfe tyed, and that the Ladies were departed, began strait to imagine that all that had beene done by way of enchantment, as the last time, when in the very same Castle the enchanted Moore (the Carrier) had so fairly belaboured him: and then to himselfe did hee execrate his owne want of discretion and discourse, seeing that hauing  
escaped

escaped out of that Castle so euill dight the first time, hee would after aduenture to enter into it the second : for it was generally obserued by Knights Errant, that when they had once tried an aduenture, and could not finish it, it was a token that it was not reserved for them, but for some other ; and therefore would neuer prooue it againe. Yet for all this he drew forward his arme, to see if he might deliuer himselfe ; but he was so well bound, as all his indeuours prooued vaine. It is true, that he drew it very warily, lest *Rozinante* should stirre : and although he would faine haue set, and settled himself in the saddle, yet could he doe no other but stand, or leaue the arme behind. There was many a wish for *Amadis* his sword, against which no enchantment whatsoever could preuaile : there succeeded the malediction of his fates ; there the exaggerating of the want that the world should haue of his presence, all the while hee abode inchaunted (as hee infallibly beleued hee was) in that place. There he anew remembered his beloued Lady, *Dulcinea of Toboso* : There did he call oft enough on his good Squire *Sancho Pança*, who intombed in the bowels of sleepe, and stretched along on the pannell of his Asse, did dreame, at that instant, but little of the mother that bore him. There he inuoked the Wise men, *Lirgandeo & Aquise*, to helpe him : and finally, the morning did also there ouertake him, so full of despaire and confusion, as he rored like a Bull ; for he had no hope, that by day-light any cure could be found for his care, which he deemed would be euersisting, because he fully accounted himselfe inchaunted ; and was the more induced to thinke so, because he saw that *Rozinante* did not moue little nor much : and therefore he supposed, that both he and his horse should abide in that state without eating, drinking, or sleeping, vntill that either the malignant influence of the Starres were passed, or some greater Inchanter had dis-inchaunted him.

But he deceived himselfe much in his beleefe : for scarce did the day begin to peepe, when there arriued foure horsemen to the Inne doore, very well appointed, and hauing their

their Snap-hances hanging at the pummell of their saddles, they called at the Inne doore (which yet stood shut) and knocked very hard; which being perceiued by *Don-Quixote* from the place where he stood Centinell, he said with a very loud and arrogant voice, Knights or Squires, or whatsoeuer else ye be, you are not to knocke any more at the gates of that Castle, seeing it is euident, that at such houres as this, either they which are within, doe repose them, or else are not wont to open Fortresses, vntill *Phæbus* hath spred his beames ouer the earth: therefore stand backe, and expect till it be cleare day, and then we will see whether it be iust or no, that they open their gates vnto you. What a Diuell, what Castle or Fortresse is this, quoth one of them, that it should binde vs to vse all those circumstances? If thou beest the In-keeper, command that the doore be opened; for we are trauelllers, that will tarry no longer then to bait our horses, and away; for we ride in post hatte. Doth it seeme to you, Gentlemen, quoth *Don-Quixote*, that I looke like an Inne-keeper? I know not what thou lookest like, answered the other, but well I know that thou speakest madly, in calling this Inne a Castle. It is a Castle, replied *Don-Quixote*, yea, and that one of the best in this Prouince, and it hath people within it which haue had a Scepter in hand, & a crowne on their head. It were better said quite contrarie, replied the traeller, the Scepter on the head, and the Crowne in the hand. But perhaps (& so it may well be) there is some company of Players within, who doe very vsually hold the Scepters, and weare those crownes whereof thou talkest: for in such a paultry Inne as this is, & where I heare so little noise, I cannot beleeue any one to be lodged, worthy to weare a crowne, or beare a Scepter. Thou knowest but little of the world, replied *Don-Quixote*, seeing thou dost so much ignore the chances that are wont to befall in Chiuallry. The fellows of him that entertained this prolix Dialogue with *Don-Quixote*, waxed weary to heare the speak idly so long together, & therefore turned again to knock with great fury at the

the doore, and that in such sort, as they not only waked the Inne-keeper, but also all the ghefts : and so he arose to demand their pleasure.

In the meane while it hapned , that one of the horses whereon they rode, drew neere to smell *Rozinante*, that melancholy and sadly with his eares cast downe , did sustaine without moouing his out-stretched Lord : and he being indeed of flesh and bloud, although he resembled a blocke of wood, could not choose but feele it , and turne to smell him againe , who had thus come to cherish and entertaine him : and scarce had he stirred but a thought from thence, when *Don-Quixotes* feete, that were ioyned, slipt asunder, and tumbling from the saddle, had doubtlesly false to the ground, had he not remained hanging by the arme : a thing that caused him to indure so much paine, as he verily belieued that either his wrist was a cutting, or his arme a tearing off from his body : and he hung so neere to the ground, as he touched it with the tops of his toes; all which turned to his preiudice ; for hauing felt the little which he wanted to the setting of his feete wholly on the earth, hee laboured and drew al that he might to reach it; much like vnto those that get the Strappado, with the condition to touch or not to touch ; who are themselues a cause to increase their owne torture, by the earnestnesse wherewith they stretch themselves; deceiued by the hope they haue to touch the ground if they can stretch themselves but a little further.

#### CHAP. XVII.

*Wherein are prosecuted the wonderfull adventures of the Inne.*

**S**O many were the out-cries which *Don-Quixote* made, as the Inne-keeper opened the doore very hastily, and affrighted, to see who it was that so rored : and those that stood without did also the same. *Maritornes*, whom the cryes had also awaked, imagining

imagining straight what it might be, went into the barne, and vnperceiued of any, loosed the halter that sustained *Don Quixote*, and forthwith hee fell to the ground in the presence of the In-keeper and the trauellers; who coming towards him, demanded the occasion why he did so vnmeasurable roare? He, without making any answer, tooke off the halter from his wrest, and getting vp, he leaped vpon *Rozinante*, imbraced his Target, set his Lance into the Rest, and wheeling about a good part of the field, returned with a halfe Gallop, saying, Whosoeuer shall dare to affirme that I haue not beene with iust title enchanted, if my Lady the Princeesse *Micomicona* will giue me leaue to doe it, I say that he lies, and I doe presently challenge him to combat. The new trauellers were amazed at *Don-Quixotes* words, but the Oast remooued that wonder by informing them what he was, and that they should make no account of his words, for the man was bereft of his wits. Then they demanded of the In-keeper, if there had arriued to his Inne, a yong Stripling of some fiftene yeeres old or thereabouts, apparelled like a Horse-boy, and hauing such and such markes and tokens; and then gaue the very signes of *Donna Clara's* louer. The Oast made answer, That there were so many people in his Inne, as he had taken no notice of him for whom they demanded. But one of them hauing seene the Coach wherein the Iudge came, said, Questionlesly he must be here, for this is the Coach that they say, he hath followed: let therefore one of vs remaine at the doore, and the rest enter to seeke him out. Yea and it will not be from the purpose, if one of vs ride about without the Inne, lest he should make an escape from vs by the wals of the yard. We will doe so, said another of them, and thus two of them entred into the house, one staid at the doore, and the other did compasse the Inne about. The Inne-keeper beheld all, but could neuer iudge aright the reason why they vsed all this diligence, although he easily beleueed that they sought for the Youth whose markes they had told vnto him.



By this the day was growne cleere, and as well by reason thereof, as through the outcries of *Don-Quixote*, all the strangers were awake, and did get vp, especially both the Ladies *Clara* and *Dorotea*: for the one, through feare to haue her Louer so neere, and the other with desire to see him, could sleepe but very little all that night. *Don-Quixote* perceiuing that none of the foure trauellers made any account of him, or answered his challenge, was ready to burst with wrath and despite: and if he could any wise haue found that it was tolerated by the Statutes of Chivalry, that a Knight Errant might haue lawfully vndertaken any enterprize, hauing plight his word and faith, not to attempt any, vntill he had finished that which hee had first promised, he would haue assailed them all, and made them maugre their teeth to haue answered him. But because it seemed to him not so expedient nor honourable, to begin any new aduventure, vntill he had installed *Micomicon* in her Kingdome, he was forced to be quiet, expecting to see whereunto the indeuours and diligence of those foure trauellers tended: the one whereof found out the Youth that he searched, asleepe by another Lackey, little dreaming that any bodie did looke for him; and much lesse would finde him out thus. The man drew him by the arme, and said, Truly, *Don Lewis*, the habit that you weare, answers very well your calling, and the bed whereon you lie, the care and tendernesse wherewith your Mother did nurse you. The Youth hereat rubd his drowfie eyes, and beheld very leisurely him that did hold him fast, and knew him forthwith to be one of his fathers seruants; wherat he was so amazed as he could not speake a word for a great while: and the Seruing-man continuing his speech, said, Here is nothing else to be done, Lord *Lewis*, but that you be patient and depart againe with vs towards home, if you be not pleased to haue your father & my Lord depart out of this world to the other, for no lesse may be expected from the woe wherein he rests for your absence. Why, how did my father know, said *Don Lewis*, that I came this way

way, and in this habit? A Student, answered the other, to whom you bewrayed your intention, did discover it, mooved through the compassion he tooke to heare your fathers lamentations when he found you missing: and so he dispatched foure of his men in your search, and we are all at your seruice, more ioyfull then may be imagined, for the good dispatch wherewithall we shall returne, and carry you to his sight, which doth loue you so much. That shall be as I please, or heauen will dispose, said *Don Lewis*. What would you please, or what should heauen dispose of other, then that you agree to returne? for certainly you shall not do the contrary, nor is it possible you should. All these reasons that passed betweene them both, did the Lackey that lay by *Don Lewis* heare; and arising from thence, he went and told all that passed to *Don Fernando, Cardenio*, and all the rest that were gotten vp. To whom he tolde how the man gaue the title of *Don* to the boy, and recounted the speech he vsed, and how he would haue him returne to his fathers house: which the Youth refused to doe. Whereupon, and knowing already what a good voyce the heauens had giuen him, they greatly desired to be more particularly informed what he was: and intended also to helpe him, if any violence were offered vnto him, and therefore went vnto the place where he was, and stood contending with his seruant.

*Dorotea* issued by this out of her chamber, and in her companie *Donna Clara*, all perplexed. *Dorotea* calling *Cardenio* aside, told vnto him succinctly all the Historie of the Musician, and *Donna Clara*: and he rehearsed to her againe all that passed of the Seruing-mens arriuall that came in his pursuit, which he did not speake so low, but that *Donna Clara* over-heard him, whereat she indured such alteration, as shee had falne to the ground, if *Dorotea* running towards her, had not held her vp. *Cardenio* intreated *Dorotea* to returne with the other to her chamber, and hee would endeouour to bring the matter to some good passe, which they presently performed. The foure that were come in *Don Lewis* his search, were by this all of them entred  
into

into the Inne, and had compassed him about, perswading him that he would, cutting off all delayes, returne to comfort his father. He answered that he could not doe it in any sort, vntill he had finished an aduventure, which imported him no lesse then his life, his honour, and his soule. The seruants vrged him then, saying, that they would in no sort goe backe without him, and therefore would carrie him home, whether he would or no. That shall not you doe, quoth *Don Lewis*, if it be not that you carrie me home dead. And in this season all the other Gentlemen were come into the contention, but chiefly *Cardenio*, *Don Fernando* and his *Comarada's*, the Iudge, the Curate, and the Barber, and *Don-Quixote*; for now it seemed to him needlesse to guard the Castle any more. *Cardenio*, who knew already the History of the Youth, demanded of those that would carrie him away, what reason did moue them to seeke to take that Lad away against his will? We are moued vnto it, answered one of them, by this reason, that we shal thereby saue his fathers life, who for the absence of this Gentleman is in danger to lose it. To this said *Don Lewis*, It is to no end to make relation of mine affaires here. I am free, and will returne if I please; and if not, no one shall constraine me to doe it perforce. Reason shall constraine you, good Sir, to doe it, quoth the man, and when that cannot preuaile with you, it shall with vs, to put that in execution for which we be come, and which are bound to doe. Let vs know this affaire from the beginning, said the Iudge then to those men. Sir, quoth one of them, who knew him very wel, as his Masters next neighbour: Master Iustice, doth not your worship know this Gentleman, who is your neighbours sonne, and hath absented himselfe from his fathers house in an habite so vnsecent and discrepant from his calling, as you may perceiue? The Iudge beheld him then somewhat more attentively, knew him, and imbracing of him, said, What toyes are these, *Don Lewis*, or what cause hath beene of efficacie sufficient to moue you to come away in this manner and attyre, which answers your calling so ill? The teares stucke then

then in the young Gentlemans eyes, and hee could not answere a word to the Iudge, who bade the foure Seruicemen appease themselues, for all things should bee done to their satisfaction, and then taking *Don Lewis* a-part, hee intreated him to tell him the occasion of that his departure.

And whilst he made this and other demands to the Gentleman, they heard a great noyse at the Inne doore; the cause whereof was, that two Chests which had lyen there that night, seeing all the people busied to learne the cause of the foure Horsemens comming, had thought to haue made an escape scot-free, without defraying their expences: but the Inkeeper who attended his owne affaires with more diligence then other mens, did stay them at their going forth, and demanded his money, vpbrayding their dishonest resolution with such words, as mooued them to returne him an answere with their fists, which they did so roundly, as the poore Oast was compelled to raise the crie, and demand succour. The Oastesse and her Daughter could see no man so free from occupation as *Don-Quixote*: to whom the Daughter said, I request you, Sir Knight, by the vertue that God hath giuen you, to succour my poore Father, whom two bad men are grinding like Corne. To this *Don-Quixote* answered very leisurely, and with great grauitie; Beautifull Damzell, your petition cannot preuaile at this time, for as much as I am hindred from vndertaking any other Aduenture, vntill I haue finished one wherein my promise hath ingaged mee; and all that I can now doe in your Seruice, is, that which I shall say now vnto you: Run vnto your Father, and bid him continue and maintayne his conflict manfully, the best that hee may, vntill I demand license of the Princessse *Micomicona*, to helpe him out of his distresse; for if shee will giue it vnto mee, you may make full account that hee is deliuered. Sinner that I am (quoth *Maritornes*, who was by and heard what hee said) before you shall bee able to obtrayne that license, of which you speake, my Master will bee departed to the o-

ther World, Worke you so, Lady, quoth *Don-Quixote*, that I may haue the licence; for so that I may haue it, it will make no great matter, whether he be in the other World or no: for euen from thence would I bring him backe againe, in despite of the other World it selfe, if it durst contradict me: or at least wise I will take such a reuenge of those that do send him to the other World, as you shall remaine more then meanly contented: and so without replying any more, he went, and fell on his knees before *Dorotea*, demanding of her in Knightly and errant Phrases, that shee would deigne to licence him to goe and succour the Constable of that Castle, who was then plunged in a deepe distresse. The Princeesse did grant him leaue very willingly, and hee presently buckling on his Target, & laying hâds on his Sword, ranne to the Inne doore, where yet the two Ghests stood handsomely tugging the Inkeeper. But as soone as hee arrived, he stopt and stood still, although *Maritornes* and the Oastesse demanded of him twice or thrice the cause of his restinesse, in not assisting her Lord and Husband. I stay, quoth *Don-Quixote*, because according to the Lawes of Armes, it is not permitted to me to lay hand to my Sword against Squire-like men that are not dubbed Knights. But call to me here my Squire *Sancho*, for this defence and reuenge concerns him as his dutie. This passed at the Inne doore, where fist and blowes were interchangeably giuen and taken in the best sort, although to the Inkeepers cost, and to the rage and griefe of *Maritornes*, the Oastesse and her Daughter, who were like to runne wood, beholding *Don-Quixotes* cowardise, and the mischief their Master, Husband, and Father endured. But here let vs leaue them; for there shall not want one to succour him, or if not, let him suffer, and all those that wittingly vndertake things beyond their power and force: and let vs turne backward to heare that which *Don-Lewis* answered the Iudge, whome wee left somewhat apart with him, demanding the cause of his comming afoot, and in so bafe array: to which the Youth wringing him hard by the hands,

hands, as an argument that some extraordinarie griefe pinched his heart, and shedding many teares, answered in this manner:

I know not what else I may tell you, deare Sir, but that from the instant that Heauen made vs Neighbours, and that I saw *Donna Clara*, your Daughter and my Ladie, I made her Commandresse of my will; and if yours, my true Lord and Father, doe not hinder it, shee shall bee my Spouse this very day. For her sake haue I abandoned my Fathers house, and for her I did on this attyre, to follow her wheresoeuer shee went, as the Arrow doth the Marke, or the Mariner the North-starre: shee is, as yet, no further acquainted with my desires, then as much as she might vnderstand sometimes, by the teares which she saw mine eyes distill as farre off. Now Sir, you know the Riches and Nobilitie of my Descent, and how I am my Fathers sole Heire, and if it seeme vnto you that these bee conditions, whereupon you may venture to make mee thorowly happie, accept of mee presently for your Sonne in Law: for if my Father, borne away by others his Designs, shall not like so well of this good which I haue sought out for my selfe, yet time hath more force to vndoe, and change the affaires, then mens will. Heere the amorous Gentleman held his peace, and the Iudge remained astonied as well at the grace and discretion wherewith *Don Lewis* had discovered his affections vnto him, as also to see himselfe in such a passe, that as hee knew not what course he might best take in so sudden, and vnexpected a matter: and therefore hee answered no other thing at that time, but onely bade him to settle his minde, and entertaine the time with his Seruants, and deale with them, to expect that day, because hee might haue leisure to consider what might bee most conuenient for all. *Don Lewis* did kisse his hands perforce, and did bathe them with teares, a thing able to moue a heart of Marble, and much more the Iudges, who (as a wise man) did presently perceiue, how beneficiall and honourable



was that preferment for his Daughter : although he could haue wished, if it had beene possible, to effect it with the consent of *Don Lewis* his Father, who he knew did purpose<sup>e</sup> to haue his Sonne made a Nobleman of Title.

By this time, the Inkeeper and his Ghefts had agreed, ha- uing paid him all that they ought, more by *Don-Quixotes* perswasion, and good reasons, then by any menaces. And *Don Lewis* his seruants expected the end of the Iudges dis- course, and his resolution : when the Deuill ( who neuer sleeps ) would haue it, at that very time entred into the Inne, the Barber from whom *Don-Quixote* tooke away the Hel- met of *Mambrino*, and *Sancho Pança* the furniture of the Asse, whereof hee made an exchange for his owne : which Barber leading his Beast to the Stable, saw *Sancho Pança*, who was mending some part of the Pannell : and as soone as hee had eyed him, hee knew him, and presently set vpon *Sancho*, saying; A Sir Thiefe, haue I found you here with all the furniture, whereof you robd mee? *Sancho* that saw himselfe thus assaulted vnexpectedly, and had heard the disgracefull termes which the other vsed, laying fast hold on the Pannell with the one hand, gaue the Barber such a buffet with the other, as hee bathed all his teeth in bloud : but yet for all that, the Barber held fast his gripe of the Pannell, and therewithall cryed out so loud, as all those that were in the house came to the noyse and conflict : and he said, I call for the King and Iustice, for this Thiefe and Robber by the high-ways goeth about to kill me, because I seeke to recouer mine owne goods. Thou lyeest, quoth *Sancho*, for I am not a Robber by the high-ways ; for my Lord *Don-Quixote* wonne those spoyles in a good Warre. By this time *Don-Quixote* himselfe was come thither, not a little proud to see how well his Squire defended him- selfe, and offended his Aduersarie, and therefore hee ac- counted him from thenceforth to be a man of valour, and purposed in his minde to dubbe him Knight, on the first oc- casion that should be offered, because hee thought that the Order of Knight-hood would be well imployed by him.

Among

Among other things that the Barber said in the Discourse of his contention, this was one: Sirs, this Pannell is as certainly mine, as the death which I owe vnto God, and I know it as well as if I had bred it, and there is my Ass in the Stable, who will not permit me to tell a lye: or otherwise doe but try the Pannell on him, and if it fit him not iustly, I am content to remayne infamous: and I can say more, that the very day wherein they tooke my Pannell from me, they robbed mee likewise of a new brazen Basen, which was neuer vsed, and cost mee a Crowne. Here *Don-Quixote* could no longer containe himselfe from speaking; and so thrusting himselfe betweene them two, and putting them asunder, and causing the Pannell to bee laid publickly on the ground, vntill the truth were decided, he said; To the end that you may perceiue the cleere and manifest error, wherein this good Squire liues, see how hee calls that a Basen, which is, was, and shall bee the Helmet of *Mambrino*, which I tooke away perforce from him in faire warre, and made my selfe Lord thereof, in a lawfull and warlike manner. About the Pannell I wil not contend, for that which I can say therein is, that my Squire *Sancho* demanded leaue of me, to take away the Furniture of this vanquished Cowards Horse, that he might adorne his own withall: I gaue him authoritie to doe it, and hee tooke them: and for his conuertyng thereof from a Horses Furniture into a Pannell, I can giue none other reason then the ordinarie one, to wit, that such transformations are vsually seene in the successes of Chiuallrie: for confirmation whereof, friend *Sancho*, runne speedily, and bring mee out the Helmet, which this good man auoucheth to bee a Basen. By my faith, Sir, quoth *Sancho*, if wee haue no better prooffe of our intention, then that which you say, I say that the Helmet of *Mambrino*, is as arrant a Basen, as this goodmans Furniture is a Pannell. Doe what I command, said *Don-Quixote*: I cannot beleue that all the things in this Castle will bee guided by enchantment. *Sancho* went for the Basen, and brought it: and as soone

as *Don-Quixote* saw it, hee tooke it in his hands and said, See, Sirs, with what face can this impudent Squire affirme, that this is a Bason, and not the Helmet that I haue mentioned? and I sweare to you all by the order of Knight-hood which I professe, that this is the very same Helmet which I wonne from him, without hauing added or taken any thing from it. That it is questionlesse, quoth *Sancho*: for since the time that my Lord wonne it, vntill now, he neuer fought but one Battell with it, when hee deliuered the vnluckie chained men; and but for this Bason-Helmet, hee had not escaped so free as hee did, so thicke a showre of stones rained all the time of that Conflict.

#### C H A P. XVIII.

*Wherein are decided the controuerſies of the Helmet of Mambrinus, and of the Pannell, with other strange and most true Adventures.*

**G**OOD Sirs, quoth the Barber, what do you thinke of that which is affirmed by these Gentlemen, who yet contend that this is not a Bason, but a Helmet? He that shall say the contrarie, quoth *Don-Quixote*, I will make him know that hee lyes, if hee bee a Knight; and if hee be but a Squire, that hee lyes and lyes againe a thousand times. Our Barber, who was also present as one that knew *Don-Quixotes* humour very well, would fortifie his folly, and make the Iest passe yet a little farther, to the end that they all might laugh: and therefore speaking to the other Barber, he said, Sir Barber, or what else you please, know that I am also of your occupation, and haue had my Writ of examination and approbation in that Trade more then these thirtie yeeres, and am one that knowes very well all the Instruments of Barberie whatsoeuer; and haue bene besides in my youthfull dayes, a Souldier, and doe there-  
fore

fore likewise know what is a Helmer, and what a Morrion, and what a close Castle, and other things touching warfare, I meane, all the kind of Armes that a Souldier ought to haue: and therefore I say, (still submitting my selfe to the better opinion) that this piece, which is laid heere before vs, and which this good Knight holds in his hand, not onely is not a Barbers Bason, but also is so farre from being one, as is white from blacke, or veritie from vntruth, yet doe I withall affirme, that although it is an Helmer, yet it is not a complete Helmer. No truely, quoth *Don-Quixote*, for it wants the halfe, to wit, the nether part, and the Beuer. It is very true, quoth the Curate, who very well vnderstood his friend the Barber his intention; and the same did *Cardenio*, *Don Fernando*, and his fellowes confirme: yea, and euen the Iudge himselfe, had not *Don Lewis* his affaire perplexed his thoughts, would for his part haue holpen the Iest well forward. But the earnestnesse of that affaire held his minde so busied, as he little or nothing attended the pastime. Lord haue mercy vpon me, quoth the other Barber, then halfe beside himselfe, and is it possible that so many honourable men should say that this is no Bason, but a Helmer? This is a thing able to strike admiration into a whole Vniuersitie, how discreet soeuer it were: it is enough, if this Bason must needs bee a Helmer, the Pannell must also bee a Horses Furniture, as this Gentleman sayes. To mee it seemes a Pannell, quoth *Don-Quixote*, but as I haue said, I will not meddle with it, nor determine whether it be a Pannell or the Capparifon of a Horse. Therin is nothing else to be done, said the Curate, but that Sir *Don-Quixote* say it once; for in these matters of Chualry, all these Noblemen, and my selfe, doe giue vnto him the pricke, and the prize. I swear vnto you by *Iour*, good Sirs, quoth *Don-Quixote*, that so many & so strange are the things which haue befallne me in this Castle, these two times that I haue lodged therin, as I dare auouch nothing affirmatiuely of any thing that shall bee demanded of mee concerning the things contained in it, for I doe infallibly imagine, that

all the Adventures which passe in it, are guided by incantment: the first time, I was very much vexed by an enchanted Moore, that is in it: and *Sancho* himselfe sped not very well with the Moores followers; and yesternight I stood hanging almost two houres space by this arme, without knowing how, or how that disgrace befell me; so that for me to meddle now in so confused and difficult a matter, as to deliuer mine opinion, were to passe a rash iudgement: So that they which say that this is a Bason, and no Helmet, I haue already made answer; but whether this bee a Pannell, or furniture, I dare pronounce no definitiue sentence, but only remit it to your discreet opinions: perhaps, because you are not dubbed Knights as I am, the incantments of this place will haue no power ouer you, and your vnderstandings shall bee free, and able to iudge of the things in this Castle really, and truly, and not as they seeme vnto me. Doubtlesse, quoth *Don Fernando*, *Don-Quixote* sayes very well, that the definition of this case belongs vnto vs; and therefore, and because wee may proceed in it vpon the better and more solid grounds, I will secretly take the Suffrages of all those Gentlemen, and afterwards make a cleere and full relation of what shall come of them.

To those that knew *Don-Quixote* his humour, this was a matter of maruailous laughter, and sport; but to such as were not acquainted therewithall, it seemed the greatest folly of the World, especially to *Don Lewis*, and his foure seruants, and with other three Passengers that had arrived by chance to the Inne, and seemed to bee Troupers of the holy Brother-hood, as indeed they were: but hee that was most of all beside himselfe for wrath, was the Barber, whose Bason they had transformed before his owne face into the Helmet of *Mambrino*, and whose Pannell hee made full account should likewise bee turned into the rich Furniture, and Equipage of a great Horse. All of them laughed heartily, to see *Don Fernando* goe vp and downe, taking the Suffrages of this man and that, and rounding euery one of them in the eare, that they might declare in  
se-

secret whether that was a pannell or a furniture, for which such deadly contention had passed. After that he had taken the suffrages of so many as knew *Don-Quixote*, he said very lowdly, The truth is, good fellow, that I grow weary of demanding so many opinions; for I can no sooner demand of any man what I desire to know, but they forthwith answere mee, how it is meere madnesse to affirme, that this is the pannell of an Asse, but rather the furniture of a Horse, yea and of a chiefe Horse of seruice; and therefore you must haue patience: for in despite both of you and of your Asse, and notwithstanding your weake allegations and worse prooues, it is, and will continue the furniture of a great Horse. Let me neuer inioy a place in Heauen (quoth the Barber) if you all be not deceyued; and so may my soule appeare before God, as it appeares to me to be a pannell, and no horse-furniture: but the law carries it away, and so farewell it: and yet surely I am not drunke; for vnlesse it be by sinning, my fast hath not beene broken this day.

The follies which the Barber vitered, stirred no lesse laughter among them, the did the rolings of *Don-Quixote*, who then spoke in this maner: Here is now no more to be done, but that euery man take vp his owne goods, and to whom God hath giuen them, let *S. Peter* giue his blessing. Then said one of the foure Seruingmen, If this were not a iest premeditated, and made of purpose, I could not perswade my selfe, that men of so good vnderstanding as all these are, or seeme to be, should dare to say, and affirme, that this is not a Bason, nor that a Pannell: but seeing that they auerre it so constantly, I haue cause to suspect, that it cannot be without mysterie, to affirme a thing so contrary to that which very truth it selfe and experience demonstrate vnto vs: for I doe vow (and saying so he rapt out a round oath or two) that as many as are in the world, should neuer make me beleeeue that this is no bason, nor that no pannell of a hee-Asse. It might as well be of a shee-Asse, quoth the Curate. That comes all but to one, replied the other; for the question



question consists not therein, but whether it be a pannell or not, as you doe auouch? Then one of the Troupers of the holy Brotherhood (who had listned to their disputation, and was growne full of choler to heare such an error maintained, said, It is as very a pannell, as my father is my father; and he that hath said, or shall say the contrary, is, I belecue, turned into a grape. Thou lyest like a clownish knaue (qd *Don-Quixote*;) and lifting vp his lauelin, which he alwaies held in his hand, hee discharged such a blow at the Troupers pate, as if he had not auoyded, it would haue throwne him to the ground. The Iaueline was broken by the force of the fall into splinters; and the other Troupers, seeing their fellow misvsed, cried out for helpe, and assistance for that holy Brotherhood. The Inkeeper, who also was one of the same Fraternitie, ranne in for his rod of Iustice, and his sword, and then stood by his fellowes. *Don Lewis* his foure seruants compassed him about, lest hee should attempt to escape whilst the tumult indured. The Barber seeing all the house turned vpside-downe, laid hand againe vpon his pannell, and the same did *Sancho*.

*Don-Quixote* set hand to his Sword, and assaulted the Troupers. *Don Lewis* cryed to his Seruingmen, that they should leaue him, and goe to helpe *Don-Quixote*, *Cardenio*, and *Don-Fernando*; for all of them tooke *Don-Quixotes* part. The Curate cried out, the hostesse shrieked, her daughter squeaked, *Maritornes* howled, *Dorotea* stood confused, *Luscinda* amazed, and *Donna Clara* dismayed: the Barber battered *Sancho*, and *Sancho* pounded him againe. *Don Lewis*, on whom one of his Seruingmen had presumed to lay hands, and hold him by the arme, gaue him such a pash on the mouth, as hee broke his Teeth, and then the Iudge tooke him into his owne protection. *Don Fernando* had gotten one of the Troupers vnder his feet, where hee stood belabouring him at his pleasure. The Inkeeper renewed his out-cry, and reinforced his voyce, demanding ayd for the holy Brotherhood: So that all the Inne seemed nothing else but Plaints, Cryes, Screeches, Confusions, Feares, Dreads,

Dreads, Disgraces, Slashes, Buffets, Blowes, Spurnings, and effusion of Blood.

In the midst of this Chaos, and Labyrinth of things, *Don-Quixote* began to imagine, and fancie to himselfe, that he was at that very time plunged vp to the eares in the discord, and conflict of King *Agramante* his campe; and therefore he said with a voice that made all the Inne to tremble, All of you, hold your hands, all of you, put vp your swords, all of you, be quiet, and listen to mee, if any of you desire to continue aliue. That great and monstrous voyce made them all stand still: thereupon he thus proceeded; Did not I tell you, Sirs, that this Castle was enchanted, and that some legion of Devils did inhabit it? In confirmation whereof, I would haue you but to note with your owne eyes, how the very discord of King *Agramants* campe is transferred hither, and passed euer among vs. Looke how there they fight for the sword, here for the horse, yonder for the Eagle, beyond for the Helmet; and all of vs fight, & none of vs know for what. Come therefore, you Master Iustice, and you Master Curate, and let the one represent King *Agramant*, and the other King *Sabrino*, and make peace and atonement among vs: for I sweare by Almighty Ioue, that it is great wrong and pittie, that so many Noblemen, as we are here, should be slaine for so slight causes.

The Troupers, which did not vnderstand *Don-Quixotes* manner of speech, and saw themselues very ill handled by *Don Fernando* and *Cardenio*, would in no wise be pacified; But the Barber was content, by reason that in the conflict both his beard and his pannell had bene torne in pieces. *Sancho* to his Masters voyce was quickly obedient, as became a dutifull seruant. *Don Lewis* his foure Seruingmen stood also quiet, seeing how little was gained in being other: onely the Inkeeper persisted as before, affirming that punishment was due vnto the insolencies of that mad man, who euery foot confounded and disquieted his Inne. Finally, the rumor was pacified for that time; the pannell remained for a horse-furniture vntill the day of Iudgement;  
the

the Bason for a Helmet, and the Inne for a Castle in *Don-Quixotes* imagination. All the broyles being now appeased, and all men accorded by the Iudges and Curates perswasions; then began *Don Lewis* his seruants againe to vrge him to depart with them: and whilst he and they debated the matter together, the Iudge communicated the whole to *Don Fernando*, *Cardenio*, and the Curate, desiring to know their opinions concerning that affaire, and telling them all that *Don Lewis* had said vnto him; whereupon they agreed, that *Don Fernando* should tell the Seruing-men what he himselfe was, and how it was his pleasure that *Don Lewis* should goe with him to *Andaluzia*, where hee should be cherished, and accounted of by the Marquesse his brother, according vnto his calling and deserts: for he knew wel *Don Lewis* his resolution to be such, as he would not returne into his fathers presence at that time, although they tore him into pieces. *Don Fernando* his quality, and *Don Lewis* his intention beeing vnderstood by the foure, they agreed among themselues, that three of them should goe backe, to beare the tidings of all that had passed to his father, and the other should abide there to attend on him, and neuer to leaue him vntill they returned to fetch him home, or knew what else his father would command. And in this sort was that monstrous bulke of diuision and contention, reduced to some forme by the authoritie of *Agramant*, and the wisdom of King *Sobrino*.

But the enemy of concord, and the aduersary of peace, finding his proiects to be thus illuded, and condemned, and seeing the little fruit hee had gotten by setting them all by the eares, resolued once againe to try his wits, and stirre vp new discords and troubles, which befell in this manner: The Troupers were quieted, hauing vnderstood the calling of those with whom they had contended, and retired themselues from the brawle, knowing that howsoeuer the cause succeeded, they themselues should haue still the worst end of the staffe. But one of them, who was the very same whom *Don Fernando* had buffeted so well, remem-  
bred

bred, how among many other warrants which he had to apprehend malefactors, he had one for *Don-Quixote*, whom the *Holy Brotherhood* had commanded to be apprehended for freeing of the Gally-slaues (a disaster which *Sancho* had before-hand with very great reason feared.) As soone as he remembred it, he would needs try whether the signes that were giuen him of *Don-Quixote*, did agree with his person: and so taking out of his bosome a scroll of Parchment, he presently found out that which he looked for; and reading it a while very leisurely, as one that was himselfe no great Clerk, at euery other word he looked on *Don-Quixote*, and confronted the markes of his warrant with those of *Don-Quixotes* face, and found that he was infallibly the man that was therein mentioned. And scarce was he perswaded that it was he, when folding vp his Parchment, and holding the warrant in his left hand, he laid hold on *Don-Quixotes* col-ler with the right so strongly, as he could hardly breathe, and cried out aloud, saying, Aid for the *Holy Brotherhood*: And that you may perceiue how I am in good earnest, read that warrant, wherein you shal find, that this robbèr by the High-way side is to be apprehended. The Curate tooke the warrant, and perceiued very well that the Troupier said true, and that the markes agreed very neere with *Don-Quixotes*; who seeing himselfe so abused by that base rascall, as he accounted him, his choler being mounted to her height, and all the bones of his body crasping for wrath, he seized as wel as he could, with both his hands on the trouper's throat, and that in such sort, as if he had not beene speedily succoured by his fellows, he had there left his life, ere *Don-Quixote* would haue abandoned his gripe.

The Inkeeper, who of force was to assist his fellow in office, forthwith repayred vnto his ayde. The Oastesse seeing her Husband re-enter into contentions and brabbles, rayfed a new cry, whose burden was borne by her daughter and *Maritornes*, asking succour of Heauen and those that were present. *Sancho* seeing all that passed, said, By the Lord, all that my Master hath said of the Inchantments of

of this Castle is true ; for it is not possible for a man to live quietly in it one houre together.


*Don Fernando* parted the Troupers , and *Don-Quixote*, and with the good wil of both, vnfastened their holds : but yet the Troupers for all this desisted not to require their prisoner, and withall, that they should helpe to get him tied, and absolutely rendred vnto their wils ; for so it was requisite for the King and the *Holy Brotherhood*, in whose name they did againe demand their helpe and assistance for the arresting of that publique robber and spoyler of people in common paths and high-wayses.

*Don-Quixote* laughed to heare them speake so idly, as he imagined, and said with very great grauity, Come hither, you filthie base extractions of the dunghill, dare you terme the loosing of the inchayned, the freeing of prisoners, the assisting of the wretched, the raysing of such as are false, and the supplying of those that are in want ? Dare you (I say) terme these things robbing on the High-way ? O infamous brood, worthy for your base and vile conceit, that heauen should neuer communicate with you the valour included in the exercise of Chiuallry, wee giue you to vnderstand the sinne and errour wherein you are, by not adoring the very shadow, how much more the assistance of a Knight errant ? Come hither, O you that bee no Troupers, but Theeues in troupe, and robbers of high-wayses by permission of the *Holy Brotherhood*: Come hither I say, and tel me, who was that iolthead that did subscribe or ratifie a Warrant for the attaching of such a knight as I am ? Who was he that knowes not how Knights errant are exempted from all Tribunals ? and how that their sword is the Law, their valour the Bench, & their wils the statutes of their Courts ? I say againe, what mad-man was he that knowes not how that no priuiledge of Gentry inioyes so many preeminences, immunities, and exemptions, as that which a Knight errant acquires the day wherein he is dubd, and vndertakes the rigorous exercise of armes ? What Knight errant did euer pay tribute, subsidie, tallage, carriage, or passage ouer  
witer ?

water? What Taylor euer had mony for making his clothes? What Constable euer lodged him in Casile, that made him after to pay for the shot? What King hath not placed him at his owne Table? What Damzel hath not saue in loue with him, and permitted him to vse her as he liked? And finally, what Knight errant was there euer, is, or euer shall be in the world, which hath not the courage himselfe alone to giue foure hundred blowes with a cudgell to foure hundred Troupers, that shall presume to stand before him in hostile manner?

## C H A P. XIX.

*In which is finished the notable aduenture of the Troupers, and the great ferocitie of our Knight Don-Quixote, and how he was enchanted.*

 Hilest *Don-Quixote* said this, the Curate laboured to perswade the Troupers, how the Knight was distracted, as they themselves might collect by his works and words, and therefore it would be to no end to prosecute their designe any further, seeing that although they did apprehend and carry him away, hee would be presently deliuered againe, as a mad-man. To this, he that had the Warrant made answer, that it concerned him not to determine whether he was mad or no, but onely to obey and execute his superiours command; and that he being once prisoner, they might deliuer him three hundred times, and if it were their good pleasure. For all that (quoth the Curate) you may not carry him with you at this time, nor (as I suppose) will he suffer himselfe to be taken. To be brieife, the Curate said so much, and *Don-Quixote* playd so many madde pranks, as the Troupers themselves would haue proued greater fooles then he, if they had not manifestly discerned his defect of iudgement: and therefore they held it to be the best course to let him alone, yea and to be compounders of peace and amitie betweene *Sancho Pança* and the Barber, which



which still continued their most rancorous and deadly contention. Finally, they as the officers of Iustice, did mediate the cause, and were arbiters thereof in such sort, as both the parties remained, though not wholly contented, yet in some sort satisfied, for they only made them exchange their pannels, but not their gyrts or head-stals.

As touching *Mambrino's* Helmet, the Curate did vna-wares to *Don-Quixote*, giue to the Barber eight ryals by ir, and the Barber gaue backe vnto him an acquittance of the receit thereof, and an euerlasting release of all actions concerning it. These two discords which were the most principall, and of most consequence, being thus accorded, it onely rested, that three of *Don Lewis* his Seruingmen would be content to returne home, and leaue the fourth to accompanie his Master whither *Don Fernando* pleased to carrie him. And as good hap and better fortune had already begun to breake Lances, and facilitate difficulties, in the fauour of the Louers, and worthie persons of the Inne, so did it resolute to proceed forward, and giue a prosperous successe vnto all: for the Seruingmen were content to doe whatsoeuer their master would haue them: whereat *Donna Clara* was so cheerefull, as no one beheld her face in that season, but might read therein the inward contentment of her mind. *Zoraida*, although she did not verie well vnderstand all the successes of the things she had seene, yet was she interchangeably grieved and cheered according to the shews made by the rest, but chiefly by her Spaniard, on whom her eyes were alwaies fixed, and all the affects of her mind depended. The Inkeeper, who did not forget the recompence made by the Curate to the Barber, demanded of him *Don-Quixotes* expences, & satisfaction for the damage he had done to his Wine-bagges, and the losse of his Wine, swearing that neyther *Rozinante*, nor *Saucko* his Ass should depart out of the Inne, vntill he were payed the verie last farthing. All was quietly ended by the Curate, and *Don Fernando* paid the whole sum; although the Iudge had also most liberally offered to doe it; and all of them remay-

remained afterwards in such quietnesse and peace, as the Inne did no longer resemble the discorded campe of *Agramante*, (as *Don-Quixote* termed it) but rather enjoyed the very peace and tranquillitie of the Emperour *Othomans* time: for all which, the common opinion was, that thanks were iustly due to the sincere proceeding and great eloquence of Master Curate, and to the incomparable liberality, and goodnesse of *Don Fernando*. *Don-Quixote*, perceiving himselfe free, and deliuered from so many difficulties, and brabbles, (wherewith as well he, as his Esquire had becne perplexed) held it high time to prosecute his commenced voyage, and bring to an end the great aduenture vnto which he was called and chosen. Therefore with resolute determination to depart, he went and cast himselfe on his knees before *Dorotea*, who not permitting him to speak vntill he arose, he to obey her, stood vp, and said, It is a common prouerbe, beautifull Ladie, *That diligence is the Mother of good hap*: and in many and graue affaires, experience hath shewed, that the sollicitude & sore of the suiter oft brings a doubtfull matter to a certaine and happy end. But this truth appeares in nothing more cleerely, then in matters of warre; wherein celeritie and expedition preuent the enemies designs, and obtaine the victory before an aduersary can put himselfe in defence. All this I say, high and Worthy Ladie, because it seemes to me, that our abode in this Castle is nothing profitable, and many therewithall turne so farre to our hinderance, as we may palpably feele it one day. For who knowes but that your enemy, the Gyant, hath learned by spies, or other secret intelligence and meanes, how I meane to come and destroy him, and (opportunitie fauouring his designs) that he may haue fortified himselfe in some inexpugnable Castle or Fortresse, against the strength whereof neither mine industrie, nor the force of mine inuincible arme can much preuaile; wherfore, deare Ladie, let vs preuent (as I haue said) by our diligence, and let vs presently depart vnto the place whereunto we are called by our good fortune, which shall be deferred no longer

then I am absent from your Highnesse foe. Here he held his peace, and did expect, with great grauitie, the beautifull Princeesse answer: who with debonarie countenance, and a stile accommodated vnto *Don-Quixote*, returned him this answer, I doe gratifie and thanke, Sir Knight, the desire you shew to assist me in this my great neede: which denotes very cleerely the great care you haue to fauour Orphans and distressed wights: and I beseech God, that your good desires and mine may be accomplished, to the end that you may see how there are some thankfull women on earth: as touching my departure, let it be forthwith, for I haue none other will, then that which is yours; therefore you may dispose of me at your owne pleasure, for she that hath once committed the defence of her person vnto you, and hath put into your hands the restitution of her estate, ought not to seeke to doe any other thing then that which your wisdom shall ordaine. In the name of God (quoth *Don-Quixote*) seeing that your Highnesse doth so humble your selfe vnto mee, I will not lose the occasion of exalting it, and installing it againe in the throne of your inheritance. Let our departure be incontinent for my desires, and the way, and that which they call the danger that is in delay, doe spurre me on. And seeing that heauen neuer created, nor hell euer beheld any man that could affright me, or make a coward of me, goe therefore, *Sancho*, and saddle *Rosinante*, and empannell thine Asse, and make readie the Queenes Palfrey, and let vs take leaue of the Constable and these other Lords, and depart away from hence instantly.

Then *Sancho* (who was present at all this) wagging of his head, said, O my Lord, my Lord, how much more Knauerie (be it spoken with the pardon of all honest kerchiefs) is there in the little village then is talked of? What ill can there be in any village, or in all the Cities of the world, able to impaire my credit, thou villaine? If you be angrie, quoth *Sancho*, I will hold my tongue, and omit to say that which by the dutie of a good Squire, and of an honest seruant I am bound

bound to tell you. Say what thou wilt, quoth *Don-Quixote*, so thy words be not addrest to make me afraid; for if thou bee'st frighted, thou doe'st onely like thy selfe; and if I bee deuoid of terrour, I also doe that which I ought. It is not that which I meane, quoth *Sancho*, but that I doe hold for most sure and certaine, that this Ladie which calls her selfe Queene of the great Kingdome of *Micomicon*, is no more a Queene then my mother; for if she were what she saies, she would not at euery corner, and at euery turning of a hand be billing as shee is, with one that is in this good company. *Dorotea* blushed at *Sancho's* words; for it was true indeede, that her Spouse *Don Fernando* would now and then priuately steale from her lips some part of the reward which his desires did merit, (which *Sancho* espying, it seemed to him, that that kinde of wanton familiarity was more proper to Curtesans, then becomming the Queene of so great a Kingdome) and yet shee neither could, nor would reply vnto him, but let him continue his speech, as followeth: This I doe say, good my Lord, quoth he, to this end, that if after we haue runne many waies and courses, and indured bad nights and worse daies, he that is in this Inne, sporting himselfe, shall come to gather the fruit of our labours: there is no reason to hasten me thus to saddle *Roxinante*, or empannell the Asse, or make ready the Palfrey, seeing it would be better that we stayed still, and that euery whore spunne, and we fell to our victuals.

O God, how great was the fury that inflamed *Don-Quixote*, when he heard his Squire speake so respectlesly! I say it was so great, that with a shaking voyce, a faultering tongue, and the fire sparking out of his eyes, he said, O villanous peasant, rash, vnmanerly, ignorant, rude, blasphemous, bold murmurer, & detractor, hast thou presumed to speake such words in my presence, and in that of these noble Ladies? and hast thou dared to entertaine such rash & dishonest surmises into thy confused imagination? Depart out of my sight, thou monster of nature, store-house of vntruthes, armorie of falshood, sinke of rogerie, inuentour of

villanie, publisher of raunings, and the enemy of that decency which is to be vsed towards royall persons. Away, villain, and neuer appeare before me, vnder paine of mine indignation. And saying so, he bended his browes, fild vp his cheekes, looked about him on euery side, and stricke a great blow with his right foote on the ground; all manifest tokens of the rage which inwardly fretted him. At which words & furious gestures poore *Sancho* remained so greatly affrighted, as he could haue wished in that instant, that the earth opening vnder his feete, would swallow him vp, and knew not what to doe, but turne his backe, and get him out of his Lords most furious presence. But the discrete *Dorotea* (who was now so well schooled in *Don-Quixotes* humour) to mitigate his yre, said vnto him; Be not offended, good *Sir Knight of the sad face*, at the idle words which your good Squire hath spoken: for perhaps he hath not said them without some ground, nor of his good vnderstanding and Christian minde can it be suspected, that he would wittingly slander or accuse any body falsely: And therefore we must beleene, without all doubt, that as in this Castle, as you your selfe haue said, *Sir Knight*, all things are represented, and succeed by maner of enchantment; I say, it might befall, that *Sancho* may haue scene by Diabolically illusion, that which he saies, he beheld so much to the preiudice of my reputation. I vow by the omnipotent *Ioue*, qd. *Don-Quixote*, that your Highnes hath hit the very pricke, and that some wicked vision appeared to this sinner, my man *Sancho*, that made him to see that which otherwise were impossible to be scene by any other way, then that of enchantment, for I know very well, the great goodnesse, and simplicitie of that poore wretch is such, as he knowes not how to inuent a lye on any bodie liuing. It is euen so, and so it shall be, quoth *Don Fernando*: and therefore, good *Sir Don-Quixote*, you must pardon him, and reduce him againe to the bosome of your good grace: *Sicut erat in principio*, and before the like visions did distract his sense. *Don-Quixote* answered, that he did willingly pardon him: and

and therefore the Curate went for *Sancho*, who returned very humbly, and kneeling downe on his knees, demanded his Lords hand, which he gaue vnto him, and after that he had permitted him to kisse it, he gaue him his blessing, saying, Now thou shalt finally know, *Sancho*, that which I haue told thee diuers times, how that all the things of this Castle are made by way of enchantment. So doe I verily belecue, said *Sancho*, except that of the Canuassing in the blanket, which really succeeded by an ordinary and naturall way. Doe not belecue that, said *Don-Quixote*; for if it were so, I would both then, and also now haue taken a dire reuenge: but neither then, nor now could I euer see any, on whom I might reuenge that thine iniurie. All of them desired greatly to know what that accident of the blanket was. And then the Inne-keeper recounted it point by point, the flights that *Sancho Pança* made: whereat they all did laugh not a little, and *Sancho* would haue beene ashamed no lesse, if his Lord had not anew perswaded him, that it was a meere enchantment: And yet *Sancho's* madnesse was neuer so great, as to belecue that it was not a reall truth verily befallne him, without any colour, or mixture of fraude, or illusion: but that he was tossed by persons of flesh, bloud, and bone, and not by dreamed and imagined shadowes or spirits, as his Lord beleued, and so constantly affirmed.

Two daies were now expired, when all that Noble company had sojourned in the Inne, and then it seeming vnto them high time to depart: they deuised how (without putting *Dorotea* and *Don Fernando* to the paines, to turne back with *Don-Quixote* to his Village, vnder pretence of restoring the Queene *Micomicona*) the Curate and Barber might carry him backe as they desired, and indeuour to haue him cured of his folly in his own house. And their inuention was this; they agreed with one, who by chance passed by that way with a Teame of Oxen, to carry him in this order following: They made a thing like a Cage of timber, so big, as that *Don-Quixote* might sit, or lie in it at his ease: and



presently after, *Don Fernando*, and his fellowes, with *Don Lewis* his seruants, the Troupers, and the Inne-keeper, did all of them, by Master Curates direction, couer their faces and disguise themselves, every one as he might best, so that they might seeme to *Don-Quixote* other people then such as hee had seene in the Castle. And this being done, they entred with very great silence into the place where he slept, and tooke his rest after the related conflicts: and approaching him, who slept securely, not fearing any such accident, and laying hold on him very strongly, they tyed his hands and his feete very strongly, so that when hee started out of his sleepe, hee could not stirre himselfe, nor doe any other thing, then admire, & wonder at those strange shapes which he saw standing before him: and presently he fell into the conceit, which his continuall and distracted imagination had already suggested vnto him, beleecuing that all those strange figures were the spirits and shaddowes of that enchanted Castle, and that hee himselfe was now without doubt enchanted, seeing he could neither moue nor defend himselfe. All this succeeded iust as the Curate (who plotted the iest) made full account it would. Only, *Sansho*, among all those that were present, was in his right sense and shape; and although he wanted but little to be sicke of his Lords disease, yet for all that, he knew all those counterfeite ghosts: but he would not once vnfold his lips, vntill he might see the end of that surprisall and imprisonment of his Master: who likewise spoke neuer a word, but only looked to see what would be the period of his disgrace. Which was, that bringing him to the Cage, they shut him within, and afterwards nailed the barres thereof so well, as they could not be easily broken. They presently mounted him vpon their shoulders, and as he issued out at the chamber doore, they heard as dreadfull a voice as the Barber could deuise, (not he of the pannell, but the other) which said, *O Knight of the sadde countenance, be not grieved at the imprisonment wherein thou art led, for so it must be, that thereby the aduenture, into which thy great force & valor*

haue thrust thee, may be the more speedily ended; and ended it will be, when the furious Manchegal Lyon, & the white Tobosian Dove shall be united in one, and after they haue humbled their lofty Crest vnto the soft yoke of wedlocke, from whose wonderfull consort, shall issue to the light of the Orbe, fierce Whelps, which shall imitate the rannching paves of their valorous Father: and this shall be, before the pursuer of the fugitive Nymph doe with his swift and naturall course make two turnes, in visitation of the glistring Images; And thou, O the most noble, and obedient Squire, that euer had sword at a girdle, Beard on a face, or dent in a nose, let it not dismay, or discontent thee, to see carried away before thy eyes the flower of all Chinalrie Errant. For very speedily, if it please the framer of the world, thou shalt see thy selfe so exalted and ennobled, as thou shalt scarce know thy selfe: Nor shalt thou be defrauded of the promises made vnto thee by thy noble Lord; and I do assure thee, from the wise Mentironiana, that thy wages shall be payed thee, as thou shalt quickly see in effect: and therefore follow the steps of the valorous and enchanted Knight; for it is necessary, that thou goe to the place where you both shall stay: and because I am not permitted to say any more farewell; for I do retorne I wel know whither. Towards the end of this Prophecie, he lifted vp his voyce, and afterwards lesned it with so slender an accent, that euen those which were acquainted with the iest, almost beleeued what they had heard.

Don Quixote was very much comforted by the prophecie; for he presently apprehended the whole sense thereof, and perceiued how he was promised in marriage his beloved Dulcinea of Toboso, from whose happy wombe should sally the Whelps (which were his sonnes) to the eternall glory of the Mancha. And beleeuing all this most firmly, he eleuated his voice, and breathing forth a great sigh, thus said, O thou, whatsoeuer thou beest, which hast prognosticated so great good to me, I desire thee to request in my name, the wiseman who hath charge to record mine acts, that he permit me not to perish in this prison (to which they now doe carry me) before the accomplishment of so ioyfull and incomparable

promises, as now haue beene made unto me. For so that this may befall, I will account the paines of my prison a glory, and the chaines that inuiron me, an ease: and will not esteeme this bed whereon I am laid, a hard field of battaile, but a soft tickle, and a most fortunate lodging. And as concerning the consolation of my Squire Sancho Pança, I trust in his goodnesse, and honest proceeding, that he will not abandon me in good or bad fortune: for though it should fall out through his, or my hard hap, that I shall not be able to bestow on him an Island, or other equiualent thing, as I haue promised, his wages at least cannot be lost, for in my Testament, which is made already, I haue set downe what he is to haue, though not conformably to his many good seruices, yet according to my possibility. Sancho Pança bowed his head with great reuerence, and kissed both his hands (for one alone he could not, by reason they were bound together) and presently those visions did lift vp the Cage, and accommodate it on the Teame of Oxen.

#### CHAP. XX.

*Wherein is prosecuted the manner of Don-Quixotes enchantments, with other famous occurrences.*



When Don-Quixote saw himselfe to be incaged after that maner, and placed in the Cart, he said, I haue read many and very graue Histories of Knights Errant, but I neuer read, saw, nor heard, that they were wont to carry Knights Errant enchanted after this manner, and with the leisure that those slothfull and heauy beasts doe threaten: for they were euer accustomed to bee carried in the ayre with wonderfull speed, shut in some duskie and obscure cloud; or in some fiery chariot; or on some *Hippogriphus*, or some other such like beast: but that they carry me now on a Teame of Oxen, I protest it driues me into a great amazement, but perhaps both Chiuallrie, and the enchantments of these our times, doe follow a course different from those of former ages:

ages : and peradventure it may also bee, that as I am a new Knight in the world, and the first that hath againe reuiued the now-neglected, and forgotten exercise of armes, so haue they also newly inuented other kinds of inchantments, and other manners of carrying away enchanted Knights. What doest thou thinke of this, sonne *Sancho*? I know not, quoth *Sancho*, what to thinke; because I am not so well scene in Scriptures Errant as you are; but for all this I durst affirme and sweare, that these visions which goe vp and downe in this place, are not altogether Catholike. Catholikes, my father, quoth *Don-Quixote*, how can they be Catholikes, when they bee all Devils, which haue assumed phantasticall bodies to come and put mee into this state? And if thou wilt proue the truth hereof, doe but touch and feele them, & thou shalt finde them to haue no bodies, but of ayre, and that they consist of nothing but an outward appearance. Now by my faith, Sir, quoth *Sancho*, I haue already touched them, and finde this Deuill that goeth there so busily vp and downe, both plump and soft-fleshed; and that hee hath besides another property very different from that which I haue heard say Devils haue: for it is said, that they smell all of brimstone and other filthy things; but one may feele at least halfe a league off, the Amber that this Deuill smells off. *Sancho* spoke this of *Don Fernando*, who belike (as Lords of his ranke are wont) had his attyre perfumed with Amber.

Maruell not thereat, friend *Sancho*, quoth *Don-Quixote*, for the Devils are very craftie; and although they bring smells or perfumes about them, yet they themselues smell nothing (because they are spirits) or if they doe smell ought, it is not good, but euill and stinking sauors: the reason is, for that as they doe alwayes beare wheresoeuer they bee, their hell about them, and can receiue no kind of ease of their torments, and good smells be things that delight and please; it is not possible that they can smell any good thing: and if it seeme to thee, that that Deuill whom thou dost mentioh, smells of Amber, either thou art deceiued,

or

or he that would deceiue thee, by making thee to thinke that he is no Deuill. All these discourses passed betweene the Master and the man; the whilst *Don Fernando* and *Cardenio* (fearing lest *Sancho* should finde out the deceit whereto hee was already come very neere) resolved to hasten the Knights departure; and therefore calling the Inne-keeper aside, they commanded him to saddle *Roxinante*, and empannell *Sancho* his beast; which he did with all expedition: and the Curate agreed with the Troupers for so much a day to accompany him vnto his Village. *Cardenio* hanged at the pummell of *Roxinantes* saddle, the Target on the one side, and on the other the Bason, and by signes commanded *Sancho* to get vp on his Asse, and leade *Roxinante* by the bridle; and afterwards placed on either side of the Cart two Troupers with their firelockes.

But before the Cart departed, the Oastesse, her Daughter, and *Maritornes* came out to bid *Don-Quixote* farewell, sayning that they wept for sorrow of his disaister; to whom *Don-Quixote* said, My good Ladies doe not weep: for all these mischances are incident to those which professe that which I doe: and if these calamities had not befallne mee, I would neuer haue accounted my selfe for a famous Knight Errant: for the like chances neuer happen to Knights of little name or renoune, because there are none in the world that makes any mention of them. But they often befall to the valorous, who haue emulators of their Vertue and Valour, both many Princes and many other Knights that striue by indirect meanes to destroy the n. But for all that, Vertue is so potent, as by her selfe alone (in despite of all the Nigromancy that euer the first inuenter thereof *Zoroastes* knew) she will come off victorious from euery danger, and will shine in the world as the Sunne doth in heauen. Pardon me, faire Ladies, if by any carelesse I haue done you any displeasure, for with my wil and knowledge I neuer wronged any. And pray vnto God for me, that hee will please to deliuer mee out of this prison, where,

whereinto some ill meaning inchanter hath thrust me ; for if I once may see my selfe at liberty againe, I will neuer forget the fauours which you haue done me in this Castle, but greatly acknowledge and recompence them as they deserue. Whilst the Ladies of the Castle were thus intertained by *Don Quixote*, the Curate and Barber tooke leaue of *Don Fernando* and his companions, of the Captaine and his brother, and of all the contented Ladies, specially of *Desiree* and *Luscinda* ; all of them embraced and promised to acquaint one another with their succeeding fortunes, *Don Fernando* intreating the Curate to write vnto him what became of *Don-Quixote*, assuring him that no affaire hee could informe him of should please him better then that, and that hee would in lieu thereof acquaint him with all occurrences which he thought would delight him, either concerning his owne marriage or *Zoraida's* baptisme, or the successe of *Don Lewis*, and *Luscinda's* returne into her house.

The Curate offered willingly to accomplish to a haire all that hee had commanded him : and so they returned once againe to embrace one another, and to renew their mutuall and complementall offers : the Inne-keeper came also to the Curate, and gaue him certaine papers, saying, that hee had found them within one of the linings of the waller, whereia the Tale of the curious impertinent was had ; and that since the owner did not return to fetch it, he bade him take them all with him : for seeing he could not read, hee would keepe them no longer. Master Curate yeelded him many thanks ; and then opening them, found in the beginning thereof these words : *The Tale of Riconuerta and Cortadillo* ; by which he vnderstood that it was some History, & collected that it must be a good one, seeing that of the curious Impertinent, contriued perhaps by the same Author, had proued so well, & therefore he laid it vp, with an intention to reade it as soone as hee had oportunity. Then hee mounted on horse-backe with his friend the Barber ; and both of them putting on their masks, that they



they might not quickly be knowne by *Don-Quixote*, they trauelled after the Teame, which held on in this order; first went the Cart, guided by the Carter: on both sides thereof the Troupers rode with their fire-locks: then followed *Sancho* vpon his Ass, leading *Roxinante* by the bridle; and last of all came the Curate and Barber vpon their mighty Mules, and with their faces couered: all in a graue gesture, and with an Alderman-like pace, and traueilling no faster then the slow steps of the heauie Oxen permitted them. *Don-Quixote* sate with his hands tied, his legges stretched out, and leaning against the barre of the Cage, with such a silence, and patience, as hee rather seemed a Statue then a man. In this quiet and leisurely manner they trauelled for the space of two leagues, when arriuing to a valley, it seemed to their Conductor a fit place to repose and bait his Oxen. And acquainting the Curate with his purpose, the Barber was of opinion that they should yet goe on a little further, because hee knew that there lay behinde a little Mountaine, which was within their view, a certaine vale, much better furnished with grasse then that wherein hee meant to abide. The Barbers opinion was allowed, and therefore they continued on their trauell, when the Curate looking by chance behinde him, saw comming after them fixe or seuen men on horse-backe, and very well appointed, who quickly got ground of them; for they came not the lazie and flegmatike pace of Oxen, but as men that were mounted on Canons Mules, and pricked forward with a desire to passe ouer the heat of the day in their Inne, which was not much more then a league from thence. Finally, those diligent trauellers ouer-tooke our slothfull ones, and saluted them courteously, and one of them that was a Canon of Toledo, and Master of the rest, noting the orderly proceession of the Cart, Troupers, *Sancho*, *Roxinante*, the Curate and Barber, but chiefly the incaged *Don-Quixote*, hee could not forbear to demand what meant the carriage of that man, in so strange a manner, although he did already coniecture by obseruation of the Troupers, that

that he was some notable robber or other delinquent, the punishment of whom belonged to the *Holy Brotherhood*. One of the Troupers, to whom the demand was made, did answere in this manner: Sir, we know not wherefore this Knight is carried in this forme, and therefore let hee himselfe, who best may, tell you the reason thereof.

*Don-Quixote* had over-heard their discourse, and said, If, Gentlemen, you be conuersant and skilfull in matters of Chivalry, I will communicate my misfortunes with you: but if you be not, I haue no reason to trouble my selfe to recount them. The Curate and Barber seeing the travellers in talke with *Don-Quixote*, drew neere to make answere for him in such sort, that their inuention might not bee discouered; the whilest the Canon replied to the Knight, and said, Truly, brother, I am better acquainted with bookes of Knight-hood, then with *Villapanda's Logicke*: and therefore if all the difficultie rest onely in that, you may safely communicate whatsoever you will with me. A Gods name bee it, quoth *Don-Quixote*. You shall therefore vnderstand, Sir Knight, that I am carried away enchanted in this Cage, through the enuie and fraud of wicked Magicians, *For vertue is much more persecuted of the wicked, then honoured of the good*. I am a Knight Errant, but none of those whole names are not recorded in the bookes of fame, but one of those who in despite of enuie it selfe, and of all the Magicians of Persia, the Bracmanes of India, or of the Gymnosophists of Ethiopia shall hang his name in the Temple of *Eternity*, that it may serue as a model and patterne to ensuing ages; wherein Knights Errant may view the steps which they are to follow, if they meane to aspire to the toppe and honourable height of armes. The Knight Sir *Don-Quixote* saith true, quoth the Curate, speaking to the travellers, that hee is carried away in this Carriot enchanted, not through his own default or sinnes, but through the malignant treacherie of those, to whom vertue is lothsome, and valour odious. This is, good Sir, the *night of the sad countenance* (if you haue at any time heard

heard speake of him) whose valorous acts shall remaine inculped in stubborne Brasse, and time-suruiuing Marble, though Enuie and Malice doe labour neuer so much to obscure them.

When the Canoa heard the imprisoned man and the three speake thus in one tchour, hee was about to blesse himselfe for wonder, and could not coniecture what had befallne him, & into no lesse admiration were they brought that came with him. But *Sancho Pança* hauing in the meane time approched to heare their speech, to plaister vp the matter, added, Now, Sirs, whether you will loue mee well or ill, for what I shall say, the very truth of the matter is, that my Lord *Don-Quixote* is as much enchanted as my mother, and no more. For his iudgement is yet whole and sound; he eates, and drinkes, and doth his necessities as other men doe, and as he himselfe did yesterday, and other daies before they incaged him: all which being so, how can you make mee beleeuue that he goeth enchanted? for I haue heard many persons auouch, that enchanted persons neither eate, nor drinke, nor speake, and yet my Lord, if hee be not thwarted, will talke more then twentie Barresters: and then turning towards the Curate, he said, O Master Curate, Master Curate, doe you thinke that I doe not know you? And thinke you that I doe not suppose, yea and presage whereto these new enchantments are addresssed? Wel, know then, that I know you well, although you couer your face neuer so much, and that I vnderstand your meaning, how deeply soeuer you smother your drifts: but in fine, where Emulation and Enuy raignes, Vertue cannot liue, where pinching swayes, liberalitie goes by. A pox take thy Deuill: for but for your reuerence, my Lord had ere the time beene wedded to the Princeesse *Micomicona*, and I myselfe had beene created an Earle at least; for no lesse might be expected either from the bountie of my Lord, or the greatnesse of my deserts: but now I perceiue that to be true, which is commonly said, *That the wheele of Fortune turnes about more swiftly, then that of a Mill: and that they*  
which

*which were yesterday on the top thereof, lie to day all along on the ground.* I am chiefly grieved for my wife and children; for whereas they ought and might hope to see their father come in at his gates, made a Gouvernor, or Viceroy of some Isle, or Kingdome, they shall now see him returne vnto them no better then a poore horse-boy. All which I haue vrged so much, Master Curate, onely to intimate to your paternitie, how you ought to haue remorse, and make a scruple of conscience, of treating my deare Lord as you doe; and looke to it well, that God doe not one day demand at your hands, in the other life, amends for the prison whereinto you carry him; and that you be not answerable for all the succours and good deeds, which he would haue afforded the world in this time of his captiuitie. Snuffe mee those candles, quoth the Barber, hearing him speake so. What *Sancho*, art thou also of thy Masters confraternitie? I swear by the Lord, I begin to see that thou art very like to keepe him company in the Cage, and that thou shalt be as deeply enchanted as hee, for the portion which thou hast of his humour, and Chiuallrie. Thou wast in an ill houre begotten with child by his promises, and in a worse did the Isle, which thou so greatly longest for, sinke into thy pate. I am not with childe by any body, said *Sancho*, nor am I a man of humour to let any body get me with child, no, though it were the King himselfe: and although I be poore, yet am I a Christian, and owe nothing to any one; and if I desire Islands, others there are that desire worse things, *and every one is the sonne of his owne workes*: and vnder the name of a man, I may become Pope, how much more the Gouvernour of an Island; and chiefly seeing my Lord may gaine so many, as he may want men to bestow them on? and therefore, Master Barber, you should take heed how you speake; for all consists not in trimming of beards: and there is some difference betweene *Peter* and *Peter*. I say it, because all of vs know one another, and no man shall vnperceiued put a false Die vpon me. As concerning my Lords enchantment, God knowes the truth, and

and therefore let it rest as it is, seeing it is the worse for the stirring in. The Barber would not reply vnto *Sancho*, lest that with his simplicities, hee should discouer what the Curate and himselfe did labour so much to conceale: and the Curate doubting the same, had intreated the Canon to prick on a little forward, and hee would vnfold to him the mysterie of the encaged Knight, with other matters of delight. The Canon did so, and taking his men along with them, was very attentiuē to all that hee rehearsed, of the condition, life, madnesse, and fashions of *Don-Quixote*. There did he briefly acquaint him with the originall cause of his distraction, and all the progresse of his adventures, vntill his shutting vp in that Cage: and their owne designe in carrying home to his Countrey, to trie whether they might by any meanes finde out a remedy for his frenzie. The Canon and his men againe admired to heare so strange a Historie as that of *Don-Quixote*, and as soone as the Curate had ended his relation, the Canon said:

Verily Master Curate, I doe finde by experience, that those Bookes which are instituted of Chiuallrie, or Knight-hood, are very preiudiciall to wel-gouerned Commonwealths: and although (borne away by an idle and curious desire) I haue read the beginning of almost as many as are imprinted, of that subiect, yet could I neuer indure my selfe to finish and reade any one of them thorow: for mee thinkes that somewhat more or lesse, they all import one thing, and this hath no more then that, nor the other more then his fellow. And in mine opinion this kinde of writing and inuention fals within the compasse of the fables called *Milesia*, which are wandring and idle tales, whose onely scope is delight, and not instruction; quite contrary to the proiect of those called *Fabula Apologe*, which delight and instruct together. And though that the principall end of such Bookes bee recreation, yet cannot I perceiue how they can yeeld it, seeing they bee forced with so many, and so proportionlesse vntruthes. For the delight  
that

that the mind conceiues, must proceed from the beautie, and conformitie which it sees or contemplates in such things as the sight, or imagination represents vnto it; and all things that are deformed or discordant, must produce the contrary effect. Now then, what beautie can there be, or what proportion betweene the parts & the whole, or the whole and the parts, in a booke or fable, wherein a Youth of sixteene yeeres of age giues a blow to a Giant as great as a Iewes, and with that blow deuides him in two, as easily as if he were a pellet of Sugar? And when they describe a battell, after that they haue told vs how there were at least a million of men on the aduerse side, yet if the Knight of the booke be against them, we must of force, and whether we will or no, vnderstand, that the said Knight obtained the victory through the inuincible strength of his arme? What then shall we say of the facilitie wherewith all the Inherittrix of a Kingdome, or Empyre falls betweene the armes of one of those Errant and vnkowne Knights? What vnderstanding, if it be not altogether barren or barbarous, can delight it selfe, reading how a great tower full of Knights doth passe thorow the Sea, as fast as a ship with the most prosperous wind? And that going to bed, a man is in Lombardie, and the next morning findes himselfe in *Prester Johns* Country, among the Indians, or in some other Region which neuer was discovered by *Ptolemy*, nor seene by *Marcus Polus*? And if I should be answered, that the inueitors of such Bookes doe write them as fables: and therefore are not bound vnto any respect of circumstances, or obseruation of truth, I would reply, that an vntruth is so much the more pleasing, by how much the neerer it resembles a truth; and so much the more gratefull, by how much the more it is doubtfull and possible: for lying fables must bee suited vnto the Readers vnderstanding, and so written, as that facilitating impossible things, leuelling vntrue things, & holding the mind in suspense, they may rauish a more delight, and entertaine such manners, as pleasure and wonder may step by step walke  
M m together,



together: all which things hee that writes not likelihoods, shall neuer be able to performe. And as touching Imitation (wherein consists the perfection of that which is written) I haue not seene in any Bookes of Knight-hood, an entire bulke of a fable, so proportioned in all the members thereof, as that the middle may answere the beginning, and the end the beginning and middle. But rather they haue composed them of so many members, as it more probably seems, that the authors intended to frame *Chimeras* or monsters, then to deliuer proportionate figures, most harsh in their stile, incredible in exploits, impudent in loue matters, absurd in complements, prolix in battels, fond in discourses, vncertaine and senselesse in voyages, and finally, deuoid of all discretion, art and ingenious disposition. And therefore they deserue (as most idle and friuolous things) to bee banished out of all Christian Commonwealths.

Master Curate did listen to the Canon with very great attention; and he seemed vnto him to bee a man of good vnderstanding, and that he had great reason for what hee had alledged: and therefore said, that in respect they did concur in opinions, and that he had an old grudge to the vanity of such Bookes, hee had likewise fired all *Don-Quixotes* library, consisting of many Bookes of that subiect: And then he recounted to him the search and inquisition he had made of them; & which he had condemned, and which reserued. Whereat the Canon laughed heartily, and said, that notwithstanding all the euill he had spoken of such Bookes, yet did hee finde one good in them, to wit, the subiect, they offered a good wit to worke vpon, and shew it selfe in them; for they displayed a large and open plaine, thorow which the Pen might runne without let or incumbrances; describing of ship-wracks, tempests, incounters, and battels: delineating a valorous Capitaine, with all the properties required in him; as wisdom to frustrate the designs of his enemy; eloquence to perswade or dissuade, his souldiers; ripenesse in aduice;  
prompt-

promptnesse in execution ; as much valour in attending, as in assaulting of an enimie ; deciphering now a lamentable and tragicall successe, then a ioyfull and vnexpected euent ; there a most beautifull, honest, and discreete Ladie, heere a valiant, courteous, and Christian Knight; there an vnmeasurable barbarous braggard ; heere a gentle, valourous, and wise Prince : Representing the goodnesse and loyalty of subiects, the magnificence and bountie of Lords: Sometimes hee may shew himselfe an *Astrologian*, sometimes a *Cosmographer*, sometimes a *Musician*, sometimes a *Statist*, and sometimes, if he please, he may haue occasion to shew himselfe a *Nigromancer* : There may he demonstrate the subtiltie of *Vlisses*, the pietie of *Eneas*, the valour of *Achilles*, the misfortunes of *Heitor*, the trechery of *Simon*, the amitie of *Eurialus*, the liberality of *Alexander*, the resolution of *Cesar*, the clemency and truth of *Traianus*, the fidelitie of *Zepirus*, the prudence of *Cato* ; and finally, all those parts that make a worthy man perfect : one whiles by placing them all in one subiect ; another, by distributing them among many : and this being done, and set out in a pleasing stile, and a wittie fashion that approacheth as neere as is possible vnto the truth, will questionlesse remaine a worke of many faire draughts, which being accomplished, will represent such beauty and perfection, as shall fully attaine to the best end aymed at in all writing, that is, as I haue said, ioyntly to instruct, and delight : for the irregularity, and liberality of those Bookes giuen to the Author, the meanes to shew himselfe an *Epicke*, *Lyricke*, *Tragedian*, and *Comedian* ; with all other things which the most gracefull and pleasant sciences of Poetry and Oratorie include in themselves. For the *Epickes* may bee as well written in Prose as in Verse.

## C H A P. XXI.

*Wherein the Canon prosecutes his discourse upon Bookes of Chivalrie, and many other things worthy of his wit.*

**S**IR, you say very true, quoth the Curate; and for this very reason are they, which haue hitherto inuented such Bookes, the more worthy of reprehension, because they neither heeded the good discourse, the arte, nor the rules, by which they might haue guided themselues, and by that meanes haue growne as famous for their prose, as bee the two Princes of the Greeke and Latin Poetrie for their verse. I haue for my part, quoth the Canon, at least attempted to write a Booke of Chivalrie, obseruing therein all the points by me mentioned; and in truth I haue written about a hundred sheetes thereof: and to the end that I might trie whether they were correspondent to my estimation, I did communicate them, both with certaine skilfull and wise men, that are maruailously affected to that subiect, and with some ignorant persons that only delight to heare fanaticall inuentions; and I haue found in them all a gratefull approbation of my labours: yet would I not for all that, prosecute the worke, as well because it seemed vnfit for my profession, as also because I finde the number of the ignorant to exceed that of the iudicious: and though more good come to a man by the praise of a few wisemen, then hurt by the scoffes of a number of fooles, yet would I not willingly subiect my selfe to the confused iudgement of the senselesse vulgar, who commonly giue themselues most vnto the reading of such Bookes. But that which most of all ridde my hands, yea and my memorie, of all desire to end it, was this argument, drawne from our moderne Comedies, and thus made to my selfe: If those, (as well the fictions, as Historicall ones) are all or the most part of them notorious fopperies, and things without either head or foote, and yet are by the vulgar heard with such

such delight, and held and approued for good : and both the Authors that compose them, and Actors that represent them, say, that they must be such as they bee for to please the peoples humors, and not more conformable to reason or truth, and that, because those wherein *Decorum* is obserued, & the fable followed according to the rules of Art, serue onely for three or foure discrete men (*If so many may be found at a Play*) which doe attend vnto them, and all the rest of the Auditours remaine fasting, by reason they cannot conceiue the artificiall contexture thereof; therefore is it better for them to gaine good money and meanes by many, then bare opinion or applause by a few. The very same would be the end of my Booke, after I had vsed all possible industrie to obserue the aforesaid precept; and I should remaine onely for a neede, and as the Taylour that dwels in a corner, without trade or estimation.

And although I haue sundry times indeuoured to perswade the Players, that their opinion was erroneous herein, and that they would attract more people, and acquire greater fame by acting artificiall Comedies, then those irregular, and methodicall Playes then vsed: yet are they so wedded to their opinion, as no reason can woo, nor demonstration winne them from it. I remember, how dealing vpon a day with one of those obstinate fellowes, I said vnto him, Doe not you remember, how a few yeeres agoe were represented in Spaine three Tragedies, written by a famous Poet of our Kingdome, which were such as delighted, yea and amazed all the auditours, as well the learned as the simple, the exact as the slight ones; and that the Players got more by those three alone, then by thirtie of the best that were penned, or acted since that time? You meane, without question, quoth the Actor answering me, *Isabella, Filis, and Alexandra*. The very same, quoth I; and note whether in them were not rightly obserued all the rules and precepts of Art: and yet thereby they neither wanted any part of their dignitie, nor the approbation of all the world. So that I inferre, the fault not to bee in the

vulgar that couets idle toyes, but rather in those which know not how to penne or act any other thing: for no such fond stufte was in the Comedie of *Ingratitude reuenged*, nor found in *Numantia*, nor perceiued in that of the *Amorous Merchant*, and much lesse in the *Fauourable enemy*, nor in some others made by iudicious Poets, which both redounded to their infinite fame and renowne, and yeelded vnto these Actors abundant gaine. To these I added other reasons, wherewith I left him, in mine opinion, somewhat perplexed, but not satisfied, or desirous to forgoe his erroneous opinion.

Truely, Master Canon, quoth the Curate, you haue touched a matter that hath rowsed an ancient rancour and heart-burning of mine against the Comedies now in request; the which is equall to the grudge that I beare to Bookes of Knight-hood. For seeing the Comedie, as *Tully* affirms, ought to be a mirrour of mans life, a patterne of manners, and an Image of truth: Those that are now exhibited, are mirrours of vanitie, patternes of folly, and Images of voluptuousnesse. For what greater absurditie can bee in such a subiect, then to see a Childe come out, in the first *Scene*, of the first Act, in his swaddling Clouts, and issue in the second already growne a man, yea, a bearded man? And what greater vanitie, then to present before vs, a valiant old man, & a yong coward? A Lay man become a Diuine? a Page, a Counsellor? a King, a Scoundrell? and a Princeesse, a Scowre-kettle? What should I say, of the little care had of the due obseruation of time, for the succeeding of that they represent, other then that I my selfe haue scene Comedies, whose first Act began in Europe, the second in Asia, and the third ended in Africa: and truely if there had beene a fourth, it would questionlesse haue finished in America, and by consequence wee should haue scene a round walke about the foure parts of the World. And saying an exployt performed in the time of King *Pepin*, or of *Charlemaine*, they make the principall Actours thereof, eyther *Heraclius* the Emperour that entred into

Hic-

Hierusalem bearing of the holy Crosse ; or *Godfrey of Bul-  
loin* that recovered the Holy-land ; Many yeeres, yea and  
ages hauing occurred betweene the times of the one and  
the other : yea and the Comedie being grounded on a  
fiction, to attribute vnto it the verities of a Historie, and  
mingle it and patch it vp, with pieces of others, hauing re-  
lation to different persons and times ; and this with no  
plausible inuention, or draught resembling the truth , but  
rather with palpable, grosse, and inexcusable errors. And  
which is worse, some guls are found to affirme, that all per-  
fection consists herein, and that they are too daintie that  
looke for any other.

Now, if we would passe further, to examine the diuine  
Comedies that treat of God, or the liues of Saints, what a  
multitude of false miracles do the composers deuise ? what  
a bulke of matters Apocryphall, and ill. vnderstood ? attri-  
buting to one Saint the miracles done by another ? yea  
and in humane Comedies they presume to doe miracles  
(without farther respect, or consideration, but that such a  
miracle or shew, as they terme it, would doe well in such a  
place) to the end that the ignorant folke may admire them,  
and come the more willingly to them : all which doth pre-  
iudice truth, discredit histories, and turne to the disgrace  
of our Spanish wits : for strangers, which doe with much  
punctualitie obserue the method of Comedies, hold vs to  
be rude and ignorant, when they see such follies, and absur-  
dities escape vs : and it will be no sufficient excuse for this  
error, to say, that the principall end of well-gouerned  
Commonwealths, in the permitting of Comedies, is only to  
entertain the Commualtie with some honest pastime, and  
thereby diuert the exorbitant and vicious humours which  
idlenesse is wont to ingender : and seeing that this end is  
attained to by whatsoeuer Comedies good or bad, it were  
to no purpose to appoint any lawes, or limits vnto them ;  
or to tie the Composers to frame, or Actors to play them,  
as they should doe : For hereunto I answere , that this  
end would without all comparison bee compassed,



better by good Comedies then by euill ones : for the Auditour, hauing heard an artificiall and well-ordered Comedie, would come away delighted with the iests, and instructed by the truths thereof, wondering at the successes, grow discreeter by the reasons, warned by the deceits, become wise by others example, incensed against vice, and enamoured of vertue ; all which affects a good Comedie should stirre vp in the hearers minde, were hee neuer so grosse or clownish : And it is of all impossibilities the most impossible, that a Comedie consisting of all these parts, should not entertaine, delight, satisfie, and content the mind much more, then another that should be defectiue in any of them, as most of our now-a-day Comedies be. Nor are the Poets that pen them chiefly to bee blamed for this abuse : for some of them know very well where the Errour lurkes, and know also as well how to redresse it. But because that Comedies are become a vendible merchandize, they affirme, and therein tell the plaine truth, that the Players would not buy them, if they were of any other, then the accustomed kind; and therefore the Poet indeuours to accomodate himselfe to the humor of the Player, who is to pay him for his labour: and that this is the truth, may be gathered by an infinite number of Comedies, which a most happy wit of this Kingdome hath composed with such delicacy, so many good iests, so elegant a verse, so excellent reasons, so graue sentences, and finally, with so much eloquence, and such a lofsinesse of stile, as hee hath filled the world with his fame: and yet by reason that hee was forced to accomodate himselfe to the Actors, all of them haue not arriued to the height of perfection which Arte requires. Others there, are that write without any iudgement, & with so little heed of what they do, as after their workes haue once beene acted, the Players are constrained to run away and hide themselues, fearing to be punished, as often they haue beene, for acting things obnoxious to the Prince, or scandalous to some Families.

All which inconueniences might bee redressed, if there were

were some vnderstanding and discret person ordained at the Court, to examine all Comedies before they were acted, and that not only such as were played at the Court it selfe, but also all others that were to be acted thorowout *Spain*, without whose allowance, vnder his hand and seale, the Magistrate of no Towne should permit any Comedie to be played: By which meanes the Players would diligently send their Playes to the Court, and might boldly afterwards act them, and the composers would with more care and studie examine their labours, knowing that they should passe the strict censure of him that could vnderstand them: and by this meanes would good Comedies be written, and the thing intended by them, most easily attained to, *viz.* the entertainment of the people, the good opinion of *Spanish* wits, the profit and securitie of the Players, and the sauing of the care that is now imployed in chastising their rashnesse. And if the same charge were giuen to this man, or to some other, to examine the bookes of Knight-hood, which should bee made hereafter, some of them doubtlesse would be put forth, adorned with that perfection whereof you spoke but now, enriching our language with the pleasing and precious treasure of eloquence, and being an occasion that the old bookes would become obscure in the bright presence of those new ones published, for the honest recreation, not only of the idler sort, but also of those that haue more serious occupations: For it is not possible for the bow to continue still bent: nor can our humane and fraile nature sustaine it selfe long, without some helpe of lawfull recreation.

The Canon and Curate had arriued to this point of their discourse, when the Barber spurring on, and ouertaking them, said to the Curate, This is the place I lately told you, was fit to passe ouer the heate of the day in, while the Oxen baited amidst the fresh and abundant Pastures. It likes me very well, quoth the Curate: and telling the Canon what he meant to doe, he also was pleased to remaine with them, as well inuited by the prospect of a beautifull valley,

valley, which offered it selfe to their view, as also to inioy the Curates conuerſation, towards whom he began to beare maruellous affection: and laſtly, with the deſire he had to be thorowly acquainted with *Don-Quixotes* adventures, therefore he gaue order to ſome of his men, that they ſhould ride to the Inne, which was hard by, and bring from thence what meate they could finde ſufficient to ſatiſſie them all, becauſe he likewiſe meant to paſſe the hot time of the day in that place. To which one of his men did anſwer, that their Sumpture Mule was by that time, as he thought, in the Inne, ſo copiouſly furniſhed with prouiſion of meate, that as he ſuppoſed, they needed not buy any thing there, but bailey for their Mules. If it bee ſo, quoth the Canon, let our Mules be carryed thither, and the Sumpture one returned hither.

Whiſt this paſſed, *Sancho* being free from the continual preſence of the Curate and Barber, whom he held as ſuſpected perſons, thought it a fit time to ſpeake with his Lord, and therefore drew neere to the Cage wherein he ſate, and ſaid to him in this manner: Sir, that I may diſcharge my conſcience, I will reueale vnto you all that hath paſt in this affaire of your inchantment: which briefly is, that thoſe two which ride with their faces couered, are the Curate of our Village and the Barber, and as I imagine, they both are the plotters of this your kinde of carrying away, for meere emulation that they ſee you ſurpaſſe them both in atchieuing of famous acts. This truth being preſuppoſed, it followes, that you are not enchanted, but be gulled and made a ſoole. For the prooſe whereof I will but demand of you one queſtion, and if you doe anſwer me according to mine expectation, as I beleue you will, you ſhall feele the deceit with your owne hands, and perceiue how you are not enchanted, but rather haue your wits turned vpiſide-downe.

Sonne *Sancho*, demand what thou wilt, quoth *Don-Quixote*, and I will ſatiſſie thee, and anſwer directly to thy deſire: But as touching thy ſuerment, that thoſe which goe  
along

along with vs, be the Curate and Barber, our Gossips, and old acquaintance; it may well befall that they seeme to be such; but that they are so really, and in effect, I would not haue thee beleue in any manner. For that which thou art to beleue, and shouldest vnderstand in this matter, is, that if they be like those our friends, as thou sayest, it must needs be that those which haue enchanted me, haue assumed their semblance and likenesse (for it is an easie thing for Magicians to put on any shape they please) thereby to giue thee occasion to thinke that which thou dost, to driue thee into such a Labyrinth of imaginations, as thou shalt not afterwards know how to fally out, although thou hadst the assistance of *Thefews* clew: and withall to make me wauer in mine vnderstanding, to the end I may not conjecture from whence this charme is deriued vnto me: for if thou on the one side doest affirme, that the Barber, and Curate of our Village doe accompany me; and I on the other side finde my selfe incaged, and am so assured of mine owne force, that no humane strength, bee it not supernaturall, is able thus to incage me, what wouldest thou haue me say, or thinke, but that the manner of mine enchantment exceeds as many as euer I read throughout all the Histories, intreating of Knights Errant, which haue beene enchanted? Wherefore thou maiest very well appease, and quiet thy selfe in that point of beleueing, then to bee those thou sayst; for they are those, as much as I am a Turke: and as touching thy desire to demand somewhat of me, speake, for I will answer thee, although thou puttest mee questions vntill to morrow morning.

Our Ladie assist mee, quoth *Sancho* (as loud as hee could) and is it possible that you are so brain-sicke, and hard-headed, as you cannot perceiue that I affirme the very pure truth, and that malice hath a greater stroke in this your disgrace and imployment, then any enchantments? But seeing it is so, I will prooue euidently that you are not enchanted: if not, tell me, as God shall deliuer you out of this tempest,

tempest, and as you shall see your selfe, when you least thinke of it, in my Ladie *Dulcinea's* armes. Make an end of coniuring me, said *Don-Quixote*, and aske me what question thou wilt; for I haue already told thee, that I will answer with all punctualitie. That is it I demand, quoth *Sancho*; and the thing I would know, is, that you tell me without adding or diminishing ought, but with all truth vsed or looked for of all those which professe the exercise of armes as you do, vnder the title of Knights Errants. I say, answered *Don-Quixote*, that I will not lie a iot: make therefore a beginning, or an end of these demands, for in good sooth thou dost weary mee with so many salutations, petitions and preuentions. *Sancho* replied, I say that I am secure of the bountie and truth of my Lord: and therefore, because it makes to the purpose in our affaire, I doe with all respect demand, whether your Worship, since your incagement, and as you imagine, inchantment in that Coope, haue not had a desire to make greater or lesse water, as men are wont to say? I doe not vnderstand, good *Sancho*, that phrase of making water; and therefore explicate thy selfe, if thou wouldest haue me to answer thee directly. And is it possible, replied he, that your Worship vnderstands not what it is to make great or little waters? then goe to some schoole, and learne it of the boyes, and know that I would say, Haue you had a desire to doe that which cannot be vndone? O, now, now, I vnderstand thee, *Sancho*. Yes, very many times; yea and euen now I haue: wherefore, I pray thee, deliuer me from the extremitie thereof; for I promise thee, I am not altogether so cleane as I would be.

## CHAP. XXII.

*Wherein the discrete discourse that passed betweene Sancho Pança, and his Lord Don-Quixote, is expressed.*



A, quoth *Sancho*, haue I caught you at last? this is that which I desired to know, as much as my soule or life. Come now, Sir, and tell me, can you denie that which is wont to be said, when a bodie is ill disposed, I know not what ayles such a one; for he neither eates nor drinkes, nor sleepes, nor answers directly to that which is demanded him, so as it seemes that he is enchanted? By which may be collected, that such as neither eate, drinke, sleepe, nor doe the other naturall things you wote of, are enchanted: but not those which haue a desire as you haue, & eate meate, when they get it, and drinke drinke when it is giuen them, and answer to all that is propounded vnto them. Thou sayest true, *Sancho*, quoth *Don-Quixote*: but I haue told thee already, that there are diuers sorts of enchantments, and perhaps they change with the times from one kinde into another; and that now the enchanted vse to doe all that which I do, although they did not so in times past; and therefore there is no disputing, or drawing of conclusions against the customes of the time. I know, and doe verily perswade my selfe, that I am enchanted, and that is sufficient for the discharge of my conscience, which would be greatly burdened, if I thought that I were not enchanted, and yet permitted my selfe to be borne away in this Cage idly, and like a Coward withholding the succour I might giue to many distressed and needie persons, which euen at this houre bee like enough to haue extreme want of mine aide, and assistance. Yet say I notwithstanding, replied *Sancho*, that for more abundant satisfaction, your Worship might doe well to attempt the getting out of this prison, the which I doe oblige my selfe with all my power to facilitate, yea and to get you out, and then you may recount est-soones on the



the good *Rozinante*, who also seemes enchanted, so sad and melancholy he goes. And this being done, we may againe assay the fortune of seeking adventures, which if it haue no good successe, we haue time enough to returne to our Cage; wherein I promise, by the faith of a good and loyall Squire, to shut vp my selfe together with you, if you shall prooue so vnfortunate, or I so foolish, as not to bring our designes to a good issue. I am content to doe what thou sayest, brother *Sancho*, replied *Don-Quixote*, and when thou seest opportunitie offered to free me, I will be ruled by thee in euery thing, but yet thou shalt see, how far thou art ouerwrought in the knowledge thou wilt seeme to haue of my disgrace.

The Knight Errant, and the ill errant Squire beguiled the time in these discourses, vntill they arriued vnto the place where the Canon, Curate, and Barber expected them: and then *Sancho* allighting, and helping to take downe the Cage, the Wayne-man vnyoked his Oxen, permitting them to take the benefit of pasture in that greene and pleasant valley, whose Verder inuited not such to inioy it as were enchanted like *Don-Quixote*, but rather such heedfull and discrete persons as was his man, who intreated the Curate to licence his Lord to come out but a little while: for otherwise the prison would not be so cleanly as the presence of so Worthie a Knight as his Lord was, required. The Curate vnderstood his meaning, and answered that he would satisfie his request very willingly, but that he feared that when he saw himselfe at libertie, he would play then some pranke or other, and goe whither no bodie should euer set eye on him after. I will be his surety that he shall not flie away, quoth *Sancho*. And I also, quoth the Canon, if he will but promise me, as he is a Knight, that he will not depart from vs without our consent. I giue my word that I will not, said *Don-Quixote* (who heard all that they had said) and the rather, because that enchanted bodies haue not free will to dispose of themselues as they list; for he that enchanted them, may make them vnable to stirre from one place

place in three daies: and if they make an escape, he can compell them to returne flying: and therefore since it was so, they might securely set him at liberty, especially seeing that it would redound so much to all their benefits: for if they did not free him, or get further off, he protested that he could not forbear to offend their noses. The Canon tooke his hand (although it were bound) and by his faith, and word, that he would not depart, and then they gaue him liberty; whereat he infinitely reioyced, especially seeing himselfe out of the Cage. The first thing that he did after, was to stretch all his bodie, and then he went towards *Rozinante*, and striking him twice or thrice on the buttocks, he said, I hope yet in God, and his blessed Mother, O flower and mirrour of horses, that we two shall see our selues very soone in that state which our hearts desire; thou with thy Lord on thy backe, and I mounted on thee, and exercising the function for which God sent me into this world. And saying so, *Don-Quixote* with his Squire *Sancho*, retired himselfe somewhat from the companie, and came backe soone after a little more lightned, but greatly desiring to execute his Squires designs.

The Canon beheld him very earnestly, and with admiration wondering to see the strangenesse of his fond humour, and how that he shewed, in whatsoeuer he vttered, a very good vnderstanding, and onely left the stirrups (as is said before) when any mention was made of Chivalrie; and therefore mooued to compassion, after they were all laid downe along vpon the grasse, expecting their dinner, he said vnto him, Gentleman, is it possible that the idle and vsauorie Lecture of Bookes of Knighthood, hath so much distracted your wit, as thus to beleuee, that you are carried away enchanted, with other things of that kind, as much wide from truth, as vntruths can be from veritie it selfe? Or how is it possible that any humane vnderstanding can frame it selfe to beleuee, that in this world there haue beene such an infinite of *Amadis*es, such a crue of famous Knights, so many Emperours of *Trapisonda*,  
such

such a number of *Felixmartes* of *Hyrkania*; so many Palfrayes, Damzels Errant, Serpents, Robbers, Gyants, Battailles, vnheard of aduentures, sundrie kinds of enchantments, such vnmeasurable incounters, such brauerie of apparell, such a multitude of enamoured and valiant Princesses, so many Squires, Earles, wittie Dwarfes, Viragoes; Loue-Letters, amorous dalliances; and finally, so many, so vnreasonable, and impossible aduentures, as are contained in the Bookes of Knighthood. Thus much I dare auouch of my selfe, that when I reade them, as long as I doe not thinke that they are all but toyes and vntruthes, they delight me: but when I ponder seriously, what they are, I throw the very best of them against the walls, yea, and would throw them into the fire if they were neere me, or in my hands, hauing well deserued that seueritie, as false Impostumes, and Seducers of common sense, as Brochers of new Sects, and of vnough courses of life: as those that giue occasion to the ignorant vulgar, to beleue in such exorbitant vntruths as are contained in them. Yea, and are withall so presumptuous, as to dare to confound the wits of the most discrete, and best descended Gentlemen; as we may cleerely perceiue by that they haue done to your selfe, whom they haue brought to such termes, as it is necessarie to shut you vp in a Cage, and carrie you on a Teame of Oxen, euen as one carries a Lyon or Tygre from place to place, to gaine a liuing by the shewing of him. Therefore, good *Don-Quixote*, take compassion of your selfe, and returne into the bosome of discretion; and learne to imploy the most happie talent of vnderstanding, and abundance of wit, wherewith bountifull heaven hath enriched you, yet some other course of studie, which may redound to the profit of your soule, and aduancement of your credit and estate. And if, borne away by your naturall disposition, you will yet persist in the reading of warlike, and Knightly discourses; Reade in the holy Scripture the Acts of Iudges: for there you shall finde surpassing feats and deeds, as true, as valorous. *Portugall had a Viriate:*

*Rome*

Rome a Caesar: Carthage an Hannibal: Greece an Alexander: Castile an Earle, Fernan Gonzalez: Valencia a Cid: Andalusia a Goncalo Fernandez: Estremadura a Diego Garcia de Paredes: Xerez a Garci Perez de Vargas: Toledo a Garci Lasso: Simil a Don Manuel de Leon. The discourses of whose valorous Actes, may entertaine, teach, delight, and make wonder, the most sublime wit that shall reade them. Yea, this were indeed a studie fit for your sharpe vnderstanding, my deare Sir *Don-Quixote*, for by this you should become learned in Histories, enamoured of vertue, instructed in goodnesse, bettered in manners, valiant without rashnesse, bold without cowardice: and all this to Gods honour, your owne profit, and renowne of the *Mancha*, from whence, as I haue learned, you deduce your beginning and progenie.

*Don-Quixote* listned with all attention vnto the Canons admonition, and perceiuing that he was come to an end of them, after he had looked vpon him a good while, he said, Me thinks, Gentleman, that the scope of your discourse hath beene adrest to perswade me, that there neuer were any Knights Errant in the world; and that all the bookes of Chiuallrie are false, lying, hurtfull, and vnprofitable to the Common-wealth; and that I haue done ill to reade them, worse to belecue in them, and worst of all to follow them, by hauing thus taken on me the most austere profession of wandring Knighthood, whereof they intreate: denying moreouer that there were euer any *Amadis*, either of *Gaul* or *Greece*; or any of all the other Knights, wherewith such Bookes are stuffed; All is iust as you haue said, quoth the Canon: whereto *Don-Quixote* replied thus, You also added, that such Bookes had done me much hurt, seeing they had turned my iudgement, and immured me vp in this Cage; and that it were better for me, to make some amendment, and alter my studie, reading other that are more authentickall, and delight and instruct much better. It is very true, answered the Canon.

Why then, quoth *Don-Quixote*, I finde by mine accounts,  
 N n that

that the enchanted, and senselesse man is your selfe; seeing you haue bent your selfe to speake so many blasphemies against a thing so true, so currant, and of such request in the world, as he that should denie it, as you doe, merits the same punishment, which as you say you giue to those Bookes, when the reading thereof offends you: for to goe about to make men belecue, that *Amadis* neuer lined nor any other of those Knights, wherewith Histories are fully replenished, would be none other then to perswade them, that the Sunne lightens not, the Earth sustaines not, nor the Ice makes any thing cold. See what wit is there in the world so profound, that can induce another to beleue, that the Historie of *Guy of Burgundy*, and the Princes *Floripes*, was not true? Nor that of *Fierabras*, with the Bridge of *Mantible*, which befell in *Charlemaines* time, and is, I sweare, as true, as that it is day at this instant? And if it be a lie, so must it be also, that euer there was an *Hector*, *Achilles*, or the warre of *Troy*; The twelve Peeres of *France*, or King *Arthur of Brittain*, who goes yet about the world in the shape of a Crow, and is euery foote expected in his Kingdome. And they will as well presume to say, that the Historie of *Guarino Mezquino*, and of the quest of the holy *Sangriall* be lies; and that for the loue betweene Sir *Tristram* and *La Belle Ysode*, and betweene Queene *Gueneuor* and Sir *Lancelot Dulak*, we haue no sufficient Authoritie, and yet there be certaine persons alive, which almost remember, that they haue seene the Ladie *Quintaniona*, who was one of the best Skinkers of Wine that euer Great *Brittaine* had; and this is so certaine, as I remember, that one of my Grand-mothers of my Fathers side, was wont to say vnto mee, when shee saw my Matrone, with a long and reuerend kerchiefe or vaile, My boy, that woman resembles very much Lady *Quintaniona*. From which I argue, that either she knew her selfe, or at the least, had seene some portraiture of hers. Who can moreouer denie the certaintie of the Historie of *Peter of Pronance*, and the beautifull *Magolona*, seeing that

that vntill this very day one may behold in the Kings Armorie, the Pinne where with he guided, and turned any way he list, the Horſe of wood, whereupon he rode thorow the Ayre; which Pinne, is a little bigger then the Thill of a Cart: and neere vnto it is alſo ſeene *Babieca* his ſaddle: and in *Ronceſuals* there yet hangs *Rowlands* horne, which is as bigge as a very great loyſt, whence is inferred, that there were twelue Peeres, that there was a *Pierres* of *Prouance*, that alſo there were *Cides*, and other ſuch Knights as thoſe which the world termes Aduenturers; if not, let them alſo tell me, that the valiant *Luſitanian*, *John de Melo*, was no Knight Errant, who went to *Burgundie*, and in the Citie of *Ras* fought with the famous Lord of *Charni*, called *Mofen Pierres*, & after with *Mofen Henry* of *Rameſtan* in the Citie of *Baſilea*, and bore away the victorie in both the conflicts, to his eternall fame: and that there were no ſuch cures as the aduentures, and ſingle combats begun, and ended in *Burgundie*, by the valiant Spaniards *Pedro Barba*, and *Gutierrez Quixada* (from whom I my ſelfe am lineally deſcended) who ouercame the Earle of *Saint Pauls* ſonnes. They may alſo auerre vnto me, that *Don Fernando de Guenarra* went not to ſeeke aduentures in *Germanie*, where he fought with *Micer George*, a Knight of the Duke of *Auſtria* his houſe. Let them like wiſe aſſume, that *Suero de Quinonnes* of the paſſage, his Iuits were but Jeſts: as alſo the enterprize of *Mofen Lewis de falſes*, againſt *Don Goncala de Guzman*, a Gentleman of *Caſtile*, with many other renowned Acts, done as well by Chriſtian Knights of this Kingdome, as of other forraine lands, and ſo Authentically and true, as that I am compelled to reiterate what I ſaid before, that whoſoever denies them, is defective of reaſon and good diſcourſe.

Full of admiration remained the good Canon, to heere the compoſition, and medly, that *Don-Quixote* made of truths and fictions together; and at the great notice hee had of all things that might any way concerne his Knight-hood Errant: and therefore he ſhaped him this answer, I



cannot denie, Sir *Don-Quixote*, but that some part of that which you haue said is true, specially touching those Spanish aduenturers of whom you haue spoken; and will likewise grant you, that there were twelue Peeres of France, but I will not belecue that they haue accomplished all that which the *Archbishop Turpine* hath left written of them: for the bare truth of the affaire is, that they were certaine Noblemen chosen out by the Kings of France, whom they called Peeres, because they were all equall in valour, qualitie, and worth; or if they were not, it was at least presumed that they were; and they were not much vnlike the Militarie orders of *Saint Iames*, or *Calatrana*, were in request, wherein it is presupposed that such as are of the profession, are, or ought to be, valorous, and well descended, Gentlemen: and as now they say, a Knight of *Saint Iohn*, or *Alcantara*, so in those times they said, a Knight of the twelue Peeres; because they were twelue equals, chosen to be of that Military order. That there was a *Cid*, and a *Bernard of Carpio*, is also doubtlesse; that they haue done the acts recounted of them, I belecue there is very great cause to doubt. As touching the pinne of the good Earle *Pierres*, and that it is by *Babieca* his saddle in the Kings Armourie, I confesse that my sinne hath made me so ignorant, or blind, that although I haue viewed the saddle very well, yet could I neuer get a sight of that Pinne, how great soeuer you affirme it to be.

Well, it is there, without question, said *Don-Quixote*: and for the greater confirmation thereof, they say it is laid vp in a case of Neates leather, to keepe it from rusting. That may very well so be, said the Canon: yet by the orders that I haue receiued, I doe not remember that euer I saw it: and although I should grant it to be there, yet doe I not therefore oblige my selfe to belecue the Histories of all the *Amadis*es, nor those of the other rabblement of Knights, which bookes doe mention vnto vs: nor is it reason that so Honorable a man, adorn'd with so many good parts, and indowed with such a wit, as you are, should belecue, that

that so many, and so strange follies, as are written in the raising bookes of Chiuallrie, can be true.

## CHAP. XXIII.

*Of the discreet contention betweene Don-Quixote and the Canon, with other accidents.*

**T**HAT were a iest indeed, quoth *Don-Quixote*, that bookes which are printed with the Kings licence, and approbation of those to whom their examination was committed, and that are read with vniuersall delight and acceptance, and celebrated by great and little, rich, and poore, learned and ignorant, Plebeyans and Gentlemen, and finally, by all kinde of persons of what state or condition soeuer, should be so lying and fabulous; specially seeing they haue such probability of truth; seeing they describe vnto vs the Father, Mother, Countrey, Kinsfolke, Age, Towne, and Acts of such a Knight, or Knights, and that so exactly, point by point, and day by day: Hold your peace, and neuer speake againe such a blasphemie, and belecue me, for I doe sincerely counsell you, what you, as a discreet man, ought to doe herein; and if not, reade them but once, and you shall see what delight you shall receiue thereby: if not, tell me what greater pleasure can there be, then to behold (as one would say) euen here and before our eyes, a great lake of pitch boiling hot, and many Serpents, Snakes, Lizarts, and other kinds of cruell and dreadfull beasts swimming athwart it, and in euery part of it, and that there issues out of the lake a most lamentable voyce, saying, *O thou Knight, what soeuer thou art, which doest behold the fearefull lake, if thou desirest to obtaine the good concealed vnder these horrid and blacke waters, shew the valour of thy strong brest, and throw thy selfe into the midst of this sable, and inflamed liquor; for if thou doest not so, thou shalt not be worthy to discover the great wonders hidden in the seuen Castles of the*

*seven Fates, which are seated under these gloomie wanes:* and that scarce hath the Knight heard the fearefull voyce, when without entring into any new discourfes, or once considering the danger whereinto he thrusts himfelfe, yea or easing himfelfe of the waight of his ponderous armour, but only commending himfelfe vnto God, and his Ladie Miftris, he plunges into the midft of that burning puddle, and when he neither cares nor knowes what may befall him, he finds himfelfe in the midft of flourishing fields, with which the very *Elifean* plaines can in no fort be compared; There it seemes to him that the element is more transparent, and that the Sunne shines with a cleerer light then in our Orbe: there offers it felfe to his greedie and curious eye, a moft pleasing Forrest replenished with fo greene, and well-fpred trees, as the verdure thereof both ioyes and quickens the fight; whileft the eares are entertained by the harmonious, though artlefse fongs of infinite and enamelled birds, which trauefse the intricate boughes of that shadie habitation: here hee discovers a fmall ftream, whose frefh waters refembling liquid *Criſtall*, ſlides ouer the fmall fands, and white little ſtones, which reſemble ſifted gold wherein Orientall Pearles are incha-ced: there he diſcernes an artificiall Fountaine wrought of Motly Iafper and ſmooth Marble: and hard by it another, rudely and negligently framed, wherein the ſundry Cockle ſhells with the wreathed white and yellow houſes of the Perwincke, and Snaille intermingled, and placed after a diſorderly order (hauiing now and then pieces of cleere *Criſtall*, and counterſeit *Emeralds* mingled among them) doe make a worke of ſo gracefull varietie, as Art imitating Nature, doth herein ſeeme to ſurpaſſe her. Suddainly he diſcovers a ſtrong Caſtle or goodly Palace, whose walles are of beaen gold, the pinacles of *Diamonds*, the gates of *Iacinths*; finally, it is of ſo exquisite Workemaſhip, as although the materials whereof it is built, are no worſe then *Diamonds*, *Carbuncles*, *Rubies*, *Emeralds*, *Pearles*, and *Gold*, yet is the Architeſture therof of more eſtimation and

and value then they, and is there any more to be seene, after the seeing hereof, then to see sallie out at the Castle gates, a goodly troupe of louely Damzels, whose braue and costly attire, if I should attempt to describe, as it is laid downe in Histories, we should neuer make an end? and seee that seemesthe chiefeft of all, to take presently our bold Knight, that threw himselfe into the boyling Lake, by the hand, and carry him into the rich Castle or Palace without speaking a word, and cause him to strip himselfe as naked, as he was when his Mother bore him, and bathe him in very temperate waters, and afterward anoynt him all ouer with precious oyntments, and put on him a Shirt of most fine, odoriferous, and perfumed Sendall; and then another Damzell to come suddainly, and casts on his backe a rich mantle, which they say is wont to be worth, at the very least a rich Citie, yea and more. Then what a sport it is, when they tell vs after, that after this he is carried into another Hall, where he finds the tables couered so orderly as he rests amazed? what, to see cast on his hands water distilled all of Amber, and most fragrant flowers? what, to see him seated in a chaire of Yuorie? what, to see him serued by all the Damzels with maruellous silence? what, the setting before him such varietie of accates, and those so excellently dressed, as his appetite knowes not to which of them it shall first addresse his hand? what, to heare the Musicke which sounds whilst he is at diuener, without knowing who makes it, or whence it comes? and after that dinner is ended, and the tables taken away, the Knight to remaine leaning on a chaire, and perhaps picking of his teeth, as the custome is, and on a suddaine to enter at the Hal-doore another much more beautifull Damzell then any of the former, and to sit by his side, and begin to recount vnto him what Castle that is, and how shee is enchanted therein, with many other things that amazed the Knight, and amazed the Readers. I will not enlarge my selfe any more in this matter, seeing that you may collect out of that which I haue said, that any part that is

read of any booke of a Knight Errant, will delight, and astonish him, that shall peruse it with attention : and therefore I pray you belecue me , and as I haue said already , reade those kinde of bookes, and you shall finde, that they will exile all the Melancholy that shall trouble you , and rectifie your disposition, if by fortune it be depraued : for I dare affirme of my selfe, that since I am become a Knight Errant, I am valiant, courteous, liberall, well-manner'd, generous, gentle, bold, mild, patient, an indurer of labours, imprisonments, and enchantments : and although it be but so little a while since I was shut vp in a Cage like a mad man, yet doe I hope by the valour of mine arme (heauen concurring, and fortune not crossing me) to see my selfe within a few daies, the King of some Kingdome, wherein I may shew the bountie and liberalitie included within my brest. For in good truth, Sir, a poore man is made vnable to manifest the vertue of liberalitie towards any other, although he virtually possesse it himselfe in a most eminent degree : and the will to gratifie, which only consists of will, is as dead a thing, as Faith without Workes. For which cause I doe wish, that fortune would quickly present me some occasion whereby I might make my selfe an Emperour ; that I may discouer the desire I haue to doe good vnto my friends, but especially to this my poore Squire, *Sancho Pança*, who is one of the honestest men in the world, on whom I would faine bestow the Earledome which I promised him many daies past , but that I feare me he will not be able to gouerne his estate.

*Sancho* ouerhearing those last words of his Masters, said, Labour you, Sir *Don-Quixote*, to get me that Earledome as often promised by you, as much longed for by me , and I promise you that I will not want sufficiency to gouerne it; and though I should, yet haue I heard say, that there are men in the world, who take Lordships to farme, paying the Lord so much by the yeere, and vntertaking the care of the government thereof, whilst the Lord himselfe with outstretched legs doth lye at his ease ; enjoying the rents  
they

they bring him, and caring for nothing else : and so will I doe, and will not stand racking it to the vtmost, but presently desist from all administration, and liue merrily vpon my rent like a young Duke ; and so let the World wagge, and goe how it will. That, friend *Sancho*, is to bee vnderstood, quoth the Canon, of enioying the Reuenewes ; but as concerning the administration of Iustice, the Lord of the Seigniorie is bound to looke to it, in that is required a sufficiencie and abilitie to gouerne, and aboue all, a good intention to deale iustly, and determine rightly : for if this bee wanting when wee beginne, our meanes and ends will alwayes bee subiect to errour. And therefore is God wont as well to further the good Designes of the simple, as to disfaour the bad ones of those that be wittily wicked.

I vnderstand not those Philosophies, quoth *Sancho Pança*, but this I know well, that I would I had as speedily the Earldome, as I could tell how to gouerne it, for I haue as much soule as another, and as much bodie as he that hath most ; and I would be as absolute a King in my estate, as any one would be in his ; and being such, I would doe what I liked, and doing what I liked, I would take my pleasure, and taking my pleasure, I would bee content ; and when one is content, hee hath no more to desire, and hauing no more to desire, the matter were ended : and then come the state when it will, or farewell it, and let vs behold our selues, as one blinde man said to another. They are no bad Philosophies which thou comest out with, kinde *Sancho*, quoth the Canon : but yet for all that, there is much to be said concerning this matter of Earledomes. To that *Don-Quixote* replied, I know not what more may bee said, onely I gouerne my selfe by the example of *Amadis de Gaule*, who made his Squire Earle of the firme Island : and therefore I may without scruple of conscience make *Sancho Pança* an Earle ; for he is one of the best Squires that cuer Knight Errant had. The Canon abode amazed at the well-compacted and orderly rauings of *Don Quix-*



ote; at the manner wherewith hee had deciphered the aduenture of the Knight of the Lake; at the impression which his lying Bookes had made into him: and finally he wondred at the simplicitie of *Sancho Pança*, who so earnestly desired to be made Earle of the Countie his Lord had promised him.

By this time the Canons scruing-men, which had gone to the Inne for the sumpture Mule, were returned, and making their table of a carpet, and of the greene grasse of that meddow, they sate down vnder the shaddow of the trees, and did eate there, to the end that the Waineman might not lose the commoditie of the pasture, as wee haue said before, and as they sate at dinner, they suddenly heard the sound of a little bell issuing from among the briers and brambles that were at hand: and instantly after, they saw come out of the Thicket a very faire shee-Goate, whose hide was powdred all ouer with blacke, white, and brown spots: after her followed a Goat-heard crying vnto her, and in his language bidding her stay, or retorne againe to the Fold: but the fugitiue Goate al affrighted and feareful, ranne towards the company, and as it were seeking in her dumbe manner to be protected, strayed neere vnto them: then did the Goat-heard arriue, and laying hold of her hornes (as if shee had beene capable of his reprehension) said vnto her, O yee wanton Ape, ye spotted Elfe, how come you to halt with me a late daies? What Wolues do skarre your daughter? will you not tell me, faire, what the matter is? But what can it be other then that you are a female, and therefore can neuer be quiet? A foule euill take your conditions, and all theirs, whom you so much resemble: turne backe, loue, turne backe, and though you be not so content withall, yet shall you at least bee more safe in your Fold, and among the rest of your fellowes: for if you that shall guide and direct them, goe thus distracted, and wandering, what then must they doe? what will become of them?

The Goat-heards words did not a little delight the hearers,

ters but principally the Canon, who said vnto him, I pray thee, good fellow, take thy rest heere awhile, and doe not hasten that Goate so much to her Fold for seeing she : is a female, as thou sayest, shee will follow her naturall instinct, how much soeuer thou opposest thy selfe vnto it : take therefore that bit, and drinke a draught wherewithall thou maist temper thy choller, and the Goate will rest her the whilst : and saying so, he gaue him the hinder quarter of a cold Rabbet : which hee receiuing, rendred him many thanks, and drinking a draught of wine, did pacifie himselfe, and said presently after, I would not haue you, my Masters, account me simple, although I spöke to this beast in so earnest a fashion ; for in truth the words which I vsed vnto her, were not without some mysterie. I am indeed rusticke, and yet not so much, but that I know how to conuerse with men, and with beasts. I belecue that easily, quoth the Curate, for I know already by experience, that the woods breed learned men, and sheep-coats containe Philosophers. At the least, Sir, replied the Goatheard, they haue among them experienced men : and that you may giue the more credit to this truth, & as it were, touch it with your owne hands, (although till I be bidden, I may seeme to inuite my selfe) I will, if you please to heare me but awhile, relate vnto you a very true accident, which shall make good what this Gentleman (pointing to the Curate) and my selfe haue affirmed. To this *Don-Quixote* answered, Because the Case doth seeme to haue in it some shadow of Knightly aduentures, I will for my part listen vnto thee with a very good will, & I presume that all these Gentlemen will doe the like, so great is their discretion, & desire to know curious nouelty which amaze, delight, and entertaine the senses, as I doe certainly beleue thy history will. Therefore begin it friend, and all of vs will lend our eares vnto it. I except mine, quoth *Saacho*, for I will goe with this Pastie vnto that little streame, where I meane to fill my selfe for three daies ; for I haue heard my Lord *Don-Quixote* say, that a Knight Errants Squire must  
cate

eate when he can, and alwaies as much as he can, because that oftentimes they enter by chance into some wood-so intricate, as they cannot get out of it againe in five or sixe daies : and if a mans panch be not then well stuffed, or his wallet well stored, he may there remaine, and be turned, as many times it happens, into mummie. Thou art in the right of it, *Sancho*, quoth *Don-Quixote* : goe therefore where thou wilt, and eate what thou maist ; for I am already satisfied, and onely want refectiō for my minde, which now I will giue it by listning to this good fellow. The same will wee also giue vnto ours, quoth the Canon, who therewithall intreated the Goat-heard to keepe promise, and beginne his tale. Then he stroking once or twice his prettie Goate, ( which hee yet held fast by the hornes ) said thus, Lie downe, pīde foole, by me, for we shall haue time enough to returne home againe. It seemed that the Goat vnderstood him ; for as soone as her Master sate downe, she quietly stretched her selfe along by him, and looking him in the face, did giue to vnderstand, that shee was attentiuē to what he was saying. And then he began his history in this manner.

---

### CHAP. XXIIII.

*Relating that which the Goat-heard told to those that carried away Don-Quixote.*

**T**Here is a Village distant some three leagues from this valley, which albeit it be little, is one of the richest of this countie : therein sometime did dwell a wealthie Farmer of good respect, and so good, as although reputation and riches are commonly ioyned together, yet that which he had, was rather got him by his Vertue, then by any wealth he possessed : But that which did most accumulate his happinesse (as he himselfe was wont to say) was, that he had a Daughter of so accomplished beauty, so rare discretion, comeliness,

ness, and vertue, that as many as knew and beheld her, admired to see the passing indowments wherewith heaven and nature had enriched her. Being a child, shee was faire, and increasing daily in feature, shee was at the age of sixteene most beautifull. The same whereof extended it selfe ouer all the bordering villages: but why say I the bordering villages alone, it it spread it selfe ouer the farthest Cities, yea and entred into the Kings Palace, and into the eares of all kinde of people; So that they came from all parts to behold her as a rare thing, and patterne of miracles? Her father did carefully keepe her, and she likewise heeded her selfe: for there is neither guard, locke, nor bolt able to keepe a mayden better, then is her owne warinesse, and care. The wealth of the father, & worth of the daughter moued diuers, as well of his owne village as strangers, to demand her to wife, but he (as one whom the disposall of so rich a Jewell most neerely concerned) was much perplexed, and vnable to determine on whom, among such an infinite number of importunate wooers, he might bestow her: among others that bore this good will towards her, I my selfe was one to whom gaue many, and very great hopes of good successe, the knowledge that her father had of me, my birth in the same village, my descent honest, and bloud vntainted, flourishing in yecres, very rich in goods, and no lesse in gifts of the mind. Another of the same Village and qualities, was also a suiter vnto her: which was an occasion to hold her in suspence, and put his will in the ballance, deeming as he did, that she might be bestowed on either of vs two: and that he might be rid of his doubt, he resolved totell it to *Leandra*, (for so doe they call the rich maide which hath brought mee to extreme misery) noting discretely, that seeing wee both were equals, it would not be amisse to leaue in his deare daughters power the making choyce of whether she liked best. *A thing worthy to bee noted by all those parents that would haue their children marry.* Wherein my meaning is not, that they should permit them to make a bad or a base choyce, but that they pro-

propound certaine good ones, and referre to their liking which of them they will take. I know not what was the liking of *Leandra*, but only know this, that the father possessed vs off, by alleaging the ouer-green yeeres of his daughter, and vsing generall termes, which neither obliged him, nor discharged vs. My riual was called *Anselmo*, and my selfe *Eugenio*: that you may also haue some iustice of the persons which were actors in this Tragedie, whose conclusion is yet depending, but threatens much future disaster.

About the very same time arriued to our Village one *Vincente of the Rose*, sonne to a poore labourer of the same place, which *Vincente* returned as then from Italy, and diuers other Countries, wherein hee had beene a souldier, for being of some twelue yeeres of age, a certaine Captaine, that with his company passed a long by our Village, did carry him away with him, and the Youth, after a dozen yeeres more, came backe againe attired like a souldier, and painted with a hundred colours, full of a thousand deuices of Cristall, five Steele chaines: to day hee would put on some gay thing, the next day some other, but all of them slight painted, and of little waight, lesse worth. The clownish people, which are naturally malicious, and if they haue but euer so little idlenesse or leasure, become malice it selfe, did note and reckon vp all his braueries, and Jewels, and found that he had but three suits of apparrell of different colours, with garters and stockings answerable to them; but he vsed so many disguisements, varieties, transformations, and inuentions, which they, as if they had not counted them all, some one would haue sworn that hee had made shew of more then ten suits of apparrell, & more then twenty plumes of feathers: and let not that which I tell you of the apparrell bee counted impertinent, or from the matter; for it makes a principall part in the history. He would sit on a bench that stood vnder a great Poplar tree in the midst of the market place, and there would hold vs all, with gaping mouthes, listening to the gallant adventures, and resolute acts he recounted vnto vs, there was no

Land

Land in al the world, whose soile he had not trodden on, no battell wherein hee had not beene present : hee had slaine more Moores, then the Kingdomes of Morocco, and Tuney contained, and vndertaken more single combats, as he said, then euer did either *Gant*, *Luna*, or *Diego Garcia de Paredes*, and a thousand others whom hee named, and yet he still came away with the victory, without hauing euer left one drop of blood. On the other side hee would shew vs signes of wounds, which although they could not bee discerned, yet would hee perswade vs, that they were the markes of bullets, which he receiued in diuers skirmishes, and warres. Finally, he would thou his equals, and those which knew him very well, with maruellous arrogancy, and said, that his arme was his father, his works his lineage, and that beside his being a Souldier, hee ought not a whit to the King. To these his arrogancies was annext some superficiall skill in Musike, for he could scratch a little on a Gytterne, and some would say that he made it speake : but his many graces made not a stop there ; for he had likewise some shaddowes of Poetry, and so would make a ballad of a league and a halfe long, vpon euery toy that happened in the Village.

This Souldier therefore, whom I haue deciphered, this *Vincente of the Rose*, this braggard, this Musician, this Poet, eyed and beheld many times by *Leandra* from a certaine window of her house that looked into the Market-place ; and the golden shew of his attire enamoured her : & his Ditties enchanted her ; for hee would giue twentie Copies of euery one he composed : The report of his worthy acts, beautified by himselfe, came also vnto her eares, and finally (for so it is likely the Deuill had ordered the matter) she became in Loue with him, before he presumed to think once of soliciting her. And as in Loue, aduentures no one is accomplished with more facilitie, then that which is fauoured by the womans desire ; *Leandra* and *Vincente* made a short and easie agreement : and ere any one of her suiters could once suspect her desires, she



shee had fully satisfied them, abandoned her deare and louing Fathers house, (for her mother liues not) and running away from the Village with the Souldier, who departed with more triumph from that enterprise, then from all the others which he had arrogated to himselfe. The accident amazed all the Towne, yea and all those to whom the rumour therof arriued, were astonished, *Anselmo* amazed, her father sorrowfull, her kinsfolke ashamed. The ministers of Iustice carefull, and the Troupers readie to make pursuit; all the wayes were laide, and the woods, and euery other place meeterly searched; and at the end of three dayes, they found the lustfull *Leandra* hidden in a Caue within a wood, naked in her smoeke, and dispoyled of a great summe of money, and many precious Jewels, which she had brought away with her: they returned her to her dolefull fathers presence, where asking how she became so dispoyled, she presently confessed, that *Vincens* of the Rose had deceiued her; for hauing passed his word to make her his wife, hee perswaded her to leaue her fathers house, and made her beleue that hee would carrie her to the richest, and most delightfull Citie of the world, which was Naples. And that shee through indiscretion, and his fraud, had giuen credit to his words, and robbing her father, stole away with him the very same night that she was missed; and that he carried her to a very rough Thicket, and shut her vp in that Caue wherein they found her: She also recounted how the Souldier, without touching her honour, had rob'd her of all that shee carried, and leauing her in that Caue, was fled away; which successe strooke vs into greater admiration then all the rest: for wee could hardly be induced to beleue the young gallants continencie, but shee did so earnestly protest it, as it did not a little comfort her comfortlesse father, who made no reckoning of the riches he had lost, seeing his Daughter had yet reserved that Jewell, which being once gone, could neuer againe be recovered. The same day that *Leandra* appeared, she also vanished out of our sights, being conueied away  
by

by her Father, and shut vp in a Nunnerie at a certaine Towne not farre off; hoping that time would illiterate some part of the bad opinion already conceiued of his Daughters facilitie. *Leandra* her youth serued to excuse her errour, at least with those which gained nothing by her being good or ill; but such as knew her discretion, and great wit, did not attribute her sinne to ignorance, but rather to her too much lightnesse, and the naturall infirmitie of that sexe, which for the most part is inconsiderate, and slipperie. *Leandra* being shut vp, *Anselmo's* eyes lost their light, or at least beheld not any thing that could delight them; and mine remained in darknesse without light, that could addresse them to any pleasing obiect in *Leandra's* absence. Our griefes increased, our patience diminished we cursed the Souldiers Ornaments, and abhord her Fathers want of looking to her. To be brieft, *Anselmo* and my selfe, resolu'd to abandon the Village, and come to this Valley, where hee feeding a great flocke of Sherpe of his owne, and I as copious a Heard of Goates of mine, wee passe our liues among these trees, giuing vent to our passions, either by singing together the beautifull *Leandra's* praises, or dispraises: or by sighing alone, and alone communicating our quarrellsome complaints with heauen. Many others of *Leandra's* Suitors haue since; by our example, come to these intricate Woods, where they vse our very exercise; and they are so many, as it seemes that this place is conuerted into the Pastorall *Arcadia*, it is full of Shepherds and Sheep-folds, and there is no one part thereof wherein the name of the beaufiful *Leandra* resoundeth not: There one doth curse her, and termeth her humors inconstant and dishonest: another condemnes her of being so facile and light; some one absolues, and pardons her, another condemnes and despises her, and celebrates her beautie, another execrates her disposition, and finally, all blame, but yet adore her, and the rauing distraction of them all, doth so farre extend it selfe, as some one complaines of disdain, that neuer spoke word vnto her, and

some one laments, and feels the iraged fits of iealousie, though she neuer ministred any occasion thereof; for as I haue said, her sinne was knowne before her desires; There is no Clift of a Rocke, no banke of a streame, nor shadow of a tree, without some Sheep-heard or other, that breathes out his misfortunes to the silent ayre. The Eccho repeates *Leandra's* name, wheresoeuer it can be formed; the woods resound *Leandra*, the brookes doe murmur *Leandra*, and *Leandra* hold vs all perplexed and enchanted, hoping without hope, and fearing without knowledge what we feare.

And among all this flocke of franticke men, none shewes more or lesse iudgement, then my companion *Anselmo*; who hauing so many other titles vnder which hee might plaine him, onely complains of absence, and doth to the sound of a Rebeck (which he handles admirably well) sing certaine dolefull verses, which fully discover the excellencie of his conceit. I follow a more easie, & (in mine opinion) a more certaine way; to wit, I rayle on the lightnes of women, on their inconstancy, double dealing, dead promises, crackt trust, and the smal discretion they shew in placing of their affections, and this, Sir, was the occasion of the words, and reasons I lately vsed to this Goate, whom I doe esteeme but little, because shee is a female, although she bee otherwise the best of all my Herd: And this is the Historie which I promised to tell you, wherein if I haue beene prolix, I will bee altogether as large in doing you any seruice, for I haue here at hand my Cabine, and therein store of fresh milke, and sauoy cheefe, with many sorts of excellent fruite, no lesse agreeable to the sight, then pleasing to the taste.

## CHAP. XXV.

*Of the falling out of Don-Quixote and the Goate-heard: with the adventure of the disciplinants, to which the Knight gave end to his cost.*

**H**E Goat-heards tale bred a generall delight in all the hearers, but specially in the Canon, who did very exactly note the manner wherewithall he deliuered it, as different from the stile or discourse of a rude Goate-heard, as approaching to the discretion of a perfect Courtier; and therefore hee said, that the Curate had spoken very iudiciously, in affirming that the woods bred Learned men: all of them made bountifull tenders of their friendship and seruice to *Eugenio*, but hee that enlarged himselfe more then the rest, was *Don-Quixote*, who said vnto him, Certes, friend Goat-heard, if I were at this time able to vndertake any aduenture, I would presently set forward, and fall in hand with it to doe you a good turne, and I would take *Leandra* out of the Monasterie (wherein without doubt she is restrained against her will) in despight of the Ladie Abbesse, and of all those that should take her part; and would put her into your hands, to the end you might dispose of her at your pleasure, yet still obseruing the Lawes of Knight-hood, which command, that no man doe any wrong, and offer violence vnto a Damzell: yet I hope in our Lord God, that the skill of a malicious inchanter shall not bee of such force, but that the science of a better meaning wizard shall preuaile against him; and whensoever that shall befall, I doe promise you my helpe and fauour, as I am bound by my profession, which chiefly consists in assisting the weak and distressed.

The Goate-heard beheld him, and seeing the Knight so ill arrayed, and of so euil-fauoured a countenance, hee wondred, and questioned the Barber, who sat neere to him, thus: I pray you, Sir, who is this man, of so strange a figure,

figure, and that speakes so odly? Who else should he be, answered the Barber, but the famous *Don-Quixote* of the *Mancha*, the righter of wrongs, the redresser of iniuries, the protector of Damzels, the affrighter of Giants, and the ouercommer of battels? That which you say of this man, answered the Goat-heard, is very like that which in Bookes of Chiuallric is written of Knights Errant; who did all those things which you apply to this man: and yet I belecue that either you iest, or else that this Gentlemans head is voide of braines.

Thou art a great villaine, said *Don-Quixote*, and thou art he whose pate wants braines; for mine is fuller then the very, very whoores that bore thee; and saying so, and snatching vp a loafe of bread that stood by him, he raught the Goat-heard so furious a blow withall, as it beat his nose flat to his face: but the other, who was not acquainted with such iests, and saw how ill he was handled, without hauing respect to the Carpet, Napkins, or those that were eating, he leaped vpon *Don-Quixote*, and taking hold of his collar with both the hands, would certainly haue strangled him, if *Sancho Pança* had not arriued at that very instant, and taking him fast behinde, had not throwne him backe on the Table, crushing dishes, breaking glasses, and shedding, and ouerthrowing all that did lie vpon it. *Don-Quixote* seeing himselfe free, returned to get vpon the Goat-heard, who all besmeared with blood, and trampled to pieces vnder *Sancho's* feete, groped here and there groueling as hee was for some knife or other, to take a bloody reuenge withall, but the Canon and Curate preuented his purpose; and yet, by the Barbers assistance, hee got vnder him *Don-Quixote*, on whom hee rained such a showre of buffers, as hee powred as much blood from the poore Knights face, as had done from his owne. The Canon and Curate were ready to burst for laughter: the Troupers danced for sport; euery one hissed, as men vse to do when Dogs fall out, and quarrell together: onely *Sancho Pança* was wood, because hee could not get from one of the Canons  
Ser-

Seruingmen, who withheld him from going to helpe his Master. In conclusion, all being verie merrie, saue the two buffetants, that rugged one another extremely, they heard the sound of a Trumpet so dolefull, as it made them turne their faces towards that part from whence it seemed to come. But he that was most troubled at the noyse thereof, was *Don-Quixote*; who, although he was vnder the Goatheard, full sore against his will, and by him exceedingly bruysed and battered, yet said vnto him, Brother Deuil (for it is impossible that thou canst be any other, seeing that thou hast had valour and strength to subiect my forces) I pray thee let vs make truce for one onely houre; for the dolorous sound of that Trumpet which toucheth our eares, doth (me thinks) inuite me to some new aduenture. The Goatheard, who was wearie of buffeting, and beeing beaten, left him off incontinently, and *Don-Quixote* stood vp, and turned himselfe towards the place from whence he imagined the noyse to proceed, and presently hee espied descending from a certaine height many men apparelled in white like disciplinants. The matter indeed was, that the clouds had that yeare denied to bestow their dew on the earth, and therefore they did institute Rogations, Processions, and Disciplines, thorow-out all that Countrey, to desire Almighty God to open the hands of his mercy, and to bestow some raine vpon them. And to this effect, the people of a Village, neere vnto that place, came in Procession to a deuout Eremitage, builded vpon one of the hills that inuironed that Valley.

*Don-Quixote* noting the strange attire of the Disciplinants, without any calling to memorie how he had often seen the like before, did forthwith imagine that it was some new aduenture, and that the triall thereof only appertained to him, as to a Knight errant: and this his presumption was fortified the more, by beleeuing that an Image which they carried all couered ouer with blacke, was some principall Lady whom those miscreants and discourteous Knights did beare away perforce. And as soon as this fell into his brain,



he leaped lightly towards *Rozinante*, that went feeding vp and downe the Plaines, and dismounting from his pummell the bridle, and his target that hanged thereat, he bridled him in a trice; and taking his sword from *Sancho*, got instantly vpon his horse, and then imbracing his target, said in a loud voyce to all those that were present: You shall now see, O valorous company, how important a thing it is to haue in the world such Knights as professe the order of Chiuallrie errant. Now I say, you shall discerne by the freeing of that good Ladie, who is there carryed captiue away, whether Knights aduenturous are to be held in price; and saying so, he stricke *Rozinante* with his heeles (for spurres he had none) and making him to gallop (for it is not read in any part of this true Historie, that *Rozinante* did euer passe one formall or full careere) hee posted to incounter the Disciplinants, although the Curate, Canon, and Barber, did what they might to withhold him, but all was not possible; and much lesse could he bee detained by these outcries of *Sancho*, saying, Whither doe you goe, Sir *Don-Quixote*? What Devils doe you beare in your brest, that incite you to runne thus against the Catholique faith? See, Sir, vnfortunate that I am, how that is a Procession of Disciplinants, and that the Lady whom they beare, is the blessed Image of the immaculate Virgin: Looke Sir, what you doe, for at this time it may wel be said, that you are not you know what. But *Sancho* laboured in vaine, for his Lord rode with so greedie a desire to encounter the white men, and deliuer the mourning Lady, as he heard not a word, & although he had, yet would he not then haue returned back at the Kings commandement. Being come at last, neere to the Procession, and stopping *Rozinante* (who had already a great desire to rest himselfe a while) he said with a troubled and hoarse voice, O you that couer your faces, perhaps because you are not good men, giue eare and listen to what I shal say. The first that stood at this alarm, were those which carried the Image; and one of the foure Priests which sung the Litanies, beholding the strange shape of *Don-Quixote*,

the leanness of *Rocinante*, and other circumstances worthy of laughter, which he noted in our Knight, returned him quickly this answer, Good Sir, if you would say any thing to vs, say it instantly; for these honest men, as you see, are toyled extremely; and therefore we cannot, nor is it reason we should stand lingring to heare any thing. If it bee not so brieft, as it may be deliuered in two words, I will say it in one, said *Don-Quixote*, and it is this, that you doe forthwith giue libertie to that beautifull Ladie, whose teares and pittifull semblance cleerely denote, that you carrie her away against her will, and haue done her some notable iniurie; and I, who was borne to right such wrongs, will not permit her to passe one step forward, vntill shee be wholly possessed of the freedome she doth so much desire and deserue. All those that ouer-heard *Don-Quixote*, gathered by his words that he was some distracted man; and therefore began to laugh very hartily, which laughing seemed to adde gun-powder to his choler; for laying his hand on his sword without any more words, he presently assaulted the Image-carriers; one whereof leauing the charge of the burden to his fellows, came out to encounter the Knight with a woodden forke (whereon he supported the beere whensoever they made a stand) and receyuing vpon it a great blow which *Don-Quixote* discharged at him, it parted the forke in two; and yet he with the Peece that remained in his hand, returned the Knight such a thwack vpon the shoulder, on the sword side, as his target not being able to make resistance against that rusticall force, poore *Don-Quixote* was ouerthrowne to the ground, and extremely bruised.

*Sancho Pança* (who had followed him, puffing & blowing as fast as he could) seeing him ouerthrowne, cried to his aduersary that he should strike him no more: for he was a poore enchanted Knight, that had neuer all the dayes of his life done any man harme: but that which detayned the swain, was not *Sancho's* out-cries, but to see that *Don-Quixote* stirred neyther hand nor foot; and therefore beleeuing

that he had slayæ him, hee tucked vp his Coat to his girdle as soone as he could, and fled away thorow the fields like a Deere. In the meane while, *Don-Quixotes* Companions did hasten to the place where hee lay, when those of the Procession seeing them (but principally the troupers of the holy Brotherhood with their Crosse-bowes) runne towards them, did feare some disastrous successe; and therefore, they gathered together in a troupe about the Image, and lifting vp their hoods, and laying fast hold on their whips, and the Priests on their Tapers, they attended the assault, with resolution both to defend themselves, and offend the assaylants if they might. But Fortune disposed the matter better then they expected; for *Sancho* did nothing else then throw himselfe on his Lords body, making ouer him the most dolorous and ridiculous lamentation of the world, and beleeuing that hee was dead. The Curate was knowne by the other Curate that came in the procession; and their acquaintance appeased the conceiued feare of the two Squadrons. The first Curate, in two words, told the other what *Don-Quixote* was, and therefore he, and all the crue of the Disciplinants went ouer to see, whether the poore Knight were dead or aliue; and then might heare *Sancho Pança*, with the teares in his eyes, bewayling him in this manner: O flowre of Chiuallrie, who hast with one blow alone ended the Carcere of thy so well bestowed Peeres? O renowme of this linage, the honour and glorie of all the *Maucha*, yea and of all the world beside; which seeing it wanteth thee, shall remaine full of miscreants, secure from beeing nor punished for their misdeeds. O liberall beyond all *Alexanders*, seeing thou hast given mee, for onely for eight moneths seruice, the best Iland that the Sea doth compasse or ingyre. O humble to the proud, and stately to the humbled, vndertaker of perils, indurer of affronts, enamoured without cause, imitator of good men, whip of the euill, enemie of the wicked, and in conclusion, Knight Errant, then which no greater thing may be said.

*Don-Quixote* was called againe to himselfe by *Sancho* his out-cryes, and then the first word that euer hee spake was; he that liues absented from thee, most sweet *Dulcinea*, is subiect to greater miseries then this: helpe me, friend *Sancho*, to get vp into the enchanted Chariot againe: for I am not in plight to oppresse *Rozinantes* Saddle, hauing this shoulder broken all into peeces. That I will doe with a very good will, my deare Lord, replied the Squire; and let vs returne to my Village, in company of those Gentlemen, which desire your welfare so much; and there we will take order for some other Voyage, which may be more profitable, and famous then this hath bin. Thou speakest reasonably, *Sancho*, replied *Don-Quixote*, and it will bee a great wisdome to let ouerpasse the crosse aspect of those Planets that raigne at this present. The Canon, Curate, and Barber commended his resolution: and so hauing taken delight enough in *Sancho Panças* simplicitie, they placed *Don-Quixote* as before in the Teame. The Processioners returning into their former order, did prosecute their way; the Goat-headed tooke leaue of them all. The Troupers would not ride any farther, and therefore the Curate satisfied them for the paines they had taken. The Canon intreated the Curate to let him vnderstand all that succeeded of *Don-Quixote*; to wit, whether he amended of his frenzie, or grew more distracted, and then he tooke leaue, to continue his iourney. Lastly, all of them departed, the Curate, Barber, *Don-Quixote*, *Sancho Pança*, and the good *Rozinante* onely remayning behind. Then the Wain-man yoked his Oxen, and accommodated the Knight on a Bottle of Hay; and afterward followed on in his wonted low manner, that way which the Curate directed. At the end of two dayes they arriued to *Don-Quixotes* Village, into which they entred about noone; this befell on a Sunday, when all the people were in the Market stead, thorow the middle whereof *Don-Quixotes* Cart did passe: all of them drew neere to see what came in it, and when they knew their Countreyman, they were maruellously astonished:

the

the whilst a little Boy ranne home before, to tell the old Wife and the Knights Niece, that their Lord and Vncle was returned, very leane, pale, disfigured, and stretcht all along on a bundle of Hay.

It would haue mooued one to compassion, to haue heard the lamentations, and out-cryes, then rais'd by the two good women, the blowes they gaue themselues, and the curses and execrations which they powred out against all Bookes of Knighthood, all which was againe renewed, when they saw *Don-Quixote* himselfe entred in at their doores. At the newes of this his arriual, *Sancho Pança*s wife repayred also to get some tydings of her goodman; for she had learned that hee was gone away with the Knight, to serue him as his Squire, & as soon as euer she saw her Husband, the question shee asked him was, whether the Asses were in health or no? *Sancho* answered that he was come in better health then his Master. God be thanked, quoth she, who hath done mee so great a fauour: but tell mee now, friend, What profit hast thou reaped by this thy Squireship? What Peticote hast thou brought me home? What Shoos for thy little Boyes? I bring none of these things, good wife, quoth *Sancho*, although I bring other things of more moment and estimation. I am verie glad of that, quoth his Wife; shew me those things of more moment and estimation, good friend: for I would fayne see them, to the end that this heart of mine may be cheered, which hath beene so swolne and sorrowfull, all the time of thine absence. Thou shalt see them at home, quoth *Sancho*, and therefore rest satisfied for this time; for and it please God, that wee trauaile once againe to seeke Aduentures, thou shalt see me shortly after an Earle, or Gouvernour. of an Iland, and that not euery ordinary one neither, but of one of the best in the World. I pray God, Husband, it may be so, (replied she) for we haue very great need of it. But what means that Iland? for I vnderstand not the word. He-ney is not made for the Asses mouth, quoth *Sancho*: Wife thou shalt know it in good time, yea, and shalt wonder, to heare the title  
of

of Ladiship given thee by all thy Vassalls. What is that thou speakest, *Sancho*, of Lordships, Islands, and Vassalls? Answered *Ioane Pança* (for so was she called, although her Husband and she were not Kinsfolke; but by reason that in the *Mancha*, the Wiues are vsually called after their Husbands Surname) Doe not busie thy selfe, *Ioane*, quoth *Sancho*, to know those things on such a sudden; let it suffice that I tell thee the truth, and therewithall sow vp thy mouth. I will onely say thus much vnto thee, as it were by the way, that there is nothing in the World so pleasant, as for an honest man to be the Squire of a Knight Errant, that seekes Aduentures. It is very true, that the greatest number of Aduentures found out, succeeded not to a mans satisfactions so much as hee would desire: for of a hundred that are incountred, the ninetie and nine are wont to be crosse and vntoward ones; I know it by experience, for I haue come away my selfe out of some of them well canuassed, and out of others well beaten. But yet for all that, it is a fine thing to expecteuents, trauerse Groues, search Woods, tread on Rockes, visit Castles, and lodge in Innes at a mans pleasure, without paying the Deuill a crosse.

All these Discourses passed betweene *Sancho Pança*, and his Wife *Ioane Pança*, whilst the olde woman and *Don-Quixotes* Niece did receiue him, put off his clothes, and lay him downe in his ancient bed: he looked vpon them very earnestly, and could not coniecture where hee was. The Curate charged the Niece to cherish her Vncle very carefully, and that they should looke well that he made not the third escape; relating at large all the adoe that they had to bring him home. Here both the women renewed their exclamations: their execrations of all Bookes of Knight-hood here came to be reiterated: here they besought Heaven to throw downe into the very Center of the bottomlesse Pit, the out-cries of so many lies and rauings. Finally, they remained perplexed and timorous, that they should lose again their Master & Vncle, as soon as he was any thing reco-



recovered; and it befell iust as they suspected : but the Authour of this Historie, although he haue with all diligence and curiositie inquired after the A&ts atchieued by *Don-Quixote* in his third sally to seeke Aduentures, yet could he neuer attaine (at least by authentickall Writings) to any notice of them : Only Farme hath left in the memories of the *Mancha*, that *Don-Quixote*, after his third escape, was at *Saragosa*; and present at certaine famous Iusts made in that City; and that therein befell him euents most worthy of his valour and good wit : But of his end he could find nothing, nor euer should haue knowne ought, if good fortune had not offered to his view an old Phisician, who had in his custodie a leaden Box, which, as he affirmed, was found in the ruines of an old Eremitage, as it was a repaying; in which Box were certaine Scroles of Parchment written with *Gothicall* Characters, but contayning *Castilian* verses, which comprehended many of his A&ts, and specified *Daleinea* of *Toboso* her beautie, decyphered *Roxinante*, and intreated of *Sancho Pança*s fidelitie; as also of *Don-Quixotes* Sepulchre, with sundry Epitaphs, and Elogies, of his life and manners, and those that could be read and copied out thorowly, were those that are here set downe by the faithfull Authour of this new and vnmatched relation. Which Authour demands of the Readers no other guerdon, in regard of his huge trauaile spent in the search of all the old Records of the *Mancha*, for the bringing thereof vnto light, but that they will daine to afford it as much credit as discreet men are wont to giue vnto Bookes of Knighthood, which are of so great reputation now-adayes in the World; for herewith he will rest most fully contented, and satisfied; and withall encouraged to publish and seeke out for other discourses, if not altogether so true as this, at least of as great, both inuention, and recreation. The first words written in the Scroll of Parchment, that was found in the leaden Box, were these.

The

---

# The Academikes of Argamasilla, a

Towne of the Mancha, on the life and death of  
the valorous *Don-Quixote* of the Mancha,  
*hoc scripserunt.*

An Epitaph of Monicongo the Academike  
of Argamasilla, to *Don-Quixotes*  
SEPVLCHER.

**T**He clattring Thunderbolt that did adorne  
The Mancha, with more spoiles thē Iason, Creete:  
The wit, whose wether-cocke, was sharpe as Thorne,  
When somewhat flatter it to be was meete.  
The Arme which did his power so much dilate,  
As it Gaeta and Cathay did retch.  
The dreadfullst Muse, and eke discreetest, that  
In brazen sheetes, did praises euer stretch.  
He that the Amadis left behinde,  
And held the Gataors but in smallesteeme,  
Both for his brauerie and his louing minde.  
He dumbe that made Don Belianis to seeme  
And he that farre on Rozinante err'd,  
Vnder this frozen stone doth lie interr'd.

---

Paniagando an Academike of Argamasilla, in praise  
of *Dulcinea* of Toboso.

## SONNET.

**S**He which you view with triple face and sheene,  
High brested and couragious like a man,  
Is tall *Dulcinea* of Toboso Queene,  
Of great *Quixote* welbeloued than.

He

---

He for her sake, treads th' one and th' other side  
Of the browne mountaine, and the famous fields  
Of Montiel and Aran luez so wide,  
On foote all tyr'd, loaden with speare and shield.  
(The fault was Rozinantes : ) O hard starre !  
That this Manchegan Dame and Worthy Knight,  
In tender yeeres when people strongest are,  
She lost by death the glimpse of beautie bright:  
And he although in Marble richly done :  
Yet Lones wrath and deceits, she could not shunne.

---

Caprichioso the most ingenious Academicke of  
Argamafilla, in praise of Rozinante, Don-  
*Quixote* his Steed.

SONNET.

**I**Nto the proud erected Diamond stocke,  
Which Mars with blondie plants so often bored,  
Halfe wood with valour, the Manchegan sticke  
His wau'ring Standard: and his Armes restored.  
For them theron he hung, and his bright sword,  
Wherewith he hacks, rems, parts, and ouerthrowes;  
(New prowesses,) to which Art must afford  
New stiles on this new Palatine to gloze.  
And if Gaule, much her Amadis does prize  
Whose braue discendants haue illustred Greece,  
And filld it full of Tropheis and of Fame :  
Much more Bellona's Court doth solemnize  
Quixote: whose like in Gaule, nor Grecia is,  
So honour'd's none, as in Mancha, his name.  
Let no obliuion his glory staine,  
Seeing in swiftnesse Rozinant his Steede  
Euen Bayard doth, and Briliador exceede.

Burlador

---

Burlador Academicke of Argamasilla, to  
SANCHO PANSA.

SONNET.

**T**His Sancho Panfais of body little,  
But yet, O miracle! in valour great,  
The simplest Squire, and sooth to say, lest subtle  
That in this world I sweare, lined euer yet.  
From being an Earle, he scarce was a threeds bredth,  
Had not at once conspir'd to crosse his guerdon,  
The malice of the times, and men misted,  
Which scarce an Asse in countring, would him pardon.  
Upon the like he rode, O giue me leaue  
To tell how this meeke Squire after the horse  
Mild Rozinante, and his Lord did drine!  
O! then vaine hopes of men, what thing is worse?  
Which prooues vs, desired ease to lend,  
Yet doe at last in smokes our glories end.

---

Cachidiablo Academicke of Argamasilla, on  
Don-Quixote his Tombe.

AN EPITAPH.

The worthy Knight lies there  
Well bruis'd, but euil-andant  
Who borne on Rozinante  
Rode waies both farre and neere.  
Sancho his faithfull Squire  
Panfayleep'd also  
Lieth besides him too:  
In his trade without peere.

---

Tiquitoc Academicke of Argamasilla, on  
*Dulcinea of Toboso's Sepulcher.*

AN EPI TAPH.

**D**Vlcinea here beneath  
Lies, though of flesh so round,  
To Dust and Ashes ground,  
By foule and Vgly Death.  
Shee was of gentle breath,  
And somewhat like a Dame,  
Being great Quixotes flame,  
And her Townes glorie, eash.

These were the Verses that could be read: as for the rest, in respect that they were halfe consumed and eaten away by time, they were deliuered to a Scholler, that he might by coniectures declare their meaning: and we haue had intelligence that he hath done it with the cost of many nights watching, and other great paines, and that he means to publish them, and also giues hope of a third sallie made by *Don-Quixote*.

---

FINIS.

---

THE  
SECOND  
PART OF THE  
HISTORY OF THE  
Valorous and witty KNIGHT-  
ERRANT,

*Don Quixote of the Mancha.*

Written in Spanish by *Michael*  
*Cervantes* : And now Translated  
into English.



LONDON,  
Printed for *Edward Blount.*

1620.